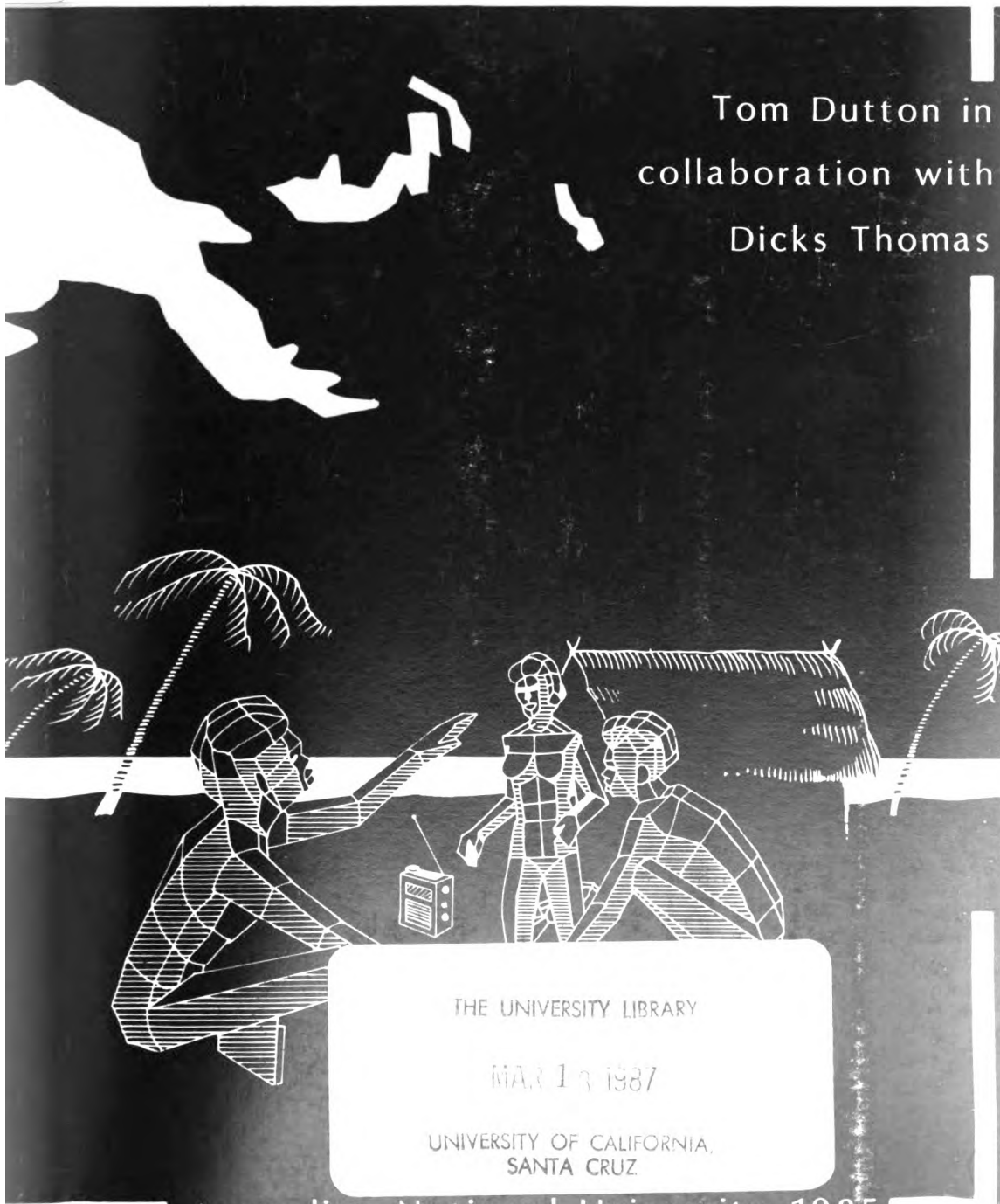


A NEW COURSE IN TOK PISIN (New Guinea Pidgin)

47
17

Tom Dutton in
collaboration with
Dicks Thomas



THE UNIVERSITY LIBRARY

MAR 13 1987

UNIVERSITY OF CALIFORNIA,
SANTA CRUZ

Australian National University 1985



TOM DUTTON is a Senior Research Fellow in the Department of Linguistics, Research School of Pacific Studies, The Australian National University. He has lived and worked in Papua New Guinea on and off since the late nineteen fifties as an Education Officer and professional linguist. He has taught Tok Pisin to many students and is well known for his first language-learning course, *Conversational New Guinea Pidgin*. He was Foundation Professor in the Department of Language, University of Papua New Guinea, from 1975 to 1978.



DICKS THOMAS is a Papua New Guinean. He comes from Tavol village on Mussau Island in the New Ireland Province. He received his basic education in Seventh Day Adventist schools in Papua New Guinea and later attended Fulton Missionary College in Suva, Fiji, where he sat for the New Zealand university entrance examination. Later again he completed a BA degree in language studies at the University of Papua New Guinea and has since attended linguistics and language teaching courses overseas. He is now Co-ordinator of and Instructor in Tok Pisin in the Department of Language at the University of Papua New Guinea.

PACIFIC LINGUISTICS

Series D - No. 67

A NEW COURSE IN TOK PISIN (NEW GUINEA PIDGIN)

Tom Dutton

in collaboration with

Dicks Thomas

**LANGUAGES FOR INTERCULTURAL COMMUNICATION IN THE
PACIFIC AREA PROJECT OF THE
AUSTRALIAN ACADEMY OF THE HUMANITIES, PUBLICATION No. 2**

**Published under the auspices of the
Union Académique Internationale**



**Department of Linguistics
Research School of Pacific Studies
THE AUSTRALIAN NATIONAL UNIVERSITY**

PACIFIC LINGUISTICS is issued through the Linguistic
Circle of Canberra and consists of four series:

SERIES A - Occasional Papers
SERIES B - Monographs
SERIES C - Books
SERIES D - Special Publications

EDITOR: S.A. Wurm

ASSOCIATE EDITORS: D.C. Laycock, C.L. Voorhoeve, D.T. Tryon, T.E. Dutton

EDITORIAL ADVISERS:

B.W. Bender

University of Hawaii

David Bradley

La Trobe University

A. Capell

University of Sydney

Michael G. Clyne

Monash University

S.H. Elbert

University of Hawaii

K.J. Franklin

Summer Institute of Linguistics

W.W. Glover

Summer Institute of Linguistics

G.W. Grace

University of Hawaii

M.A.K. Halliday

University of Sydney

E. Haugen

Harvard University

A. Healey

Summer Institute of Linguistics

L.A. Hercus

Australian National University

Nguyễn Đăng Liêm

University of Hawaii

John Lynch

University of Papua New Guinea

K.A. McElhanon

Summer Institute of Linguistics

H.P. McKaughan

University of Hawaii

P. MÜhlhäusler

Linacre College, Oxford

G.N. O'Grady

University of Victoria, B.C.

A.K. Pawley

University of Auckland

K.L. Pike

Summer Institute of Linguistics

E.C. Polomé

University of Texas

Malcolm Ross

Australian National University

Gillian Sankoff

University of Pennsylvania

W.A.L. Stokhof

University of Leiden

B.K. T'sou

City Polytechnic of Hong Kong

E.M. Uhlenbeck

University of Leiden

J.W.M. Verhaar

Divine Word Institute,

Madang

All correspondence concerning PACIFIC LINGUISTICS, including
orders and subscriptions, should be addressed to:

The Secretary
PACIFIC LINGUISTICS
Department of Linguistics
Research School of Pacific Studies
The Australian National University
G.P.O. Box 4, Canberra, A.C.T. 2601
Australia

Copyright © The Authors

First Published 1985

Typeset by Jeanette Coombes and Anne Rees

Maps drawn by Theo Baumann

Art work by Jorge Bontes, Instructional Resources Unit, Australian National University

Printed by A.N.U. Printing Service

Bound by Adriatic Bookbinders Pty Ltd

The editors are indebted to the Australian National University for assistance in the
production of this series

This publication was made possible by an initial grant from the Hunter Douglas Fund

ISSN 0078-7566

ISBN 0 85883 341 7

FOREWORD

Tok Pisin is one of the two major lingue franche of Papua New Guinea. It has at present close to two million speakers and their number is still increasing, as is that of those who speak Tok Pisin as their first language. Throughout Papua New Guinea, speakers of Tok Pisin can now be encountered increasingly in areas which have otherwise been the exclusive realm of Hiri Motu, the other major lingua franca of the area. The language has been gaining tremendously in importance and prestige during the last few years. It always has been, and continues to be, the major means of intercommunication amongst Papuans and New Guineans who have no other language in common. Even amongst speakers of the same local language it is frequently used for prestige reasons. It has been used for a long time throughout Papua New Guinea for administrative purposes, but its importance has been greatly enhanced through its becoming the language of discussion in the majority of Local Government Councils and the Parliament. A knowledge of it or some other language of the country is a prerequisite for Papua New Guinea citizenship and it is beginning to play a more important role in education in this country on the primary and vocational levels, than has hitherto been the case. It seems that Tok Pisin is heading towards becoming the unofficial national language of Papua New Guinea, a role which it is already fulfilling in some ways.

Tok Pisin is a pidgin language whose vocabulary is derived from, but by no means identical with, English to the extent of 75-80%, with 15-20% based on indigenous languages, but mainly Tolai of northern New Britain, and 5% on other languages, predominantly German. Its structure is in many ways un-English and is patterned on that of the Austronesian languages of the South-Western Pacific.

The history of Tok Pisin is complex, and recent research has shown that it would be an oversimplification of the situation to suggest that Tok Pisin represents a direct linear descendant of Pacific Jargon English which developed in several varieties in various parts of the South Pacific before the middle of the 19th century as a result of contacts between Europeans and South Sea islanders. It is assumed that this Pacific Jargon English came into being under the indirect linguistic influence from Chinese Pidgin English and, in a similarly indirect way, gave rise to several varieties of Pidgin English such as Samoan Plantation Pidgin English, New Caledonian Plantation Pidgin English and Queensland Plantation Pidgin English. It appears that there has been mutual influence between these main three plantation pidgins via shared recruiting areas for plantation labour, and whereas there has been comparatively strong mutual influence between Queensland Plantation English, Solomon Islands Pidgin English and Samoan Plantation English, the influence on New Guinea Pidgin came predominantly from Samoan Plantation English and to a lesser extent, and only indirectly, from Queensland Plantation English via Samoan Plantation Pidgin and also indirectly from Pacific Jargon English, though in any event Tok Pisin is much less closely related to Queensland Plantation English than Solomon Islands English and the New Hebridean Pidgin English which is commonly called Bichelamar. After the formal annexation of the Bismarck Archipelago, the western part of the Solomon Islands and the north-eastern part of the New Guinea mainland by the German Reich, labour trade between these areas and most plantation areas in the Pacific came to a halt and the only plantations which continued to get labour from German New Guinea were the German-owned plantations in Samoa. The result of this was that linguistic development of Pidgin English in these areas began to take place independently from other varieties of Pidgin English, and English was at the same time largely withdrawn as a model language for Pidgin English in the German-controlled area.

The special stabilised form of Pidgin English in these German areas became enriched with words from the local Tolai language and German and in this form was used as an unofficial administrative language by the German administration, and it became the form of Pidgin English from which present-day Tok Pisin developed. The language spread rapidly through those parts of German New Guinea which were under administrative control. After the Australian administration had taken over after World War I, the spread of this language, to which the name New Guinea Pidgin could then well be applied, accelerated without much effort or teaching on the part of the administration and by the Europeans in general, and basically as a result of its functioning as an intertribal lingua franca. The use and roles of the language expanded rapidly between the two World Wars and increased dramatically after World War II. It rapidly assumed new roles and functions in the years leading up to self-government and eventual independence of Papua New Guinea where it has been given official status and a few years ago been officially named Tok Pisin by Government decree. In recent years, the development of urban centres has led to the emergence of a special urban sociolect, which in some respects is becoming increasingly unstable and differing more and more from the traditional rural variety. As a result of this development, questions of the standardisation of Tok Pisin arose. Such standardisation is badly needed in the light of the increasing importance of the language and clearly has to start with its written form.

One particular standard orthography is already available and has been used in Michalic's new dictionary (*The Jacaranda dictionary and grammar of Melanesian Pidgin*), the Tok Pisin New Testament, and in the publications issued by Kristen Pres, Madang. It has been generally accepted, but is paradoxically little used, especially in administrative and Government circles. A certain amount of standardisation pressure affecting Tok Pisin vocabulary and grammar is exercised by the abovementioned publications, but individual usage is still widespread.

At this point a question of pedagogical philosophy arises: should standardisation of a language be concerned exclusively with accepting the most commonly encountered forms of speech and disregard and relegate to substandard usage, less frequently used forms which for reasons of clarity of expression, avoidance of ambiguity, and similar reasons may well be preferable to the more frequently found forms? Or should it be concerned with the less common forms which for reasons of clarity, etc. may be more desirable than the most frequently used ones?

It may seem that given these two possible approaches there may be greater merit in trying to standardise a language in the direction of the second possibility while at the same time attempting to maintain a healthy balance between the two. This approach has been followed in this course so that in time it may come to serve as a useful beginning point in any future discussion of the standardisation of written, and ultimately spoken Tok Pisin.

As the authors of this course point out in their introduction later it is a new course that has been designed to supersede Dr Dutton's very popular *Conversational New Guinea Pidgin*. This is pleasing to see as the old course has been out of print for several years and a much needed replacement has been long overdue. I have every pleasure therefore in welcoming the appearance of this course and of recommending it to prospective users. Although the Tok Pisin presented in it has had to be controlled to some extent for teaching purposes learners can nevertheless be confident that if they can speak the kind of Tok Pisin presented in it they will have no difficulty communicating with Tok Pisin speakers from any part of Papua New Guinea.

Finally in welcoming the appearance of this course and recommending it to use I hope that it will not only contribute to an increase in the knowledge of the language by non-indigenous peoples, but will also, as its final achievement, be instrumental in bringing about, and deepening, a better understanding between non-indigenous and indigenous peoples of Papua New Guinea. It is also very pleasing to see this new work incorporates input from a Papua New Guinea speaker and teacher of Tok Pisin who has worked with Dr Dutton in the production of these materials.

S.A. Wurm

TABLE OF CONTENTS

<i>Foreword by Professor S.A. Wurm</i>	iii
<i>Introduction</i>	xiii
<i>The structure of the course</i>	xv
<i>How to use this course</i>	xviii
<i>Acknowledgements</i>	xix
Maps: 1. Papua New Guinea	xxvii
2. Port Moresby and surrounds	xxviii
UNIT 1	1
CONVERSATIONS	1-5
1. "Yu go we?"	
2. "Mi sindaun nating"	
3. "Moning poro"	
4. "Tenkyu tru"	
5. "Mi planim kon"	
PRONUNCIATION: Vowels	6
VOCABULARY: 1. Drills	7-10
2. Supplementary vocabulary	
GRAMMAR	13
1.1 Personal pronouns	13
1.2 Verbs	15
1.3 <i>stap to be in a place, to exist, to live</i>	17
1.4 <i>bilong + verb: in order to</i>	19
TEXTS	20-23
1. Mi bin go long Madang Teknikol Kolij (Rebecca Gware)	
2. Mi lukim wanpela man (Julie Piau)	
SUPPLEMENTARY EXERCISES	23
UNIT 2	27
CONVERSATIONS	27-31
1. "Bia plis"	
2. "Na wanpela pike tu"	
3. "Nau tasol ol i hukim"	
4. "Mi laikim liklik ya"	
5. "Ol i kolim hatoro"	
PRONUNCIATION: 1. Consonants p, t, k	32-33
2. Consonants f, v	
3. Consonants l, r	
VOCABULARY: 1. Drills	34-36
2. Supplementary vocabulary	

GRAMMAR	38
2.1 Possession	38
2.2 laik + verb: <i>want to</i>	39
2.3 Sentences without verbs	41
2.4 Cardinal numbers	42
TEXTS	44-46
1. Mi save dring SP Braun (Moruwo Domai)	
2. Pasin bilong wokim basket (Edna Raymond)	
 UNIT 3	 50
CONVERSATIONS	50-54
1. "Ating kantri i bagarap liklik"	
2. "Mi no gat K250"	
3. "Mitupela i no tingting long ol raskol"	
4. "Mi gat bikpela wari"	
5. "Yu giaman ya"	
PRONUNCIATION: Consonant sequences	55
VOCABULARY: 1. Drills	55-59
2. Supplementary vocabulary	
GRAMMAR	62
3.1 Pronouns: dual and trial	62
3.2 Questions	64
3.3 Verb + pinis: completed actions	65
3.4 Nouns: singular and plural	67
3.5 Transitive verbs unmarked by -im	69
TEXTS	70-73
1. Wantok sistem (Muttu Gware)	
2. Pasin bilong ol raskol (Wasa Yavi)	
SUPPLEMENTARY EXERCISES	75
 UNIT 4	 78
CONVERSATIONS	78-81
1. "Ating bai mi go long bas"	
2. "Bai mi go painim mani pastaim"	
3. "Em i wanem taim nau?"	
4. "Inap yu salim wangepela taksi i kam?"	
5. "Long balus o long sip?"	
VOCABULARY: 1. Drills	82-85
2. Supplementary vocabulary	
GRAMMAR	87
4.1 bai + verb: future tense	87
4.2 save + verb: competence and habitual actions	89
4.3 Days and dates	92
4.4 Time	94
TEXTS	96-99
1. Wok taksi (Mark Jarimij)	
2. Land Rova (Hasu Wage)	
SUPPLEMENTARY EXERCISES	101

UNIT 5	103
CONVERSATIONS	103-106
1. "Mi painim wok"	
2. "Mi wetim wok bai i kamap"	
3. "Bipo mi stap tisa"	
4. "Olsem wanem trak i no kamap yet?"	
5. "Mi inap"	
VOCABULARY: 1. Drills	107-110
2. Supplementary vocabulary	
GRAMMAR	115
5.1 Verb + i stap: continuous action	115
5.2 inap + verb: ability (physically capable)	117
5.3 bin + verb: past tense	118
5.4 Verb + gen: repeated actions	119
TEXTS: Grin Jed restoron (Dicks Thomas)	121
SUPPLEMENTARY EXERCISES	124
UNIT 6	127
CONVERSATIONS	127-131
1. "Em i bikpela klab"	
2. "Balus i laik kirap"	
3. "Wara i laik pulap long gras nogut"	
4. "Mi paitim gita"	
5. "Tasol mi no spakman"	
VOCABULARY: 1. Drills	132-134
2. Supplementary vocabulary	
GRAMMAR	138
6.1 Pronouns: olgeta forms	138
6.2 Beginning relative clauses: <i>who, which, that</i>	139
6.3 Adjectives	143
6.4 laik and klostu + verb: <i>about to</i>	147
TEXTS	149
1. Salvinia (Jacob Gimbu)	
2. Long go insait long balus (Julie Piau)	
SUPPLEMENTARY EXERCISES	152
UNIT 7	155
CONVERSATIONS	155-157
1. "Mi raskol"	
2. "Mi stap longwe liklik long wok"	
3. "Bilong wanem haus i liklik"	
4. "Mi sapota bilong Pangu Pati"	
VOCABULARY: 1. Drills	159-161
2. Supplementary vocabulary	
GRAMMAR	164
7.1 Reason clauses (<i>because</i>)	164
7.2 More on relative clauses (<i>to whom, whoever</i>)	166
7.3 Time clauses (<i>when</i>)	168
7.4 Negative imperatives: no, no ken, nogut, maski	170

TEXTS	173-173
1. Mi memba bilong baining (Stanis Johannes)	
2. Halivim bilong mi (Roboam Sailas)	
SUPPLEMENTARY EXERCISES	175
UNIT 8	179
CONVERSATIONS	179-181
1. "Mi luteran"	
2. "Kristen i wanem samting"	
3. "Mi no bilipim ol dispela giaman toktok"	
4. "Sanguma"	
VOCABULARY: 1. Drills	183-185
2. Supplementary vocabulary	
GRAMMAR	188
8.1 Emphatic pronouns: yet, tasol, wanpela	188
8.2 Conditional clauses: sapos	190
8.3 More on verbs: stative, verb + long, verb + -im	192
8.4 Still more on relative clauses (<i>where, what</i>)	195
TEXTS	197-198
1. Sanguma (Paius Pasen)	
2. Komuniti wok na Yunaitet Sios (Redin Gamala)	
SUPPLEMENTARY EXERCISES	201
UNIT 9	205
CONVERSATIONS	205-208
1. "Mi bin lainim long skul"	
2. "Mi dai long buai"	
3. "Tok Pisin em inap"	
4. "Dispela moran i longpela liklik"	
VOCABULARY: 1. Drills	209-210
2. Supplementary vocabulary	
GRAMMAR	213
9.1 <i>i gat: there is/there are</i> and other sentences without subjects	213
9.2 Inap long: <i>until, up to, as far as</i>	214
9.3 Intensification of adjectives	216
9.4 Whether clauses	219
TEXTS	220-222
1. Nesing na Pesonol Komuniti Helt (Satu Anis and Peter Roana)	
2. Pasin bilong memeim buai (Moruwo Domai)	
SUPPLEMENTARY EXERCISES	223
UNIT 10	227
CONVERSATIONS	227-231
1. "Ating mi gat malaria"	
2. "Mi katim lek bilong mi"	
3. "Mi pekpek wara tasol"	
4. "Em i gat bikpela kus"	

VOCABULARY: 1. Drills	231-233
2. Supplementary vocabulary	
GRAMMAR	236
10.1 Answering negative questions	236
10.2 mas + verb: obligation	238
10.3 Reflexive personal pronouns	240
10.4 olsem + clause: <i>that, as, just like, as if, although</i>	241
TEXTS	243-245
1. Bekbun i bruk (Paul Kabau)	
2. Dispela sik, TB (Willie Kudor)	
SUPPLEMENTARY EXERCISES	246
UNIT 11	249
CONVERSATIONS	249-252
1. "Mi halivim ol long redim kaikai"	
2. "Mi gat laik long baim vidiorikoda"	
3. "Mi sekreteri"	
4. "Tupela i wankain"	
VOCABULARY: 1. Drills	253-255
2. Supplementary vocabulary	
GRAMMAR	257
11.1 kain <i>kind of</i> and wankain <i>same</i>	257
11.2 i no gat wanpela: <i>nobody, no one, nothing</i>	260
11.3 Comparison of adjectives and adverbs	262
11.4 larim and similar verbs	264
TEXTS	266-267
1. Mi taipist (Anelta Taula)	
2. E trafik kontrola (Desmah Thomas)	
SUPPLEMENTARY EXERCISES	268
UNIT 12	271
CONVERSATIONS	271-274
1. "Statim ensin!"	280
2. "Mi traim winim tasol mi lus long en"	281
3. "Wanpela ka i bamim"	283
4. "Ensin i no inap stat"	284
VOCABULARY: 1. Drills	275-277
2. Supplementary vocabulary	
GRAMMAR	
12.1 maski + clause: <i>although, no matter, even if</i>	
12.2 Distributive and reciprocal pronouns: <i>each, one another</i>	
12.3 traim <i>try or attempt</i>	
12.4 Intensive repetitive actions	
TEXTS	287
1. Trak i bagarap (Maurice Sumbuoin)	
2. Pasin bilong kisim laisens (Dicks Thomas)	
SUPPLEMENTARY EXERCISES	290

UNIT 13	294
CONVERSATIONS	294-297
1. "Mi no laik paulim graun bilong yu"	
2. "Em i givim mi bel"	
3. "Em wari long kastom bilong mipela"	
4. "Em i save dring tumas"	
VOCABULARY: 1. Drills	298-301
2. Supplementary vocabulary	
GRAMMAR	303
13.1 Impatient questions: watpo, westap, wasmara	303
13.2 Verb grouping and focus	304
13.3 Unsuccessful actions	306
13.4 I mobeta sapos....: <i>it would be better if...</i>	307
TEXTS	310-311
1. Pasin bilong kisim graun bilong mipela (Moruwo Domai)	
2. Raun raun tieta (John Barre)	
SUPPLEMENTARY EXERCISES	313
 UNIT 14: Supplementary texts	 315-341
Text 1: Kofi plantesen (Koki Ivena)	315
Text 2: Wok long kopafu plantesen (Wemen Kukare)	316
Text 3: Wok bilong mi (Anton Kinamu)	317
Text 4: Snuka (Jack Fosane)	318
Text 5: Mi salim buai (Anna Apa)	319
Text 6: Pasin bilong wokim sospen graun (Edna Raymond)	321
Text 7: Pitpit (Stephen Buku)	322
Text 8: Kanggo na salvinia (Stephen Buku)	324
Text 9: Pasin bilong painim mani long Waggu (Joseph Baka)	325
Text 10: Pasin bilong smokim pis (Saon Naiv)	325
Text 11: Tamiok bilong mipela (Paius Pasen)	327
Text 12: Taim bilong wo (Amasai Yengegwot)	328
Text 13: Pasin bilong kisim pukpuk (Baldasai Asapi)	329
Text 14: Bisnis kakaruk (Baobao Asanga)	330
Text 15: Mi printa (Philip Lungana)	331
Text 16: Kumu na abus (Philip Lungana)	332
Text 17: Mi wanpela panta (Solomon Alipet)	332
Text 18: Long draiva meri (Lucas Kole)	333
Text 19: Mi sekreteri (Jessie Paragum)	334
Text 20: Japenis Wo Museum, Rabaul (Tomi Yu Koi)	334
Text 21: Bisnis bilong mipela (Panipas Totokum)	335
Text 22: Mi sapotim yuni (Julie Piau)	337
Text 23: Sindaun long Mosbi (Moruwo Domai)	338
Text 24: Pasin bilong mumu bilong mipela (Joe Ikipe)	339
Text 25: Taka stop (Pita Kain)	340
Text 26: Pasin bilong wokim saksak (Maria)	341
 <i>Keys to supplementary exercises</i>	 344-356
<i>A Tok Pisin reading list</i>	357-359
<i>Tok Pisin-English vocabulary</i>	360-381
<i>English-Tok Pisin finder list</i>	382-403
<i>Index</i>	404-407

INTRODUCTION

This course is an introductory one for beginning students of Papua New Guinea's largest language and most important lingua franca, Tok Pisin. It consists of fourteen teaching units each approximately one hour in length. The first thirteen of these are devoted to giving the student conversational practice in the language and to teaching the main aspects of its phonology, grammar, and vocabulary. The fourteenth consists solely of texts for extra listening and language practice. As such the course consists of a text book — this volume — and fourteen accompanying tapes. The text book contains all the material recorded on the tapes as well as instructions on how to use the course, grammatical and other notes, translations, supplementary exercises, a Tok Pisin-English Vocabulary, an English-Tok Pisin Finder List, a Reading List and Index.

This course is a new one in several senses of the word:

(a) it replaces an earlier one published by *Pacific Linguistics* called *Conversational New Guinea Pidgin* which has been out of print for several years;

(b) it contains totally new material. Although similar in overall design to the earlier one just mentioned this course represents a completely revised, updated, and re-recorded version of it which aims to present the language as it is spoken today in a wide range of contexts. Tok Pisin is no longer the limited language of plantations but a modern one that is used for talking about anything that is relevant to a developing nation, as can be seen by the range of topics discussed in the conversations and texts in this course — urban living, unemployment, crime, politics, secretarial work, social problems, sport etc. In the process it has borrowed (and still does) heavily from English, the official language of the country, and has undergone (and is still undergoing) change. Yet while change is, in itself, a natural process which all languages undergo, it does pose certain problems for the language learning course designer. Decisions have to be made about what is to be taught and what is to be left out or left to the student to learn for him/herself. In this course we have attempted to face these problems by presenting and drilling those aspects of the language which we think are the most common, leaving it to the student to adjust to variation and change by exposing him/her to different possibilities in the conversations and texts and by drawing his/her attention to these in footnotes and in the grammatical sections provided. Thus although the language actually taught and drilled in this course, as distinct from that illustrated in the conversations and texts, is of a 'central core' kind which is not characteristic of any one geographical area or group of speakers, students who master what is presented herein will have no difficulty understanding Papua New Guineans from any area and of being understood by them. They can, moreover, easily adjust their speech to that of a particular locality if and when they want to or need to at a later stage. There is in this course, in any case, plenty of material from different areas in the form of texts for students to study the speech of a particular area, if they want to, before they go to Papua New Guinea;

(c) it has been modified in an attempt to better suit the needs of the learner, but especially the self-teaching student. The earlier course was designed principally as a classroom course, especially for use by trained language teachers. However, in practice, most of those using it were individuals who were attempting to learn the language by themselves in their own homes or offices. This new course we hope will better suit the needs of these learners although it can still be used for classroom teaching as before. We have attempted to make it so by:

- (1) increasing the number and range of conversations presented so that the learner has a better opportunity to hear more of the language spoken by Papua New Guinea speakers. This in turn means that the student is exposed to a wider range of variation. Furthermore, because the conversations are not expected to be learnt *in toto*, as they were in the earlier course, students are free to learn what they want to and not what they are directed to by someone else;
- (2) adding in self-correcting exercises wherever practical;
- (3) increasing the range of Supplementary exercises and providing keys to them where appropriate;
- (4) adding in a short Tok Pisin-English Vocabulary and English-Tok Pisin Finder List for those who may want to look up some word they may have forgotten, or want to know for some reason, but who have no other dictionary available.

Other aspects of this course which are new or different from the earlier one are:

- (1) the learner's attention is directed towards what is being focussed on in the unit at the very beginning of each unit in a brief 'Introduction' sub-section;
- (2) supplementary vocabulary has been included in the vocabulary section of each unit where specifically vocabulary oriented exercises are also given;
- (3) some vocabulary forming programs have been introduced to make students more aware of the ways in which new vocabulary is, or can be, built up in the language;
- (4) texts relate better to the subject matter of the units;
- (5) the Reading List has been expanded and updated;
- (6) maps, line drawings, cartoons and photographs of people and places have been added for information and interest, as have excerpts of modern Papua New Guinean music.

However, perhaps one of the most important differences between the present course and the old one is that all of the recording of Units 1 to 13 (except for the texts) was done in an audio studio using good Tok Pisin speakers. As a result the quality of the recorded material is much improved. Unit 14 and the other units still contain material recorded in villages and in the workplace, however, so that the particular sounds of Papua New Guinea are not lost and the learner can hear the language spoken in a range of contexts.

We hope you enjoy this course.

Tom Dutton
Dicks Thomas

THE STRUCTURE OF THE COURSE

As already indicated this course consists of a number of tape-recorded units, or lessons, corresponding to those contained in this volume. There are fourteen such units. The first thirteen of these cover the main structures, vocabulary and pronunciation of the language while the fourteenth consists of texts only.

Each of the first thirteen lessons introduces approximately the same amount of new material for the student to study and all are similar in design. Each consists of the following sections recorded on tape:

- (1) Conversations
- (2) Vocabulary
- (3) Grammar
- (4) Text

These sections are separated by short excerpts of Papua New Guinean music, both modern and traditional, and each unit ends with something similar. Supplementary vocabulary related to each lesson is also supplied in the textbook in the Vocabulary section but is not recorded on tape. Relevant cultural and other notes are also supplied in footnotes. In the first three lessons some explicit pronunciation exercises are also given although the student should always be paying attention to how the language is pronounced by the Papua New Guineans whose voices are heard on the accompanying tapes.

Each of the tape-recorded sections of the lessons has the following characteristics:

Conversations

Each unit contains four or more conversation pieces. These are short question-and-answer type pieces of controlled conversation recorded in the studios of the Instructional Resources Unit, The Australian National University. They are spoken by Papua New Guineans from different parts of the country who are fluent speakers of Tok Pisin. These pieces are controlled to the extent that they are designed to introduce particular grammatical features in a certain order and are of limited duration. Otherwise they represent realistic pieces of Tok Pisin conversation. In this way the learner is introduced to a range of conversations not otherwise possible and hears material spoken by a range of voices in different situations. The student should study these conversations using the tape-recordings and transcripts printed in the text book before proceeding to work on the rest of the unit. He/she should then return to the conversations to practise their main points presented in the vocabulary and grammar sections and to attempt to adapt them for his/her own purposes. His/her attention is drawn to the points that will be specifically drilled in the grammar sections that follow in a small introduction preceding the conversations.

The voices heard in the conversations are those of Tony Deklin (Vanimo, West Sepik Province), August Kituai (Bundi, Madang Province), Dicks Thomas (Mussau Island, New Ireland Province), Brigid Yambunpe (Chambri Lakes, East Sepik Province), Julie Mohor (Ponapi, Manus Island Province), Frances Deklin (Vanimo, West Sepik Province) seated left to right around the table in the photograph on the following page.



Vocabulary

There are two sub-sections to this section, a sub-section called Drills and one called Supplementary vocabulary.

1. Drills

These are designed to expand the student's vocabulary within the framework of the conversations. New items of vocabulary are thus introduced into selected sentences from the conversation material that the student has already worked on at the beginning of the unit. These selected sentences are referred to as 'frames' in the drills. A number of different types of drills are used here and elsewhere, two of the most common of which are Simple substitution and Progressive substitution drills. In the former the student merely keeps repeating the same sentence while substituting a new vocabulary item for the one nominated in the frame. In the Progressive substitution drill the student has to remember part of the last sentence he/she uttered while adding in the new piece given. This latter exercise calls for a greater effort from the student than the former. Each type of exercise is described again by the instructor on the accompanying tape for Unit 1 but the student is thereafter expected to recognise the nature of the drill from its name, which is always given where relevant.

2. Supplementary vocabulary

This sub-section includes vocabulary that is related to the topic of the unit and/or which it is thought useful at this point to expand the learner's repertoire. This vocabulary is not recorded on tape but the student is directed to it on the tape and to the test exercises that accompany it. As a general rule this vocabulary is not used in the grammatical sections that follow.

Grammar

This section is designed to increase the student's understanding and use of the main structures of the language. In general each section consists of three to four sub-sections in which structures that are introduced in the conversational material at the beginning of the unit are discussed and drilled. Each sub-section is introduced with a short description of the grammatical point that is going to be drilled. The notes in these descriptions do not occur on tape and are *NOT* to be learned off by heart — they are there merely to help the learner understand how the language 'works' and to give him/her an idea of what aspects of it are being drilled in the exercises that follow.

The grammatical description is followed by a number of exercises designed to introduce and drill the particular grammatical points just described. A variety of types of drills are used here including the simple and progressive substitution types described in the 'Vocabulary — Drills' sub-section above. However, none of these drills contains any new material to be learned. They merely give the learner practice in manipulating what has already been introduced in the conversations or in the description at the beginning of the sub-section. Each sub-section concludes with one or more evaluation exercises designed to test the student's control of the points covered in that sub-section.

Texts

The texts used in this course are all of the interview type. Those in the first thirteen units are typically short interviews about some aspect of life in Papua New Guinea that is related to the topic of the conversations. Those in Unit 14 are similar but have been chosen to present a wider range of speakers and topics. Though not always easy to follow the texts are an important part of the course because they give students some idea of the way Tok Pisin is actually used for different purposes and how it may vary from speaker to speaker and from area to area, and especially from that taught in the grammar sections of this course. Translations are provided for all texts except those appearing in the last unit, where only transcriptions are provided. Here, however, notes are given, where it is thought necessary, to help the student better understand the text.

Besides the above material recorded on tape each of the first thirteen units has appended to it a number of Supplementary exercises. These exercises are designed to serve as general revision exercises, as exercises for free expression, or simply as entertainment. Keys to these exercises are given, where appropriate, at the end of the volume. A short Tok Pisin-English Vocabulary, English-Tok Pisin Finderlist, Tok Pisin Reading List and Index complete the text book.

HOW TO USE THIS COURSE

Before beginning the actual learning program, students should first of all make sure that they have read through the preceding sections of this volume so that they have some idea of what is being attempted and how this is being attempted. Then when they are ready to begin they should do so by studying the conversations which include vocabulary and structures that are to be studied in the rest of the unit. This should be done by listening carefully to what is said by the voices on the tape and by studying the transcriptions given in the textbook. However, because these conversations are only presented once and are not repeated slowly as in some other courses of this type for learning purposes (because an important part of the aim of this course is to give the student maximum exposure to the language in the time available and maximum freedom in learning what he/she wants to) the student has to act as his/her own instructor at this point. Yet learners should not spend too much time on this initially. Rather they should approach the conversations with the idea of returning to them several times after completing the vocabulary and grammatical exercises that follow. With each run-through the student should then be better able to understand them and to adapt the material presented in the unit to his/her own purposes. On average it should take at least four to five hours to study the material given in each unit in this way.

Yet mere working through the materials in the way indicated will in itself not be sufficient to ensure conversational fluency. The student must be prepared to go beyond that and to seek out ways to use what he/she has learnt – reading as many Tok Pisin materials as possible is one way, working through the supplementary exercises is another. But there is no substitute for live practice with fellow learners, and especially with Papua New Guinea speakers, whenever and wherever possible.

Finally note that in presenting the Tok Pisin materials in this volume the spelling conventions used in Fr F. Mihalic's *The Jacaranda dictionary and grammar of Melanesian Pidgin* (referred to in the Reading List at the back of this book) have been adopted, except for those words that are not in that volume. In that case these are spelled as modern speakers pronounce them. At this point too the reader's attention is drawn to the *Handbook of Tok Pisin* edited by S.A. Wurm and P. Mühlhäusler (and also mentioned in the Reading List) as the most up-to-date and detailed account of all aspects of the language available – it is more than worth consulting!

ACKNOWLEDGEMENTS

The authors would like to take this opportunity to thank all those who have contributed in one way or another to the production of this course, but especially the following:

John Barre, A/Director of the Raun Raun Theatre in Goroka, and the following actors from that Theatre whose voices were used in recording conversations for this course in Goroka but which could not be used in the final production, unfortunately, for technical reasons: Jeda Suari, Hitch Lowape, Tracey Pari, Lubi Giwale;

the Chairman, National Broadcasting Commission, Port Moresby for permission to use the Commission's recording studios in the production of voice material, and Messrs Bodeo Noga and Jimi Veneo of the Commission in Port Moresby, and Mr John Kepalane, Station Manager, Goroka, for their particular assistance;

those Papua New Guineans referred to in the 'Structure of the Course' section above who readily gave of their time and voices to record the conversations used in this course;

the many other Papua New Guineans who agreed to be interviewed; their permission to use excerpts of their interviews for this course is also gratefully acknowledged;

the Papua New Guinea *Post-Courier* for permission to use cartoons from its 'Isuzu Lu' series;

the Director, Institute of Papua New Guinea Studies, Port Moresby, and Mr Greg Seeto, Manager/Sound Engineer, Pacific Gold Studios, Rabaul, for permission to use excerpts of traditional and modern music recorded by them respectively;

the Instructional Resources Unit, The Australian National University, for technical assistance and advice, and in particular (a) Ms Darien Rossiter and Mr Sandy Gibbney for their skills and patience in recording and editing the tapes that the cassettes accompanying this course are derived from, and (b) Mr Jorge Bontes for the design and execution of the art work that illustrates this volume;

Mr Don Kulick of the Department of Anthropology, University of Stockholm, Sweden, for collecting stories and photographs in the East and West Sepik Provinces, some of which appear in this course;

colleagues, friends and former students whose comments and criticisms of my earlier *Conversational New Guinea Pidgin* course helped shape this new course;

Jeanette Coombes and Anne Rees for their unfailing devotion to duty in typing up the manuscript, and Lois Carrington for assiduously producing the Tok Pisin-English Vocabulary, the English-Tok Pisin Finder List and Index;

The Australian National University for its financial and other support over the years which allowed this work to be designed and produced.

Tom Dutton

Dicks Thomas



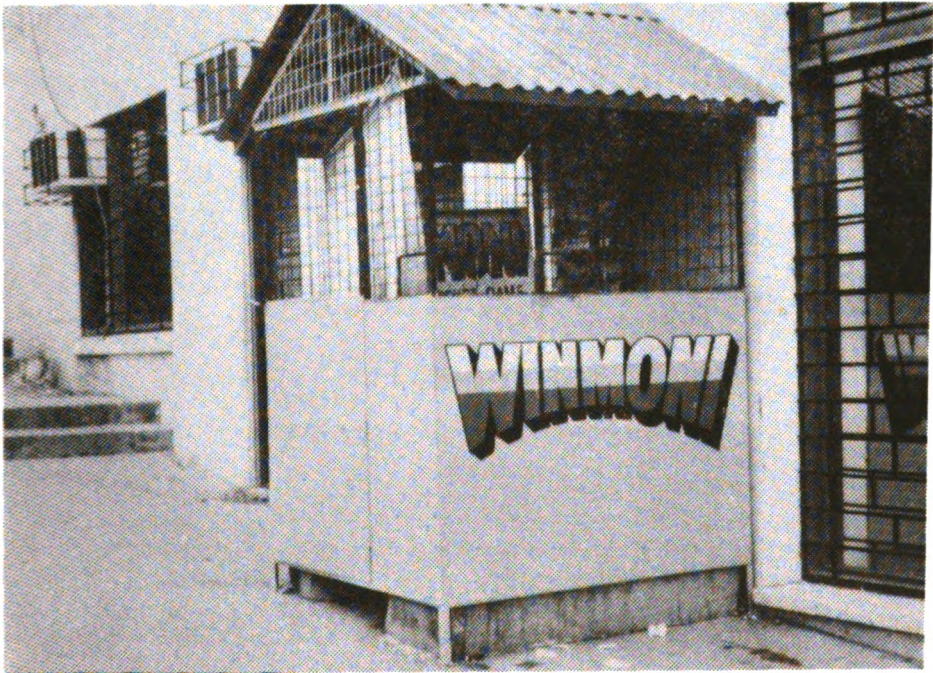
Port Moresby from Burns Peak above Konedobu



Government buildings, Waigani. The one on the right is known locally as the 'Pineapple Building'



Signs of the times – a disco and amusement centre in the old Papua Theatre building (above) and a lottery stand (below)

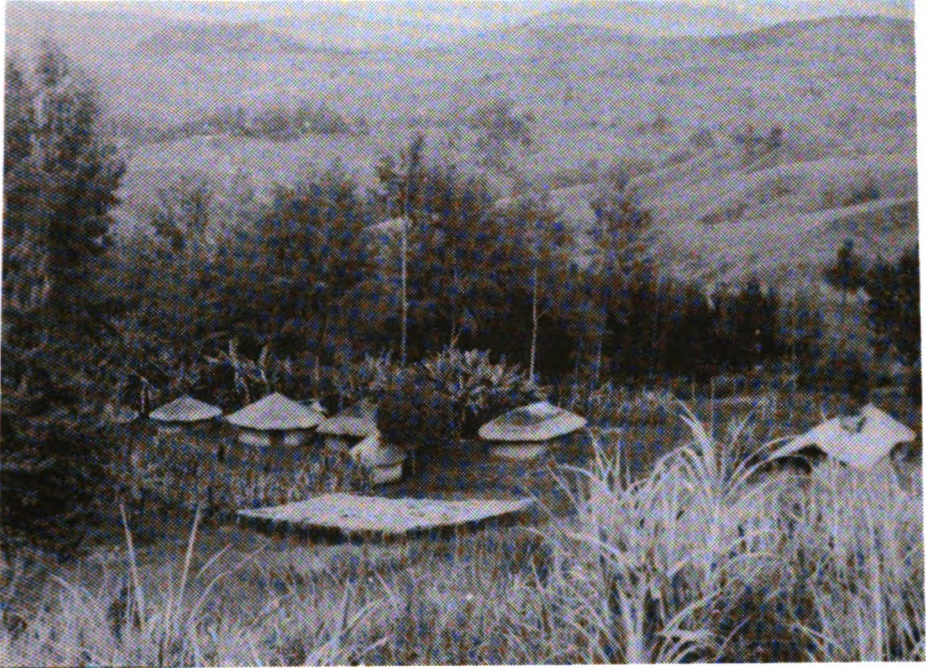




The Eastern Highlands near Goroka



Downtown Goroka



A typical Highlands village near Kainantu,
Eastern Highlands Province



Drying coffee, Eastern Highlands Province



The coastline around Madang



Wewak's main street

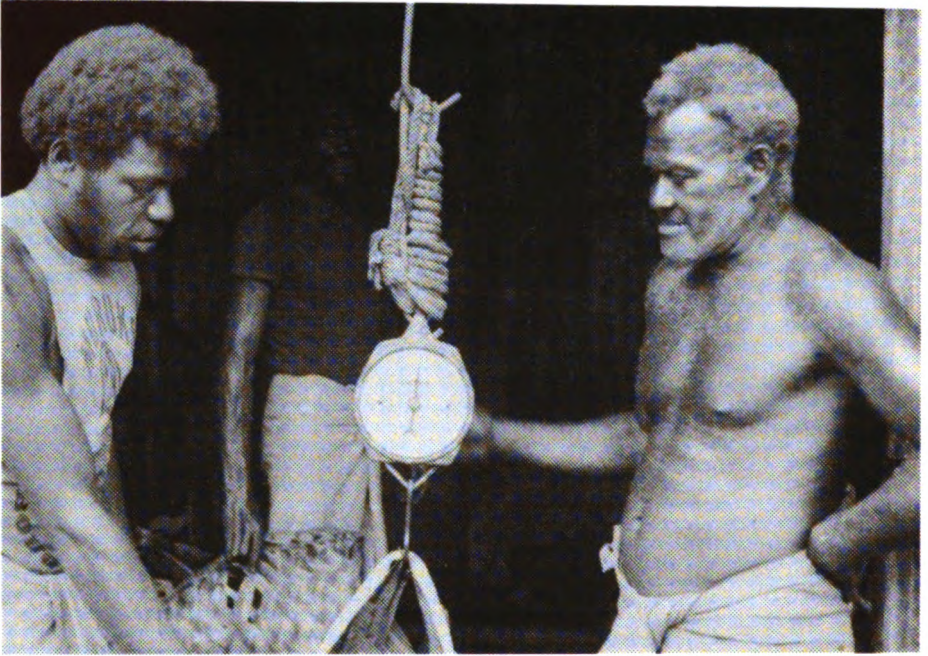
Generated on 2022-02-10 03:58 GMT / <https://hdl.handle.net/2027/uci.32106009345213>
Creative Commons Attribution-NonCommercial-NoDerivatives / http://www.hathitrust.org/access_use#cc-by-nc-nd-4.0



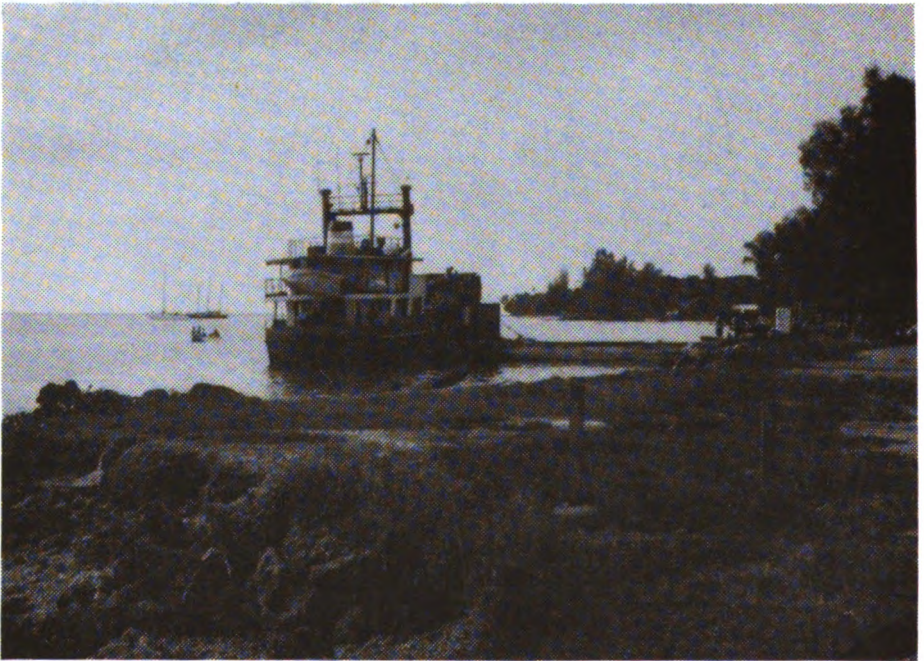
The government station at Ambunti on the Sepik River



Rabaul harbour



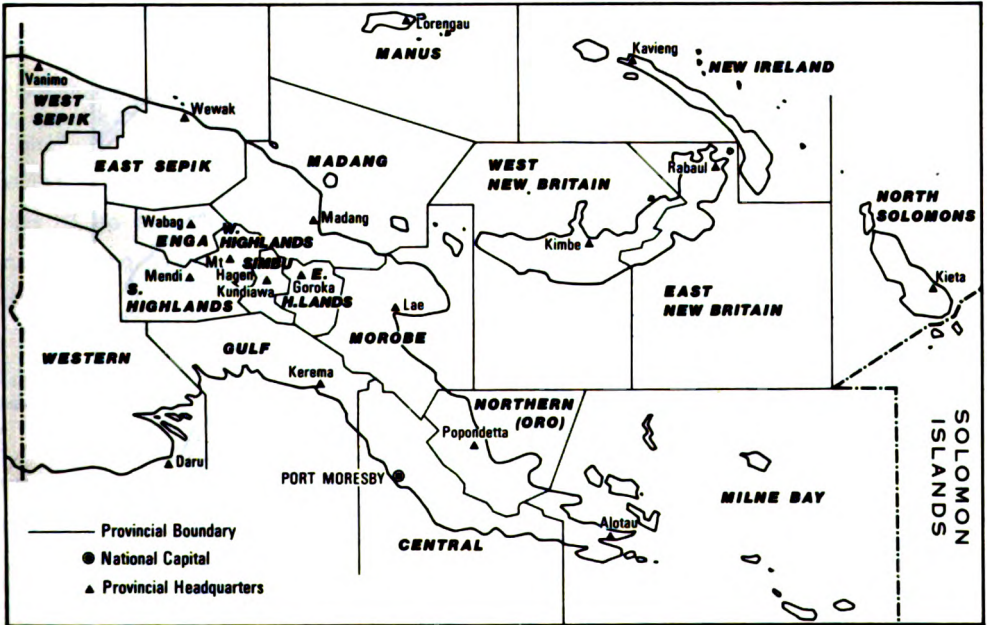
Weighing cocoa beans, Rabaul area



The waterfront at Kavieng

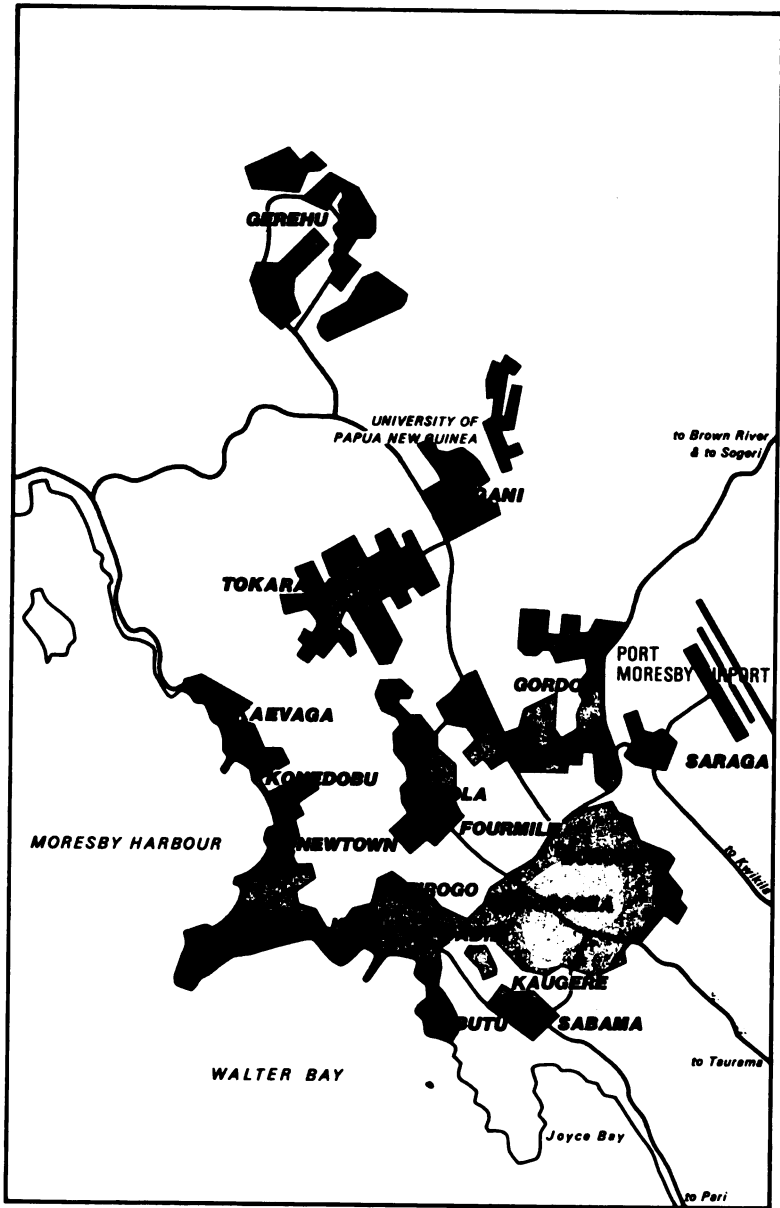


The modern Highlands Highway that connects Lae and Mt Hagen



Map 1: Papua New Guinea

Generated on 2022-02-10 03:58 GMT / https://hdl.handle.net/2027/uc1.321060009345213
Creative Commons Attribution-NonCommercial-NoDerivatives / http://www.hathitrust.org/access_use#cc-by-nc-nd-4.0



Map 2: Port Moresby and surrounds

INTRODUCTION

In this unit we shall be focussing on:

- (1) how to talk about yourself and others using the Tok Pisin pronouns *mi*, *yu*, *em*, etc.;
- (2) how to recognise different sorts of action words or verbs in Tok Pisin, and something about their nature and use;
- (3) how to say, or ask, where something is;
- (4) how to express *in order to* in Tok Pisin.

These points will be introduced in the conversations that follow and will be discussed and drilled in more detail in the grammatical sections that follow them.

Other things that are worth knowing are drawn to your attention in footnotes to the conversations and grammatical sections.

CONVERSATIONS

- (1) "Yu go we?"



Boroko, a popular suburban shopping centre, Port Moresby

Kakiri i meri bilong Madang.¹
Em i wokabout long rot.² Em i
lukim wantok.³ Em i tok gude
long en.⁴

*Kakiri is a woman from Madang.
She is walking along the road.
She sees a friend. She greets her.*

Kakiri: E wantok, yu go we?⁵

Heh friend, where are you going?

Wantok: Mi go long Boroko.⁶

I'm off to Boroko.

Kakiri: Bilong wanem?⁷

What for?

Wantok: Mi go bilong⁸ kisim mani
long beng.⁹

*I'm going to get money from the
bank.*

Kakiri: Oke, yu go.

Okay, see you.

Wantok: Yes, lukim yu.¹⁰

Yes, see you.

¹The little particle *i* illustrated in this sentence is an important element in Tok Pisin. It cannot be translated into English although it originally came from English *he*. As will be seen in the conversations that follow it is generally used (although now decreasingly so as will be seen later) after the pronouns corresponding to *he*, *she*, *it*, *we*, *you* (pl), *they* and other subjects of sentences, such as *man a man*, *wantok friend*, *ol tambu in-laws*. It is referred to in more detail in different places throughout this course, e.g., in sub-section 1.1 below.

²Long and bilong (which is introduced in the first sentence of this conversation) are two of the most frequently used words in Tok Pisin. They correspond to such English words as *to, in, at, about, from, on, for*. They are now generally shortened to *lo* and *blo* (or even *l* and *bl*). These aspects of pronunciation and use will be introduced progressively throughout this course. In this unit the use of bilong meaning *in order to* is discussed and drilled.

³The word wantok literally means *one language*. It was originally used to refer to anyone speaking the same language as oneself. However, it is now used to refer to any friend or acquaintance as well.

⁴Long en is a common variant of long em.

⁵Note that the question word *we* comes at the end of the sentence unlike *where* in English.

⁶Boroko is a suburb of Port Moresby — see map 2. Other parts of the town are known as Gabutu, Hohola, Town, Konedobu, Gerehu, etc. Locations are often named, however, after distances from the centre of town, e.g. Fomail *Fourmile*

⁷Bilong wanem literally means *for what*. Many speakers use long wanem for this.

⁸Normally one answers a bilong wanem question with bilong *for, in order to* as illustrated here and in Conversations 2 and 3 below. However, it is often omitted after the very common verbs *go go* and *kam come* if nothing else comes between these verbs and the next verb.

⁹Note that *beng* is now often pronounced *benk* under the influence of English. More of this sort of development will be heard throughout this course. It is something that is part of the modern face of Tok Pisin.

¹⁰Lukim yu is the modern way of saying *Cheerio*. It is a straight translation of English *see you*. Other ways of saying farewell are introduced in other conversations in this course.

(2) "Mi sindaun nating"



Waaqu village, East Sepik

Dogare i go long ples. Em i bungim wanpela lapun man na em i tok gude long em.

Dogare went to a village. He met an old man and greeted him.

Dogare: A, lapun, yu stap a?¹

Ah, old man, good day!

Lapun: Yes, mi stap.

Yes, good day.

Dogare: Yu mekim wanem?²

What are you doing?

Lapun: Nogat,³ mi sindaun nating⁴ tasol.⁵ Yu go we?

Nothing. I'm just sitting down. Where are you off to?

Dogare: Mi kam bilong lukim ples tasol.

I'm just coming to have a look at the village.

Lapun: Yu stap we na yu kam?⁶

Where did you come from?

Dogare: Mi stap long Waigani.

I'm from Waigani.

Lapun: Orait, yu go. Mi stap.
Apinun.

Okay, off you go. Good afternoon!

Dogare: Yes, apinun.

Yes, good afternoon.

¹The traditional greeting in Tok Pisin used to be of the form *You've come, have you?* or *You're there, are you?* or *You're going, are you?* With increasing sophistication and mobility, however, the forms *moning*, *apinun*, *gut nait* and others to be heard in conversations in this course are becoming much more common. The tag *a* in the above greeting is a question tag that expects the answer *yes*. See sub-section 3.2 for other ways of asking questions.

²Notice that the question word *wanem* (or *wonem*) *what* comes at the end of the sentence, unlike English *what*.

³*Nogat* is the normal Tok Pisin word for *no* in answer to a question, but it may be used, as here, to mean *nowhere*, *nothing*.

⁴*Sindaun nating* literally means *to sit down for no reason or no result*. *Nating* can be used with similar meaning with other action words or verbs, e.g. *mi stap nating* *I'm unemployed* or *mi sik nating* *I got sick for no (obvious) reason*.

⁵*Tasol* comes from English *that's all* but is used in Tok Pisin to mean *only* and *but*.

⁶*Yu stap we na yu kam?* literally means *Where were you and you came?* This way of asking *Where did you come from?* is being introduced here to avoid the possible ambiguity of other ways of asking the same thing, notably *Yu kam we?* and *Yu kam long we?* Generally the former means *Where are you coming from?* and the latter *Where are you coming to?* but they are not always interpreted so because some speakers do not use *long* with *go*, *kam* and *stap* when proper place names are used. Compare: *Mi go Rabaul* *I am going to Rabaul*, *Mi stap Rabaul* *I live (permanently) in Rabaul* and *Mi stap long Rabaul (na mi kam)* *I was (temporarily) in Rabaul (and came)*.

⁷*Waigani* is the suburb of Port Moresby where the University, House of Parliament and other major Government buildings are to be found — see map 2.

(3) "Moning poro"



Rabaul market

Man i go long maket¹ bilong baim
kaikai. Em i lukim wanpela wantok
long maket.

*A man is going to the market to
buy food. He sees an acquaintance
there.*

Man: Moning poro.²

Good morning.

Wantok: Moning.

Good morning.

- Man: Yu mekim wanem?³ *What are you up to?*
- Wantok: Nogat, mi wokabaut tasol. *Nothing. I'm just strolling about.*
Nau yu go we? *Where are you going?*
- Man: Mi kam bilong baim kaikai *I've just come to buy some food.*
tasol.
- Wantok: Na bihain bai yu go bek long *And you'll be going back home later*
haus a?⁴ *will you?*
- Man: Nogat, mi go long taun pastaim. *No, I'm going down town first.*
- Wantok: Oke, lukim yu gen. *Okay, see you again!*
- Man: Lukim yu. *See you.*

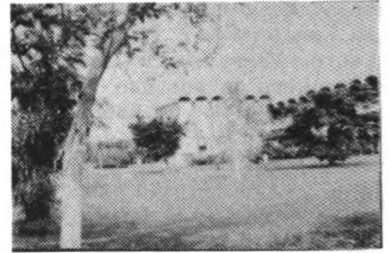
¹The word maket has all but replaced the old word bung for *market* in modern Tok Pisin.

²Poro is a shortened form of poroman, and, like wantok, means *friend* or *acquaintance*.

³Literally Yu wokim wanem? means *You make/build what?* Alternatively one could say Yu mekim wanem? (lit. *you do what*) as in Conversation 2 above.

⁴Bai in this sentence means *shall, will*. It is discussed and drilled in Unit 4 below.

(4) "Tenkyu tru"



The University of Papua New Guinea

Wanpela studen i nupela long Mosbi.
Em i askim wanpela man olsem¹
Yunivesiti i stap we.

*A student is new to Port Moresby.
He asks a man where the University
is.*

Studen: He, yu save Yunivesiti i
stap we? Mi nupela long
Mosbi na mi ho save gut
long dispela hap.²

*Heh, do you know where the University
is? I'm new to Port Moresby and I
don't know this area.*

Man: O sori poro, mi tu mi no
save gut. Mi nupela tu.
Yu go askim narapela man.

*Oh, sorry mate, I don't really know
either. I'm new too. Go and ask
someone else.*

Orait na studen i go askim narapela
man.

*So the student went and asked
someone else.*

Studen: E, yu save Yunivesiti i
stap we?

*Heh, do you know where the
University is?*

Man: Yes, em i stap long Waigani,
long hap ya³ i go long
Fomail.

*Yes, it's in Waigani out past
Fourmile.*

Studen: O sori,⁴ mi no harim gut. Mi bihainim wanem rot? Inap yu tokim mi gen?⁵

Oh I beg your pardon I didn't get that. Which road do I follow? Could you tell me again?

Man: Oke. Yunivesiti i stap long Waigani. Yu bihainim dispela Waigani Draiv na bihain yu kamap long en. Em i stap long raithan sait.

Okay. The University is in Waigani. Follow Waigani Drive and you'll come to it. It's on the right-hand side.

Studen: Tenkyu tru.

Thanks a lot.

Man: Em i orait. No ken wari!

That's okay. Don't mention it!

¹Note the use of *olsem* in this sentence. It literally means *thus* but is being used increasingly as a clause connective after verbs such as *to say, to ask, to think* for *that*.

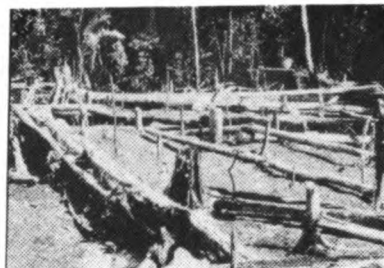
²Although *dispela* is spelled thus it is generally pronounced *desala* as will be seen as the course progresses.

³*Ya* is an emphatic particle meaning something like *this* in many cases. It is becoming increasingly important in Tok Pisin. Its use in marking relative clauses, for example, is briefly discussed and drilled in Unit 6 below.

⁴*O sori* is an expression of emotional involvement. It can be used in response to good tidings as well as to bad. Thus it does not correspond to *Oh gee I'm sorry to hear that* in English although it has that sense when used to show sympathy with bad news.

⁵Note the structure used here for asking if it is all right to do something. *Inap* is discussed and drilled in Unit 5.

(5) "Mi planim kon"



A Koiari garden

Sapoti i wok long gaden. Heni i kamap na em i tok:

Sapoti is working in the garden. Heni comes up and says:

Heni: E, Sapoti, yu wokim wanem?

Heh, Sapoti, what are you doing?

Sapoti: Mi planim kon.

I'm planting corn.

Heni: Yu planim kaukau tu?

Are you planting sweet potatoes too?

Sapoti: Nogat. Bihain.

No. Later.

Heni: Orait inap mi halivim¹ yu?

All right. Is it all right if I help?

Sapoti: Gutpela. Yumitupela² wok³ wantaim!

Great. Let's work together.

[Singsing]

"Meri Wantok" (Kalibobo Band)

¹Although *halivim* is generally spelled *halpim* the spelling *halivim* is used in this course as we believe it more accurately reflects the most common pronunciation.

²*Yumitupela* literally means *you and I, the two of us* or *we (two, including you)*. Note also that it is not followed by *i* because the sentence is a kind of command, *let us*.

³Note the difference between *wok to work* and *wokabout to roam around, go in Tok Pisin*.

PRONUNCIATION

Vowels

In Tok Pisin the vowel sounds represented by the letters *a, e, i, o, u* present the greatest difficulty for English speakers because they often correspond to English long vowels or diphthongs.¹ In the following exercise listen carefully to the differences between the related English and Tok Pisin words and repeat the Tok Pisin ones after the instructor. The examples will be said once only. Ready?

Tok Pisin sound illustrated	English	Tok Pisin
<i>i</i>	<i>pig</i> <i>reef</i> <i>kick</i> <i>green</i> <i>sleep</i>	<i>pik</i> <i>rip</i> <i>kik</i> <i>grin</i> <i>slip</i>
<i>e</i>	<i>rain</i> <i>paper</i> <i>place</i> <i>leg</i> <i>spade</i>	<i>ren</i> <i>pepa</i> <i>ples</i> <i>lek</i> <i>spet</i>
<i>a</i>	<i>cut</i> <i>man</i> <i>hard</i> <i>water</i> <i>spark</i>	<i>kat</i> <i>man</i> <i>hat</i> <i>wara</i> <i>spak</i>
<i>o</i>	<i>photo</i> <i>road</i> <i>cold</i> <i>cockatoo</i> <i>talk</i>	<i>poto o foto</i> <i>rot</i> <i>kol</i> <i>koki</i> <i>tok</i>
<i>u</i>	<i>full up</i> <i>cook</i> <i>blood</i> <i>school</i> <i>good</i>	<i>pulap</i> <i>kuk</i> <i>blut</i> <i>skul</i> <i>gutpela</i>

¹More and more speakers of Tok Pisin are now using sounds that are closer to English than some of those illustrated here and in the following units but it is still necessary for learners of the language to be familiar with the way these sounds are pronounced by other, more traditional speakers.

Now listen to the following Tok Pisin words and repeat them after the instructor paying particular attention to the common ending -im. This is generally pronounced clearly in Tok Pisin.¹

tokim	bringim
kisim	brukim
harim	givim
soim	bekim
lukim	katim

VOCABULARY

In these sections you will learn some new vocabulary as well as practise using some of the vocabulary you have heard in the conversations. Listen carefully to the instructions given before beginning each exercise.

1. Drills

In the following exercises the first sentence, referred to as a 'frame' will act as a model for the rest of the exercise. Repeat the frame sentence after the instructor and then substitute the new word or phrase that is the 'cue' in the appropriate place. For example, suppose the instructor begins with the frame *Mi go long stua* and then gives the cue *long bung* your answer should be *Mi go long bung*. These exercises are called *Simple substitution*. Now try.

Exercise 1: Simple substitution

Frame: *Mi go long Boroko.*

I am going to Boroko.

*Bipi*²

Burns Philp (N.G.) Ltd

opis

office

haus

house, building

*hap*³

over there

skul

school

Boroko

¹It is necessary to say 'generally' here because in rapid speech -im may be reduced to i (with or without nasalisation of the now final i).

²In most towns of Papua New Guinea Burns Philp (N.G.) Ltd and Steamships Pty Ltd have large stores known locally as *Bipi* and *Stimsip* respectively.



An early BP's store in Goroka

³Long hap is generally pronounced lo hap in this position and may also be in other positions, e.g. *Em i go long hap bilong mi* *He's going to my place/area.*

Now answer the following *where* questions using the cues provided. Some questions require the answer *yes* and some *no*. Ready?

1. Yu go we? (gaden)
Mi go long gaden.
2. Yu go long gaden a? (yes)
Yes, mi go long gaden.
3. Yu go long haus tu? (nogat)
Nogat, mi no go long haus tu.
4. Bihain yu go we? (ples)
Bihain mi go long ples.
5. Yu go long Waigani pastaim? (nogat)
Nogat, mi no go long Waigani pastaim.

Exercise 2: Simple substitution

Frame: Yu mekim wanem?

lukim

baim

harim

planim

wokim

mekim

What are you doing?

looking at

buying

hearing

planting

making, building

Now see if you can answer the following questions using the English cues provided. Ready?

1. Yu lukim wanem? (sweet potato)
Mi lukim kaukau.
2. Yu baim kaikai a? (yes)
Yes, mi baim kaikai.
3. Em i kisim wanem? (money)
Em i kisim mani.
4. Bihain em i wokim wanem? (house)
Bihain em i wokim haus.

Exercise 3: Progressive substitution

In exercises of this kind each new sentence becomes the frame for the next substitution. For example, given the frame *Kakiri i meri bilong Madang* the cue *man* your answer should be *Kakiri i man bilong Madang*. This answer now becomes the new frame for the following cue. For example if the next cue were *Hailans* your answer should be *Kakiri i man bilong Hailans*. Here is the frame. Ready?

Frame: *Kakiri i meri bilong Madang.*

Kakiri is a woman from Madang.

Kakiri i man bilong Madang.

Kakiri is a man from Madang.

Kakiri i man bilong Hailans.

Kakiri is a man from the Highlands.

Kakiri i manki bilong Hailans.

Kakiri is a boy from the Highlands.

Kakiri i manki bilong hia.

Kakiri is a boy from this area.

Kakiri i pikinini bilong hia.

Kakiri is a child from this area.

Kakiri i pikinini bilong Madang.

Kakiri is a child from Madang.

Kakiri i meri bilong Madang.

Kakiri is a woman from Madang.

Now see if you can answer the following questions using the cues provided. Ready?

1. Dogare i man bilong we? (Mosbi)
Dogare i man bilong Mosbi.
2. Em i man bilong Mosbi a? (Yes)
Yes, em i man bilong Mosbi.
3. Yu meri bilong we? (Madang)
Mi meri bilong Madang.
4. Em i pikinini bilong dispela hap? (Nogat)
Nogat, em i no pikinini bilong dispela hap.

Exercise 4: Simple substitution

Frame: Yu stap we na yu kam?

Where did you come from (staying)?

slip

sleeping

sindaun

sitting down

kisim mani

getting money

baim kaikai

buying food

harim tok

listening to what was said

stap

Now see if you can ask the following questions in Tok Pisin. Ready?

1. *Where are you coming from?*
Yu stap we na yu kam?
2. *You heard what was said and came, did you?*
Yu harim tok na yu kam a?

Exercise 5: Simple substitution

Frame: Yu save long dispela hap?

Do you know this area?

Tok Pisin

Tok Pisin

tok ples bilong hia

the language of this area

Tok Inglis

English

dispela man

this person (male)

dispela hap

Now see if you can answer the following questions using the Tok Pisin cues provided. Ready?

1. Yu save long Tok Pisin. (yes)
Yes, mi save long Tok Pisin.
2. Yu save long Tok Inglis tu? (nogat)
Nogat, mi no save long Tok Inglis tu.
3. Yu save long dispela meri long hap. (yes)
Yes, mi save long dispela meri long hap.
4. Em i Kinia a? (yes)
Yes, em i Kinia.

2. Supplementary vocabulary

famili ¹	<i>(nuclear) family</i>
papa, dedi	<i>father, daddy</i>
mama, mami	<i>mother, mummy</i>
bratasusa	<i>brothers and sisters, siblings</i>
manmeri, pipel	<i>men and women, people</i>
masta	<i>boss (formerly European but now also used of Papua New Guineans in positions of authority)</i>
misis	<i>formerly European woman but now used by Papua New Guinean men to refer to their wives (who, it may be noted, object in some cases) and who in turn only use man to refer to their husbands, never masta)</i>
mastamisis, Yuropen	<i>Europeans</i>
hapkas	<i>half-caste, mixed-race</i>
kanaka ²	<i>indigenous person</i>
pikinini man, pikinini boi	<i>male child</i>
pikinini meri, pikinini gel	<i>female child</i>
pren ³	<i>friend, acquaintance</i>

¹Social relationship terms are quite complex in Tok Pisin and vary from area to area. We begin with a few elementary ones here. Others are given in Unit 3, Vocabulary Drills, Exercise 6 and the footnotes thereto. This is an area of Tok Pisin vocabulary that desperately requires further study. See Fingleton (1986) in the Reading List at the back of this volume for the sort of details required.

²This can only be used safely in certain contexts, e.g. *Mi stap kanaka nating I'm just living in the village (without paid employment), Mi bus kanaka I'm not educated; I'm ignorant, ples kanaka native village.* In other contexts it may be offensive to listeners so it should be used with caution. In any case it is stressed on the first syllable and not on the second as in English.

³Pren is approximately equal to poro and wantok although one would not use it with complete strangers. Nor does one use it with persons of the opposite sex as this is suggestive of a more intimate relationship. Poro is more slangy than wantok.

yangpela man (em) i no marit	<i>young unmarried male</i>
yangpela meri (em) i no marit, gel	<i>young unmarried female, girl</i>
bus	<i>bush</i>
bikbus	<i>jungle, dense bush</i>
bikples	<i>main village</i>
biktaun	<i>main centre, city</i>
stesin	<i>Government station or outpost</i>
pisin	<i>bird</i>
balus	<i>pigeon, aeroplane</i>
nambis	<i>beach, seaside</i>
maunten	<i>mountain</i>
man bilong nambis	<i>a coastal person</i>
man bilong maunten	<i>a highlands person</i>
wara Sepik, riva Sepik	<i>Sepik River</i>
ailan Manam	<i>Manam Island</i>
ples balus, epot	<i>airport</i>
ples kanaka	<i>native village</i>
ples nogut	<i>bad place, unhealthy or dangerous place</i>
ples nating, ples klia	<i>empty space, clearing, place where something can be easily seen</i>
stua	<i>store, shop</i>
maket, bung	<i>market</i>
han kais, lep han	<i>left hand</i>
smol haus, liklik haus, haus pekpek, toilet	<i>toilet</i>
yam, mami	<i>yam</i>
kumu, sayor, grins	<i>greens, vegetables</i>
abus	<i>game, meat; anything used to add to or supplement the main dish¹</i>
abusim long pik	<i>to use pork as a supplement</i>
kakaruk	<i>fowl, chicken, chook</i>
kiau	<i>egg</i>
rais	<i>rice</i>
pe	<i>pay, wages</i>
viles, ples	<i>village</i>
hanrot	<i>side road, track leading off a main road or track</i>
liklik hanrot	<i>small sidetrack</i>

¹Generally this is some kind of meat or game but may be greens or anything else. See text 16 in Unit 14.

hanwara
haus tambaran

side stream, tributary
spirit house



A haus tambaran in the Maprik area, East Sepik Province

Supplementary vocabulary exercises

Exercise 1: Find the correct English meaning for the given Tok Pisin words in this list:

kakaruk	<i>toilet</i>
nambis	<i>jungle</i>
hapkas	<i>wood, tree</i>
diwai	<i>clearing</i>
bikbus	<i>brothers and sisters</i>
balus	<i>child</i>
ples klia	<i>mixed-race</i>
pikinini	<i>vegetables, greens</i>
bratasusa	<i>beach, coast, seashore</i>
smolhaus	<i>fowl, chicken</i>
kumu	<i>pigeon, aeroplane</i>

Exercise 2: Here is a little memory test. See if you can give the Tok Pisin words for the following:

<i>village</i>	<i>egg</i>
<i>airport</i>	<i>pork</i>
<i>unhealthy place</i>	<i>side-dish</i>
<i>mountain</i>	<i>clearing</i>
<i>tree</i>	<i>empty space</i>
<i>an Australian</i>	<i>city, main centre</i>
<i>Sepik River</i>	<i>young unmarried female</i>
<i>daughter</i>	<i>Europeans</i>
<i>old man</i>	<i>jungle</i>
<i>coastal person</i>	<i>shop</i>

[Singsing]

"Meri Wantok" (Kalibobo Band)

GRAMMAR

1.1 Personal Pronouns

The principal pronouns in Tok Pisin are:

Tok Pisin form	Refers to	English
mi	the speaker	<i>I, me</i>
yu	the person spoken to	<i>you</i>
em	the person or thing spoken about	<i>he, she, it</i> <i>him, her, it</i>
yumi	the speaker and person(s) spoken to	<i>we (incl.), us (incl.)</i>
mipela	the speakers and person(s) with him and not including the person spoken to	<i>we (excl.), us (excl.)</i>
yupela	the persons spoken to	<i>you (pl)</i>
ol	the persons spoken about	<i>they, them</i>

There are four important differences between these Tok Pisin pronouns and English ones:

1. There are no separate pronouns for *he, she, it* in Tok Pisin. These are all *em*. Thus *Em i go long taun* can mean either *he went to town* or *she went to town*;
2. In most carefully spoken varieties of Tok Pisin all the subject pronouns (except *mi* and *yu*) are followed by the special particle *i* which occurs between the pronoun and the verb, for example as in:

Mi wokabaut.
Yu wokabaut.
Em i wokabaut.
Yumi i wokabaut.
Mipela i wokabaut.
Yupela i wokabaut.
Ol i wokabaut.

In other varieties this particle is regularly omitted so that *Em i wokabaut* becomes *Em wokabaut*.

This particle is a most important part of the special structure of Tok Pisin and is usually referred to as the Predicative Particle or Predicate Marker. Its position relative to other items in sentences will be illustrated and discussed as they are introduced later. For teaching purposes it will be used after all pronouns except *mi* and *yu* in the first few units until learners get used to it. Then no further attention will be paid to it and it will be left out or used depending on context, speed of utterance and/or other factors operating at the time;

3. Most Tok Pisin speakers distinguish between *yumi* and *mipela* which are both represented as *we* in English. To distinguish the Tok Pisin forms in English *yumi* is said to be *we (inclusive)*, that is *we, including the person spoken to* and *mipela* is said to be *we (exclusive)*, that is *we, excluding the person spoken to*. Thus *Mipela i go long taun* means *We (that is, my friends and I but not you) are going to town* whereas *Yumi i go long taun* means *You and my friends and I are going to town*;

4. Tok Pisin pronouns do not change form like English ones do when they occur as objects of verbs or prepositions (like long or bilong). Thus whereas in English one says *He sees me* and not *He sees I*, in Tok Pisin one says Em i lukim mi where mi is the same form as one uses in the beginning of sentences like Mi lukim em *I see him*.

Practice Drills

Exercise 1: Simple substitution

Frame: Mi wokabaut tasol.

(em i, yumi i, mipela i, ol i, mi)

Exercise 2: Progressive substitution

Frame: Mi lukim yu.

Em i lukim yu.

Em i lukim ol.

Mipela i lukim ol.

Mipela i lukim em.

Ol i lukim em.

Ol i lukim yu.

Mi lukim yu.

Evaluation exercises

Exercise 1: Repeat the following Tok Pisin sentences and say what they mean in English. Use the present tense when the tense is not otherwise indicated. Ready?

1. Ol i wok long opis.

They work (or are working) in the office.

2. Wanpela pikinini i go long bus.

A child is going to (or into) the bush.

3. Em i go long haus bilong kisim kaikai.

He (or she or it) is going to the house to get food.

4. Bihain mi bungim yu long taun a?

I'll meet you in town later huh?

5. Dogare i man bilong we?

{ *Where does Dogare come from?*
What nationality is Dogare?

Exercise 2: Answer the following questions using the Tok Pisin cues provided. In some cases you have to choose between mipela and yumi for *we*. Ready?

1. Yu go we? (long bus)

Mi go long bus.

2. Ol i stap we? (long hap)
Ol i stap long hap.
3. Yupela i kalkai rais we? (long haus)
Mipela i kalkai rais long haus.
4. Em i sindaun we? (long rot)
Em i sindaun long rot.
5. Yupela i planim kon we? (long gaden)
Mipela i planim kon long gaden.
6. Yumi i kisim mani we? (long beng)
Yumi i kisim mani long beng.

Exercise 3: How would you say the following in Tok Pisin? Listen carefully for the predicative marker *i* in the instructor's answer. Ready?

- The boy is listening to what is said in the house.*
Manki i harim tok long haus.
- They are strolling around in the bush.*
Ol i wokabout long bus.
- Ask me in English.*
Yu askim mi long Tok Inglis¹.
- Where do you (pl) work?*
Yupela i wok we?
- We (but not you) saw a child in the garden.*
Mipela i lukim pikinini long gaden.

1.2 Verbs

There are a number of differences between verbs in Tok Pisin and those in English which are important at this point:

- Verbs in Tok Pisin do not add suffixes or change form in any way for different persons. Thus the same form *go* is used for all persons in Tok Pisin (e.g. *Mi go*, *Ol i go* and *Em i go*) whereas in English *go* changes form (e.g. *I go* versus *He goes*);
- Verbs in Tok Pisin can refer to present, past or future actions unless they occur with adverbs like *yesterday*, *tomorrow* or with special auxiliary verbs, or particles, to indicate the time (or tense) of the action and/or the nature (or aspect) of it (for example, whether it is complete, continuing or habitual). Tok Pisin has a wide variety of tense and aspect markers which will be presented progressively later. Thus *Mi go long taun* can mean (without reference to any other information) *I am going to town*, *I went to town* or *I'll go to town*;

¹Note the difference between this sentence and this one: *Yu askim mi long saming long Tok Inglis* which can mean either *Ask me something about English* or *Ask me something in English*. This sort of possible ambiguity can only be disambiguated by context.

3. Verbs in Tok Pisin are of two general types: transitive and intransitive. Transitive verbs are those which take objects, e.g. baim in *Oi i baim kaikai They bought food*. In contrast to English, however, transitive verbs in Tok Pisin are generally different in form from intransitive ones. Thus transitive verbs usually end in -im, e.g. lukim, baim, harim, kism while intransitive ones, like go, kam, sanap, do not. Some of the transitive verbs you have learned so far are: askim, baim, bihainim, bringim, harim, mekim, planim, wokim and intransitive ones: go, go bek, kam, kamap, sindaun, stap, tok, wok, wokabaut. Note that transitive verbs are often formed from intransitive ones and other parts of speech simply by adding -im to them. Compare the following, for example:

bihain	<i>later</i>	bihainim	<i>to follow</i>
wok	<i>work</i>	wokim	<i>to build, make</i>
tok	<i>say</i>	tokim	<i>to tell</i>
lukluk long	<i>look at</i>	lukim	<i>to see</i>
kamap	<i>arrive</i>	kamapim	<i>to develop</i>
orait	<i>okay</i>	oraitim	<i>to fix up</i>
bos	<i>boss</i>	bosim	<i>to oversee</i>
bilas	<i>decoration</i>	bilasim	<i>to decorate</i>

We will return to these in more detail in sub-section 8.4 below.

Exercise 1: Indicate whether the following verbs are transitive or intransitive. You can do this by just listening for the -im ending. Ready?

1. bosim (transitive)
2. tok (intransitive)
3. kam (intransitive)
4. kamapim (transitive)
5. wok (intransitive)
6. wokim (transitive)

Exercise 2: Repeat the following sentences substituting the verbs given as cues. Ready?

1. Mipela i go long sikismail. (*live*)
Mipela i stap long sikismail.
2. Man i sindaun we? (*work*)
Man i wok we?
3. Oi i wokabaut bilong lukim ples. (*come*)
Oi i kam bilong lukim ples.
4. Yu sindaun a? (*return*)
You go bek a?
5. Wantok i stap we? (*buying a house*)
Wantok i baim haus we?

Exercise 3: Now see if you can say the following in Tok Pisin. Ready?

1. *He is living at Konedobu.*
Em i stap long Konedobu.

2. *Konedobu is in Port Moresby.*

Konedobu i stap long Mosbi.

3. *You (pl) and I see the store in Boroko.*

Yumi i lukim stua long Boroko.

4. *They are working in Kundiawa.*

Oi i wok long Kundiawa.

5. *A man from Rabaul is sleeping on the beach.*

Wanpela man bilong Rabaul i slip long nambis.

1.3 *Stap to be in a place, to exist, to live*

This verb occurs very frequently in Tok Pisin. It corresponds to the idea of *be, exist, remain, live* in English. It does not translate English *stop* in sentences like *The machine stopped*. This concept is translated by *i dai*, generally pronounced *indai* and meaning *died*, or *stop* in Tok Pisin as in *Masin i dai* or *Masin i stop* *The machine stopped*, or *Stopim masin* *Stop the machine!*

Practice Drills

Exercise 1: *Simple substitution*

Frame: Stua i stap we?

Boroko

masta

rot

gaden

stua

Now ask where the following are in Tok Pisin. Ready?

1. *Austrelia*

Austrelia i stap we?

2. *haus*

Haus i stap we?

3. *misis*

Misis i stap we?

Exercise 2: Answer the following questions in Tok Pisin using the English cues provided. Ready?

1. *Pikinini i stap we?*

(*store*)

Pikinini i stap long stua.

2. *Haus i stap we?*

(*there*)

Haus i stap long hap.

3. *Bung i stap we?*

(*Port Moresby*)

Bung i stap long Mosbi.

4. Wantok i stap we? (bush)
 Wantok i stap long bus.
5. Beng i stap we? (Fourmile)
 Beng i stap long Fomail.

Evaluation exercises

Exercise 1: Ask someone the following questions in Tok Pisin. Be careful, not all of them use stap. Ready?

1. *Where is the child?*
 Pikinini i stap we?
2. *Where are you staying?*
 Yu stap we?
3. *Where are you (pl) going?*
 Yupela i go we?
4. *Where is the Sixmile?*
 Sikismail i stap we?
5. *Where did you get the money?*
 Yu kisim mani we?
6. *Where did this woman come from?*
 Dispela meri i stap we na i kam?
7. *What nationality are you?*
 { Yu man bilong we?
 { Yu meri bilong we?
8. *Are you (pl) Australians?*
 { Yupela i man bilong Austrelia?
 { Yupela i meri bilong Austrelia?

Exercise 2: Answer the following questions in Tok Pisin using the English cues provided. Ready?

1. Yunivesiti i stap we? (It's in Waigani)
 Em i stap long Waigani.
2. Poro i stap we? (He's over there)
 Em i stap long hap.
3. Meri i stap we? (They're in the bush)
 Ol i stap long bus.
4. Bung i stap we? (It's in the village)
 Em i stap long ples.
5. Sumatin i stap we? (They're in school)
 Ol i stap long skul.

1.4 Bilong + verb: *in order to*

In Tok Pisin *in order to* (do something) is expressed simply by placing bilong (or for some speakers long) before the verb, for example:

MI go long beng bilong kisim mani *I am going to the bank to get money.*

But note that bilong is often omitted in normal conversation especially after the common verbs go and kam when the intention is clear from the context, e.g. MI go kisim mani *I'm going to get money.* Note, however, that one cannot do this if something else comes after go or kam. Thus one can say: MI go kisim mani long beng or MI go long beng bilong kisim mani for *I'm going in order to get money from the bank* but one does not usually say MI go long beng kisim mani.

Practice drills

Exercise 1: Progressive substitution

Frame: MI sindaun bilong harim tok.

Em i kam bilong harim tok.

Em i kam bilong kisim pe.

MI sanap bilong kisim pe.

MI sanap bilong lukim wantok.

Em i wokabaut bilong lukim wantok.

Em i wokabaut bilong harim tok.

MI sindaun bilong harim tok.

Exercise 2: Repeat the following sentences in Tok Pisin and say what they mean in English. Ready?

1. MI sindaun bilong lukim Dogare.

I am sitting down to watch Dogare.

2. Dispela man i stap bilong harim tok.

This man is staying to listen to what is said.

3. Pikinini i go long stua bilong baim rais.

The child is going to the store to buy rice.

4. Em i kam bilong kisim pe.

He (or she) is coming to get paid.

5. Ol i sanap bilong wok.

They are standing up to work.

Evaluation exercises

Exercise 1: Answer the following questions in Tok Pisin using the cues provided. Ready?

1. Bilong wanem yu go long Boroko? (kisim pe)

MI go bilong kisim pe.

2. Em i kisim kon bilong wanem? (planim)
Em i kisim kon bilong planim.
3. Bilong wanem ol i sindaun? (kaikai rais)
Ol i sindaun bilong kaikai rais.
4. Yupela i kam bilong wanem? (baim kaukau)
Mipela i kam bilong baim kaukau.
5. Bilong wanem yu sanap? (lukim meri)
Mi sanap bilong lukim meri.

Exercise 2: How would you say the following in Tok Pisin? Ready?

1. *They are coming to get paid.*
Ol i kam bilong kisim pe.
2. *I am sitting down to watch Dogare.*
Mi sindaun bilong lukim Dogare.
3. *We (exclusive) are standing up to work.*
Mipela i sanap bilong wok.
4. *You are coming to buy rice.*
Yu kam bilong baim rais.
5. *She is staying to work in BPs.*

{	Em i stap bilong wok long stua bilong BP.
	Em i stap bilong wok long BP.

[Singsing]

Menya Etuku Haoke Band, Morobe Province

TEXTS

(1) Mi bin go long Madang Teknikol Koliij

Listen to the following interview with Rebecca Gware. Rebecca comes from Butibam village, Lae. She is eighteen years old and is a well educated company clerk.



Rebecca

- D: Wanem nem bilong yu?
R: Nem bilong mi Rebecca Gware.
D: Yu gat hamas krismas?
R: Eitinpela krismas.
D: Wanem ples bilong yu?

R: Ples bilong mi Butibam, long Lae.

D: Nn. A-- hamas tok ples yu save long en?

R: Mi save long tripela tok ples tasol. Em Inglis, Pidgin na tok ples Bukawa.

D: Ayu bin go long wanem praimer skul?

R: Mi bin go long Lae Intanesenol Praimeri Skul. Mi pinis long hap mi bin go wokim haiskul bilong mi long Lae Provinsol Hai na mi bin pinis long Lae Hai mi bin go long Madang Teknikol Kolij.

D: Oke. Yu bin go Madang Teknikol Kolij. Yu bin wokim wanem kos long hap?

R: Mi bin wokim klerikol stadis long Madang Tek.

English translation

D: *What's your name?*

R: *My name is Rebecca Gware.*

D: *How old are you?*

R: *Eighteen years.*

D: *What village do you come from?*

R: *I come from Butibam village, Lae.*

D: *How many languages do you know?*

R: *I know only three: English, Tok Pisin and Bukawa.*

D: *Which primary school did you go to?*

R: *I went to Lae International Primary School. I finished there and then went to high school at the Lae Provincial High School. When I left that I went to Madang Technical College.*

D: *Okay. What course did you do at Madang Technical College.*

R: *I did Clerical Studies at Madang Tech(nical College).*

Now open your textbook and answer the questions in Tok Pisin before listening to the next text.

Sampela kwestin*

1. Rebecca i meri bilong we?
2. Butibam i stap we?
3. Rebecca i save long Tok Inglis na Tok Pisin a? Wanem narapela tok ples em i save long en tu?
4. Em i bin go long wanem praimer skul?
5. Bilong wanem em i go long Madang Teknikol Kolij?

*

1. Rebecca (em) i meri bilong Butibam (viles).
2. Em i stap long Lae.
3. Em i save long tok ples Bukawa.
4. Em i bin go long Lae Intanesenol Praimeri Skul.
5. Em i go long Madang Teknikol Kolij bilong wokim klerikol stadis kos.

(2) Mi lukim wanpela man

In this story Julie Piau talks about meeting an acquaintance in Boroko. Julie is twenty-six years old and comes from the Simbu Province. She is very well educated.



Julie

J: Hapasde mi go long* Boroko. Mi go, mi laik¹ baim sampela kaikai.* Nau mi go in-- mi go baim pinis² na mi kam ausait mi lukim wanpela man. Em sanap* long--- klostu long posopis* na em wok long³ kisim sampela piksa. Em kisim sampela piksa i stap⁴ na mi lukim dispela man na mi save long em. Nau mi go toktok wantaim em. Na em tok o em laik kisim piksa long wanpela buk bilong em. Nau mitupela* toktok liklik, em go long haus bilong em⁵ na mi kam bek long haus bilong mi. Em tasol.

English translation

J: The day before yesterday I went to Boroko. I went (because) I wanted to buy some food. I went in-- I went and bought it. I came outside (and) I saw a man. He was standing at -- near the Post Office and was busy taking some photos. He was taking some photos and I looked at this person and I recognised him. So I went and talked to (lit. with) him. He said that he wanted to get pictures for a book of his. I talked to him for a little while and then he went home and I came back home. That's all.

* Note how Julie pronounces these words. This is very typical of modern Tok Pisin.

¹The use of laik is discussed and drilled in Unit 2 below.

²The use of pinis is discussed and drilled in Unit 3 below.

³Wok long + verb is discussed in footnote 2 to Conversation 2 in Unit 5 below.

⁴The use of stap is discussed and drilled in Unit 5 below.

⁵Possession is discussed and drilled in Unit 2 below.

Sampela kwestin*

1. Julie i go we?
2. Bilong wanem em i go long Boroko?
3. Em i go ausait long stua na em i lukim wanem?
4. Dispela man i mekim wanem?
5. Dispela man i stap we?
6. Julie i save long dispela man a?
7. Bihain Julie i mekim wanem?
8. Na dispela man i mekim wanem?
9. Em tasol o Julie i go wantaim em?

[Singsing]

Kaluli work song, Southern Highlands Province



Making a garden in the Highlands

Supplementary exercises¹

1. Complete the following conversation with suitable Tok Pisin expressions:

A:

B: Apinun poro.

A:?

B: Nogat, mi no go long bung, mi go long wok.

A:

B: Yes, mi go. Lukim yu.

*

1. Em i go long Boroko.
2. Em i go bilong baim kaikai.
3. Em i lukim wanpela man.
4. Em i kisim piksa.
5. Em i stap klostu long posopis.
6. Yes, em i save long dispela man.
7. Em i go toktok wantaim dispela man.
8. Em i go long haus bilong en.
9. Nogat. Julie i go bek long haus bilong en tu.

¹Keys to these and other supplementary exercises are to be found at the end of the book.

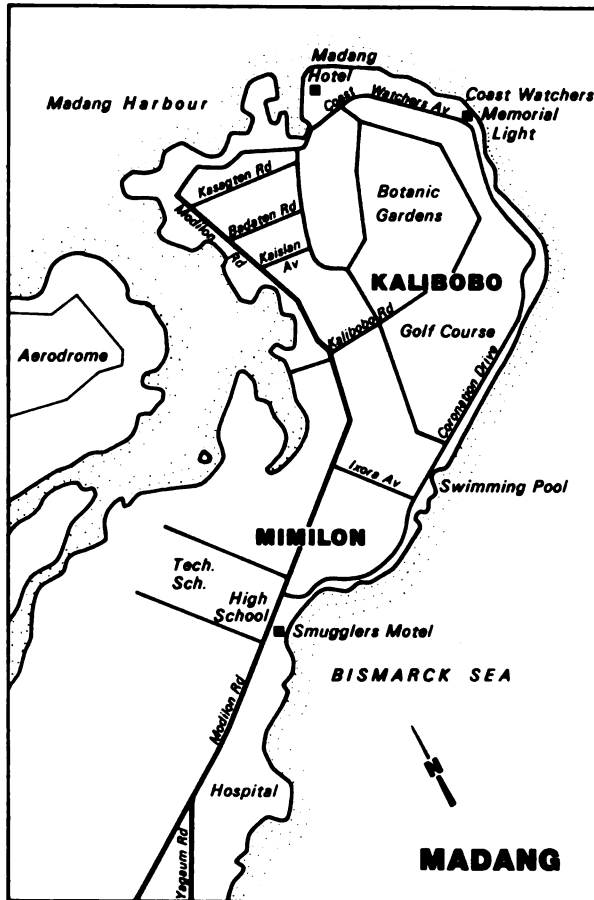
2. How would you say the following in Tok Pisin? You will need to know the supplementary vocabulary presented in this unit for this.
- Where's the airport in Port Moresby?*
 - Ask me in your own language.*
 - Where do they work?*
 - Why is the baby boy sitting on the ground?*
 - Where does this old woman come from (i.e. what nationality is she)?*
 - Where did the pig come from?*
 - You came just now, didn't you?*

3. Pretend you are visiting Madang for the first time and that you are staying at the Madang Hotel. Using the map given below how would you stop someone in the street and ask him or her:
- where the Coast Watchers Memorial is?
 - how to get there (i.e. which street you have to follow)?
 - if there is a swimming pool in the town? (Use swimming pul in your question for *swimming pool*).
 - if so, where is it?
 - where he or she comes from (i.e. what part of the country)?
 - where he or she is coming from now (i.e. where he or she is on his or her way from)?
 - could he/she please say that again as you didn't understand what was said?

Now better informed you thank the person you have been talking to and say cheerio.

4. Make up sentences using the following sets of Tok Pisin words:
- save, prai minista
 - wok, rot
 - sindaun, we, ol
 - na, go bek, baim kumu
 - bilong wanem, slip, yupela, Yunivesiti
 - mekim wanem, em, ples
 - stap, mipela
 - kaikai, hap, bilong
 - pikinini, pik, we
 - bilong Siapan, stap, kam

[The aim here should be accuracy, not length of sentence.]



5. Write the following short story in Tok Pisin:¹

Me

I am a Fijian. I came from Viti Levu. Why did I come to Papua New Guinea? Just to work. My wife is in Fiji. She works in Suva to get money to come to Papua New Guinea too. All right that's the end of my story. That's all. I am George.

6. Read the 'Foreword' to this text book written by Professor Wurm and if possible some of the articles and/or books mentioned in the Reading List at the end of the book and answer the following questions about Tok Pisin:

- a. Where is Tok Pisin mostly spoken?
- b. What do linguists think about the history of Tok Pisin?
- c. Is Tok Pisin the national language of Papua New Guinea?
- d. What role does Tok Pisin play in Papua New Guinea today? What was its role in the past?
- e. From what languages does Tok Pisin draw its vocabulary?
- f. What are Tok Pisin's main characteristics?

7. Introduction to Tok Pisin spelling. Study the pronunciation exercises in Units 1, 2 and 3 and make some observations about how words are spelled in Tok Pisin compared with English. Now try writing the following (taken from this unit):

<i>sleep</i>	<i>reef</i>
<i>rain</i>	<i>road</i>
<i>spade</i>	<i>water</i>
<i>blood</i>	

and the following (taken from Unit 2):

<i>pipe</i>	<i>five</i>
<i>too</i>	<i>talk</i>
<i>vote</i>	<i>four</i>

Now try writing the following words as you think a Papua New Guinea Tok Pisin speaker would say them:

<i>country</i>	<i>member</i>
<i>course</i>	<i>Prime Minister</i>
<i>development</i>	<i>prophet</i>
<i>Christian</i>	<i>public</i>
<i>club</i>	<i>helicopter</i>
<i>association</i>	<i>nurse</i>
<i>against</i>	<i>plantation</i>
<i>East Sepik Province</i>	<i>pyrethrum</i>
<i>Gulf Province</i>	<i>racialist</i>
<i>independence</i>	<i>university</i>
<i>island</i>	<i>whiteman</i>
<i>leader</i>	

INTRODUCTION

In this unit we shall be focussing on:

- (1) how to say *my, your, his, her, etc.*;
- (2) how to ask someone what they want and in turn how to say that you want something;
- (3) how to ask what something is;
- (4) how to ask the price of things and to count in the language.

These points will be introduced in the conversations that follow and will be discussed and drilled in more detail in the grammatical sections that follow them.

Other things that are worth knowing are drawn to your attention in footnotes to the conversations and grammatical sections.

CONVERSATIONS

(1) "Bia plis"

Bihain long taim wok i pinis Dagì
i go long klab.¹ Em i go insait
long klab. Bihain baman i askim em.
Em i tok olsem:

Baman: Yes plis. Yu laik² dring
wanem?

Dagì: Bia.

Baman: Wanem kain bia, SP o Sanmik?³

Dagì: Mi laikim SP.

Baman: Yu laikim⁴ long botol o long
tin?

Dagì: Botol, SP Braun. Hamas long
en?

Baman: Naintifaiv toea.⁵

Dagì: Em ya, tu kina.

Baman: Yu laik kisim wanpela samting
mo?

Dagì: Yu gat pis na sips o pai o
samting i stap?

Baman: Yes, mipela i gat olgeta.

Dagì: Mi laikim wanpela pai ya.
Hamas olgeta nau?

Baman: Pai i kostim fiftifaiv toea.

Olsem na⁶ Dagì i givim tu kina long
baman na baman i givim senis long
Dagì. Bihain Dagì i go dring bia
na kaikai pai.

*After work Dagì went to the club.
He went inside and the barman asked
him what he wanted. He said:*

*Yes please. What do you want to
drink?*

Beer.

What sort — SP or San Miguel?

I like SP.

*Do you like it in a bottle or in
a tin?*

*Bottle, SP Braun, please. How much
is it?*

Ninety-five toea.

Here's K2.

Would you like anything else?

*Have you got any fish and chips or
pies or something like that?*

Yes, we've got all those.

*I'd like a pie then. How much does
all that come to now?*

The pie is fifty-five toea.

*So Dagì gave K2 to the barman and
the barman gave him back the change.
After that Dagì went and drank his
beer and ate the pie.*

¹Drinking in clubs, taverns, bars and hotels has become an important part of social life in Papua New Guinea.

²Note the difference between laik (which is used here before the verb dring) to want to do something and laikim to like (something) which occurs a few utterances later on in this conversation.

³Papua New Guinea has its own breweries which market their products under different names. South Pacific Breweries Ltd, for example, markets its beer in brown and green bottles called stabi (*stubbies*) which can either have short necks (*sotpela nek*, *sotnek*) or long necks (*longpela nek*, *longnek*) as well as in kegs. Each kind of beer has its adherents who will argue about the different qualities of their favourite. The most popular other beer is that marketed by San Miguel Breweries (N.G.) Ltd and referred to locally as *sanmik* or *sanmik redtop* if it has a red label. Here are some common labels.



SP (Braun)
(sotnek)



SP (Grin)
(sotnek)



SP (Ekspot)
(longnek)



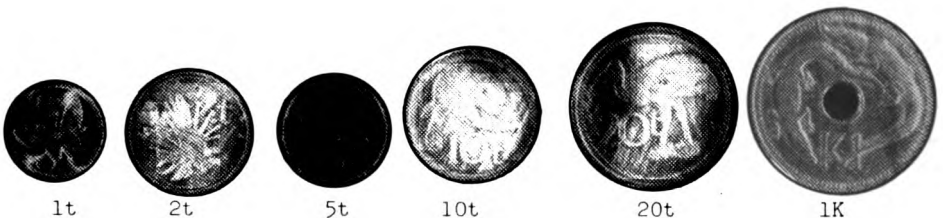
Sanmik
(sotnek)



Sanmik Redtop
(sotnek)

⁴Note here and in other conversations that follow that the object pronoun *em it* is generally omitted after transitive verbs.

⁵Papua New Guinea has its own decimal currency.



1t

2t

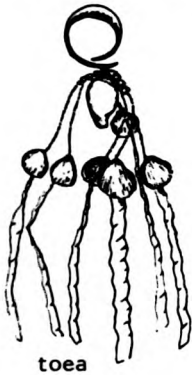
5t

10t

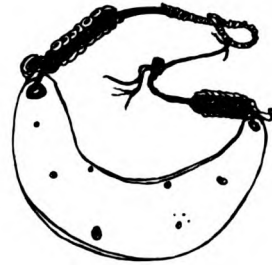
20t

1K

The smallest unit is named the toea and the largest the kina. The toea is named after the Motu name for armshells which used to be valuable trade items. The word kina comes from Tolai spoken in the Gazelle Peninsula of East New Britain. It was originally used to refer to several species of mussels and other broad flat shells used for scraping coconuts or grating taro. In Tok Pisin, however, it is used to refer to the mother-of-pearl shell that is used as the traditional currency in other parts of the country but especially so in the Highlands.



toea



kina

⁶Oisem na and orait na are important linking phrases in Tok Pisin conversation and story telling. The modern tendency is, however, to use so instead in many contexts.

(2) "Na wanpela pike tu"

Mumut i go long buksop bilong baim wanpels niuspepa.

Meri: Yes?

Mumut: Mi laik baim *Wantok* niuspepa ya. Yu gat sampela i stap?

Meri: Planti i stap.

Mumut: Orait givim wanpela long mi. Na wanpela pike¹ tu. Pike i bilong pikinini bilong mi. Tupela i kostim hamas/

Meri: *Wantok* i kostim twenti toea na pike seven toea. Tupela i kostim twentiseven toea.



Mumut went to the bookshop to buy a newspaper.

Yes, can I help you?

I want to buy a copy of Wantok please. Do you have any?

Yes, plenty of them.

All right give me one please. And a packet of chewing gum too for my child. How much do the two cost?

Wantok costs twenty toea and the chewing gum seven toea. The two together cost twenty-seven toea.

Generated on 2022-02-10 03:58 GMT / https://hdl.handle.net/2027/uc1.32106009345213 Creative Commons Attribution-NonCommercial-NoDerivatives / http://www.hathitrust.org/access_use#cc-by-nc-nd-4.0

Mumut: Em ya, fifti toea.

Here's fifty toea.

Meri: Tenkyu.

Thank you.

¹Pike is used as a general term for any kind of chewing gum although younger speakers are now more likely to use more exact names like spiamint *spearmint*, jusifrut/susifrut *juicy fruit*, abababa *bubble gum*.

(3) "Nau tasol ol i hukim"

Jiro i go long bung. Em i laik baim pis bilong meri bilong en.

Jiro goes to the market. He wants to buy fish for his wife.

Meri:¹ Yes, yu laik baim pis?

Yes, would you like to buy some fish?

Jiro: Yes, tasol² ol dispela i nupela?

Yes, but are these fresh?

Meri: Ol i nupela. Nau tasol ol i hukim.³ Na trosel tu.

They're fresh. They've just been caught. And the turtle too.

Jiro: Ya. Dispela, em hamas?

I see. This one, how much is it?

Meri: Em faiv kina.

That's K5.

Jiro: Oke, mi kisim. Tenkyu tru.

Okay, I'll take it. Thank you very much.

Em nau. Jiro i kisim pis na i go long haus bilong en.

And that's how it was. Jiro took the fish and went home.

¹Note that meri in Tok Pisin just means *woman* unless it is qualified (as in the opening sentence) by bilong X to indicate someone's wife. This meri is thus referring to the fish seller and not Jiro's wife.

²Note the new use of tasol here as *but*. Younger better educated speakers are now using bat for this as can be seen in some of the texts used in this course.

³Note how Tok Pisin speakers convey the idea of the impersonal passive construction in English (e.g. *It was done, They were caught (by someone unnamed)*). They use ol *they*.

(4) "Mi laikim liklik ya"



Traditional basket maker,
Edna Raymond from the
East Sepik Province

Mati i intaviuim Haria long wok bilong en.

Mati is here interviewing Haria about her work.

Mati: Mi laik askim yu long¹ dispela samting yu wokim.

I'd like to ask you about this thing you're making.

Haria: Em i orait. Gohet!

That's okay. Go ahead!

Mati: Yu wokim wanem ya?

What is it you're making?

Haria: Mi wokim basket.

I'm making a basket.

Mati: Yu yusim wanem long wokim?²

What are you using to make it with?

Haria: Mi yusim rop bilong diwai na sampela taim tu mi wokim basket long skin bilong saksak.

I use vines and sometimes I make baskets out of the skin of sago palms too.

Mati: Yu spendim hamas taim long wokim wanpela?

How much time do you spend making one?

Haria: Inap tu o tripela de samting.

About two or three days.

Mati: Yu salim wanpela long hamas?³

How much do you sell one for?

Haria: Wanpela bikpela i kostim et kina, na liklik faiv kina tasol.

A big one costs K8 and a small one only K5.

Mati: Orait, mi laikim liklik ya. Em i naispela. Em i namba wan tru.

Okay, I like this small one. It's attractive. It's very good.

¹Note the use of askim...long for to ask about (something).

²Note here how one asks the question *What do you use to make it with?*

³Note how one asks the question *How much do you sell one for?*

(5) "Ol i kolim hatoro"



Hatoro palms near Port Moresby

Asi em i laik baim wanpela kain kaikai. Tasol em i no save pasin bilong kukim. Olsem na em i askim ol lain¹ i salim dispela kain kaikai long bung:

Asi wants to buy a certain kind of food. But she doesn't know how to cook it. So she asks those who are selling it at the market:

Asi: Apinun. Dispela em i wanem?

Good afternoon. What's this?

- Meri: Long Tok Motu ol i kolim hatoro.² *It's called hatoro in the Motu language.*
- Asi: Hatoro i wanem samting? *What sort of a thing is hatoro?*
- Meri: Em wampela kain samting i luk olsem buai. *It's a thing that looks like a betelnut.*
- Asi: Em i samting bilong kaikai, laka?³ *It's something to eat, isn't it?*
- Meri: Yes, em samting bilong kaikai. Tasol yu mas putim long wara pastaim, long tripela de. Bihain yu kukim na kaikai. *Yes, it's something to eat. But you have to put it in water first, for three days. After that you cook it and eat it.*
- Asi: Faivpela i kostim hamas? *How much do five cost?*
- Meri: Fifti toea. *Fifty toea.*
- Asi: I gat sampela banana i mau⁴ i stap. *Are there any sweet bananas as well?*
- Meri: Nogat, i gat bilong kukim tasol. *No, there's only cooking bananas.*
- Asi: Maski, i orait. Tenkyu. *Never mind that's okay. Thank you.*

[Singsing]

'San Mig Red Top' (Ararua Band of Wewak)

¹Ol before lain indicates that lain (*group*) is plural, i.e. *groups*. Plural marking is discussed and drilled in Unit 3 below.

²Hatoro is the Motu name for the cycad palm (*cycas media*) and fruit. The fruit is edible but only after it has been soaked in water for several days.

³Laka is a popular substitute for the question tag *a* in island, as opposed to mainland, areas of Papua New Guinea. It is often pronounced laga.

⁴Note that banana i mau translates literally as *banana ripe* and contrasts with banana bilong kukim *cooking bananas* which are a staple in Papua New Guinea. Other ways of referring to *sweet bananas* are: banana bilong kaikai nating and swit banana.

PRONUNCIATION

1. Consonants: p, t, k

Tok Pisin p, t, and k are pronounced without aspiration or a following puff of air as in English *pit* for example.¹ Listen to the differences between the following sets of related English and Tok Pisin words and repeat the Tok Pisin ones. Each is said once only. Ready?

¹In some areas of Papua New Guinea orthographic p and b are pronounced as f and v respectively in which the lips are almost touching one another and not, as in English, with the lower lip touching the top teeth.

Tok Pisin sound illustrated	English	Tok Pisin
p	<i>paper</i> <i>pawpaw</i> <i>pipe</i> <i>pig</i> <i>cup</i>	pepa popo paip pik kap
t	<i>tea</i> <i>tail</i> <i>ten</i> <i>talk</i> <i>too</i>	ti tel ten tok tu
k	<i>cup</i> <i>cut</i> <i>cook</i> <i>cockatoo</i> <i>kick</i>	kap kat kuk koki kik

2. Consonants: f, v

Tok Pisin sounds represented by *f* and *v* are pronounced by older speakers with the lips almost touching one another and not, as in English, with the lower lip touching the top teeth. They are often replaced by *p* and *b* – see footnote to 'Consonants *p*, *t* and *k*' in your textbook. Listen to the following related English and Tok Pisin words and repeat the Tok Pisin ones.

English	Tok Pisin
<i>four</i>	fo/po
<i>five</i>	faiv/paip
<i>Friday</i>	fraide/praide
<i>fever</i>	fiva/piva
<i>vinegar</i>	viniga/biniga
<i>vote</i>	vot/bot

3. Consonants: l, r

Tok Pisin *l* and *r* are also unlike the corresponding English sounds. In Tok Pisin they are pronounced as flaps. That is, the tongue touches the roof of the mouth once only and very quickly in pronouncing the sound, very much like the *d* sound one uses in pronouncing *Saturday* quickly in English. Not all speakers distinguish between *r* and *l*, however. Listen to the following related English and Tok Pisin words and repeat the Tok Pisin ones:

English	Tok Pisin
<i>carry</i>	karim
<i>water</i>	wara
<i>Saturday</i>	sarere
<i>shut up</i>	sarap
<i>rubbish</i>	rabis
<i>rice</i>	rais
<i>slack</i>	slek
<i>sleep</i>	slip
<i>leaf</i>	lip
<i>leg</i>	lek

VOCABULARY

1. Drills

Exercise 1: Simple substitution

Frame: Yu laik dring wanem?*What do you want to drink?*

kisim

get

kaikai

eat

bagarapim

spoil

kukim

cook

rausim

*get rid of,
throw away*

stilim

steal

dring

Now see if you can answer the following questions using the Tok Pisin cues provided. Ready?

1. Yu laik kaikai wanem? (dispela samting)
Mi laik kaikai dispela samting.
2. Ol i stilim wanem? (tu kina)
Ol i stilim tu kina.
3. Yupela i laik bagarapim wanem? (klab ya)
Mipela i laik bagarapim klab ya.

Exercise 2: Simple substitution

Frame: Hatoro i wanem samting?*What is hatoro?*

liklik samting?

(Is hatoro) something small

nupela samting?

new

gutpela samting?

good

samting nogut?

bad

wanem samting?

Now see if you can express the following in Tok Pisin. Ready?

1. *A tree is something big.*
Diwai i bikpela samting.
2. *SP is something bad isn't it?*

{	SP i samting nogut a?
	SP i samting nogut laka?
3. *What is a turtle?*
Trosel i wanem samting?

Exercise 3: Simple substitutionFrame: Tupela i kostim hamas?

liklik bret

wanpela susu

nupela kiau

masis

dispela loliwara

olgeta poteto¹

tupela

*How much do the two cost?**a small loaf of bread or
a small amount of bread**a carton of milk**fresh eggs**matches**this softdrink**all the potatoes*

Now how would you say the following in Tok Pisin? Ready?

1. *What do the eggs cost?*

{	Kiau i kostim hamas?
}	Hamas long kiau?

2. *How much are the potatoes?*

{	Poteto i kostim hamas?
}	Hamas long poteto?

3. *The softdrinks cost K2 do they?*

{	Loliwara i kostim tu kina a?
}	Loliwara i kostim tu kina laka?

Exercise 4: Simple substitutionFrame: Baman i givim senis long Dagi.

singaut

bekim tok

soim wilwil

givim bek botol

salim bia

raitim pas

givim senis

*The barman gave Dagi the change.**calls out to**replies to**shows the bicycle**gives the bottle back to**sells beer to**writes a letter to*

Now see if you can answer the following questions using the Tok Pisin cues provided. Ready?

1. Baman i givim wanem long Dagi? (senis)

Baman i givim senis long Dagi.

2. Tati i soim wanem long Pita? (pas)

Tati i soim pas long Pita.

3. Em i singaut long mi, laka? (yes)

Yes, em i singaut long yu.

¹Poteto is often pronounced patete.

2. Supplementary vocabulary

ais	<i>ice</i>
aiskrim	<i>icecream</i>
aisblok	<i>iceblock</i>
dring	<i>any drink</i>
deisi	<i>'Daisy', a brand of flavoured milk that is currently popular in Papua New Guinea</i>
retpela deisi	<i>a strawberry flavoured 'Daisy' milk</i>
kouk, kokakola	<i>Coca-Cola</i>
limonad	<i>lemonade</i>
Fanta	<i>'Fanta', a popular brand of softdrink</i>
abababa	<i>bubblegum</i>
loli	<i>lollies</i>
soklet	<i>chocolate</i>
muli	<i>lemon or lime</i>
muliwara	<i>drink made from lemons or limes</i>
bisket	<i>biscuit</i>
draibisket	<i>dry or hard biscuit</i>
switbisket	<i>sweet biscuit</i>
switpela kaikai	<i>dessert</i>
hani	<i>honey</i>
jem	<i>jam</i>
kek	<i>cake</i>
skon	<i>scones, any flour mixture cooked in a ball</i>
plaua	<i>flour, also another name for scones, pancake, damper</i>
hap bret	<i>a piece of bread</i>
hap skon	<i>a piece of scone</i>
susu	<i>milk</i>
strongpela susu	<i>condensed milk</i>
suga	<i>sugar</i>
ti	<i>tea (in liquid form)</i>
kapti	<i>a cup of tea</i>
kap bilong ti	<i>a tea cup</i>
lipti	<i>tea leaves</i>
kopi	<i>coffee</i>
sol	<i>salt</i>
sol na pepa	<i>salt and pepper</i>
mit, solmit	<i>saltmeat, corned beef</i>
tinmit	<i>tinned meat</i>

skweamit, pokona	<i>any meat that comes in a squareish (in contrast to a round) tin, e.g. bullybeef</i>
tinpis ¹	<i>tinmed fish</i>
sos	<i>sauce</i>
blaksos, blakpela sos	<i>any black coloured sauce such as Worcestershire, barbecue sauce or soya sauce</i>
retsos, retpela sos	<i>any red coloured sauce such as tomato sauce</i>
sisis	<i>sausage</i>
sipsip	<i>sheep, lamb, mutton</i>
meme, me	<i>goat</i>
pik	<i>pig, pork</i>
bulmakau, kau	<i>beef, cattle</i>
pato	<i>duck</i>
sops	<i>chops</i>
hap kaikai bilong asde	<i>leftovers</i>
kari	<i>curry</i>
kastet	<i>custard</i>
yis	<i>yeast</i>
tomato	<i>tomatoes</i>
bin	<i>beans</i>
hebsen, pi	<i>peas</i>
anien	<i>onion</i>
gris	<i>fat</i>
gris bilong bulmakau	<i>dripping</i>
gris bilong pik	<i>lard</i>
bata	<i>butter</i>

Exercises

1. Say you like the following foods. Use the frame *Mi laikim...*:

cake
lime or lemon drink
cheese
a piece of bread
a strawberry flavoured 'Daisy' milk
bubblegum

2. Say you don't like the following foods. Use the frame *Mi no laikim...*:

peas
bullybeef
condensed milk
Coca-Cola
sausages
mutton

¹Note how Tok Pisin can use nouns like *tinpis* as a verb to speak dramatically about a situation in a sentence like *Mipela i tinpis long haus* *We are squeezed in like sardines at home*. This is more dramatic than the English equivalent.

3. Ask where the following are. Use the frame ...i stap we?

fresh eggs
leftover food
softdrink
dripping
duck

4. Ask a storekeeper for these things. Use the frame Yu gat...:

butter
corned beef
dry biscuits
tea leaves
salt and pepper

5. What's the difference between these two Tok Pisin expressions?

kap bilong ti
 kapti

[Singsing]

'San Mig Red Top' (Ararua Band of Wewak)

GRAMMAR

2.1 Possession

Possession is expressed in Tok Pisin by placing *bilong for, of* between the thing possessed and the possessor:

haus bilong mi	<i>my house</i>
meri bilong Dogare	<i>Dogare's wife</i>
pik bilong en	<i>his or her pig</i>

Note here that *whose* is expressed by *bilong husat (= of who)* in Tok Pisin:

Em haus bilong husat?	<i>Whose house is that?</i>
Em haus bilong dispela man.	<i>That's this man's house.</i>

Practice Drills

Exercise 1: Simple substitution

Frame: Yu rausim kaikai bilong mi, laka?

(em, Dogare, yumi, Jeda, mi)

Exercise 2: Simple substitution

Frame: Pikinini bilong en i laikim buai.

(bilong mipela, bilong Morea, bilong husat, bilong meri long hap ya, bilong en)

Evaluation exercises

Exercise 1: Answer the following questions in Tok Pisin using the Tok Pisin cues provided. Ready?

1. Em i papa bilong husat? (Wanipe)
Em i papa bilong Wanipe.
2. Meri bilong husat i kam? (mi)
Meri bilong mi i kam.
3. Em i haus bilong husat? (man ya)
Em i haus bilong man ya.
4. Yupela i harim tok bilong husat? (stuakipa)
Mipela i harim tok bilong stuakipa.
5. Em husat? (Prai Minista)
Em i Prai Minista.

Exercise 2: Answer the following questions in Tok Pisin using the English cues provided. Ready?

1. Husat i sindaun long rot? (*my mother*)
Mama bilong mi i sindaun long rot.
2. Em i givim mani long husat? (*her son*)
Em i givim mani long pikinini man bilong en.
3. Em husat? (*this woman's father*)
Em i papa bilong dispela meri.
4. Husat i lukim kakaruk bilong mi? (*everybody*)
Olgeta i lukim kakaruk bilong mi.
5. Ol i karim husat i kam? (*Morea's baby*)
Ol i karim pikinini bilong Morea i kam.

2.2 laik + verb: *want to*

Verbs preceded by laik with or without the predicative marker i indicate that the subject wants or wishes or desires to perform the actions indicated by the verb.¹

- Yupela i laik (i) baim wanem? *What do you (pl) want to buy?*
Ol i laik (i) kukim kaikai. *They want to cook food.*

Actions that one likes performing are expressed by save laik or laik long + verb:

- Raskol i save laik bagarapim haus. *The vandal likes spoiling houses.*
Mi save laik kaikai hani. *I love to eat honey.*
Mi laik long kaikai hani. *I like eating honey.*

Actions which one would like to perform can also be expressed by gat laik long + verb:

- Mi gat laik long go long taun. *I'd like to go to town but can't/ and I think I will.*

¹Laik before the verb may also be used to indicate *about to (do something)*. This is discussed and drilled in Unit 6 below.

Practice drills

Exercise 1: Simple substitution

Frame: Yupela i laik go we?

(putim rais, haitim bret, sindaun, rausim lipti, go)

Exercise 2: Simple substitution

Frame: Pikiñini bilong mi i laik long kaikai pike.

(lukim Mosbi, toktok, askim kwesten, halivim mama bilong en, kaikai pike)

Exercise 3: Simple substitution

Frame: OI i save laik bagarapim nupela samting.

(wokim haus, kam long ples, wokabaut long taun, dring bia, yusim wilwil bilong mi, bagarapim nupela samting)

Exercise 4: Simple substitution

Frame: Mi gat laik long go long taun.

(wok long Siapan, wokim mani, hukim wanpela bikpela pis, go long taun)

Evaluation exercise

How would you say the following things in Tok Pisin? Ready?

1. *What do you want to do?*

{ Yu laik mekim wanem?
 { Yu gat laik long mekim wanem?

2. *What do you love doing?*

{ Yu save laik mekim wanem?
 { Yu laik long mekim wanem?

3. *I'd like to remain in Port Moresby.*

{ Mi laik stap long Mosbi.
 { Mi gat laik long stap long Mosbi.

4. *You like planting sweet potatoes don't you.* (Use the question tag a in your answer)

{ Yu save laik planim kaukau a?
 { Yu laik long planim kaukau a?

5. *My father would like to write letters.*

{ Papa bilong mi i gat laik long raitim pas.
 { Papa bilong mi i laik long raitim pas.

6. *Where do they want to go?*

{ OI i laik go we?
 { OI i gat laik long go we?

2.3 Sentences without verbs

Many sentences in Tok Pisin have no verbs. These sentences correspond to those in English which use the verb *to be* in sentences such as *I am hot*, *They are Chinese*, *Four and four are eight* or *That is a book*. In these sentences in Tok Pisin the predicative marker *i* is not generally used.

Em wanem?	<i>What's that?</i>
Em husat?	<i>Who is that?</i>
Em mama bilong meri bilong mi.	<i>That's my wife's mother.</i>
Em wara Sepik.	<i>That's the Sepik River.</i>

Note, however, that in questions in which the subject of a verbless sentence is a noun the form *wanem samting* must be used instead of just *wanem*, e.g. *Hatoro i wanem samting?* *What is hatoro?* and not *Hatoro i wanem?* This longer form can also be used for pronoun subjects but is not obligatory, e.g. *Em wanem samting?* is as good as, but not as frequent as, *Em wanem?*

Note also that *ya* used in conjunction with *wanem* denotes surprise (as for example, if one kicks something unseen). Thus, for example, if one was walking along and tripped over a stone one hadn't seen one would say *Wanem ya?* to which the answer would be *Em ston* or *Ston tasol* or *Ston ya*.

Practice drills

Exercise 1: Answer the following questions using the Tok Pisin cues provided.
Ready?

- Em wanem? (kiau)
Em kiau.
- Kiau i wanem samting? (samting bilong kaikai)
Kiau i samting bilong kaikai.
- Wanem ya? (hap diwai)
{ Hap diwai ya.
Hap diwai tasol.
Em hap diwai.
- Em husat? (manki bilong mi)
Em manki bilong mi.
- Bulmakau i wanem samting? (wanpela kain abus)
Bulmakau i wanpela kain abus.

Exercise 2: Answer the following questions using the English cues provided.
Ready?

- Em wanem? (condensed milk)
Em strongpela susu.
- Em husat? (the new boss)
Em nupela masta.
- Bung i wanem samting? (place to buy food)
Bung i ples bilong baim kaikai.

4. Wanem ya? (a stone)

{ Em ston ya.
Ston tasol.
Em ston.

5. Em husat? (a university student)

Em studen bilong yunivesiti.

Exercise 3: Repeat the following Tok Pisin sentences and say what they mean in English. Ready?

1. Em husat?

Who's that?

2. Muli i wanem samting?

What's a muli?

3. Wanem ya?

Gee what's that?

4. Dispela i wanem samting?

What's this?

5. Em wanem?

What's that?

2.4 Cardinal numbers

Numbers in Tok Pisin occur with and without *-pela* suffixed to them:

1. wan	wanpela
2. tu	tupela
3. tri	tripela
4. foa	fopela
5. faiv	faipela
6. sikis	sikispela
7. seven	sevenpela
8. et	etpela
9. nain	nainpela
10. ten	tenpela

Those without *-pela* attached correspond to the *names* of the numbers in English and are used for mathematical operations like addition, subtraction, multiplication and division, and for counting money and telling the time, some of which will be presented in more detail later. Numbers beyond ten are not constructed as in English although one may occasionally hear the shorter ones with *-pela* attached to them, e.g.

elevenpela	<i>eleven</i>
eightinpela	<i>eighteen</i>
twentypela	<i>twenty</i>

Sometimes an older method of counting beyond ten is resorted to in modern contexts to make sure that there is no ambiguity or doubt about what is said. For example, on aircraft where the noise level is high the hostess might say *The journey will take thirty-five minutes* and will use tripela ten faiv minit for *thirty-five*. The numbers in this older method of counting are based on ten (except for the hundreds) and are regularly derived. Consider, for example:

- 11 wanpela ten wan
- 12 wanpela ten tu
- 18 wanpela ten et
- 26 tupela ten sikis
- 54 faipela ten foa
- 80 etpela ten
- 100 wan handet

In the classroom nating, not or siro is used for *nought* or *zero* but outside it in everyday life the idea of nothing is expressed by i no gat wanpela (lit. *there is not one*). Approximations are given by samting olsem, e.g. Em i gat samting olsem fotisikis kina *He's got about K46* (lit. *something like K46*).

Practice drills

Exercise 1: Simple substitution

Frame: Em i givim wanpela pike long mi.

(faipela kaukau, samting olsem etpela loliwara, fopela switbiskit, wanpela pike)

Exercise 2: Say what the following Tok Pisin expressions are in English. Ready?

sikispela fokona	<i>six tins of bullybeef</i>
tupela ten et toea	<i>twenty-eight toea</i>
samting olsem fifti bulmakau	<i>about fifty head of cattle</i>
wanpela ten tri buai	<i>thirteen betelnut</i>
wan handet kina	<i>one hundred kina</i>
nainpela ten de	<i>ninety days</i>

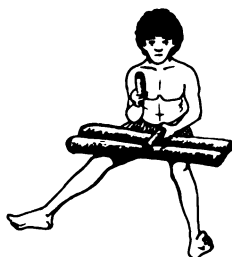
Evaluation exercise

What is the old Tok Pisin form for the following numbers? Ready?

33, 16, 2, 65, 100, 21, 98, 77
K8, 53t, K351, 7t, \$26, £87

[Singsing]

Gazelle 'Tinbuk' xylophone, East New Britain Province



TEXTS

(1) Mi save dring SP Braun

In the following interview Moruwo Domai talks about drinking beer. Moruwo comes from the Goroka area of the Eastern Highlands Province. He is twenty-eight years old and hasn't had much formal education.



Moruwo and family

T: Na, yu man tu bilong dring bia. Yu save dring bia?

M: Ye, bia em i gutpela. Mi save dring. Tasol em i no gutpela tumas long dring bia. Em, sapos¹ -- pede i kamap mipela kisim -- sapos yumi no tingim long² famili na ol pikinini na meri nau yumipela³ i karim olgeta mani i go insait long publik hotel o ba o samting, em planti wantok i kam insait na grisim mipela long wanpela botol o tupela botol na bai olgeta samting, mani i stap long poket bai pinis olgeta. Olsem na ating bia em i no gutpela samting. Em man bilong grisim olgeta man long pinisim mani ya.

T: Na, tasol taim yu dring bia yu dring wanem kain bia, SP Braun, SP Grin, San Migel o wanem kain bia?

M: O, mi save dring SP Braun. Em gutpela. Tasol mi no ken⁴ -- mi no ken winim i go antap long ten o twelv o samting. Ating i mas kam daun inap long hafwe long sikis. Sikispela bia em i orait. Sapos laik i go antap, em -- em mani bai i pinis ya.

T: Na bilong wanem yu ting dispela SP Braun i gutpela. I mo gutpela long SP Grin na San Migel.

M: A, Sanmik i gutpela tasol Sanmik em i swit tumas. Em i -- yu ken dring ova moa long ten o fiptin botol -- yu dring yu no ken spak. Tasol SP Braun em i namba wan, long wanem em i gat ful paua bilong en i stap. Sapos yu kisim siks o faiv, em, het bilong yu bai i raun kwik. Na em i gutpela long SP Braun.

T: Na taim yupela dring yu ting long dispela spak o het i raun kwik tasol, o yu ting long kik bilong en tasol, o yu ting long wara bilong en?

M: A, em kik bilong en tasol em i strong moa yet. Na i no tingim long dring o -- o dispela SP Braun em i ken mekim yu -- het bilong yu i go bum olgeta. Bai het i pen liklik long dispela.

T: Tenkyu tru ya! Na tasol long ram yupela i save dring ram nau o nogat?

M: O bipo mi save dring ram tasol nau mi no mo -- mi no mo dring ram. Em mi -- mi pret tumas long nogut bai hatatak yumi kisim. Olsem na mipela no yusim a -- strongpela dring. Tasol sampela man ol i dring. Ol i ken dring wiski o ram o a -- wanem kain dring, ol draijin o samting, olgeta kain strongpela dring sampela man i yusim tasol. Long mi em nogat.

¹The discerning listener will notice that Moruwo often says saposi for sapos and aiting for ating.

²It is not usual to use long after transitive verbs although its use with some verbs, e.g. kolim as in Ol i kolim long X *It is called X* is a feature of the Tok Pisin spoken in the New Britain-New Ireland area.

³Yumipela is not standard Tok Pisin but is characteristic of Highlands Tok Pisin.

⁴Moruwo uses ken for inap here.

T: Tasol taim yu save dring -- taim yu bin save dring ram yu dringim nating o yu dringim wantaim koka kola o wanem kain wara, o wara nating o wanem?

M: A, em mi save yusim wantaim koka kola. Koka kola wantaim ram yu dring em i -- ating i gutpela. Tasol dring nating em bai i bagarapim yumi oigeta nau ya. Olsen na yumi mas yusim, miksim wantaim narapela dring wantaim.

English translation

T: *And, you're a drinker as well. Are you a beer drinker?*

M: *Yes, beer is good. I'm a drinker. But it is not very sensible to drink beer. Consider this. Suppose -- (when) payday comes around and one gets -- suppose one doesn't consider the family and the wife and children and one takes all one's wages into a public hotel or bar or something similar, many friends will come and cadge a bottle or two and soon everything, the money that's in one's pocket, will be gone. Consequently beer's probably not a good thing. What happens is that cadgers are the ones that finish your money.*

T: *And, but what kind of beer do you drink when you drink, SP brown, SP green, San Miguel or what kind?*

M: *O, I drink SP brown. That's good. But I can't drink more than ten or twelve (bottles) or so. I guess I should stick to half that, to six. Six beers are okay. If you want to drink larger larger numbers then -- your money will be exhausted.*

T: *And why do you think this SP brown is good, is better than the SP green or San Miguel?*

M: *Ah, San Miguel is good but it is too sweet. It is -- one can drink more than ten or fifteen bottles and not get drunk. But SP brown is the best because it has full strength in it. If one drinks six or five then one'll get dizzy quickly and that's the good thing about SP brown.*

T: *And when you (pl) drink do you think only about this getting drunk or dizzy or do you think about the alcoholic effect/reaction or only about the liquid.*

M: *Ah, just the effect which is pretty strong and one doesn't think about the drink or that this SP brown can make one lose one's senses and that one's head will pain a bit.*

T: *Thank you very much. And what about rum, do you drink it or not?*

M: *O, before I used to drink rum but no longer. I am afraid of it giving us a heart attack. As a result one doesn't drink hard liquor. But some do. They can drink whisky or rum or whatever -- dry gin or other things, all kinds of strong drink some drink. But not me.*

T: *But when you drink -- when you used to drink rum did you drink it by itself or with Coca Cola or with some kind of mix or plain water or what?*

M: *Ah, I mixed it with Coca Cola. Coca Cola and rum is -- it seems to me, good. But by itself it will ruin one. Consequently one should mix it with some other kind of drink.*

Sampela kwestin

Give answers in English:

1. Dispela intaviu i toktok long wanem?
2. Moruwo i laikim wanem kain bia?
3. Bilong wanem Moruwo i tingim SP Braun i gutpela?

4. Moruwo i save dring strongpela dring?
5. Bilong wanem mani i save pinis kwik?

(2) Pasin bilong wokim basket

Now listen to another interview, this time with Edna Raymond, who comes from the Ambunti area of the Sepik River. Edna who is about thirty-five years old is discussing basket making.



Edna

- D: Am -- mi laik bai yu -- bai mi askim yu long sampela askim long dispela basket mi wok long lukim ya. A, psepela samting tru. Yu wokim dispela basket, yu o narapela man o meri?
- E: Mi yet mi wokim dispela basket.
- D: A, na yu yusim wanem samting long wokim dispela basket?¹
- E: Em bilong pulimapim klos.
- D: O, bilong pulumapim klos. Na yu kisim wanem samting long wokim dispela basket. Yu kisim lip kokonas o ol tanget o wanem samting yu yusim long wokim basket?
- E: Mi kisim ol -- wanem ya? -- bilong saksak -- brum bilong saksak na -- wanem ya? -- ol skin bilong en mipela kisim.
- D: O yes, saksak -- a -- brum bilong saksak na skin bilong saksak ya. A, wanem samting gen?
- E: Em dispela tasol mipela wokim. Bilong pasim as bilong en em mipela kisim karuka.² Na mipela pasim ol arere bilong en.
- D: Na long wanpela, hamas taim inap a -- i save kisim yu long pinisim wanpela basket? Em dispela kain basket, sais bilong en hia.
- E: Mi save pinisim long tupela de samting, taim mi save wokim wanpela.
- D: Planti man save baim dispela basket bilong yu o nogat?
- E: Planti ol save baim pinis.
- D: A, yu save wokim sampela samting gen long kisim mani o basket tasol?
- E: Mi save wokim ol bilum tu na basket wantaim.
- T: [In background] Taim yu wokim basket bai yu stat olsem wanem? Yu putim wanpela samting i stap insait pastaim o wanem?
- E: Mi save statim long as bilong en long -- wanem ya? -- ol brumstik bilong saksak ya. Mi save putim pastaim na mi save statim na wokim i go antap. Wokim i go antap na mi save pinisim pastaim na mi save pasim long karukua long maus bilong en.

¹Note how Edna misunderstands the question here. She apparently had her mind on the use to which the basket is put and didn't listen to the question properly.

²Notice that Edna has a distinctive pronunciation of karuka. She says karukua.

English translation

D: *I'd like you -- to ask you some questions about this basket that I'm looking at. Ah, it's really good. Did you make this basket or did someone else?*

E: *I made this basket myself.*

D: *Ah, and what did you use to make this basket?*

E: *It's for putting clothes in.*

D: *O, for putting clothes in. And what did you get to make this basket? Did you get coconut leaves or tanget or what did you use to make the basket?*

E: *I got the -- what's it called? -- of sago -- sago inflorescence and -- what's it called? -- and skin. We normally use them.*

D: *O yes, sago -- ah -- inflorescence and skin. I see. Anything else?*

E: *That's the only things we usually make them with. For closing up the base we get pandanus (leaves). And we close up the sides.*

D: *And for one, how much time ah -- does it take you to finish one? This kind of basket, one of this size.*

E: *I usually finish them in about two days, when I am only making one.*

D: *Do many people buy these baskets of yours or not?*

E: *Lots of people have bought them.*

D: *Aha! do you make other things for getting money with or only baskets?*

E: *I usually make string bags too besides baskets.*

T: [In background] *How do you start off when you are making a basket? Do you put something inside first or what?*

E: *I usually start with the base of -- what's it called? -- sago inflorescence. I put that first and then start and work it up. Having worked it I close it with pandanus leaves.*

01 kwestin*

1. Edna i save wokim wanem bilong kisim mani?
2. Basket bilong Edna i bilong wanem?
3. Edna i save yusim wanem samting bilong wokim basket?
4. Em i nidim hamas taim bilong pinisim wanpela basket?

Now to end this unit here is a recording of the poem *Nansei*. This poem was first published in *Nansei, an anthology of original Pidgin poems*, an edition of *Papua Pocket Poets* edited by Kumalau Tawali, Port Moresby, 1971.

*

1. Edna (em) i save wokim basket na bilum bilong kisim mani.
2. Basket bilong Edna i bilong pulimapim klos.
3. Edna (em) i save yusim brum na skin bilong saksak na karuka bilong wokim basket.
4. Edna (em) i nidim tupela de samting bilong pinisim wanpela basket.

Mi katim kona long Koki Maket
Mi lukim ol man na meri salim
buai, daga, pis na banana,

Mi no seksek

Mi lukim meri i gat longpela gras

Ei! Nansei!

Mi sanap long nambis bilong Ela Bis
Mi lukim ol masta waswas.

Mi no seksek

Mi lukim ol misis ol i kalap kalap nabaut
Na opim lek bilong ol

Ei! Nansei!

Mi sindaun long hap salt bilong braun riva
Mi lukim bikpela pukpuk i kamap

Mi no seksek

Mi lukim meri i rausim dres bilongen,
Waitpela susu bilongen i sanap stret

Ei! Nansei!

Mi wokabaut klostu long swimming pul
Mi lukim sangana bilong ol man

Mi no seksek

Mi lukim waitpela sangana bilong ol meri

Ei! Nansei!

Mi raun raun long Burns Philp
Mi lukim ol nupela samting

Mi no seksek

Mi lukim ol meri wokabaut wantaim sotpela dres
As bilong ol i seksek narakain.

Ei! Nansei!

Tau Peruka

Supplementary exercises

1. More practice on pronunciation and Tok Pisin spelling.
2. Short dictation exercise. Teacher's choice.
3. Fill in the gaps in the following sentences with suitable Tok Pisin words:
 - a. Dogare i _____ Sanmik.¹
 - b. Yu _____ kisim _____, SP Braun o SP Grin?
 - c. SP i _____ tupela kain bia, SP _____ na SP _____. Sanmik i _____ wanpela _____
 - d. Tupela i kostim _____?

¹Remember answers to Supplementary exercises are to be found at the end of this volume.

- e. Mi _____ K4 tasol.
 f. Kaukau i wanem _____?
 g. Yu laik _____ wanem?
 h. Dispela _____ samting i kostim hamas?
 i. _____ bata i stap long haus a?
 j. Dispela dok em i bilong _____?

4. Pretend you are visiting Papua New Guinea and have bought a postcard which you want to send to a friend who knows Tok Pisin. Here is an outline of what you want to write on your postcard. Can you complete the text using appropriate words from the list given below?

Motel Davara
12/8

Dia Kris,

Asde mi _____ long Mosbi. Mi _____ long Motel Davara. Em _____ gutpela motel tru. Mi raun na _____ olgeta _____ long Mosbi. Nau mi _____ long ba na _____ bia liklik. I gat tupela _____ bia long Mosbi. Wapela ol i kolim SP na narapela _____ i _____ Sanmik. Mi _____ SP. Ol i _____ planti kain _____ tu. Tasol mi _____ laikim loliwara. Yu save pinis!¹
 Orait em tasol. _____ yu!

Mi stap,
 Wantok bilong yu,
 Timothy.

(no, gat, stap, i, samting, kain, kamap, loliwara, laikim, dring, lukim, kolim, ol, sindaun)

5. Tanim dispela liklik stori i go long Tok Inglis:

Toktok bilong baim bia na pasin bilong dring bia i stap long olgeta hap. Ol i raitim long niuspepa na putim long sain long ples pilai, long sain arere long² rot, long bas, long piksa, long sampela Ti-siot, hat, ambrela na glas. Ol i save yusim tu long redio. Dispela tok gris³ i tok, "Dispela bia i nambawan. Yu dring dispela kain bia". Manmeri i lukim na harim dispela tok na bilivim. Ol i ting dring bia i gutpela samting. Olsem na ol i no war i tumas long famili bilong ol. Ol i save laik dring bia tasol. Ol i ting em nambawan samting.

¹This means *You know what I'm like*.

²arere long = *beside*.

³tok gris : ol i kolim edvataisim long Tok Inglis.

INTRODUCTION

In this unit we shall be focussing on:

- (1) how to use *pinis* to indicate that an action is completed;
- (2) how to ask questions to get the answer *yes* or *no*;
- (3) how to make it clear that more than one thing is being talked about, or in other words, how to make nouns plural;
- (4) how to talk about two or three people or things;
- (5) transitive verbs unmarked by *-im*.

These points will be introduced in the conversations that follow and will be discussed and drilled in more detail in the grammatical sections that follow them.

Other things that are worth knowing are drawn to your attention in footnotes to the conversations and grammatical sections.

CONVERSATIONS

(1) "Ating kantri i bagarap liklik"

Tupela meri i toktok long ol prais bilong ol kaikai long stua na long maket.

Two women are discussing the price of food in stores and markets.

Sirita: Yu tupela man bilong yu¹ i stap olsem wanem?

What's life like for you and your husband?

Asisi: O sindaun bilong mitupela i hat² liklik.

Oh it's not so good.

Sirita: Olsem wanem?

How come?

Asisi: O mitupela i no gat inap mani bilong baim kaikai mitupela i laikim.

Oh we (two) haven't got enough money to buy the food we like.

Sirita: Bilong wanem?

Why?

Asisi: Man bilong mi i no kisim bikipela pe.

My husband doesn't get much money.

Sirita: Yu ting wanem? Ol politisin i ranim kantri gut o nogat?⁴

Do you think that the politicians are running the country well or not?

Asisi: Nogat ya. Ating kantri i bagarap liklik. Ol prais tu i go antap. Ol i no kam daun. Mitupela i laik baim ka tasol mitupela i no gat inap mani. Mitupela no gat rot tu bilong kamapim mani.

Certainly not. I think the country's going to ruin somewhat. Prices are going up. They're not coming down. We (two) would like to buy a car but we (two) haven't got enough money. We (two) haven't got any way either of raising money.

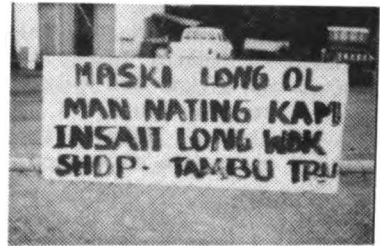
¹Note the use of *tupela* here for *along with, and*. It is only used when two people are involved. It does not mean that the person being addressed has two husbands.

²Hat here is *hard*. In older varieties of Tok Pisin this is pronounced the same as *hat hot*. In modern Tok Pisin they are distinguished as in English. The same is happening with *stop* and *stap* (which both come from English *stop*), *pas stuck* and *pasim* (from English *pass*) to *overtake*, for example.

³Note that *olsem wanem how* usually comes at the end of the sentence like *bilang wanem*. If it comes first or occurs alone it means something like *how come, why*.

⁴Note the new tag *o nogat or not* as another way of asking a *yes/no* question.

(2) "Mi no gat K250"



Ka bilong Popin i bagarap.¹ Em i kisim i go long woksop bilong fiksime. Em nau i toktok wantaim mekenik.

Popin's car has broken down. He has taken it to the workshop to have it fixed. Here he is speaking to the mechanic.

Popin: Yu ting wanem, hap wok ya i kostim hamas?

How much do you think this bit of work will cost?

Mekenik: Ating samtig olsem K250.

Probably about K250.

Popin: Oloman! mi no gat K250. Tasol mi tupela meri bilong mi i nidim tru dispela ka long go long wok.

Gee, I haven't got K250. But my wife and I need the car to go to work in.

Mekenik: Tasol spepat i kostim planti mani na tu taim bilong mekenik pe bilong en i antap tru.

But spare parts cost a lot and the cost of a mechanic's time is very high.

Popin: O ye. Tasol inap yu yusim olupela pat bilong fiksime ka?

But could you use the old parts to fix it?

Mekenik: Nogat. Olpela pat bilong ka i bagarap pinis.²

No. The old parts are worn out.

Popin: I orait. Mitupela i no gat narapela rot. Mitupela i dinau long beng bilong mitupela. Yu fiksime ka long nupela pat.

Okay. We (two) haven't got any choice. We (two)'ll have to get a loan from our bank. Fix the car with new parts.

Olsem na Popin i go toktok wantaim lon opisa long beng bilong kisim lon bilong baim ka.

And so Popin goes and talks to the loans officer at the bank to get a loan to pay for the car.

¹Ka is also spelled *kar* and is often pronounced that way.

²Pinis used in this sentence indicates that the action of spoiling is completed. Its use is described and drilled later in this unit.

(3) "Mitupela i no tingting long ol raskol"

Wanpela raskol¹ i kam stilim ol kaset long ka bilong tupela marit.² Maritman ya i givim stori bilong en long polis.

Maritman: Mi kam bilong ripotim wanpela stil. Raskol i stilim kaset long ka.

Polis: Yutupela i bin³ lokim ka?⁴

Maritman: Nogat. Mitupela i laik go baim sigaret tasol long stua na kam bek kwik. Olsem na mitupela i no bin lokim ka. Tasol mitupela i no tingim ol raskol.

Polis: Na ol kaset i bin stap we?

Maritman: Ol i stap insait long ka, long sea. Na sampela tu i stap long plua.

Polis: Yu lukim wanpela man o meri olsem⁵ raskol i stap klostu long ka o nogat?

Maritman: Nogat. Ating wanpela i stap, tasol mitupela i no lukim.

Polis: Wanem nem bilong ol dispela kaset ya?

Maritman: Wanpela kaset bilong Gwadu, narapela bilong Painim Wok na narapela em i bilong Paramana Strenges.

Polis: Oke. Yu ken i go nau. Ating bihain bai ol i singautim yu long kam lukim mi gen.

A raskol came and stole the cassettes of a married couple from their car. The husband is here reporting the incident to the police.

I came to report a theft. A raskol stole (our) cassettes from the car.

Did you (two) lock the car?

No. We (two) just wanted to go and buy some cigarettes in the store and come back quickly. So we didn't lock the car. We never gave raskols a thought.

And where were the cassettes?

They were in the car, on the seat. And some were on the floor as well.

Did you see someone like a raskol near the car or not?

No. There probably was one but we (two) didn't see him/her.

What were the names of the cassettes?

One was by Gwadu, another by Painim Wok and another by Paramana Strangers.

Okay. Off you go. You'll probably be contacted to come and see me again.

¹Raskol is the popular word for *criminal* in today's Tok Pisin. It comes from the English word *rascal* which is said to have been used by a finger-waving judge in chastising some petty thieves some years ago. The word has now been incorporated into Papua New Guinea English and will be used for *criminal*, *thief* throughout this course.

²Note the use and meaning of *tupela marit* and *maritman* in this sentence. *Maritmeri* is the counterpart of *maritman*.

³Bin used in this sentence indicates past tense. Its use is described and drilled later in Unit 5.

⁴Note that statements can be made into *yes/no* questions simply by using the right intonation or rise and fall of the voice. We shall be drilling this further in sub-section 3.2 below.

⁵Olsem means *like* here.

(4) "Mi gat bikpela wari"

Dorothy Apelis and Daisy Abakuki,
secretaries, Language Department,
University of Papua New Guinea.

Tupela sekreteri i toktok long opis. Wampela i ritim ol pas i kam long edita long Wantok niuspepa na em i singaut long narapela long kam lukim.

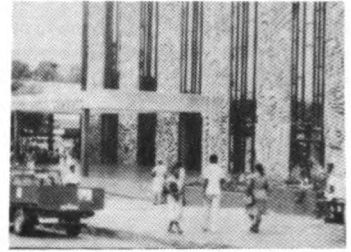
Wabu: E, Lala, harim ol samting long dispela. Em i tok: "Dia Edita, mi gat bikpela wari na mi laik autim long niuspepa bilong yu. Em olsem. Pikinini meri bilong mi em i ranawe long taun. Em i tok, em i laik go stap wantaim pren bilong em. Em i ranawe nating. Em i no tokim mi. Mi save nau tasol long boipren bilong en. Emtupela i stap wantaim. Emtupela i brukim bikpela lo. Dispela pasin em i nogut tru. Planti meri i mekim olsem na bringim sem i kam long papamama. Dispela kain pasin i olsem raskol. Tasol mi laik save long tingting bilong ol narapela rida. Ol i ting olsem mi o nogat? Mi laik harim tingting bilong ol. Em tasol. Mi Wanai".

Lala: Olsem a? Man, man, em rabisman. Em i stap long ples na em i no save long nupela pasin bilong mipela ol yangpela.

Two secretaries are talking in the office. One is reading the letters to the editor in Wantok and calls out to the other to come and look.

Heh, Lala, listen to this. He says, "Dear Editor, I have a big problem and I would like to express it in your newspaper. It's like this. My daughter ran away to town. She said she wanted to go and stay with a friend. She ran away for no reason. She didn't tell me. Just now I have got to know about her boyfriend. The two of them are living together. The two of them have broken an important law. This behaviour is very bad. Many girls are acting in a similar way and bringing shame on their parents. This way of acting is like that of raskols. I would like to know what other readers think about this. Do they agree with me or not? I'd like to hear what they think. That's all. I am Wanai".

It's like that is it? Gee, that guy's a hick/hillbilly. He stays in the village and doesn't understand the new behaviour patterns of us youngsters.

(5) "Yu giaman ya"

Papua New Guinea Banking Corporation, Port Moresby

Tupela wantok i bung long beng.
Tupela i toktok long mani:

Namba wan: E wantok, yu mekim wanem? Asde yu kisim pe na nau yu kam long beng gen.

Namba tu: O wantok, mani mi kisim asde i pinis. Mi pilai kas na mi lusim planti mani long laki ya.¹

Namba wan: A, yu giaman ya!

Namba tu: Nogat ya, mi no giaman. Mi tok tru. Pe bilong mi i pinis. Olsem na nau mi laik autim liklik mani i stap long pasbuk bilong mi.

Namba wan: O sori poro. Yu tokim meri bilong yu?

Namba tu: Nogat. Mi no tokim em yet.

Namba wan: Oloboi, bai yu kisim taim nau.²

Two friends meet in the bank. They are talking about money.

Heh mate, what are you doing? You got paid yesterday and here you are back at the bank again.

O mate, the money I got yesterday is gone. I played Lucky and I lost badly.

Go on, you're kidding!

No way, I'm not kidding. I'm telling the truth. My pay's gone and so here I am withdrawing the little cash I have from my passbook.

O sorry to hear that mate. Have you told your wife?

No, not yet.

Gee, you'll be getting into trouble.

[Singsing]

"Haiwe meri" (Ararua Band of Wewak)

¹Laki *Lucky* is the name for a common card game used for gambling. It is also often used for games of chance in general, including the Papua New Guinea scratch lottery.

²This phrase is derived from English *to do time* for law breaking.



PRONUNCIATION

Consonant sequences

Consonants that are written together in Tok Pisin are often pronounced with a very short, and sometimes quite distinct, vowel separating them. Formerly many words were written with this vowel included, but nowadays the tendency is to leave it out unless it is stressed. Listen to the following related English and Tok Pisin words and repeat the Tok Pisin ones. They are said only once. Ready?

English	Tok Pisin
<i>strong</i>	strong
<i>brother</i>	barata
<i>store</i>	stua
<i>clock</i>	kilok
<i>trousers</i>	trausis
<i>ground</i>	giraun, graun
<i>blood</i>	bulut, blut
<i>school</i>	sikul, skul
<i>spear</i>	supia, spia

VOCABULARY

1. Drills

Exercise 1: Simple substitution

Frame: Mitupela i no gat rot bilong
kamapim mani.

painim haus

abrusim dispela trabol

baim kaikai

daunim wari bilong mitupela

pilai soka

kamapim mani

*We (two) don't have a way of
raising money/finance.*

looking for a house

avoiding this trouble

buying food

overcoming our worries

playing soccer

Now see if you can say the following in Tok Pisin. Ready?

1. *I have no way of avoiding this worry.*

Mi no gat rot bilong abrusim dispela wari.

2. *How will you raise this money?*

Bai¹ yu kamapim dispela mani olsem wanem?

3. *Where do you play soccer?*

Yu pilai soka we?

4. *They cannot reduce their problems. (That is, they haven't got any way of doing so.)*

Ol i no gat rot bilong daunim trabol bilong ol.

¹Bai used in this sentence is a future marker meaning *shall, will*. It is discussed and drilled in Unit 4.

Exercise 2: Simple substitution

Frame: Olpela pat i bagarap pinis.

The old parts are worn out.

lus

loose, lost

bruk

broken

nogut

no good, useless

slek

loose

bagarap

Now see if you can answer the following questions using the Tok Pisin cues provided. Ready?

1. Ka bilong yu i olsem wanem? (bruk pinis)
Ka bilong mi i bruk pinis.
2. Dispela kaset i olsem wanem? (nogut pinis)
Dispela kaset i nogut pinis.
3. Dispela rot i olsem wanem? (bagarap pinis)
Dispela rot i bagarap pinis.

Exercise 3: Simple substitution

Frame: Em i kisim ka i go long woksop.

He took the car to the workshop.

bringim ka i go¹

took

pulim ka i kam

pulled

karim kago i go

take the cargo

salim pas i go

send a letter

subim ka i kam

push a car

kisim ka i go

Now see if you can say the following in Tok Pisin. Ready?

1. *We (two) are taking the money to the bank.*
Mitupela i kisim mani i go long beng.
2. *They are bringing fish to the market.* (Use kisim)
Ol i kisim pis i kam long bung/maket.
3. *Where are you pushing the car to?*
Yu subim ka i go we?
4. *Who sent you this letter?*
Husat i salim dispela pas i kam long yu?

¹Note the important use of i go and i kam here. They are direction markers which must be used whenever movement is involved. When used with verbs such as kisim and bringim they distinguish between take and bring in English.

Exercise 4: Simple substitution

Frame: Raskol i kam stilim

kaset long ka

tepriroda

radio

vidiorikoda

klos

strongpela dring

ol samting bilong mi

olgeta samting

kaset

*The raskol came and stole the cassette from the car.**taperecorder**radio**videorecorder**clothes**hard liquor**my valuables, treasures**everything*

Now what do the following sentences mean in English? Ready?

1. Tupela marit i brukim ol samting bilong mi.

The married couple broke my valuables.

2. Yu gat rot bilong lokim vidiorikoda?

Have you got a way of locking the videorecorder?

3. Husat i yusim kaset bilong mitupela?

Who's been using our (two) cassette(s)?

Exercise 5: Simple substitution

Frame: Tupela sekreteri i toktok.

lap

sekan

les long toktok

singsing¹

lukluk long mi

redim kaikai

toktok

*The two secretaries were talking.**laughing**shaking hands**tired of talking**dancing and/or singing**looking at me**preparing the food*

How would you say the following in Tok Pisin? Ready?

- 1.
- Why are you looking at me?*

*Yu lukluk long mi bilong wanem?**Bilong wanem yu lukluk long mi?*

- 2.
- Who is preparing the food for us? (Use yumi for us)*

Husat i redim kaikai bilong yumi?

- 3.
- The two secretaries are dancing.*

Tupela sekreteri i singsing.

- 4.
- I am tired of sitting down for nothing.*

Mi les long sindaun nating.

¹Singsing is the old Tok Pisin word for *dancing and/or singing*. Modern speakers now also use danis for *to dance* and sing(im) to *sing (a song)* for modern in contrast to traditional modes of dancing and/or singing.

Exercise 6: Simple substitution

Frame: <u>Pikinini meri bilong mi</u> i ranawe.	<i>My daughter ran away.</i>
brata bilong mi ¹	<i>brother</i>
susa bilong mi	<i>sister</i>
kandere bilong mi	<i>maternal uncle</i>
tambu bilong mi	<i>affines, in-laws</i>
smolpapa bilong mi ²	<i>paternal uncle</i>
lain bilong mi ³	<i>family, group, clan, relatives</i>
bisnis bilong mi ⁴	<i>clan, moiety, lain</i>
pikinini meri bilong mi	

¹As pointed out in Unit 1, social relationship terms are complex in Tok Pisin: they vary from area to area and the systems are being complicated by the introduction of more English terms adapted to suit the different social systems. The following listing contains some of the most commonly found extra terms although, as already pointed out, these may not have the same meaning in different societies. Others are given in following footnotes.

brata	formerly only used between like sexes, i.e. male to male and female to female, but now used as in English
susa	formerly only used between unlike sexes, i.e. male to female and female to male, but now used as in English
kasen	cross-cousins, e.g. father's sister's children
kasen brata	male cross-cousins
kasen susa	female cross-cousins
mama tru	real mother, i.e. the woman who conceived the child, as distinct from mother's sisters who are smolmama or liklik mama (if younger than mama tru) and bikmama or bikpela mama (if older than mama tru)
tumbuna	grandparent, ancestor
tumbuna man/pupu	grandfather, grandson
tumbuna meri	grandmother, grand-daughter
pikinini bilong rot	an illegitimate child or child without a lawful father

²This properly refers to father's younger brother. His older brother would be bikpela papa or bikpapa or namba wan brata bilong papa.

³Famili is now the common form for (*nuclear*) family. This was introduced in Unit 1, Supplementary vocabulary.

⁴Pisin (lit. *bird*, but meaning *totem*) is often used as an alternative to bisnis.

Now give the Tok Pisin terms for the following relationships. Ready?

1. *his maternal uncle*
kandere bilong en
2. *my family*
famili bilong mi
lain bilong mi
3. *our in-laws* (use mipela)
tambu bilong mipela
4. *her brother*
brata bilong en
5. *his sister*
susa bilong en
6. *your clan*
bisnis bilong yu

2. Supplementary vocabulary

kunai	<i>sword grass</i>
gras	<i>grass (as lawn or area regularly cut), hair, fur, feather</i>
gras nogut	<i>weeds</i>
saksak	<i>sago</i>
taro	<i>taro</i>
sausap	<i>soursop (Annona spp.)</i>
laulau ¹	<i>Malay apple (Yambosa spp.)</i>
tapiok	<i>tapioca, cassava</i>
kapiak	<i>breadfruit</i>
guava, yambo	<i>guava</i>
kokonas	<i>coconut, coconut tree</i>
kulau	<i>young or green coconut (for drinking)</i>
drip	<i>young immature coconut (before kulau stage)</i>
bombom, bumbum	<i>coconut frond, torch or flare made from same</i>
sel bilong kokonas	<i>coconut shell</i>
wara bilong kokonas	<i>coconut water (what one drinks from kulau)</i>
susu o gris bilong kokonas	<i>coconut milk or cream obtained by squeezing scraped coconut meat</i>
mit bilong kokonas	<i>coconut meat (the flesh of the nut)</i>

¹There are different varieties of this fruit: laulau bilong nambis, laulau bilong wara, laulau bilong bus, which differ in size and shape.

plaua bilong kokonas
 bun bilong lip bilong kokonas
 skwisim mit bilong kokonas
 sikrapim kokonas
 memeim buai/kokonas
 pitpit¹

tiktik

coconut flower
midribs of the leaflets of a coconut frond
to squeeze coconut meat
to scrape coconut meat
to pound/pulverise/chew betelnut/coconut
large grass (variety of wild cane) used for
fencing, arrow shafts, housing; also
edible varieties
reeds, cane, sedge



A pitpit fence



Plaiting pitpit into house walls



Pitpit on the Sepik River

mosong
 mango
 popo
 marita
 ananas, painap
 stik suga
 kamautim (kaukau)
 klinim gaden
 tekimautim gras nogut }
 }
 }
 }
 }
 }

fuzz or fine hair on plants/cloth
mango
pawpaw, papaya
edible pandanus fruit
pineapple
stick of sugarcane
to harvest (sweet potato)
to weed

¹cf. text 7, Unit 14.

A fence made of yar
(*Casuarina spp.*)
tree pickets



banis	fence	
banisim	to fence in, enclose	
hat	hat, cap	
bis	beads	
hankisip	handkerchief	
su	shoes	
wanpela sait long su	one shoe	}
wanpela su	both shoes	
tupela su	raincoat	
kotren	trousers	
trausis	shorts	
sotpela trausis	long trousers	
longpela trausis	shirt	
siot	multicoloured shirt, patterned shirt	
siot i gat makmak	floral shirt	
siot i gat plaua	sock(s)	
sok(s)	long walk sock(s)	
longsok(s)	T-shirt	
T-siot	loincloth	
laplap	any band	
paspas	arm band	
paspas bilong han	leg band	
paspas bilong lek	stomach band, belt	
paspas bilong bel	belt	
let	spectacles	
aiglas	sunglasses	
sanglas	string netbag	
bilum	decoration	
bilas	to decorate	
bilasim	woman's skirt (grass)	
purpur	man's bark skirt, G-string	
mal		



Rolling bush fibres
in traditional way
to make string for
knitting string bags

sket	<i>skirt (European type)</i>
ambrela	<i>umbrella</i>
asples bilong gavman	<i>seat of government</i>
asples bilong mi	<i>my home town</i>

Exercises

1. Ol i kolim ol dispela samting wanem long Tok Pisin?

<i>stick of sugarcane</i>	<i>to fence in</i>
<i>to weed a garden</i>	<i>immature coconut</i>
<i>raincoat</i>	<i>fuzz, fine hair on plants</i>
<i>midrib of coconut leaflets</i>	<i>belt</i>
<i>sago</i>	<i>breadfruit</i>

2. Wokim piksa bilong man na putim ol dispela samting long en.

su	hat
laplap	siot i gat makmak
paspas bilong lek	let
longsok	aiglas

3. Ansaim ol dispela kwestin:

samting yu yusim long wokim haus
 ol meri i save putim bipo
 samting i stap insait long kulau
 samting yu putim taim yu wokabout long san
 samting bilong wokim banis

(wara bilong kokonas, pitpit, gras o kunai, purpur, sanglas)

[Singsing]

"Haiwe meri" (Ararua Band of Wewak)

GRAMMAR

3.1 Pronouns: dual and trial

In Tok Pisin it is customary to refer to the number of persons or things involved in any action, especially if there are only two or three. This is done by adding the numerals *tupela* and *tripela* to the pronouns *mi*, *yu*, *em*, *yumi*. Thus the set of pronouns given in Unit 1 should now be expanded to include at least the following:

Tok Pisin	Refers to	English
mitupela ¹	the speaker and the person with him but not including the person spoken to	<i>we (two)</i> (excl.)
yumitupela	the speaker and the person spoken to	<i>we (two)</i> (incl.)

¹Note that these are written together in Tok Pisin. Note also that *mitupela* is now generally said as *mitla* in rapid speech. This can be heard in text 2 in Unit 1 for example.

Tok Pisin	Refers to	English
yutupela	the two persons spoken to	<i>you (two)</i>
emtupela	the two persons spoken about	<i>those (two)</i>
mitripela	the speaker and the two persons with him but not including the person spoken to	<i>we (three) (excl.)</i>
yumitripela	the speaker and the person with him and the person spoken to	<i>we (three) (incl.)</i>
yutripela	the three persons spoken to	<i>you (three)</i>
emtripela	the three persons spoken about	<i>those (three)</i>

Reference to four, five, six, etc. can be made in the same way by adding fopela, faipela, etc.

Practice drills

Exercise 1: Simple substitution

Frame: Emtupela i bringim kaukau i kam.

(yumitripela, emtripela, mitupela, yumitupela, emtupela)

Exercise 2: Progressive substitution

Frame: Yumitripela i stilim meri.

Emtupela i stilim meri.

Emtupela i kukim pik.

Yutupela i kukim pik.

Yutupela i brukim kiau.

Mitupela i brukim kiau.

Mitupela i bekim tok long en.

Yumitripela i bekim tok long en.

Yumitripela i stilim meri.

Evaluation exercise

Listen to the following Tok Pisin sentences and say what they mean in English. Ready?

1. Yutupela i ripotim stil long polis.
You (two) are reporting the theft to the police.
2. Mitripela i autim wari bilong mitripela.
We (three) are expressing our worries/problems.
3. Emtupela i bringim wanem samting i kam?
What are those (two) bringing?
4. Mitupela i no bagarapim teprikoda bilong yu.
We (two) didn't spoil your taperecorder.
5. Yutripela i laik givim wanem stori long polis?
What do you (three) want to report to the police?

3.2 Questions

There are at least three ways of asking questions in Tok Pisin:

1. by using a rising intonation, or pitch in the voice, on sentences which otherwise look like statements. For example, whereas *Yu nidim ka* means *You need a car*, *Yu nidim ka?* (with rising voice) means *Do/did you need a car?*
2. by using the tags *a* (or *laka*), *o nogat*¹ and *o wanem* on the ends of sentences that otherwise look like statements, for example:

<i>Yu nidim ka a?</i>	or <i>Yu nidim ka laka?</i>	<i>You need a car don't you?</i>
<i>Yu nidim ka o nogat?</i>		<i>Do you need a car or not?</i>
<i>Yu nidim ka o wanem?</i>		<i>Do you need a car or what?</i>

The *a/laka* tag expects the answer *yes* while *o nogat* expects the answer either *yes* or *no*. Both have distinctive intonation patterns associated with them. That for *a/laka* is similar to that used for questions referred to in 1. above except that it drops away on the tag *a/laka*;

3. by using an interrogative word or words such as: *wanem* *what*, *husat* *who*, *we* *where*, *hamas* *how much*, *how many*, *bilong husat* *whose*, *bilong wanem* *why* which have already been introduced.

Presentation drill

Listen to the following different question types and then repeat them after the instructor:

- Yupela i sindaun?
- Yupela i sindaun a?
- Yupela i sindaun laka?
- Yupela i sindaun o nogat?
- Yupela i sindaun we?

Practice drills

Exercise 1: Indicate whether the following sentences are statements or questions. Ready?

- | | |
|---|-----------|
| 1. Emtupela i go bek long ples o nogat? | Question |
| 2. Ol i haitim kago long bus. | Statement |
| 3. Misis i salim pas long yu? | Question |
| 4. Dispela pikinini i lukim wanem? | Question |
| 5. Mitripela i lusim masis long rum. | Statement |

Exercise 2: Simple substitution

Note the use of intonation to indicate a question.

Frame: Ol i toktok?

(giaman, lukluk long maritmeri, sekan, ripot long lon opisa, toktok)

¹o nogat may be shortened to o. In that case the o is drawn out or lengthened, e.g. *Yu lukim em o::::?* *Did you see him/her or (not)?*

Exercise 3: Simple substitution

Frame: Yu lap o nogat?

(les, singsing, tok tru, lokim ka, salim pas i go, lap)

Exercise 4: Simple substitution

Frame: Mekenik i go we?

(fiksime wanem, brukim hamas sepat, lukim husat, man bilong husat, go we)

Evaluation exercise

How would you ask the following questions in Tok Pisin? Ready?

1. *What are you doing?*
Yu mekim wanem?
2. *Where is my T-shirt?*
Tisiot bilong mi i stap we?
3. *Did you see my cassette?*
Yu lukim kaset bilong mi?
4. *Did you fix the car or not?*
Yu fiksime ka o nogat?
5. *Whose newspaper is this?*
Dispela niuspepa i bilong husat?
6. *Do you know?*
Yu save?

3.3 Verb + pinis: completed actions

Pinis following a verb indicates that the action is finished, ended or completed. For example:

Olpela pat bilong ka i bagarap pinis.

The secondhand parts are/have worn out.

Mi ritim Wantok niuspepa pinis.

I've read Wantok (or I have finished reading Wantok).

Baman i givim senis pinis long Dagi.

The barman gave/has given the change to Dagi.

There is some allowable optional variation in the position of **pinis** relative to the verb if there are objects or other elements following the verb, as the following examples show. The general rule is, however, that **pinis** should not become too far removed from the verb it modifies.

Mi ritim Wantok niuspepa pinis.
Mi ritim pinis Wantok niuspepa.

I read/have finished reading Wantok.

Em i skulim mi pinis long Tok Pisin.
Em i skulim mi long Tok Pisin pinis.

He taught me Tok Pisin.

Baman i givim senis pinis long Dagi. *The barman gave/has given the change to Dagi.*
 Baman i givim Dagi senis pinis.¹

Finally, it is to be noted that if the action is not yet completed yet is used instead of pinis, as in Balus i no kisim kago i kam yet *The plane hasn't brought the goods yet.*

Practice drills

Exercise 1: Simple substitution

Frame: Mitupela i wok pinis.

(les, lokim ka, fiksिम teprikoda, dring, wok)

Exercise 2: Repeat the following sentences and then say what they mean in English. Ready?

1. Husat i givim buai pinis long Dagi?

Who gave Dagi the betelnut?

2. Ol i salim kokonas bilong mi pinis.

They have sold my coconuts.

3. Tupela wantok i kisim kaukau i kam pinis long haus.

Two friends brought/have finished bringing the sweet potatoes home.

4. Yu tok gude pinis long kandere bilong yu?

Have you greeted your uncle?

5. Wabu i ritim stori pinis long Lala.

Wabu has read the story to Lala.

Evaluation exercise

How would you say the following in Tok Pisin? Ready?

1. *The mechanic has given me back the parts of my car.*

Mekenik i givim bek spepat bilong ka bilong mi pinis.
 Mekenik i givim bek pinis spepat bilong ka bilong mi.

2. *Those two have cooked the food.*

Emtupela i kukim pinis kaikai.
 Emtupela i kukim kaikai pinis.

3. *I have taken my car to the garage.*

Mi kisim ka bilong mi i go pinis long woksop.
 Mi kisim pinis ka bilong mi i go long woksop.

4. *How many crocodiles have you seen?*

Hamas pukpuk yu lukim pinis?
 Yu lukim pinis hamas pukpuk?

5. *The plane has brought the cargo.* (Use kisim)

Balus i kisim pinis kago i kam.
 Balus i kisim kago i kam pinis.

¹Note that Baman i givim Dagi pinis senis is not acceptable in most areas.

Sentence conjunction with pinis

An important use of *pinis* is to join sentences in a connected discourse to express the idea of *after doing such and such someone did so and so*. This is done by repeating the last verb in the previous sentence and adding *pinis* to it. This verb + *pinis* combination acts as introduction to the next sentence. For example,

Tupela meri i klinim gaden. Klinim
pinis tupela i planim kaukau.

*The two women cleaned the garden.
After that (or having done that)
they planted sweet potatoes.*

Pik i slip long haus bilong en.
Slip pinis em i go painim karkai.

*The pig slept in the sty. After
sleeping it went looking for food.*

Speakers of Tok Pisin also sometimes use *orait* after this verb + *pinis* combination. For example,

Pik i slip long haus bilong en. Slip pinis orait em i go painim karkai.

Practice exercise

In this exercise you will hear two sentences in sequence. The second one begins with *bihain afterwards, later on*. You have to replace this with a verb + *pinis* combination to express the same idea. For example, if the instructor says *Em i kam. Bihain em i karkai* *He came. Afterwards he ate*, your answer should be *Em i kam. Kam pinis, em i karkai* *After coming, he ate*. Ready?

1. Lala i lukim mipela. Bihain em i go bek long ples bilong en.
Lala i lukim mipela. Lukim pinis, em i go bek long ples bilong en.
2. Meri i ranawe long taun. Bihain em i stap wantaim boipren bilong en.
Meri i ranawe long taun. Ranawe pinis, em i stap wantaim boipren bilong en.
3. Yu kukim rais pastaim. Bihain putim kari long en.
Yu kukim rais pastaim. Kukim pinis, putim kari long en.
4. Tupela meri i klinim gaden. Bihain tupela i planim kaukau.
Tupela meri i klinim gaden. Klinim pinis, tupela i planim kaukau.
5. Ol i wok long taun. Bihain ol i go long haus.
Ol i wok long taun. Wok pinis, ol i go long haus.

3.4 Nouns: singular and plural

In Tok Pisin the number of things spoken about is not indicated in the form of the noun as it generally is in English. When necessary, however, Tok Pisin speakers use the numerals *wanpela*, *tupela*, *tripela*, etc. to specify the precise number of things spoken about or the pronoun *ol* *they* to distinguish between singular and plural objects, for example, *wanpela dok a dog* versus *ol dok dogs*.¹ Note carefully, however, that *ol*, the plural marker, is to be distinguished from *olgeta* *all* in Tok Pisin. English learners of Tok Pisin tend to confuse these two. See examples overleaf.

¹Note that as has already been indicated, though not discussed, *wanpela* means *a, one, a certain/particular one*.

Wanpela dok i kam.	<i>A/one (a certain/particular) dog came.</i>
Tupela dok i kam.	<i>Two dogs came.</i>
Sampela dok i kam.	<i>Some dogs came.</i>
Ol dok i kam.	<i>(The) dogs came.</i>
Olgeta dok i kam.	<i>All the dogs came.</i>

Practice drills

Exercise 1: Simple substitution

Frame: Wanpela pik i go long gaden.
(raskol, meri, kakaruk, pik)

Exercise 2: Simple substitution

Frame: Ol wantok i kamap long stua.
(pikinini, polis, sumatin, maritman, wantok)

Exercise 3: Change the singular nouns in the following sentences to plural ones and vice versa. Ready?

1. Wanpela raskol i kam stilim wanpela kaset long ka.
Ol raskol i kam stilim ol kaset long ka.
2. Ol pik i dai pinis.
Wanpela pik i dai pinis.
3. Mi ritim ol pas.
Mi ritim wanpela pas.
4. Ol kiau i stap we?
Wanpela kiau i stap we?
5. Mi ripotim stil long wanpela polis ofisa.
Mi ripotim stil long ol polis ofisa.

Evaluation exercise

Listen to the following Tok Pisin sentences and say what they mean in English. Where necessary put each in the past tense. Ready?

1. Olgeta manmeri i no bihainim olgeta lo.
No one followed all the laws.
2. Wanpela man bilong Mussau i givim mi planti laulau.
A Mussau man gave me a lot of Malay apples.
3. Ol raskol i bung long Fomail. Bung pinis ol i go long Boroko.
The raskols gathered together at Fourmile. After that they went to Boroko.
4. Ol rabisman i no laikim ol politisen.
Poor people don't like politicians.

5. Olgeta rida i sindaun we?

Where did all the readers sit down?

6. Mi tok tenkyu long ol tambu bilong mi.

I thanked my in-laws.

7. Olgeta sekreteri i ridim Wantok niuspepa pinis o nogat?

Have all the secretaries read Wantok or not?

8. Yupela i gat strongpela drink insait long woksop o:::?

Did you (pl) have hard liquor inside the workshop or not?

9. Prais bilong ol kaikai i go antap pinis.

The price of foodstuffs has gone up.

10. Dispela dok i kaikai pinis olgeta kaikai bilong kakaruk ya.

This dog ate all the food belonging to this chicken.

3.5 Transitive verbs unmarked by -im

Some transitive verbs in Tok Pisin are not marked by the suffix -im. The most common of these are *save*, *kaikai*, *gat* and the bodily function verbs *pekpek* to *defecate* and *pispis* to *urinate*, *pass water*.¹ Of these *gat* is used in combination with *tok* to mean *to have something to say*, for example, *Yu gat tok?* *Have you got something to say (by way of complaint, to get off your chest)* and *pekpek* and *pispis* with *blut* and *wara* to describe certain common tropical diseases and other natural body processes. Examples:

Mi kaikai rais.	<i>I eat/ate rice.</i>
Mi gat rais.	<i>I've got rice.</i>
Mi pekpek wara.	<i>I've got diarrhoea.</i>
Mi pekpek blut.	<i>I've got dysentery.</i>
Mi pispis blut.	<i>I pass blood in my urine.</i>

Practice drill: simple substitution

Frame: Husat i kaikai taro?

(gat planti buai, save long Tok Pisin, pispis blut, pekpek wara, pilai soka, pekpek blut, kaikai taro)

Evaluation exercise

How would you say the following in Tok Pisin? Ready?

1. *Wanai has some bread.*

Wanai i gat sampela bret.

2. *Wanai has a piece of bread.*

Wanai i gat wangepela hap bret.

¹There are others, for example, *pilai* in *pilai soka* that have already been introduced. Note also that some of these have related forms with -im on the end such as *kaikaim* to *bite* and *pilaim gita/piano* to *play a guitar/piano*.

3. *Do you have dysentery?*
Yu pekpek blut?
4. *The police are playing soccer.*
Ol polis i pilai soka.
5. *Are those two drinking softdrink or not?*
Emtupela i dring loliwara o nogat?
6. *My father knows this road.*
Papa bilong mi i save long dispela rot.
7. *Do all the cattle have diarrhoea?*
Olgeta bulmakau i pekpek wara?
8. *No, some are passing blood in their urine.*
Nogat. Sampela i pispis blut.

[Singsing]

Gapun lament¹, East Sepik Province

TEXTS

(1) Wantok sistem

In the following interview you will hear Muttu Gware of Butibam village near Lae talking about himself and the so-called Wantok system. Muttu is forty-nine years old.



Muttu

D: Wanem nem bilong yu?

M: Nem bilong mi Muttu Gware. Mi-- bilong Butibam viles, Lae. Krismas bilong mi fotinain.

D: Yu save tokim hamas tok ples?

M: Mi save a-- ating fopela tokples: Pidgin, Tok Bukawa, a-- Inglis na Yabim.

D: A--i luk olsem yu bin² go long skul, laka?

M: Yea.

D: Wanem yia yu bin go long skul?

M: Long--mi bin statim skul long 1953 na mi stat long Butibam viles skul na bihain long dispela mi go long Dregerhafen long a--hai skul long Drega, Finschhafen.

¹This mourning song was recorded by Don Kulick of the Department of Anthropology, University of Stockholm, Sweden in July, 1985.

²Bin is discussed and drilled in Unit 5.

D: Um--yu pinis long wanem fom o gred long hai skul?

M: Mi pinisim gred seven long hai skul long Finschhafen na mi kam statim wok long haus sik.

D: A--yu wanem? a--yu wanpela dokta?

M: No mi--olsem papa bilong mi em i wanpela dokta bilong bipo, gut taim tru, na taim mi skul pinis, mi laikim bai i kamap olsem motomekenik tasol papa i no laik long mi go long a-- wokim aprentisip bilong mi. Olsem na mi go lainim sampela wok long haus sik olsem sekreteri, hospital sekreteri.

D: Mi laik askim yu long dispela topik o samting ol i save tokim wantok sistem. Yu painim sampela asua long dispela samting? -- dispela sistem? A--inap bai yu tokim mipela wanem problem yu lukim long dispela o sampela samting we em i gut long dispela wantok sistem?

M: Long wantok sistem, em em --pasin i bihainim ol ples. Narapela ples ol i save¹ bihainim wanem kain rot ol i wokim na narapela ples ol i save bihainim pasin bilong ol yet. Long--long insait long Butibam i--i gat strongpela pasin long wantok sistem we ol i save helpim ol --ol wan pisin o wan lain. Olsem mi--long lukluk bilong mi olsem twenti yia i go pinis em i--i gat strongpela wantok sis--pasin bilong wantok sistem i stap. Na nau i kam olsem nupela kain sindaun na nupela kain laif em i kam insait long ples bikos mipela sindaun klostu long taun na long bipo em i gat narapela rot we ol pipol ya i gat wok long graun, planim kaikai na ol i kaikai na ol i gat planti orait ol i helpim ol arapela ol i sot long kaikai. Tasol long nau long dispela taim mipela i lukim olsem olgeta samting i bihainim mani na em i go i hat gen long pasin bilong wantok sistem bikos olgeta man i--i mas trai hat long ol painim mani na ol i baim kaikai na ol i sindaun. O sapos man i laikim sindaun, gutpela haus, o wanem kain sindaun bilong em, em mas wok hat long mani. Tru long bipo em i narapela kain rot we man i wok long graun na kaikai i kamap na em i save gat planti kaikai na bus i stap i save painim abus, katim ol diwai na ol i helpim ol arapela lain long wokim haus bilong ol na samting olsem em i isi na nau i-- i narapela kain olgeta. Olsem na lukluk bilong mi long wantok sistem long nau i--i senis olgeta.

English translation

D: *What's your name?*

M: *My name is Muttu Gware, of Butibam village, Lae. (I am) forty-nine years old.*

D: *How many languages do you speak?*

M: *I guess four: Tok Pisin, Bukawa, ah-- English and Yabim.*

D: *A--it looks as if you've been to school, doesn't it?*

M: *Yes.*

D: *When did you go to school?*

M: *In-- I started school in 1953 and I started at Butibam Village School and later after that I went to Dregerhafen, to high school at Dregerhafen at Finschhafen.*

D: *Um--at what form or grade did you finish high school?*

M: *I finished at Grade 7 at high school at Dregerhafen and I came and started work at the hospital.*

¹Save is discussed and drilled in Unit 4.

D: A--are you, what is it ah--a doctor?

M: No I--it's like this. My father was a doctor of the old type, in the good old days and when I finished school I wanted to go and become a motor mechanic but my father didn't want me to go and do an apprenticeship. So I went and learned some aspect of hospital administration, secretarial work, hospital secretary.

D: I'd like to ask you about this topic or what is called the wantok system. Have you experienced difficulties/problems with this -- this system? Ah-- could you tell us about what problems you've seen associated with this system or some good aspects of it?

M: In the wantok system it's it's--the custom followed in all villages. One village follows one system and another their own. In --in Butibam -- the wantok system is strong. People help one another--orphans and individual clans. So I --from what I have seen over twenty years it-- the wantok system is strong. But now a new kind of life is emerging within the village because we live close to the town. Before things were different. The people here tilled the soil, planted food and ate it and everything was fine. They helped others who were short of food. But now at this time we observe that everything is determined by money and that's working against the wantok system because everyone has to try hard to get money to buy food and live. Or if you want a life with a good house or whatever kind of life, you have to work hard for money. It is true that before things were different and one tilled the soil and obtained food and there was plenty. There was the bush to find game in, to cut down trees in and they helped one another build houses, etc. It was easy, but now-- it's completely different. Consequently from my point of view the wantok system has changed completely.

Ol kwestin*

1. Muttu i man bilong we?
2. Em i gat hamas krismas?
3. Em i save tokim Tok Inglis o nogat?
4. Em i bin statim skul we?
5. Em i bin go long hai skul we?
6. Muttu i tok wanem? Wantok sistem i wanem samting?
7. Bipo ol i save kisim kaikai olsem wanem?
8. Na nau?

*

1. Muttu (em) i man bilong Butibam viles, Lae,
2. Em i gat fotinain krismas.
3. Yes, em i save tokim Tok Inglis.
Yes, em i save long Tok Inglis.
4. Em i bin statim skul long Butibam viles skul.
Em i bin stat long skul long Butibam viles skul.
5. Em i bin go long hai skul long Dregerhafen long Finschhafen.
6. Muttu i tok: wantok sistem i pasin ol i bihainim (bi)long helpim ol long ples. Narapela ples i save bihainim wanpela rot/kain pasin na narapela i bihainim narapela.
7. Bipo ol i save kisim kaikai long graun. Ol i planim na bihainim ol i kamautim na kaikai.
8. Nau ol i baim tasol long stua. Ol i mas wok hat (bi)long painim mani bilong baim kaikai.

(2) Pasin bilong ol raskol

Listen to the following interview with Wasa Yavi about raskols in Port Moresby. Wasa comes from Okapa in the Eastern Highlands Province. He is about twenty-five years old but has had little formal education.



Wasa

T: Nau ol dispela raskol ol i mekim wanem?

W: Man! Ol i no inap long larim yu ya. Yu husat bisnisan o ol dispela kain man nabaut ol lukim yu o yu gat planti mani long poket bilong yu na taim ol lukim yu, ol wok long bihainim yu go go go go nau, yu go ba'im kaikai long stua samting olsem ol bai lukluk long yu na bai yu bai. So hau yu pulimapim mani olsem wanem, o hau yu raun olsem wanem ol stil ol bai lukluk long yu raun i go go go nau, taim ol stilim dispela mani bilong yu ol i karim i go pinis.

T: Na yu save nau ol i putim wanpela am -- tambu long ol dispela raskol long nait. Yu no save wokabaut long rot inap i go long moning, long foaklok long moning. Yu mas stap long haus bilong yu. Sapos yu wokabaut bai ol polis i kam kisim yu putim yu long kalabus. Yu save long dispela tok na yu ting wanem long en?

W: Yes, em tru. Tasol em pasin bilong ol raskol i narapela kain tru. Yu no inap lo-- tokim ol na tok o yu wokim olsem olsem. Ol no inap long harim tok bilong yu. I raskol i narapela kain samting tru. Ol wokim raskol ol narapela kain samting ol i no inap long harim tok bilong yu. Ol no inap tingim pikinini bilong yu o yu man. Ol no inap tok yu man i stap. Ol i go insait tasol long haus bilong yu, brukim dua bilong yu go insait, stilim ol samting bilong yu, paitim ol meri pikinini bilong yu, ol ranawe pinis. Yu no inap long save. Mosbi em i narapela kain ples tru.

T: Na yu tingim dispela samting i gutpela. Dispela nupela lo ol -- a-- Somare i putim em na i tok yu no ken wokabaut long rot long nait. Yu mas stap long haus bilong yu. Yu ting dispela samting i gutpela tu?

W: Yea. Em gutpela. Sapos yu sindaun kwait long haus bilong yu em nau bai yu sevim skin bilong yu. Nait yu wokabaut ya bai yu kisim taim stret.

D: Na yu ting a-- sapos a-- ol i wokim dispela yu ting em stopim pasin raskol long kamap?

W: Sori?

D: Yu ting dispela kain tambuim man long wokabaut long nait em inap stopim pasin raskol long kamap o olsem wanem?

W: Tasol em -- yumi no ken save. Em dispela em -- tingting bilong man i raun long nait yumi no ken save. So taim ol pren bilong yumi o samting olsem ol i raun olsem, yumi inap long tokim ol na ol ken sindaun tasol long wanem ol narapela narapela tokples ol bin raun long raskol, ol i no inap harim tok bilong yumi nau.

English translation

T: *And what do these raskols do?*

W: *Gee! They will not give you an easy time. If you are a businessman or a person of that sort that's around and they see you or if you've got a lot of money in your pocket when they see you they will follow you. When you enter a shop to buy food, etc. they'll watch you while you buy. They will watch you to see how you put your money in your pocket or where you go and they will follow very very closely until they get your money and clear off with it.*

T: *And do you know they declared a--curfew at night? You are not allowed to walk about at night until four o'clock in the morning. You must remain in your house. If you go out the police will lock you up. Do you know about this, and what is your opinion?*

W: *Yes, that's true. But the ways of the raskols are quite different. You cannot tell them to do this or that. They won't listen to you. They're completely different. Those who act as raskols are different. They don't care about your children or you as a man who deserves good treatment. They will break through your door to make entry, steal your valuables, beat up your wife and children and then disappear. You won't be aware of it. Port Moresby is a completely different kind of place.*

T: *And do you think this is good? This new law--they--a--Somare declared and said that you are not allowed to walk at night. You must remain at home. Do you think this is good?*

W: *Yes. It is good. If you stay quietly at home you won't get hurt. If you walk about at night you'll get into trouble.*

D: *And do you think a--if a--they have done this will it get rid of the trouble associated with raskols?*

W: *I beg your pardon?*

D: *Do you think the law -- prohibiting people from walking about at night is able to eradicate problems associated with raskols or how do you see it?*

W: *But that it -- we do not know. This is -- you do not know what is in the mind of the prowler. So when our friends or whoever want to walk about at night we should tell them not to. They should stay at home because speakers of other languages have learned to become raskols--and they will not be able to understand them.*

Kwestin

Now in English say what were the main points Wasa was making.

Now to end this unit here is a sound that used to be part and parcel of outstation life in Papua New Guinea before Independence in 1975. It is a bugle call, part of the six o'clock flag-lowering ceremony.¹ This particular recording was made at Okapa in 1960 in poor conditions.

[Singing]
Bugle call

¹In Tok Pisin this would be *Wanpela polisman i winim bugol*. *Winim* is the verb used for blowing instruments. Thus *winim mambu* means to play a flute or pipe.

[Photo: Don Kulick]



Supplementary exercises



- Here is a picture of some goods that are for sale in a supermarket. Answer the following questions about the goods and prices displayed or that you want to buy:
 - Say you want to buy a cake and ask how much it is.
 - What does the shopkeeper say?
 - Say you like lamb chops but haven't got enough money to buy a kilo of them.
 - Say you want to buy a scone but can't find it. Ask if they have any.
 - Say what the shopkeeper would say the total price was if you bought a kilo of sausages and a tub of Meadow Lea margarine.
- Complete this conversation in Tok Pisin:

A: *Aren't the prices high nowadays?*
 B: *Yes, look at this price for sugar. Before it was only 58t.*
 A: *Yes we (two) (excl.) haven't got enough money to buy the things we want.*
 B: *We (two) (excl.) haven't got a car either.*
- Read the following letter to the editor of *Wantok* and answer the questions given about it in Tok Pisin:

MERI MAS BAIM DUA

Dia Edita – Nau mi gat liklik wari, na mi laik autim long ol manmeri bilong Not Solomon Provins olgeta hap provins bilong Papua Niugini.

Hia long Arawa taun ol i save holim ol pilai danis. Na mipela olgeta man tasol i save peim dua bilong go insait long danis. Olgeta man i save tromoim K1.00 i go inap long K2.00. Na olgeta meri i save go insait nating.

Man! olsem wanem tru ya? Mipela ol man tasol i save wok mani? Long hia long Arawa taun, planti meri tru ol i wok nabaut long ol ofis. Sampela i wok long planti stua.

Tasol long Sarere nau, ol i bilas na i go fri insait long danis na mipela ol man tasol i go tromoim K2.00. Mi i no save sapos i olsem tu long sampela provins bilong Papua Niugini.

Ating ol i mas senisim dispela pasin nogut mipela ol man i westim mani bilong mipela na ol meri i sevim mani bilong ol.

J.S.
Not Solomons Provins

Ansaim dispela kwestin:

1. Husat i raitim dispela pas?
2. Em i stap we (olsem long wanem provins)?
3. Ol i go long danis we?
4. Em i kostim hamas bilong go insait long danis?
5. Tasol ol meri i save troimwe hamas long go insait?
6. Sampela meri i wok we?
7. J.S. i raitim pas bilong wanem?
8. As bilong dispela wari i wanem?

Now study the following "Isuzu Lu" cartoon and describe it in Tok Pisin (or English if necessary).



4. You and a recent acquaintance from Papua New Guinea are talking about your families. How would you ask him/her the following questions about his/her family:
- how many children are in the family - males and females
 - supposing there are five, three males and two females, find out which one your friend is
 - supposing he/she is the youngest male/female ask about the oldest - name, work, present whereabouts
 - ask if the parents are still alive and if so where
 - ask if any children are living with the parents
 - ask if the family has any relatives in Australia.
5. Rewrite the following sentences according to the instructions given in brackets:
- (a) Lon opisa i salim pas i go long en.
(As a question that will be answered *yes*; as a command to the lon opisa; restate so as to indicate that the person referred to is my father; as a negative statement; as a question that will be answered by *ating*);
- (b) Raskol i go we?
(As a statement telling that he's going to the University in Waigani; so as to indicate that three raskols are involved; asking if the raskol went to the market or not)
- (c) Ol meri i sindaun long maket.
(As a negative statement; as a question asking *who*; as a question asking what the women were doing; as a statement saying the women weren't doing anything in particular).
6. Can you explain by giving examples what the difference between the following verbs is: tokim, toktok wantaim, toktok long, tok.
7. Listen to text 5 in Unit 14 and see if you can say what it is about.

INTRODUCTION

In this unit we shall be focussing on:

- (1) how to indicate and use the future tense;
- (2) how to indicate *usually* and *normally* using *save*;
- (3) how to tell the time;
- (4) how to talk about days and dates.

These points will be introduced in the conversations that follow and will be discussed and drilled in more detail in the grammatical sections that follow them.

Other things that are worth knowing are drawn to your attention in footnotes to the conversations and grammatical sections.

CONVERSATIONS

(1) "Ating bai mi go long bas"

Long nait Yani wantaim meri bilong en Morea tupela i sindaun toktok wantaim Wapi:

At night Yani and his wife Morea are sitting down talking with Wapi:

Yani: E, Wapi, tumora bai yu go long taun?¹

Heh, Wapi, are you going to town tomorrow?

Wapi: Yes, ating bai mi go.

Yes, probably.

Yani: Yu ting wanem taim bai yu go?

When do you think you will go?

Wapi: Mi no save yet. Ating long et klok samting bai mi go.

I don't know yet. Probably about eight o'clock.

Yani: Olsem wanem? Bai yu wokabaut?

How? Are you going to walk?

Wapi: A, ating bai mi go long bas.²

Ah, I'll probably catch a bus.

Yani: I orait. Tasol bas i save kam long hap pas seven samting.

Fine, except that the bus usually comes about half past seven.

Wapi: Tru a? Orait bai mi kirap long moning taim tru.

Is that so? Then I'll get up early.

Yani: Oke. Ai bilong mi hevi tru. Ating yumitripela go slip.

Okay. I'm very tired. Now let's go to bed.

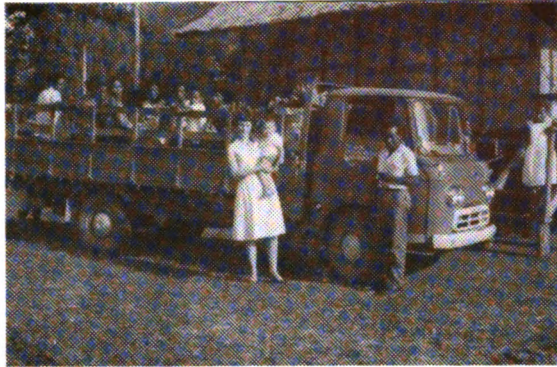
Olsem na tripela i go slip.

And so the three went to bed.

¹The bai is not necessary to indicate futurity in this sentence since the adverb tumora is sufficient (cf. sub-section 1.2 above). However, it is being used increasingly as a tense marker despite the fact that other time markers may be in the sentence.

²Excluding taxis (taksi) there is a variety of vehicles in Papua New Guinea licensed to carry passengers (pasindia). These include ordinary buses (bas), minibuses (liklik bas) and generally trucks (trak) and utilities (hapka) of various sizes. These normally operate on roads out of main centres and carry cargo (garden produce, personal luggage) as well as passengers, for a fee. All

such vehicles are called PMV (piemvi) (Passenger Motor Vehicle). Here is a photo of a typical PMV that brings passengers and goods into Port Moresby.



(2) "Bai mi go painim mani pastaim"



Bili i laik go long Hagen na em i go baim tiket long opis bilong Air Niugini.¹

Meri: Yes?

Bili: Yes, mi laik baim tiket bilong go long Hagen.

Meri: Long wanem de yu laik go long en?

Bili: O, neks wik. Wanem de balus i save go?

Meri: Long Tunde, Trinde na Sarere.

Bili: O, mi laik go long Tunde. Hamas long tiket?

Meri: Tiket bilong wanwe tasol i kostim K101. Riten tiket o bilong go na kam i kostim K202.

Bili wants to go to Mt Hagen so he goes to buy a ticket from an Air Niugini office.

What do you want?

I want to buy a ticket to go to Mt Hagen.

When do you want to go?

Oh, next week. On what days does the plane go?

On Tuesdays, Wednesdays and Saturdays.

Oh, I want to go on Tuesday. How much is the ticket?

A one-way ticket costs K101. A return ticket costs K202.

¹Air Niugini is the national airline of Papua New Guinea.

Bili: Olsem a? Oke bai mi go painim
mani pastaim na kam bek gen
long apinun. Em i orait a?

*That much is it? All right I'll go
and look for the fare first and come
back this afternoon. Is that all
right?*

Meri: I orait. Lukim yu.

That's okay. See you.

(3) "Em i wanem taim nau?"



A Port Moresby minibus

Yadok i wetim bas i stap.

Yadok is waiting for a bus.

Yadok: He, wanem taim bas i save
kam?

Heh, when does the bus usually come?

Meri: Wanem bas yu laik kisim?
Yu laik go we?

*Which bus do you want to catch?
Where do you want to go?*

Yadok: Long Konedobu.

To Konedobu.

Meri: O sori, nau tasol wanpela
bas i go pinis. Yu wetim
narapela bai i kam bihain.
Planti liklik bas i save ran
i go long Konedobu.

*Gee, one has just gone past. Wait
for another. Lots of minibuses run
to Konedobu.*

Yadok: Em i wanem taim nau?

What's the time?

Meri: Mi no save gut. Hanwas¹
bilong mi i ran kranki
liklik.² Em i tok twenti
minit i lusim seven klok.
Tasol em i no stret. E lukim!
Wanpela bas i kam. Lukim
sain long windo. O, em i
go long Kilakila.

*I don't really know. My watch is
not keeping very good time. It
says twenty past seven. But that's
not right. Hey, look! Here comes
a bus. See the sign in the window.
Oh, it's going to Kilakila.*

Yadok: Yes, mi lukim. Tenkyu tru.

Yes, I see it. Thank you very much.

¹Klok (generally pronounced kilok) is also used for hanwas.

²Other related time expressions are:

Klok bilong mi i dai.
Klok bilong mi i ran kwik.
Klok bilong mi i ran slo.
Yu kam bipotaim (o eli) a?
Yu kam bihaintaim (o let) a?

*My watch's stopped.
My watch's fast.
My watch's slow.
You're early huh?
You're late huh?*

(4) "Inap yu salim wanpela taksi i kam?"

Sakup i laik go long ples balus.¹
Olsem na em i ringim wanpela taksi.

Taski: Yes, Eriel Taksi.

Sakup: Mi laik go long epot. Inap
yu salim wanpela taksi i kam?

Taksi: Oke. Wanem nem bilong yu?

Sakup: Sakup. S-a-k-u-p.

Taksi: Na yu stap we?

Sakup: Long yunivesiti.

Taksi: Long wanem hap tru bai yu
stap?

Sakup: Bai mi sanap long fran long
buksop.

Taksi: Orait, wanpela bai i kam.

Sakup: Long wanem taim?

Taksi: O, inap ten minit samting.

Sakup: Orait, tenkyu.

Olsem na Sakup i ring pinis na i go
wetim taksi.

*Sakup wants to go to the airport.
So she rings up a taxi.*

Yes, Aerial Taxis.

*I want to go to the airport. Can
you send a taxi.*

Okay. What's your name?

Sakup. S-a-k-u-p.

Where are you?

At the university.

Where (which part)?

*I'll be standing in front of the
bookshop.*

Okay, one will come.

When?

In about ten minutes.

Okay, thank you.

*And so Sakup completed the call and
went to wait for the taxi.*

(5) "Long balus o long sip?"

Boroko Post Office, Port Moresby

Fransis i go long posopis bilong
salim pas i go long Siapan.

*Francis goes to the post office to
send a letter to Japan.*

¹Ples balus is now giving way to epot *airport* in modern Tok Pisin.

Posopis: Ya, yu laikim wanem?	<i>Yes, what do you want? (What can I do for you?)</i>
Fransis: Mi laik salim dispela pas i go long Siapan. Em bai i kostim hamas?	<i>I want to send this letter to Japan. How much will it cost?</i>
Posopis: Long balus o long sip?	<i>By airmail or seamail?</i>
Fransis: Long balus.	<i>By air.</i>
Posopis: Foti toea. ¹	<i>Forty toea.</i>
Fransis: Long wanem de bai em i kamap long Siapan?	<i>When will it get to Japan?</i>
Posopis: O asde ol pas i go pinis. Tasol ol i save go long Mande na long Trinde long Kwantas.	<i>Oh the mail went yesterday. It usually goes on Mondays and Wednesdays by Qantas.</i>
Fransis: Oke, em ya, foti toea. Tenkyu tru.	<i>Okay, here's forty toea. Thank you very much.</i>

[Singsing]

"Rabisman" (Sanguma Band)

VOCABULARY

1. Drills

Exercise 1: Simple substitution

Frame: Long nait Yani i sindaun toktok wantaim Wapi.

During the night Yani is sitting down talking to Wapi.

taim bilong wok

work time

wjken

weekend

de bilong malolo

day off

apinun

afternoon

taim bilong kaikai

meal time

nait

Now see if you can remember the Tok Pisin for the following expressions. Ready?

- | | |
|---------------------|--------------------|
| 1. <i>meal time</i> | taim bilong kaikai |
| 2. <i>day off</i> | de bilong malolo |
| 3. <i>weekend</i> | wiken |
| 4. <i>work time</i> | taim bilong wok |

¹At the time of writing it cost 12t to send a letter anywhere within Papua New Guinea, 30t airmail to Australia and 60t airmail to Europe.

Exercise 2: Simple substitutionFrame: Long wanem taim bai yu go?At what time will you go?

de	day
wik	week
mun	month
yia	year
krismas	Christmas
de bilong wok	workday
taim	

Ask the following questions in Tok Pisin. Ready?

- 1.
- On which workday will he come?*

Long wanem de bilong wok bai em i kam?

- 2.
- Which week does the plane come?*

Long wanem wik balus i save kam?

- 3.
- Which year are you going to school in Australia?*

Long wanem yia bai yu go long skul long Austrelia?

Exercise 3: Simple substitutionFrame: Bai yu wokabout o wanem?Are you going to walk or what?

kambek	come back
lainim tok ples	learn the local language
katim diwai i pundaun ¹	cut the tree down
lukautim dispela pikinini	look after this child
skulim ol long Tok Pisin	teach them Tok Pisin
sutim dok ²	shoot the dog
kapsaitim wara long lipti	tip/pour the water onto the tea leaves
wokabout	

¹Note the following Tok Pisin expressions involving katim:

katim gras	to cut grass
katim tok	to interrupt
katim marit	to annul a marriage
katim long tit	to bite off
katim long so	to saw
katim long akis/tamiok	to chop
katim singsing long teprikoda	to record a song (although the origin of katim here is not clear.)

²Sutim is pronounced siutim by most Tok Pisin speakers.

Now, how would you say the following in Tok Pisin? Ready?

1. *He cut the tree down yesterday.*
Asde em i katim diwai i pundaun.
2. *Have you poured water onto the tea leaves?*
Yu kapsaitim wara pinis long lipti?
3. *My mother is looking after my son.*
Mama bilong mi i lukautim pikinini man bilong mi.
4. *Tura is teaching us Tok Pisin.*
Tura i skulim mipela long Tok Pisin.

Exercise 4: Simple substitution

Frame: Ating bai mi baim bas.¹

I guess I'll catch a bus.

baim balus

go by plane

go long kanu

go by canoe

kalap long wilwil
na go²

go by bicycle

salim pas i go
long en

send him a letter

wetim pas i kam
pastaim

*wait for a letter
to come first*

kotim olgeta

*take them all to
court*

baim bas

Answer the following Tok Pisin questions using the English cues provided.
Ready?

1. Bai yu go olsem wanem? *(by bicycle)*
Bai mi kalap long wilwil na go.
2. Long wanem taim bai yu salim pas i go
long masta? *(I'll wait for a letter
to come from him first)*
Bai mi wetim pas i kam long en pastaim.
3. Bai yu mekim wanem long ol? *(take them to court)*
Bai mi kotim ol.

¹Baim bas is another way of saying go long bas.

²Kalap long wilwil literally means to get on a bicycle. Ran long wilwil more properly means to ride a bicycle. However, kalap long wilwil is often used without go to mean to go by bicycle.

Exercise 5: Simple substitution

Frame: Yu kolim nem bilong yu?

raitim nem

spelim nem

autim nem

autim tok hait

adresim skin pas

kolim nem

Say your name!

write

spell

say, cross out

divulge your secret

address your envelope

What do the following Tok Pisin sentences mean in English? Ready?

1. Dispela raskol i no laik autim ol tok hait bilong ol lain bilong en.

This raskol doesn't want to divulge his group's secrets.

2. O sori, mi no adresim skin pas yet.

Oh dear, I haven't addressed the envelope yet.

3. Em i no save raitim nem bilong en.

He doesn't know how to write his name.

2. Supplementary vocabulary

taksi

taxi

pasindia trak

passenger truck

ples bilong taksi

taxi rank

piemvi

any vehicle licensed to carry passengers

hapka

utility

liklik bas

minibus

semitrela

semitrailer

motobaik (or specific brand names
like Honda, Suzuki)

motorbike

kalap long PMV

to get into or board a PMV



¹Some older speakers may use kaunim for *to spell*.

Time, the calendar and weather

kalenda	<i>calendar</i>
san	<i>sun</i>
san i kamap	<i>sun rises</i>
san i godaun	<i>sun sets</i>
lait bilong san	<i>daylight, sun's rays</i>
mun	<i>moon</i>
mun i kamap	<i>moon rises</i>
mun i dai/godaun	<i>moon sets</i>
raunpela mun } bikpela mun }	<i>full moon</i>
nupela mun	<i>new moon</i>
sta/liklik mun	<i>star, planet</i>
sta i lait	<i>star shines</i>
heven	<i>sky, heavens</i>
ples bilong klaut	<i>sky</i>
klaut	<i>cloud</i>
sno	<i>fog, mist</i>
sno i pasim maunten	<i>fog/mist obscures the mountain</i>
klaut i pas	<i>the sky is overcast</i>
klaut i pairap	<i>it is thundering</i>
klaut i lait	<i>it is lightning, lightning is flashing</i>
ren	<i>rain</i>
renbo	<i>rainbow</i>
ren i kamdaun	<i>it's raining</i>
tit bilongen i lait	<i>his teeth are shiny/bright</i>
tit bilongen i tulait	<i>his teeth are very bright</i>
san i lukim mi	<i>sun shines on me</i>
mun i kilim/lukim meri	<i>the girl is menstruating</i>
belo bilong klok	<i>clock's alarm</i>
paitim belo	<i>ring the bell</i>
tudak } ren }	<i>darkness } rain }</i>
i painim mi long rot	<i>caught me on the way</i>
ren i wasim mi	<i>I got rained on</i>
taim bilong ren	<i>the rainy season</i>
taim bilong san	<i>dry season</i>
taim bilong kaikai	<i>lunch time</i>
taim bilong halwara	<i>rainy season, flood time, at the time of high tide</i>
taim bilong draiwara	<i>dry season, at the time of low tide</i>
taim bilong kirap long slip	<i>getting up time</i>

taim bilong win	<i>windy time</i>
tais	<i>swamp</i>
tait i slek	<i>low tide</i>
haiwara	<i>high tide</i>

Exercises

1. Match the appropriate English translations to the given Tok Pisin expressions in the following lists:

tais	<i>alarm (on clock)</i>
bikpela mun	<i>it's thundering</i>
klaut i pairap	<i>mist</i>
ples bilong klaut	<i>full moon</i>
renbo	<i>swamp</i>
sno	<i>sky</i>
belo bilong klok	<i>rainbow</i>

2. How would you say the following in Tok Pisin?

I got rained on

It's low tide

The mist is obscuring the mountain

It's the dry season

It's lunchtime

Darkness caught me on the way

It's getting-up time

3. Ol i kolim dispela wanem long Tok Pisin?

- bikpela samting i stap long heven na yu lukim long nait
- san i godaun na dispela samting i kamap pasim ples
- yu wetim dispela long rot bilong kisim kago i go long maket
- ren i kandaun long en
- yu baim dispela bilong go long epot

[Singsing]
"Rabisman" (Sanguma Band)

GRAMMAR

4.1 bai + verb: future tense

Actions which are to be performed at some time in the future are indicated in Tok Pisin by placing *bai* (now generally shortened in rapid speech to *ba* or even *b*) either before or after the subject. For short subjects like pronouns or single words *bai* tends to come before the subject; for longer subjects it tends to follow. When it comes after the subject it may be followed by the particle *!*. Otherwise the normal rules for the appearance of *i* apply as so far discussed.

For example:

Bai mi go long taun	}	<i>I'll go to town</i>
Mi bai i go long taun		
Bai em i go long taun	}	<i>He'll go to town</i>
Em bai i go long taun		
Nau bai ol i go long taun		<i>They'll go to town now</i>
Dispela man bai i go long taun		<i>This man will go to town</i>

Practice drills

Exercise 1: Simple substitution

Frame: Bai mipela i painim wok nau.

(tupela, mi, ol, yu, mipela)

Exercise 2: Repeat the following sentences moving bai to a position in front of the subject. Ready?

- Ol bai i soim pas long mi.
Bai ol i soim pas long mi.
- Mi bai i lainim Tok Pisin.
Bai mi lainim Tok Pisin.
- Em bai i wetim balus.
Bai em i wetim balus.
- Yu bai i sutim pisin.
Bai yu sutim pisin.
- Mitupela bai i ringim taksi.
Bai mitupela i ringim taksi.

Evaluation exercise

Repeat the following Tok Pisin sentences and say what they mean in English. Ready?

- Mekenik bai i putim ol spepat long woksop.
The mechanic will put the spare parts in the workshop.
- Meri long opis bilong Air Niugini bai i tokim yu.
The office girl in Air Niugini will tell you.
- Narapela tiket bai i kostim hamas?
How much will another ticket cost?
- Bai ol i les.
They will be tired.
- Planti pasindia bai i kalap long PMV.
A lot of passengers will board the PMV.
- Bai ol i sanap wetim bas.
They will stand (up) and wait for the bus.

4.2 save + verb: competence and habitual actions

In Tok Pisin the construction *save + verb* has two closely related meanings. On the one hand it may mean *to know how to do something* as in the following examples:

Yu <i>save</i> raitim nem bilong yu?	<i>Do you know how to write your name?</i>
Em i <i>save</i> kukim kaikai bilong ol Yuropen.	<i>She knows how to cook European foods.</i>

On the other hand it may mean *to do something regularly or habitually*, as in the following examples:

Tasol bas i <i>save</i> kam long hap pas seven samting.	<i>But the bus normally/usually comes about half past seven.</i>
Mipela ol Papua Niugini i <i>save</i> kaikai kaukau long nait.	<i>We Papua New Guineans usually eat sweet potato at night.</i>

The two meanings are closely related, however, in that one gains one's competence to perform an action from having performed it regularly or habitually. Some sentences can therefore be interpreted in two ways, for example:

Yu <i>save</i> wokim haus?	<i>Do you know how to build a house?</i> <i>Do you regularly build houses?</i>
----------------------------	---

In others only one interpretation comes to the fore, for example:

San i <i>save</i> godaun long sikis klok.	<i>The sun normally sets at six o'clock.</i>
---	--

Note that in modern Tok Pisin *save* is usually reduced to *sa*.

Practice drills

Exercise 1: Simple substitution

Frame: Dagi i *save pilai soka* long wiken.

(ridim Baibel, fiksime ka bilong en, wokabaut, dring bia, pilai soka)

Exercise 2: Repeat the following sentences inserting the negative marker *no* in the correct place. Ready?

- Meri bilong mi i *save* fiksime motabaik bilong mi.
Meri bilong mi i *no save* fiksime motabaik bilong mi.
- Husat i *save* raitim nem bilong en?
Husat i *no save* raitim nem bilong en?
- Mi *save* go long wok long Sande.
Mi *no save* go long wok long Sande.
- Dok bilong en i *save* ranim ol kakaruk.
Dok bilong en i *no save* ranim ol kakaruk.
- Olgeta pikinini i *save* lukautim bratasusa bilong ol.
Olgeta pikinini i *no save* lukautim bratasusa bilong ol.

Evaluation exercises

Exercise 1: Repeat the following Tok Pisin sentences and say what they mean in English. In most cases there will be two meanings according to the context and interpretation of *save*. Use the one you think is the most natural. Ready?

1. Ol politisin i no save salim pas i go long mipela ol rabisman.
Politicians don't usually send letters to us poor people.
2. Ol manmeri bilong Saina i save kaikai rais.
Chinese people usually eat rice.
3. Ol i no save raitim nem bilong ol.
They don't know how to write their names.
4. Mun i save kamap long et klok long nait.
The moon usually comes up at eight o'clock at night.
5. Yupela ol raskol i save stilim ol samting bilong narapela man a?
You raskols know how to steal other people's possessions (or valuables) don't you?
You raskols usually steal other people's possessions (or valuables) don't you?

Exercise 2: How would you say the following things in Tok Pisin? Ready?

1. Do you know how to write a letter in Tok Pisin or not?
Yu save raitim pas long Tok Pisin o nogat?
2. My father knows how to shoot fish.
Papa bilong mi i save sutim pis.
3. This old man knows how to make a garden.
Dispela lapun man i save wokim gaden.
4. All boys know how to play soccer.
Olgeta manki i save pilai soka.
5. His wantoks know how to cook corned beef.
Ol wantok bilong en i save kukim (sol)mit.
6. This European woman knows how to harvest sweet potatoes doesn't she?
Dispela meri Yuropen i save kamautim kaukau a?

Finally to end this grammatical section note that the construction using *save* to denote habitual action can be transformed into ones related in meaning using *bilong* to denote a characteristic trait or habit of a person or thing. Compare:

Em i save kaikai olgeta kain samting.
He/she/it habitually eats everything.

Em i man bilong kaikai.
He/she is a 'garbage can'.

Dispela meri i no save hambak.
This woman is not usually troublesome.

Dispela meri i no meri bilong hambak.
This woman is not a trouble maker.

Mi save stap long nambis/maunten.
I live (habitually) on the coast/in the mountains.

Mi man/meri bilong nambis/maunten.
I'm a coastal/mountains person.

Some very common forms in this vein are:

man/meri bilong giaman	<i>a liar</i>
man/meri bilong kaikai	<i>a glutton</i>
man/meri bilong pait	<i>an aggressive person, a warrior</i>
man/meri bilong save (generally shortened to man save)	<i>a learned person, clever person</i>
man/meri bilong toktok	<i>a talkative person</i>
man/meri bilong wok	<i>a good worker, an industrious person</i>
man/meri bilong lotu	<i>a church goer</i>
man/meri bilong singsing	<i>a singer</i>

Practice exercises

Exercise 1: What is the English meaning of the following Tok Pisin phrases?
Ready?

man bilong kaikai	<i>a glutton</i>
meri bilong toktok	<i>a talkative woman</i>
meri bilong giaman	<i>a liar</i>
man bilong lotu	<i>a church goer</i>
man bilong pait	<i>an aggressive person or a warrior</i>

Now how would you say the following in Tok Pisin? Use man in all your answers.
Ready?

<i>a singer</i>	man bilong singsing
<i>a good worker, an industrious person</i>	man bilong wok
<i>a glutton</i>	man bilong kaikai
<i>a church goer</i>	man bilong lotu
<i>a liar</i>	man bilong giaman

Exercise 2: How would you ask someone the following questions in Tok Pisin?
Ready?

1. *What do you (two) normally do on Sundays?*
Yutupela i save mekim wanem long Sande?
Yutupela i save wokim wanem long Sande?
2. *Where do pigs go at night?*
Ol pik i save go we long nait?
3. *Who normally collects the newspaper?*
Husat i save kisim niuspepa i kam?
4. *On what day does the feeder service plane usually come?*
Long wanem de liklik balus i save kam?
5. *How much does it usually cost to send a letter to Japan?*
Em i save kostim hamas long salim pas i go long Siapan?
Em i save kostim hamas bilong salim pas i go long Siapan?

4.3 Days and dates

In Tok Pisin the names of the days of the week and of the months of the year are similar to those in English except for Tuesday, Wednesday, and Thursday which are transliterations of English *two-day*, *three-day*, and *four-day* respectively. Here is the complete list:

Days (de)		Months (mun)	
<i>Monday</i>	Mande	<i>January</i>	Janueri
<i>Tuesday</i>	Tunde	<i>February</i>	Februeri
<i>Wednesday</i>	Trinde	<i>March</i>	Mas
<i>Thursday</i>	Fonde	<i>April</i>	Epril
<i>Friday</i>	Fraide	<i>May</i>	Me
<i>Saturday</i>	Sarere	<i>June</i>	Jun
<i>Sunday</i>	Sande	<i>July</i>	Julai
		<i>August</i>	Ogas/Ogus
		<i>September</i>	Septemba
		<i>October</i>	Oktoba
		<i>November</i>	Novemba
		<i>December</i>	Desemba

Dates are formed, for the purposes of this course, from these and the numerals already learned, in the following way:

<i>Today is 1st August</i>	Tede i de namba wan bilong mun Ogas
<i>Today is 16th March</i>	Tede i de namba sikistin bilong mun Mas
<i>on 21st June</i>	long de namba twentiwan long mun Jun

Learn the frame: Tede i de namba wan bilong mun Jun.

Years are said as in English except for pronunciation differences of the kind already noted, for example:

1913	naintin tetin
1930	naintin teti
1972	naintin seventi tu
<i>Today is 30th March, 1985</i>	Tede i de namba teti bilong mun Mas, naintin etifaiv

Practice drills

Exercise 1: Repeat the following days after the instructor. Ready?

Mande, Tunde, Trinde, Fonde, Fraide, Sarere, Sande

Exercise 2: Repeat the following months after the instructor. Ready?

Janueri, Februeri, Mas, Epril, Me, Jun, Julai, Ogas, Septemba, Oktoba, Novemba, Desemba

Exercise 3: In this exercise we want to give you some practice in using dates and the words for *yesterday, the day before yesterday, tomorrow, the day after tomorrow*. Repeat the following after the instructor. Ready?

Tede i de namba wan bilong mun Jun *Today is 1st June*
 Asde i de namba tetiwan bilong mun Me *Yesterday was 31st May*
 Hapasde i de namba teti bilong mun Me *The day before yesterday was 30th May*
 Tumora i de namba tu bilong mun Jun *Tomorrow is 2nd June*
 Haptumora i de namba tri bilong mun Jun *The day after tomorrow is 3rd June*

All right, now see if you can give the Tok Pisin for the following days and dates. Ready?

Set 1: *Tuesday, Sunday, Thursday, Monday, Wednesday, Saturday*

Set 2: *1st August, 3rd January, 15th July*

Set 3: *today, day before yesterday, tomorrow, yesterday, day after tomorrow*

Good. Now see if you can answer the following questions in Tok Pisin using the cues provided. Give complete sentences. Ready?

1. Yu kolim nem bilong ol de bilong wik! Yu stat long Trinde.
 Trinde, Fonde, Fraide, Sarere, Sande, Mande, Tunde.
2. Yu gat hamas krismas? (which means *how old are you?*) *(twenty-three)*
 Mi gat twentitri krismas.
3. Long wanem mun bai ol i kam? *(March)*
 Bai ol i kam long mun Mas.
4. Long wanem de bai em i kambek? *(8th August)*
 Em bai i kambek long de namba et bilong mun Ogas/Ogus.
5. Long wanem taim yu baim tiket? *(day before yesterday)*
 Mi baim tiket long hapasde.

Construction exercise

Take a piece of paper and draw a calendar for the month of April, 1932, showing the names of the days of the week, and given that Sarere i de namba twentiseven bilong mun Mas, naintin teti tu. Then put a ring around the following:

Anzek De (de namba tupela ten faiv)
 Ista Mande (de namba faiv)
 Epril Ful De (de namba wan)
 Gut Fraide*

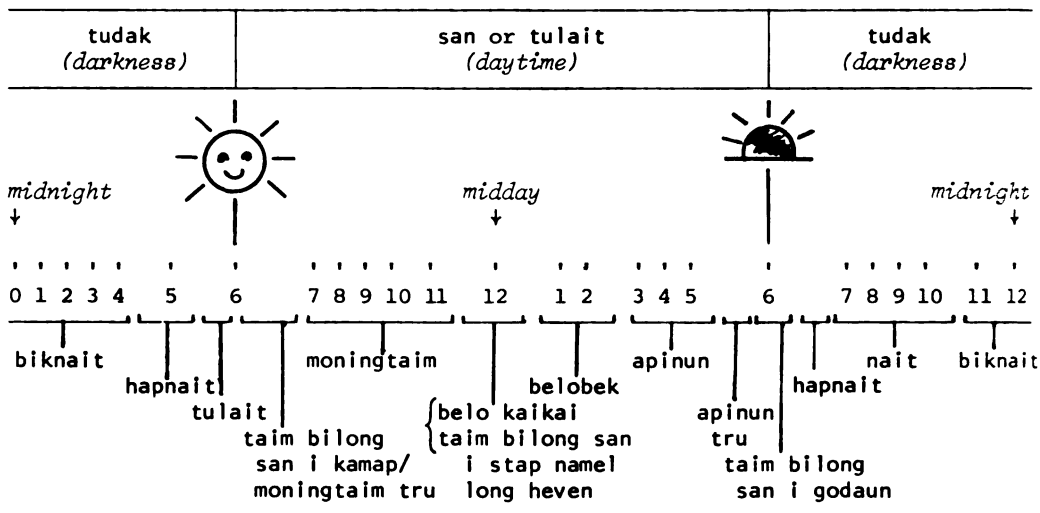
* Epril, 1932

Sande	4	11	18	25
Mande	5	12	19	26
Tunde	6	13	20	27
Trinde	7	14	21	28
Fonde	1	8	15	22
Fraide	2	9	16	23
Sarere	3	10	17	24

Generated on 2022-02-10 03:58 GMT / https://hdl.handle.net/2027/uc1.32106009345213
 Creative Commons Attribution-NonCommercial-NoDerivatives / http://www.hathitrust.org/access_use#cc-by-nc-nd-4.0

4.4 Time

In former times the day was divided up into the following time periods in Tok Pisin:



However, as watches and clocks have become more common and radio broadcasts have made increasing reference to more precise time English time-telling habits are being taken over into Tok Pisin. Thus instead of saying *Yu kam long wok long moningtain* modern speakers say *Yu kam long wok long et klok stret* (or whatever the appropriate starting time is) *You come and work at eight o'clock sharp*. In the following exercises both systems will be presented although more emphasis will be put on the modern system. Before then, however, note the following:

- The adverbs *stret exactly* and *samting about, approximately* modify the said time, for example:

<i>long sikis klok stret</i>	<i>at six o'clock sharp</i>
<i>long sikis klok samting</i>	<i>at about six o'clock</i>
- Notions like the end of the week or month, etc. are expressed in Tok Pisin by *pinis to finish* or *finish, end*, for example:

Yu kam bihain long taim wok i pinis Yu kam bihain long pinistaim bilong wok	} <i>Come after work!</i>
Yu kam bihain long taim wik/ skul i pinis Yu kam bihain long pinis bilong wik/skul	} <i>Come at the end of the week/after school!</i>
- The eve and the night of the day used to be distinguished in the following way:

<i>(on) Sunday night</i>	<i>= (long) Sande long nait</i>
<i>(on) the eve before Sunday</i>	<i>= (long) nait bilong Sande</i>

Now, however, the English system has replaced this, for example:

(on) <i>Sunday night</i>	=	(long) Sande nait
(on) <i>Sunday eve</i>	=	(long) Sarere nait
(on) <i>Christmas Night</i>	=	(long) Krismas nait
(on) <i>Christmas Eve</i>	=	(long) Krismas Iv

- The ideas of *before* and *after* the hour are still often expressed by *i go painim* and *i go lusim* respectively although *bipo long* and *bihain long* are also heard.
- There is no single word for the question word *when* in Tok Pisin. This is expressed by the phrase (long) *wanem* + some time word like *taim*, *de*, *mun* which corresponds to the English *at what/which time, day, month*. This phrase can occur at the beginning or end of the question sentence. Answers to *when* questions are of similar form to the questions except that there are a few words like *tumora*, *asde*, *tede*, *hapasde*, *haptumora*, *bipo*, *baimbai* which are not generally preceded by *long*.

The following exercises are designed to drill these aspects of Tok Pisin time.

Presentation drill

Exercise 1: Refer to the chart given at the beginning of this grammatical section and then see if you can answer the following questions using the English cues provided. Ready?

- Long *wanem taim ol i sindaun toktok?* (*dead of night*)
Ol i sindaun toktok long *biknait*.
- Long *wanem taim bai masta i kamap?* (*lunch time*)
Masta bai i kamap long *belo kaikai*.
- Long *wanem taim ol meri i save kukim kaikai?* (*at sundown*)
Ol meri i save kukim kaikai long *taim bilong san i go daun*.

Exercise 2: How would you say the following times in Tok Pisin? Ready?

<i>8 o'clock</i>	et klok
<i>8 o'clock sharp</i>	et klok stret
<i>about half past 8</i>	hap pas et samting
<i>at 2 o'clock sharp</i>	long tu klok stret
<i>before half past 7</i>	bipo long hap pas seven
<i>after 12 o'clock</i>	bihain long twelv klok
<i>10 minutes past 3</i>	ten minit i go lusim tri klok
<i>25 minutes past 9</i>	twentifaiv minit i go lusim nain (klok)
<i>5 minutes to 2</i>	faiv minit i go painim tu klok
<i>20 minutes to 1</i>	twenti minit i go painim wan klok

Evaluation exercises

Exercise 1: What is the Tok Pisin for the following times? Ready?

11 o'clock; dawn; 8 o'clock sharp; about 6 o'clock; at sunset; half past 2; 20 minutes past 7; after 9 o'clock; at come back time after lunch; before 5 to 10.

Exercise 2: Answer the following questions in Tok Pisin using the cues provided. Use short answers. Ready?

1. Long wanem taim bai em i kisim kago i go long balus? *(at 4 o'clock sharp)*
Long foa klok stret.
2. Long wanem taim yu go long taun? *(at about 10 o'clock)*
Long ten klok samting.
3. Long wanem taim yupela i pinisim kaikai? *(at about 20 to 7)*
Long twenti minit i go painim seven (klok) samting.
4. Long wanem taim bai papa i kambek long taun? *(after 6 o'clock)*
Bihain long sikis klok.
5. Long wanem taim diwai i pundaun? *(at 10 past 8)*
Long ten minit i go lusim et klok.

[Singsing]

Simbu "Kaikumba" flutes, Simbu Province

TEXTS

(1) Wok taksi

In the following interview Mark Jarimij, a middle-aged man from Pagwi on the Sepik River, talks about his work as a taxi driver.

M: A--ples bilong mi tru em i Yamanambu, klostu long Pagwi.¹

T: Na yu-- yu draiva bilong dispela ka--taksi ya, taksi namba wan. Na wok bilong yu i olsem wanem?

M: Am--wok bilong mi olsem long mi save stat long a--sikis klok moning na mipela save wok i go pinis long twelv klok long nait.

T: Na yu mekim wanem long a--long taim yu wok a--wok bi--wok bilong yu i olsem wanem?

M: A--wok bilong mipela long ol-- painim ol pasindias, taim mipela wok long raun raun long rot ol pasindias save stopim taksi na mipela save kisim ol, i go bringim ol long wanem hap ol laik go long em. Na mipela save kisim mani long ol long dispela wok.

T: A--a--long nait yu painim mi long a--mi painim yu long a--ples balus na a--mi askim yu bringim mi i kam antap long hotel Wewak a? A--yu kisim planti man olsem na bringim i kam long hotel o nogat?

¹Note that Mark has distinctive pronunciation for many words.

- M:** Yes. Planti man. Taim balus i bin kam mipela save go redi long kisim ol pasindias long taim ol i kam long balus. Na mipela save kisim ol na bringim ol long Winjama, long Sepik Motel, o Wewak Hotel sapos ol i laik slip long wanem hap, mipela save bringim ol long wanem ples ol laik.
- T:** Na yu kisim sampela--yu save--yu save kisim sampela arapela man i go long a--ples nabaut i stap klostu long Wewak o nogat?
- M:** Yes. Planti. Planti laikim taksi na mipela save kisim ol i go nabaut long wanem ples ol i laik go slip o lukim pren bilong ol na am go--toktok wantaim ol. Em mipela save bringim long wanem laik--a--wanem ples ol i laik long en.
- T:** Am--am--nau olsem wanem yu a--yu wokim am--a--mani o fe bilong dispela?
- M:** A--mipela save putim meta. Putim meta na taim ol i bin raun o wanem hap ples tru ol i laik go, em meta i save sasim ol long hamas ol i ken baim. Em mipela save wokim olsem i go wanem ples ol i laik go long em, em mipela i go long stop na stopim meta wantaim. Orait ol i lukim na save baim hamas tru i--meta i sasim ol.
- T:** Na yu bin wok hamas yia long dispela tak--wok taksi?
- M:** A--mi no wok longpela taim tru. Ating mi wok olsem tri mans nau. Mi wok long draivim bas na ol Piemvi bilong mipela yet. I go na mi les long go long haiwe i go kam nau na mi wok long draivim taksi long hia long taun tasol.
- T:** Na em isi tumas long kisim laisens bilong k--draivim taksi?
- M:** A--i no isi. Em i hat. Tasol sapos man no gat klas siks em i no save draivim taksi. Man i gat klas siks, em i save draivim taksi, na PMV na bas. Tasol man i gat klas tri em save draivim bikpela tipa o wanem kain ka olsem. Na mi yet mi gat klas tri na klas siks. Olsem na mi draivim taksi. Na i hat long baim klas a--laisens tu i bikpela mani long baim laisens long polis stesin. Tasol mi yet mi baim pinis na mi gat dispela. Ova! E, sori!
- T:** I orait.

English translation

- M:** Ah--my real village is Yamanambu, near Pagwi.
- T:** And you--you are the driver of taxi No.1 here. And what's your job like?
- M:** Ah--my job's like this. I usually begin at six o'clock in the morning. And we work until twelve o'clock at night.
- T:** And what do you do during that time? What's your work like?
- M:** Ah--our work is--we look for passengers. When we're driving around on the roads passengers stop the taxi and we take them to wherever they want to go. And we get money for that.
- T:** Ah--on the night you found me--I found you at--the airport--I asked you to bring me up to the Hotel Wewak didn't I? Ah--do you collect many passengers like that and take them to hotels or not?
- M:** Yes, lots. When the planes come in we go and get ready to collect passengers when they come. And we get them and take them to the Windjammer, to the Sepik Motel or the Wewak Hotel. We take them to wherever they want to stay.
- T:** And do you take some--do you take others to villages around about close to Wewak or not?
- M:** Yes, a lot. Many like taxis and we collect them and go to wherever they want to go to sleep or visit their friends and ah--chat with them. Those are the ones we take to--to wherever they want to go.

T: Ah--ah--how do you ah--decide on ah--the fare?

M: Ah--we use a meter. We put the meter on and when we've been around or to wherever they want to go the meter shows the fare to be paid. We do it like that for wherever they want to go and we stop it when we pull up (at the destination). They then look at it and know how much it really costs.

T: And how many years have you been doing this taxi work?

M: Ah--I haven't been working for a very long time. I guess it's three months now. I used to drive our own buses and PMVs. I did that until I got tired of going and coming along the highway and so I am now busy driving only taxis in town here.

T: And is it very easy to get a licence to--drive taxis?

M: Ah--it's not easy. It's difficult. But if one doesn't have a class 6 licence, one can't drive taxis. (If) one has a class 6 one one can drive taxis and PMVs and buses. But those who have a class 3 one can drive big tip trucks or whatever similar vehicles. And I myself have a class 3 and a class 6 one. Consequently I drive taxis. And it is difficult to get a class ah--a licence too. It costs a lot of money to pay for one at the police station. But I have paid for one and I've got this one. Over! Heh, I beg your pardon!

T: That's all right.

Sampela kwestin*

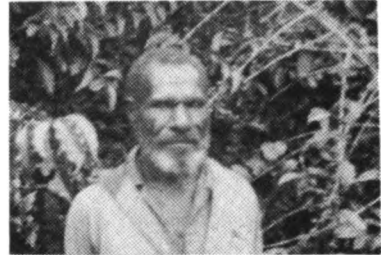
1. Wanem asples tru bilong Mark?
2. Mark i wokim wanem kain wok?
3. Long wanem taim em i save stat na pinis long wok?
4. Em i painim pasindia we?
5. Em i kisim pasindia i go we?
6. Em i yusim wanem samting bilong makim fe?
7. Hamas mun o yia Mark i bin draivim taksi?
8. Bipo em i draivim wanem kain ka?
9. Bilong wanem em i no draivim dispela kain ka mo?
10. Sapos yu laik draivim tipa o kain ka olsem bai yu kisim wanem kain laisens?
11. Bai yu kisim dispela laisens we?
12. Husat i baim laisens bilong Mark?

-
- * 1. Asples tru bilong Mark (em) (i) Yamanambu.
 2. Mark i draivim taksi.
 Mark i (wanpela) taksi draiva.
 Mark i (wanpela) draiva bilong taski.
 3. Em i save stat long wok long sikis klok long moning na em i pinis long twelv klok long nait.
 4. Em i painim pasindia long rot na tu long epot.
 5. Em i kisim i go bringim ol long wanem hap ol i laik go long en.
 6. Em i yusim meta bilong kisim fe. Ol pasindia i lukim meta na i save baim hama tru meta i sasim ol.

7. Em i bin draivim taksi samting olsem tri mun/mans.
8. Bipo em i bin draivim PMV bilong lain bilong en yet.
9. Em i les long go long haiwe i go i kam.
10. Yu mas kisim klas tri laisens.
11. Bai yu kisim dispela laisens long polis stesin.
12. Em yet i baim laisens bilong en.

(2) Land Rova

In this interview Hasu Wage from Nagamiufa village near Goroka reminisces about his first car. Hasu is about fifty years old.



Hasu

D: Wanem nem bilong yu?

H: Nem bilong mi Hasu Wage.

D: Hasu Wage?

H: E.

D: Yu bilong wanem hap?

H: Mi bilong hia long Nagamiufa.

D: Gutpela. A, yu inap tokim mi hamas krismas bilong yu, sapos yu save long krismas bilong yu?

H: O tasol mi olsem bilong bipo liklik na mi no save yia bilong mi.

D: Em i orait tasol. No ken wari long dispela. A, mi save yu gat wan--yu bin gat wanpela ka bipo a-- Land Rova am--em i bin bilong yu tasol o yu na wantaim sampela lain?

H: A, mi-- em mi wantaim wanpela boi i stap wok long mi.

D: A, yutupela i bin kisim we mani?

H: Mani olsem mitupela i save raun nabaut long pilai kas na sampela taim mitupela i save painim long kaukau nabaut long maket. Dispela nau mitupela baim.

D: Yu inap tingim hamas-- hamas a-- dispela Land Rova i bin kostim?

H: A--ol i b--a-- kostim inap long K600.

D: A, K600. A, bipo £600 a?

H: Em.

D: Oke, am--ating yumi lusim pastaim dispela ka na yumi kam pastaim--bihain bai mi kam bek gen long ka. Bai mi askim yu nau long Tok Pisin. Yu bin save --save we long a--tokim dispela tok ples, Tok Pisin?

H: A, mi no skul long dispela. Tasol mi stap long ples tasol na ol man ol i save mekim long en ya na mi harim na mi mekim dispela Pisin.

D: Yu bin save long dispela Tok Pisin pastaim na bihain yu bin baim dispela ka o yu baim pastaim ka na bihain yu save long Tok Pisin?

H: A, em mi save yet olsem na mi baim.

D: Yes. Oke nau bal yumi kam bek nau long ka. A, taim yu bin gat dispela ka nau yu save ran i go we?

H: A, em sampela taim mi save raun insait Goroka long hia na mi painim wanem pasindia i go long wanem hap ol i tokim. Sampela taim mi save go long Simbu. Na sampela taim na mi save kisim ol man bilong Lae mi save go.

English translation

D: *What's your name?*

H: *My name is Hasu Wage.*

D: *Hasu Wage?*

H: *Yes.*

D: *Where do you come from?*

H: *I'm from here, Nagamiufa.*

D: *Fine. Ah, can you tell me how old you are, supposing you know?*

H: *Oh I'm somewhat from the past [when no records were kept] and so I don't know how old I am.*

D: *That's okay. Don't worry about it. Ah, I know that you had a-- you had a car before ah--a Land Rover ah--did it belong to you alone or to you and others?*

H: *Ah, me--me and a labourer of mine.*

D: *Ah, where did you (two) get the money for it?*

H: *We (two) got it like this: we went around playing cards and sometimes we (two) got it from selling sweet potato in the market. We bought it with that.*

D: *Can you remember how much -- how much ah-- this Land Rover cost?*

H: *Ah--they ah--cost up to K600.*

D: *A, K600. Ah, before that was £600 wasn't it?*

H: *That's so.*

D: *Okay um--let's leave the car and come first to --afterwards I'll come back again to the car. I will ask you now about Tok Pisin. Where did you know ah-- know about ah--to speak this local language, Tok Pisin.*

H: *Ah, I didn't study this. But I was in the village and the men spoke in it and I heard it and I spoke this Pidgin.*

D: *Did you know this Tok Pisin before you bought this car or did you buy the car first and then learn Tok Pisin?*

H: *Ah, I know it first before I bought the car.*

D: *Yes. Okay now let's come back to the car. A, when you had this car where did you go in it?*

H: *Ah, sometimes I used to go around about in Goroka in this area and look for passengers who wanted to go wherever they said. Sometimes I used to go to Chimbu. And sometimes I used to take people from Lae down there.*

Sampela kwestin*

1. Hasu i man bilong we?
2. Em i save em i gat hamas krismas?
3. Bipo em i baim wanem samting?
4. Em i kostim hamas?
5. Em i baim dispela ka wantaim husat?

Now to end this unit listen to the recording of a taxi company radio operator calling up one of his drivers.

Base: Ka tri. Ka namba tri. Beis koling yu. Ka tri. Rojadi. Rojadi. Ka namba tri. Ka namba tri. Sapos yu harim klia long mi, yu harim klia long mi, kam long beis. Kam long beis. Kam harim long beis na kisim bos bai i go antap long kothaus, kothaus, ova! Yu harim klia long mi, yu kam long beis na kisim bos bai i go antap long kothaus. Ova!

Supplementary exercises

1. Study the transcript of either of the two texts given in the unit in your textbook and then in your own words in Tok Pisin tell your friend about the one you have chosen. You can do this either as a conversation with your friend or in the form of a report to your friend about what was said.
2. Pretend you are a visitor to Port Moresby and you have to explain to someone, in about six sentences, who you are and what you are doing there. Your answer should include information about the following:
 - a. your nationality;
 - b. what you are doing in Port Moresby;
 - c. how you got there;
 - d. where you are staying;
 - e. where you will be going after leaving Port Moresby;
 - f. you wish to come back again sometime.
3. Pretend your friend is a taxi driver. Ring him up and tell him where you want to go and when he 'arrives' carry on a conversation with him on the way to your destination. The conversation should include a discussion of the fare.
4. Give, or write down sentences showing that you know how to ask the following common types of questions: *Where?; How much?; Why?; Who?; Whose?; When?; How?; Are you...?; How many?; Is he... or not?*

-
- *
 1. Hasu i man bilong Nagamiufa.
 2. Nogat, em i no save em i gat hamas krismas.
Nogat, em i no save yia bilong en.
 3. Bipo em i baim wanpela ka, wanpela Land Rova.
 4. Em i kostim K600.
 5. Em i baim dispela ka wantaim wanpela boi i stap wok long en.

5. Read the following text about making sago and answer the questions given about it.



Washing sago, Gupun village, East Sepik Province. [Photo: Don Kulick]

Saksak em i wanpela kain kaikai. Em i nambawan kaikai long Papua Niugini. Ol i save wokim long wanpela diwai em i save gro long tais long Wara Sepik na long sampela hap tu long Papua Niugini. Pastaim ol i go painim saksak ol i save i gat planti saksak longen. Ol i lukim plaua bilong en na ol i save. Orait bihain ol man i katim saksak i pundaun. Bihain ol i opim na man o meri i save sikrapim insait bilong en o katim paitim. Sikrapim pinis ol i kisim meme na wasim long wara. Ol i wasim meme na saksak stret i ran i go daun long tin o wanem. Bihain ol i rausim wara na saksak i stap. Ol meri i save karim i go long ples na wokim kaikai long en long praipan o sospen o long mumu.

Ol kwestin

1. Saksak i save gro we?
2. Em i wanem kain samting?
3. Ol i save olsem wanem saksak i gat planti saksak long en?
4. Husat i pundaunim saksak.
5. Husat i save sikrapim insait bilong saksak?
6. Ol i kukim saksak olsem wanem?

Now listen to text 26 in Unit 14 and compare the description there with the one above.

6. Listen to text 3 in Unit 14 and see how much of it you can understand.

INTRODUCTION

In this unit we shall be focussing on:

- (1) how to indicate, using *stap*, that an action or state is still going on;
- (2) how to express, using *inap*, the idea of being able to do something;
- (3) how to talk about actions in the past using *bin*;
- (4) how to use *gen* again.

These points will be introduced in the conversations that follow and will be discussed and drilled in more detail in the grammatical sections that follow them.

Other things that are worth knowing are drawn to your attention in footnotes to the conversations and grammatical sections.

CONVERSATIONS

(1) "Mi painim wok"

Long moningtaim Wanipe i kirap na i wokabout i go long Boroko bilong painim wok. Em i lukim planti sain i tok "I tambu. No gat wok". Tasol em i go insait long banis¹ bilong wanpela masta na em i paitim dua:

Masta: Yes, yu laikim wanem samting?

Wanipe: Masta, mi painim wok.

Masta: O sori, mi no gat wok. Yu go askim narapela man.

Olsem na Wanipe i go traim narapela man.

Masta: Yes, wanem samting?

Wanipe: Masta, mi painim wok. Yu gat wok?

Masta: Yu bin wok long haus bipo?

Wanipe: Yes. Bipo mi bin wok long masta Sak long Korobosea. Mi holim pas bilong en.

Masta: Tru a? Yu soim mi. [Masta i ridim pas.] Nn. Gutpela. Tasol yu save long¹ kukim kain kaikai bilong ol Yuropen?

In the morning Wanipe got up and went walking around Boroko looking for work. He saw lots of signs saying "Keep out. No work available". But he went on to the premises of one boss and knocked on the door:

Yes, what do you want?

I'm looking for work, sir.

Sorry, I haven't got any work available. Go and ask someone else.

And so Wanipe went and tried another.

Yes, what's up?

I'm looking for work, sir. Have you got any?

Have you done housework before?

Yes. Before I worked for Mister Jack in Korobosea. I've got a letter of recommendation here.

Have you? Show me. [Masta reads the letter.] Nn. Good. But do you know how to cook European foods?

Wanipe: Yes, em samting nating. Mi save.

Yes, it's simple. I know.

Masta: Tasol yu save long yusim elektrisiti?

But do you know how to use electricity?

Wanipe: Yes, mi save. Mi inap kukim kaikai long pawa. Masta Sak i bin skulim mi.

Yes, I know. I can cook with (electric) power. Mr Jack taught me how to.

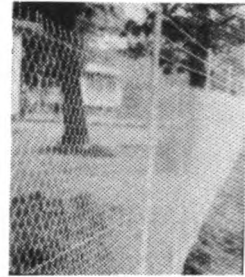
Masta: Orait yu kam bek gen long Mande bilong stat long wok. Yu harim gut pinis?

All right, you come back again on Monday to start. Understand?

Wanipe: Yes, mi harim.

Yes. Understood.

¹At the time of writing breaking and entering was a serious problem in Port Moresby so that people surrounded their houses with high barbed-wire topped fences (banis) and padlocked gates (get) for security (skuriti). Common signs of these fences are "I tambu" ones like the one shown.



²Note here the use of save long + verb as an alternative for save + verb already introduced, from which it differs slightly in meaning. It corresponds to *to know about* in English.

(2) "Mi wetim wok bai i kamap"

Isaia i intiviuim wanpela man i no gat wok:

Isaia is interviewing someone who's out of work.

Isaia: Yu mekim wanem long hia?

What are you doing here?

Man: Mi wok long masta raun.¹

I'm just walking about.

Isaia: Yu no gat wok a?

You're out of work, are you?

Man: Ya. Olsem na mi raun i stap bilong painim wok. Tasol ol i no gat wok.

Yes. And so I'm going round looking for work. But no one has any.

Isaia: Nau yu wokim wanem i stap?

What are you wanting to do now?

Man: Mi wok long² sindaun nating tasol na wetim wok bai i kamap.

I'm busy sitting down doing nothing waiting for jobs to come up.

Isaia: Yu bin traिम ol masta long stua na woksop samting?

Have you tried the bosses in the shops and workshops and other places?

Man: Yes, mi bin traिम olgeta pinis tasol ol i tok "No gat wok".

Yes, I've tried all those and they said, "No work available".

[footnotes opposite]

¹Literally this means *Mr Walkabout* or *Mr Go Round*. It's a metaphorical way of saying *walking around aimlessly*.

²Note here the structure *wok long + verb*. This is a very common structure that is used for *to be busy doing something; to work at doing something*.

(3) "Bipo mi stap tisa"

Kiroki i intivium wangepela man i bin tisa bipo.¹

Kiroki is interviewing someone who used to be a teacher.

Kiroki: Mi save bipo yu bin tisa. I tru o nogat?

I understand you used to be a teacher before. Is that true or not?

Tisa: Yes, i tru. Mi bin tisa long sevenpela yia olgeta.

Yes, that's true. I was a teacher for seven years.

Kiroki: Olsem wanem na yu lusim dispela wok?

Why did you give it up?

Tisa: Mi les long en. Mi laik painim nupela wok. Tasol mi no inap painim yet. Olsem na mi stap nating. Sindaun bilong mi i no stret.

I was tired of it. I wanted to find something different. But I haven't been able to yet. So I'm just existing without anything. My life isn't good.

Kiroki: Tasol yu inap kirapim wangepela bisnis?

But can't you start up a business?

Tisa: Mi inap, tasol mi no gat mani mo. Ol mani i pinis. Bai mi kirapim bisnis olsem wanem?

I could but I haven't got any more money. It's all gone. How can I possibly start a business?

¹Tok Pisin names for professions are generally borrowings from English. Some notable exceptions are *didiman agricultural officer*, *masta mak surveyor*, and *kuskus clerk*.

(4) "Olsem wanem trak i no kamap yet?"



A country road,
Gazelle Peninsula, New Britain

Tupela meri Yava na Tukuru i stap wetim trak long rot bilong kisim kaikai samting i go long bung, tasol ka i no kamap yet.

Two women Yava and Tukuru are waiting for a truck on the road to take their garden produce to market but none has come yet.

- Yava: Olsem wanem trak i no kam kamap yet?¹ Ating em i bagarap pinis o wanem? *How come no truck has arrived yet? Perhaps it's broken down or something.*
- Tukuru: Ating, o ating em i kisim yet planti pasindia i kam. *Perhaps, or perhaps it's picking up a lot of passengers.*
- Yava: Yu ting wanem? Bai yu kisim hamas mani long kaukau bilong yu? *How much money do you think you will get for your sweet potatoes?*
- Tukuru: O mi no save. Bipo mi bin winim K8. Tasol long dispela taim mi ting bai mi winim mo. *Oh I've no idea. Before I got K8. But on this occasion I think I'll get more than that.*
- Yava: Yes, mi tu. Mi laik kisim inap long baim nupela dres. Dispela ya mi putim i bagarap pinis. Mi no inap samapin gen. *Yes, me too. I'd like to get enough to buy a new dress. This one I've got on is worn out. I couldn't sew it up again.*

¹Many speakers are now using stil *still* for yet and i stap to be discussed in section 5.1 below. In that case stil comes before the verb and in front of no as in Trak i stil no kam kamap, or Ating em i stil kisim planti pasindia i kam in the next sentence.

(5) "Mi inap"

- Mem i go lukim Wana, wantok bilong em. Nau tupela i kalkai i stap. *Mem goes to see Wana his wantok. Here the two of them are at the table.*
- Wana: Yu laikim sampela mo -- rais, pis, banana samting? *Would you like some more -- rice, fish, banana or something else?*
- Mem: Nogat. Mi inap long kaikai. Mi pulap. *No thank you. I've had enough. I'm replete.*
- Wana: Oloman, yu inap long kaikai a? Yu no kaikai bikpela. Yu man o yu manki? *Gosh, you've had enough, have you? You didn't eat very much. Are you man or boy?*
- Mem: Nogat, kaikai i winim mi. *No, there's more food there than I can eat.*
- Wana: Tasol¹ planti i stap. *But there's still plenty left.*
- Mem: Mi save. Tasol mi pulap pinis. *I know. But I'm replete.*
- Wana: Oke, mi wokim ti. Yu laikim sampela? *Okay, I'll make tea. Would you like some.*
- Mem: Gutpela. Nek bilong mi i drai. *Thank you. I am thirsty.*

[Singsing]
 "Painim Wok" (Painim Wok Band)

¹Tasol is giving way to bat for *but* in modern Tok Pisin.

VOCABULARY

1. Drills

*Exercise 1: Simple substitution*Frame: Masta, mi laik painim nupela wok.

maritim dispela
meri

ranawe long ples

katim gras bilong
het bilong yu

bihainim pasin
bilong yupela ol
Tolai

bungim ol samting
bilong mi

painim nupela wok

I want to get a new job.

marry this woman

run away from home

give you a haircut

imitate you Tolai

put my things together

Now see if you can answer the following questions in Tok Pisin using the cues provided. Ready?

1. Yu laikim wanem? *(give you a haircut)*
Mi laik katim gras bilong het bilong yu.
2. Ol i laik mekim wanem? *(imitate you Sepiks)*
Ol i laik bihainim (pasin bilong) yupela ol Sepik.
3. Emtupela i laik mekim wanem? *(run away from home)*
Emtupela i laik ranawe long ples.

*Exercise 2: Simple substitution*Frame: Yu bin wok bipo?

wok kaikai¹

wok mak

wok kontrak

wok bus

wok sip

wok

Have you worked before?

*worked for board and
keep – no salary*

do piecework, surveying²

worked by contract

make a patrol

stevedore

Now how would you say the following in Tok Pisin? Ready?

1. *to stevedore* wok sip
2. *to do piecework* wok mak
3. *to work for board and keep* wok kaikai

¹Note the difference between wok kaikai *to work for board and keep* and wokim kaikai *to prepare food*.

²Hence masta mak *surveyor* as noted above.

Exercise 3: Simple substitution

Frame: Yu save long kukim kaikai?

mumuim kaikai

wokim hul bilong
planim man

katim gras long
sarip¹

pasin bilong
digim baret

kukim kaikai

Do you know about cooking?

*cooking in a ground
oven or mumu*

digging graves

*cutting grass with
a sarip*

*the way to dig a
trench/drain*



Pushing hot stones into a mumu hole



Covering a mumu with banana leaves

Now see if you can say the following in Tok Pisin. Ready?

1. *My male cousin knows how to cook in a ground oven.*

Kasen brata bilong mi i save long mumuim kaikai.

Kasen brata bilong mi i save long pasin bilong mumuim kaikai.

2. *They know about cutting grass with a sarip.*

Oi i save long katim gras long sarip.

Oi i save long saripim gras.

3. *When are we going to dig the drain?*

Long wanem taim bai yumi i digim baret?

¹A sarip (or sarep) is a long thin piece of hoop iron about three feet (.9m) long by one inch (2.5m) wide used for cutting grass. These instruments are now being replaced by petrol lawnmowers (mowa) and whipper-snippers (liklik mowa).

Exercise 4: Simple substitution

Frame: Tasol yu inap kirapim bisnis?

halivim mi
wasim ka
brumim ples
sanapim pos
kisim diwai i kam
soim mi rot
kirapim bisnis

But can't you start up a business?

help me
wash the car
sweep the village
stand up the post
bring poles
show me the way

How would you say the following phrases in Tok Pisin? Ready?

1. to sweep the village
2. to start a business
3. to stand up a post

brumim ples
kirapim bisnis
sanapim pos

Exercise 5: Simple substitution

Frame: Mi pulap.

sotwin
kus
sik
kros
hangre
amamas
pulap

I'm replete.

out of breath
have a cold
sick
angry
hungry
happy

All right, can you remember the Tok Pisin words for the following? Ready?

1. angry
2. have a cold
3. be out of breath
4. happy

kros
kus
sotwin
amamas

Exercise 6: Simple substitution

Frame: Oraït yu kambek gen long apinun.

wanpela taim mo¹
tupela taim mo
tu-tri taim mo
long apinun²

Okay come back in the afternoon.

once more
twice more
a few more times

¹These can also be said wantaim (mo), tutaim (mo), etc.

[footnotes continued overleaf]

²Two other useful time expressions which students should know about but which do not fit this frame are *oltaim always* and *wanpela wanpela taim occasionally, now and then, at odd times*. *Oltaim* usually comes at the beginning of sentences and may be doubled for intensity:

Oltaim (oltaim) em i sik. }
Em i sik olgeta taim. }

He's always sick.

Em i kaikai buai wanpela wanpela
taim tasol.

He chews betelnut only now and then.

Now see if you can answer the following questions in Tok Pisin. Ready?

1. Hamas taim em i kambek gen? (tupela taim mo)
Em i kambek gen tupela taim mo.
2. Yu lukim em gen a? Hamas taim? (yes, wanpela taim mo)
Yes mi lukim em gen wanpela taim mo.

2. Supplementary vocabulary

Some body parts

ai	<i>eye</i>
aiglas	<i>spectacles</i>
nus	<i>nose</i>
nus i gat kus	<i>nose runs</i>
yau, ia	<i>ear</i>
tit	<i>tooth, teeth</i>
tang	<i>tongue</i>
maus	<i>mouth</i>
usket, asket	<i>chin</i>
gras	<i>hair</i>
gras bilong het	<i>hair of head</i>
gras bilong usket } gras usket }	<i>beard (but may be mausgras if it includes a moustache)</i>
gras bilong maus } mausgras }	<i>moustache</i>
sol, solda	<i>shoulder</i>
nek	<i>neck, tune, voice, dialect</i>
nek bilong Tok Pisin long Sepik	<i>the Sepik dialect of Tok Pisin (for example)</i>
nek bilong meri	<i>woman's voice</i>
nek bilong singsing	<i>the tune of a song</i>
han	<i>arm, hand</i>
skru	<i>any joint</i>

pinga

finger, thumb (the names of the fingers vary from area to area. One set is: *blkpela pinga thumb, namba tu pinga index finger, longpela pinga middle finger, namba foa pinga ring finger, liklik pinga small finger*)

bros

chest

susu

breast, milk

mama isusulm pikinini

mother (breast) feeds child

pikinini i susu long mama

child feeds from the mother

pikinini i susulm pinga bilong en

the child is sucking its finger

likim

to lick

as

anus, buttocks, posterior part (but importantly also origin, base, cause)

asples bilong gavman

the seat of government

baksait

back

baksait bilong trak

the back of the truck, the tray

bel

belly

lek

leg

fut

foot

pinga bilong fut

toe

mak bilong fut

footprint

skin

skin

blut

blood

blut i kamdaun

blood flows (bleeds)

bun

bone

kok

penis

bol

testicles

bokis, kan, sem bilong meri

female genitals

ai i slip, ai i hevi

to be sleepy

lek i dai

leg is numb

pulim win

to breathe

pulim nus

to snore

klok, pam, hat

heart

klok bilong mi i meknos yet

my heart is still beating/ticking

liva

intestines

han bilong pisin

wing

gras bilong pisin

feather

gras (bilong dok/kapul)

fur (of dog/possum)

haus bilong pisin

nest

tel bilong pisin/dok

tail of bird/dog

pul bilong pis	<i>fin of fish</i>
pul bilong kanu	<i>canoe paddle</i>
pul bilong trausel	<i>turtle's flipper</i>
diwai	<i>tree</i>
han bilong diwai	<i>branch of tree</i>
het bilong diwai	<i>top or crown of tree</i>
plaua bilong diwai	<i>flower</i>
pikinini bilong diwai, prut	<i>fruit</i>
lip bilong diwai	<i>leaf</i>
rop bilong diwai	<i>vine, root</i>
kil bilong diwai	<i>buttress root, tap root</i>
plaua bilong kakaruk	<i>chicken's comb, rooster's comb</i>
mambu	<i>bamboo, pipe</i>
han bilong pik ¹	<i>front leg of pig, shoulder of pork</i>
lek bilong pik	<i>back leg of pig, leg of pork</i>
han bilong siot	<i>sleeve</i>

Some tree names

erima	<i>ilimo (Octomeles sumatrana), tree used for making canoes</i>
-------	---

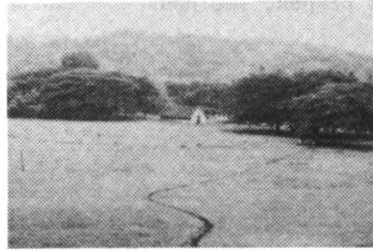


ton, taun	<i>good timber tree with edible fruit (Pometia spp.)</i>
kwila	<i>very hard dark timber (Intsia bijuga)</i>
nakas	<i>pencil cedar (Palaquium spp.)</i>
tulip	<i>tree with paired edible leaves (Gnetum gnemon)</i>

¹Note that dogs, pigs and the like have *tupela han na tupela lek*.

maremare, marmar

raintree (large spreading tree common in lowlands) (*Samanea saman*)



akas

acacia, wattle tree (*Acacia spp.*)

karuka

screw pine or pandanus (*Pandanus spp.*)

tiktri, yati

teak tree (introduced) (*Tektona grandis*)

gamtri

gum tree (*Eucalyptus spp.*)

kamarere

very tall and straight gum tree (*Eucalyptus deglupta*)



fikus

fig tree

yar

she-oak (*Casuarina spp.*) (the most valued tree in the Highlands for fencing, firewood and house building; planted around villages, dance grounds and in gardens)

Some household terms

stov

stove

plet

plate

hap laplap bilong wasim plet

dish cloth

sop

soap

taul

towel

bras

brush

rum kaikai

eating room

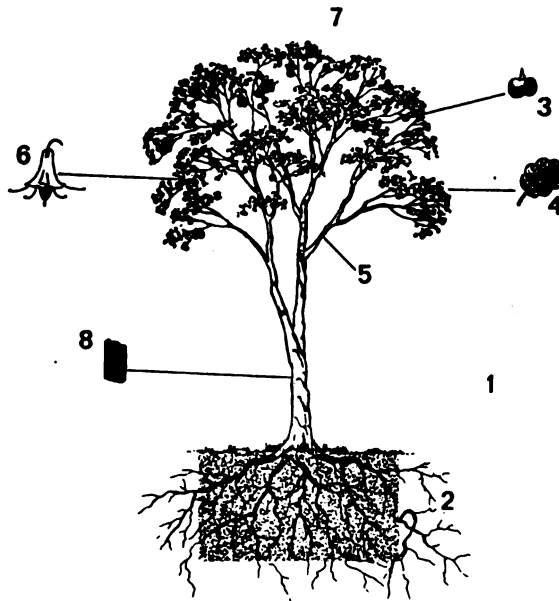
hauskuk, kisen	<i>kitchen</i>
rum slip	<i>bedroom</i>
toilet, haus pekpek, smolhaus	<i>toilet</i>
bet	<i>bed</i>
lata	<i>steps, stairs</i>

Exercises

1. Draw a rooster and label the following parts in Tok Pisin:

tail comb claw beak feather back wing breast/chest

2. Here is a drawing of a tree. What are the names of the parts indicated in Tok Pisin:



3. Match the following Tok Pisin items with their English counterparts:

<i>kitchen</i>	marmar
<i>fur of dog</i>	pul bilong kanu
<i>a paddle</i>	han bilong pik
<i>canoe tree</i>	pulim nus
<i>foreleg of pig</i>	didiman
<i>intestines</i>	pul bilong trausel
<i>snore</i>	hauskuk, kisen
<i>raintree</i>	bokis bilong meri
<i>agricultural officer</i>	dewel bilong diwai
<i>female genitals</i>	gras bilong dok
<i>flipper (of turtle)</i>	liva
<i>tree's shadow</i>	erima

4. What parts of the body are being referred to in Tok Pisin here:

han	bros	sol	baksait	mausgras	bun
yau	susu	nek	klok	as	tis

5. Ol i kolim dispela samting wanem long Tok Pisin?

- samting i stap long maus na yu toktok long en;
- hap daunbilo. Kaikai i save go long en.
- dring bilong pikinini;
- hap yu sindaun long en;
- taim meri i singsing bai yu harim wanem bilong en.

(susu, bel, nek, tang, as)

6. See if you can remember the names of the following trees in Tok Pisin:

- (a) the Casuarina used for fencing, building and firewood in the Highlands;
- (b) the tree used for making canoes;
- (c) the large spreading tree most common in the lowlands;
- (d) the tree that produces very hard and heavy timber;
- (e) pandanus;
- (f) pencil cedar;
- (g) the very tall and straight gum tree (*Eucalyptus deglupta*).

[Singsing]

"Painim Wok" (Painim Wok Band)

GRAMMAR

5.1 Verb + i stap: continuous action

I stap following a verb indicates that the action is in progress or is continuing¹ at the time referred to.²

Mi raun i stap bilong painim wok.

I'm walking round looking for work.

Ating ol i kaikai i stap long haus.

They are probably still eating in the house.

Taim bas i kamap³ Lukas i sindaun tanim smok i stap.

When the bus arrived Lukas was sitting down rolling a smoke.

¹Alternatively stap may be placed before the verb but that will not be drilled in these lessons.

²Time is, as already indicated, marked in Tok Pisin by adverbs (like tumora, asde - see sub-section 1.2) or forms like bai (future - sub-section 4.1) and bin (past - section 5.3 below).

³See sub-section 7.3 below for *when* or time clauses.

If the action has been in progress for some time and one wants to emphasise that it is still in progress at the time referred to then yet *still* is placed before or after i stap, as in:¹

Em i wok i stap yet }
Em i wok yet i stap } *He is still working.*

Alternatively stil is placed before the verb without i stap, as in:

Em i stil wok *He is still working.*

Finally i stap (or stap) may occur in non-verbal predicates, in which case it indicates the continuity of some state. Thus, for example, if asked a question like Yako i mekim wanem i stap nau? *What's Yako doing these days?* one would answer Em i tisa i stap yet (or Em i stap tisa yet) *He's still (being) a teacher.* Stil may be used in these sentences also instead of yet as in Em i stil tisa or Em i stil stap tisa.

Practice drills

Exercise 1: Simple substitution

Frame: Husat i brumim ples i stap yet?

(katim gras, samapim siot bilong en, ridim buk, painim wok, brumim ples)

Exercise 2: Simple substitution

Frame: Brata bilong mitupela i tisa i stap yet.

(doktaboi,² politisen, didiman, tisa)

Evaluation exercises

Exercise 1: Answer the following questions using the cues provided. Ready?

- Husat i mumuim kaikai i stap? (ol lapun meri)
Ol lapun meri i mumuim kaikai i stap.
- Ol i mekim wanem i stap? (kaunim ol taro)
Ol i kaunim ol taro i stap.
- Brata bilong yu i stil dokta i stap? (yes)
Yes, brata bilong mi i stil dokta i stap.
- Husat i wasim yet ka bilong en i stap? (pikinini bilong mi)
Pikinini bilong mi i wasim yet ka bilong en i stap.
- Yu wok didiman i stap yet o nogat? (yes)
Yes, mi wok didiman i stap yet.

¹There are some sentences in which stap may be interpreted as a normal verb given the right pausing and intonation (i.e. as *to be in a place, exist*). Thus a sentence like Ka i kam i stap yet may be said in such a way that it means that the car came and is still where it was parked. If one needs to avoid any such possible ambiguity one would use the construction wok long + verb as in Ka i wok long kam yet (lit. *the car is still busy coming*).

²This was the old form for *medical assistant*. Modern speakers are now using just dokta.

Exercise 2: How would you tell someone the following in Tok Pisin? Ready?

1. that a person from Simbu is still cutting the grass with a sarip.

Wanpela Simbu i saripim yet gras i stap.

Wanpela man bilong Simbu i katim yet gras i stap long sarip.

2. that some of the students are still looking for work?

Sampela sumatin i painim wok i stap yet.

Sampela sumatin i stil painim wok (i stap).

3. that he's not sick but still has a cold?

Em i no sik. Em i kus i stap yet.

4. that you are still learning Tok Pisin?

Mi lainim Tok Pisin i stap yet.

Mi stil lainim Tok Pisin i stap.

5. that the PMV is still coming.

PMV i kam (i stap) yet.

PMV i stil kam yet.

5.2 inap + verb: ability (physically capable)

Ability to carry out an action physically is expressed in Tok Pisin by placing inap (or often just nap) before the verb, as in:

Mi inap samapim.

I can (am physically able to) sew it up.

Yu inap sanapim dispela pos?

Can you (are you physically able to) stand up this post?

Mi bai inap.

I'll be able to.

Bai mi no inap.

I won't be able to.

Note the position of no and bai with respect to inap in these examples.

Practice drills

Exercise 1: Simple substitution

Frame: Mitupela i inap katim gras long sarip.

(mumuim kaikai, rausim pipia, kambek wantaim mo, klinim haus bilong yu, katim gras long sarip)

Exercise 2: Make the following sentences negative by inserting no in the correct place. Ready?

1. Meri bilong en i () inap redim kaikai bilong tupela.
2. Bai ol i () inap kirapim bisnis.
3. Kandere bilong en i () inap raitim pas.
4. Yu () inap katim maugras bilong mi a?

Evaluation exercises

Answer the following questions using the Tok Pisin cues provided. Ready?

1. Yupela i inap subim ka bilong mi i go? (yes)
Yes, mipela i inap subim ka bilong yu i go.
2. Yu inap kukim kaikai long pawa? (nogat)
Nogat, mi no inap kukim kaikai long pawa.
3. Dispela pikinini i inap wok mak? (nogat)
Nogat, dispela pikinini i no inap wok mak.
4. Em i inap wokim wanem? (banis bilong kakaruk)
Em i inap wokim banis bilong kakaruk.
5. Bai yu inap kalap long wilwil? (yes)
Yes, bai mi inap kalap long wilwil.

5.3 bin + verb: past tense

Verbs preceded by bin denote actions performed in the past, for example:

Mi bin traिम olgeta pinis.

I have tried them all.

Mi bin wok kontrak bipo.

I have worked on contracts before.

Note, however, that the use of bin in Tok Pisin varies from speaker to speaker.

Practice drills

Exercise 1: Simple substitution

Frame: Mi no bin gat mani long beng.

(bungim wantok, painim wok, putim mani, lukim wantok, gat mani)

Exercise 2: Make the following sentences negative by placing no in the correct place. Ready?

1. Ol dispela lain i () bin lukim nambis.
2. Smolpapa bilong en i () bin dring kopi.
3. Bipo mi () bin save long pasin bilong wok sip.
4. Husat i () bin stilim kago?
5. Emtupela i () bin baim balus.

Exercise 3: Change the following sentences from past tense marked by bin to future tense marked by bai. In each case begin the sentence with bai. For example, if the instructor were to say ol i bin kam your answer should be bai ol i kam. Ready?

1. Mi bin soim em wanpela ples kanaka.
Bai mi soim em wanpela ples kanaka.
2. Didiman i bin gat kus.
Bai didiman i gat kus.

3. Em tripela i bin halivim dispela manki.
 Bai entripela i halivim dispela manki.
4. Ol i no bihainim dispela pasin.
 Bai ol i no bihainim dispela pasin.
5. Yupela i bin go wok bus a?
 Bai yupela i go wok bus a?

Evaluation exercise

Repeat the following sentences and then say what they mean in English. Ready?

1. Dispela hapka ya i bin bagarap.
This utility broke down.
2. Yu bin stap we?
Where have you been staying?
3. Long wanem taim em i bin studen long yunivesiti?
When was he a student at university?
4. Ol i bin planim meri long seven klok samting.
They buried the woman at about seven o'clock.
5. Ol kakaruk i bin ranawe i go long bus.
The chickens ran away into the bush.

5.4 Verb + gen: repeated actions

Verbs followed by gen indicate repeated actions, for example:

Ol i sindaun gen. *They're sitting down again.*

But although gen always follows the verb its position relative to it in longer sentences is fairly flexible, except if there is an object involved. In that case gen cannot occur between the verb and the object without special intonation and pausing (which tend to emphasise gen) and then only for non-pronoun objects with certain verbs. The following sentences indicate the kinds of allowable variation. Less acceptable sentences are question marked.

Ol i sindaun gen long graun. } *They're sitting down again on*
 Ol i sindaun long graun gen. } *the ground.*

Ol i lukim mi gen. } *They saw me again.*
 ?Ol i lukim gen mi. }

Bai mi givim yu wanpela pik gen. }
 Bai mi givim wanpela pik gen long yu. } *I'll give you a pig again.*
 Bai mi givim wanpela pik long yu gen. }
 Bai mi givim yu gen, wanpela pik. }
 ?Bai mi givim gen, wanpela pik long yu. }
 ??Bai mi givim gen yu wanpela pik. }

Practice drills

Exercise 1: Simple substitution

Frame: OI I sindaun gen long graun.

(singsing, kukim taro, slip, sindaun)

Exercise 2: Repeat the following sentences inserting gen in the most appropriate places. Ready?

1. Yumi i toktok long Tok Pisin.

Yumi i toktok gen long Tok Pisin.

Yumi i toktok long Tok Pisin gen.

2. OI pisin i sindaun long dispela diwai.

OI pisin i sindaun long dispela diwai gen.

OI pisin i sindaun gen long dispela diwai.

3. OI pik bilong mi i ranawe i go long bus.

OI pik bilong mi i ranawe i go long bus gen.

OI pik bilong mi i ranawe gen i go long bus.

4. Em i kambek long Mosbi.

Em i kambek long Mosbi gen.

Em i kambek gen long Mosbi.

5. Em i wetim bas long bikrot.

Em i wetim bas long bikrot gen.

Em i wetim bas gen long bikrot.

Em i wetim gen bas long bikrot.

Evaluation exercise

Say what the following sentences mean in English. Use the past tense when necessary. Ready?

1. Klok bilong mi idai gen long ten minit i go lusim ten klok.

My watch stopped again at ten past ten.

2. OI i no bin rausim pipia gen.

They didn't throw the rubbish out again.

3. Em i paitim dua gen.

He knocked on the door again.

4. Dok i holim pas pik gen.

The dog held on to the pig again.

5. Bai stuakipa i kirapim bisnis gen.

The storekeeper will start up a business again.

[Singsing]

"Lumbo", a Kovai children's song, Morobe Province

TEXTS: Grin Jed restoron

In the following excerpts you will hear Dicks Thomas from Mussau Island, New Ireland Province, talking about the Green Jade restaurant in Boroko, Port Moresby. There are three excerpts which are introduced separately.



Dicks

Excerpt No.1

In this excerpt Dicks is talking about the location of the Green Jade restaurant.

D: A--i gat wanpela chainis restoron i stap long Boroko long ples ol i kolim Tabari Ples. Nem bilong dispela restoron ol i kolim Grin Jed. A--mi no save mining bilong dispela nem. Tasol ating em i nem nating ol i givim long dispela restoron.

Tabari Place, Boroko¹

Long dispela restoron bai yu mas wokabaut i go insait. A-- sapos yu stap autsait yet bai yu lukim sain ol i kolim Osenia Indent Kampani. Oke i gat wanpela pasis i go insait. Em bai yu wokabaut i go insait i go. Insait long dispela rot bai yu lukim ero na sain ol i kolim Grin Jed restoron. Na ero ya em i pointim i go long rot no leta i go antap long haus ya.

Oke long nait mipela i go long hap ya na mipela go insait, mi na Tom, na misis bilong mi, mipela i go antap, sindaun. Insait long dispela restoron i gat planti man, meri, pikinini ol i kam--ol i bin kam kaikai. Na--ol man i wok long dispela restoron ol i -- ol i werim grinpela laplap na grinpela siot. Na ol hap pepa bilong waipim maus, em i grin tu.

English translation

D: *Ah--there is a Chinese restaurant in Boroko in what is called Tabari Place. The name of this restaurant is the Green Jade. Ah--I don't know the meaning of this name but it is probably just a name that has been given to this particular restaurant.*

To go inside this restaurant you have to walk. Ah--if you are still outside you will see a sign called 'Oceania Indent Company'. Okay there is a passage (there) that goes inside. This is the one you go into. In this passage you will see an arrow or sign which has 'Green Jade Restaurant' on it. This arrow points to the way or steps to go up into the building.

Okay on the night we went there we went inside, Tom and I and my wife. We went up and sat down. Inside the restaurant there were lots of men, women, and children who had come -- who had come to eat. And--the men who work in this restaurant-- they wear green loincloths and green shirts. And the serviettes are green too.

¹The restaurant is above and behind the car parked facing Haus Bilas in this photograph.

01 kwestin

1. Grin Jed restoron i stap we?
2. Restoron ya i stap we long haus?
3. Sapos yu laik go insait bai yu go we pastaim? Na bihain?
4. Bilong wanem ol man, meri na pikinini i go long restoron?
5. Ol man wok i putim o werim wanem kain klos?
6. Dicks i kolim 'serviettes' wanem?

Excerpt No.2

In this excerpt Dicks is giving his impressions of the restaurant.

D: Ya, taim mi lukim ol dispela man i--i putim ol yunifom bilong ol long restoron, i luk gut tru. Ples i kwait. Yu ken harim tasol spun i wok long pairap long plet, fok i pairap long plet, a--man i kapsaitim dring bilong en long kap. Na yu harim long baksait tru ol kuk i wok long kukim ol kaikai. Yu harim praingpan i pairap na saun bilong gris i save kuk na i wokim nois insait long praingpan. Ol dispela kain i kamap.

A--mitripela i go insait ya mitripela i bin odaim tripela kain plet. A--Tom em i odaim a--kaikai bilong en. Mi mi odaim fraidrais bilong mi na meri bilong mi, Laniet, em i odaim rais na pis bilong en. Na mitripela kaikai. A--long dispela haus tu o restoron ol i no save salim bia o wanem. Olsem na taim mitripela i bin go, a--Tom i bin karim bia bilong en yet na em i karim sofdring bilong mitupela. Orait taim mipela i putim oda pinis, mitripela i wok long dring isi isi i stap long wetim kaikai. Orait i no longpela taim samting, ten minit i lus pinis, kaikai redi na ol i karim i kam. Orait mipela i kaikai i go i go a--kaikai i planti tru na mipela i no pinisim gut.

A--wanpela samting tu we mi ting em i gupela tru long hap sapos yu go long restoron ya, bai yu yusim a--kain spun bilong ol Saina. Ol i kolim chop stik. A--mi tupela Tom i orait tasol long wanem mitupela i save long yusim chop stik. Tasol meri bilong mi em i no save long yusim chop stik. Olsem na mipela i askim ol man wok i stap insait long restoron ya long givim mipela sampela spun na fok bilong meri bilong mi long yusim. Na mipela yusim chop stik. Mipela bin lainim pinis chop stik na i no hat tumas long yusim. Em gupela tasol.

English translation

D: *Yes, when I saw these men with uniforms on in the restaurant they looked really nice. The place was quiet. You could only hear spoons clattering on plates, forks clattering on plates ah--someone tipping his/her drink into a cup. And you could hear in the background cooks busy cooking. You could hear frying pans banging and the sound of fat cooking and making a noise inside the pans. These sorts of things were evident.*

Ah--*we (three) went inside and ordered three kinds of dishes. Ah--Tom ordered ah--his. As for me I ordered fried rice and my wife, Laniet, ordered rice and fish. And we (three) ate. Ah--in this building, or restaurant, they don't sell beer or whatever. Consequently when we (three) went ah--Tom took his own beer along and he took softdrink for us (two). Well after we had ordered we (three) sipped on our drinks while waiting for our meal. But it wasn't long, ten minutes went by, and the food was ready and served. Then we ate and ate ah--there was really a lot of food and we didn't finish it off completely.*

Ah-- there is something else which I thought was very good there. If you go to this restaurant you will use ah--the kind of spoons Chinese use. They're called chop sticks. Ah--Tom and I were okay because we (two) know how to use chop sticks. But my wife doesn't know how to use chop sticks. Consequently we asked the waiters there to give us some spoons and forks for my wife to use. And we used chop sticks. We've learnt how to use chop sticks and they're not too hard to use. They are really good.

01 kwestin

1. Wanem samting i luk gut long dispela restoron?
2. Dicks em i bin harim wanem kain saun long restoron?
3. Meri bilong Dicks i kalkai wanem?
4. Tom i karim wanem samting i go insait long restoron?
5. Chop stik i wanem samting?
6. Husat i no save yusim chop stik? Orait em i yusim wanem long kalkai long Grin Jed?

Excerpt No.3

In this excerpt Dicks is talking about how he learned to use chop sticks.

D: O gutpela!

Bipo mi stap long Papua Niu Gini, mi no bin save. Mi no save yusim chop stik. Sapos mi save go long ples ol i save yusim chop stik, bai mi save askim tasol long spun na fok o naip bilong kalkai wantaim. Tasol long yusim chop stik, nogat tru! Oke las taim tasol mi bin go long Singapo mi go skul na mi stap nainpela mun long Singapo. Orait long hap ya, em i hat long askim tumas fok na spun long wanem sampela taim haus kalkai i no gat fok na spun. I gat tasol a--chop stik. Orait mi bin ting ating em i mo gut sapos mi lainim pasin bilong yusim chop stik. Orait nau long Singapo mi lainim pasin bilong yusim chop stik na long Singapo yet mi save nau long yusim chop stik. Mi save yusim chop stik na nau i no gat sampela samting. Mi sapos mi laik hariap tasol long kalkai o wanem, bai mi ken a-- hariap tru long yusim chop stik na pinisim kalkai long chop stik. Chop stik i gutpela samting tru long yusim.

English translation

D: *Oh good!*

Before when I was in Papua New Guinea I did not know how (to use chop sticks). I did not know how to use chop sticks. If I went to a place where they use chop sticks I just asked for a spoon and a fork or knife to eat with. But as for using chop sticks, no way! Okay the last time I went to Singapore I went to study and I was in Singapore for nine months. There it is difficult to ask all the time for forks and spoons because sometimes the restaurant doesn't have any. There's only chop sticks. Consequently I thought, "I guess it would be better if I learnt how to use chop sticks". So there in Singapore I learnt how and it was there in Singapore then that I learnt to use chop sticks. I know how to use chop sticks and so now it's no big deal. If I want to eat quickly or whatever I will ah-- use chop sticks quickly and finish off the meal with them. Chop sticks are really good things to use.

Ol kwestin

1. Dicks i lainim pasin bilong yusim chop stik we?
2. Em i stap hamas mun long Singapo?
3. Bilong wanem em i lainim pasin bilong yusim chop stik?

Now to end this unit here is a familiar sound in highland areas of Papua New Guinea. It is a yodel call which is used to send messages across valleys. Such a call is a mixture of spoken and singing speech and may carry up to a kilometre or more. This example comes from the Simbu Province.

[Singsing]
Simbu yodel call

Supplementary exercises

1. Pretend you have just arrived in Port Moresby and are looking for someone to work for you. When someone arrives you have to find out as much about him/her as you can. The things you want to know include the following. How will you ask for this information in Tok Pisin?

Name

Age

Marital status

From which area

Mother tongue

When came to Port Moresby

Where living in Port Moresby

Any relatives in Port Moresby

Any previous work experience

Capable of driving a car

Know how to iron clothes

What wages he/she expects

Any problems you should know about

Anything to say or any questions about the work.

2. See if you can complete the following crossword puzzle. It comes from *Wantok*, No.580 (July 20, 1985), page 20.

SKRUIM TOK

Lep i go long rait

1. kaikai, nogut lang i sindaun long en.
6. Mejistret i save harim
7. Pekato.
8. Long het bilong pik.
9. Kamera i bilong kisim
11. Ol trabelman i slip long gat.
13. Sir Pita
15. Hap ain ya i strong tumas, mi no inap

Antap i go daun

1. Ti Plantesin i stap klostu long Hagen.
2. Pangu i save
3. Spet i pulap long
4. Sak i wanpela
5. Prut.
8. Bikpela pisin bilong PNG.
10. Yumi wantaim.
12. Popi i
13. Rop bilong pasim trausis.
14. No gat bilong yu!

1		2		3		4		5
6						7		
8					9			
				10				
11		12				13		14
15								

3. Can you sort out this conversation?

Kandere bilong mi. Na em i bin kaikai sampela samting bilong yupela a? Yu kamap pinis a? Bilong wanem yu let? Yes, em i kaikai taro na kaukau. Nogat, em i ranawe i go long bikbus. Em i bagarapim gaden bilong mipela pinis. Yu inap painim pik pinis? Pik i brukim banis na mi painim. Em banis bilong husat?

4. Read the following text and translate it into English.

Orait nem bilong mi Muhan. Ples bilong mi stret Tufi. Nau bai mi tokim yu long taim mipela i bin go wok long plantesin. Bipo mipela i stap nating long ples tasol. Mipela i no bin gat laplap, bilas, gutpela dres, o samting olsem mani. Na bihain mipela i stap na harim tok long wanpela kampani masta. Em i bin kam bilong kisim man long go wok long plantesin. Em nau mipela i kirap long go long Wewak na putim nem bilong mipela long kontrak. Bihain mipela i go long plantesin long katim kopra. Tasol mi no bin laikim dispela kain wok. Olsem na mi katim kontrak bilong mi na kam bek long ples. Orait em liklik stori bilong mi long wok long plantesin. Em tasol.

5. Here's a description of what happened yesterday. Can you construct an appropriate conversation between the persons involved.

Asde tupela ka i bin bam. Wanpela draiva i stopim kwik ka bilong en. Olsem na narapela i bamim em long bihain. Tupela draiva i kros. Draiva long bihain em i tok, "Yu longlong!" Na draiva long fran em i tok, "Yu no lukluk. Mi stap kwiktaim tru long wanem dok i brukim rot". Ol polis i kam na askim draiva long dispela birua.

6. Listen to Texts 1 and/or 2 in Unit 14 and say in your own words what each is about.

INTRODUCTION

In this unit we shall be focussing on:

- (1) how to form and use pronouns referring to all of a group of persons or things;
- (2) how to make sentences containing clauses corresponding to those beginning with *who, which, that* in English;
- (3) the form and use of adjectives or words like *big, little, good, bad* that describe the quality, size and shape of things;
- (4) how to express *about to, nearly* using *klostu* and *laik*.

These points will be introduced in the conversations that follow and will be discussed and drilled in more detail in the grammatical sections that follow them.

Other things that are worth knowing are drawn to your attention in footnotes to the conversations and grammatical sections.

CONVERSATIONS

(1) "Em i bikpela klab"

Long dispela toktok meri i toktok wantaim man i save pilai ragbi long Kone Klab.

Meri: Yu save pilai wanem spot ya?

Man pilai: Ragbi na kriket.¹

Meri: Yu memba bilong wanpela klab o nogat?

Man pilai: Yes, mi memba bilong Kone Kaid a-- Kone Taiges klab.

Meri: Em i wanem kain klab?

Man pilai: Em wanpela ragbi klab.

Meri: Em i bikpela klab o liklik?

Man pilai: Yes, em bikpela. Mi ting em i gat santing olsem 200 memba long en.

Meri: Yu save pilai wanem kain ragbi?

Man pilai: Ragbilik.

Meri: Yupela olgeta long klab i save pilai dispela?

Man pilai: Nogat, sampela long mipela i save pilai Osirul.²

In this conversation a woman is talking to a man who plays rugby for the Kone Club.

What sport do you play?

Rugby and cricket.

Are you a member of a club or not?

Yes, I'm a member of the Kone Tigers Club.

What sort of a club is that?

It's a rugby club.

Is it a big club or a small one?

Yes, it's big. I think it's got about 200 members in it.

What kind of rugby do you play?

Rugby League.

Do all of you in the club play that?

No, some of us play Aussie Rules.

¹Two brands or codes of rugby are played in Papua New Guinea — Rugby League and Rugby Union.

²Aussie Rules is the colloquial way of referring to Australian Rules, a code of football that was developed in Australia and is played mostly in the southern states.

(2) "Balus i laik kirap nau"

Edna i kisim susa bilong en, Tuptup, i go long epot.

Edna: Em ya lain bilong yu bilong go long Goroka. Yumi sanap long en na bai ol i sekim tiket na kago bilong yu.

Tuptup: O yes.

Na tupela i kamap long kaunta.

Wokman i tok:

Man: Tiket plis.

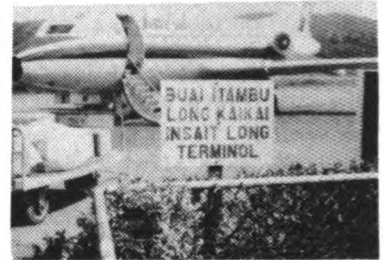
Tuptup: Em ya.

Man: Em olgeta kago bilong yu?

Tuptup: Em tasol. Mi holim wanpela liklik bilum tasol.

Man: Oke. Em i orait. Na yu bin raun long balus bipo?

Tuptup: Nogat. Em namba wan¹ taim bilong mi long go long en.



An Air Niugini plane at Wewak airport

Edna has taken her sister, Tuptup, to the airport.

This is the line for you to get into to go to Goroka. We'll get in it and get your ticket and baggage checked.

Right.

When the two got to the counter the person there said:

Your ticket please.

Here it is.

Is that all your baggage?

Yes. I'm only keeping a small netbag with me (as hand luggage).

All right. That's okay. And have you flown before?

No. This is my first time.

Man: Orait em ya tiket bilong yu.
Yu go wetim ol i singaut
long ol pasindia i go long
balus.

*Okay here's your ticket. Go and
wait until they call passengers to
board the plane.*

Tuptup: Tenkyu.

Thank you.

[Bihain ol i toksave long ol pasindia]

[Later the announcement came.]

Edna: Em nau. Taim bilong yu i
kama nau. Balus i laik
kirap. Lukim yu.

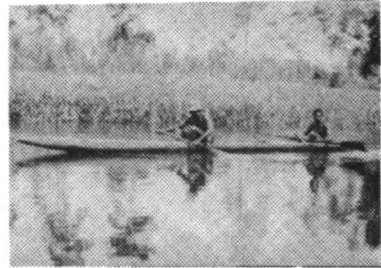
*That's it. Your time's come. The
plane's ready for take-off. See you.*

Tuptup: Tenkyu susa. Lukim yu.

Thank you sister. See you.

¹Note the difference between namba wan *first*, namba tu *second*, etc. used here and nambawan *first rate*, *tops*, *Al* (and compare nambatu *second rate* and nambaten *tenth rate*, *terrible*) used in the next conversation.

(3) "Wara i laik pulap long gras nogut"



Salvinia threatened waterways such as this, East Sepik Province

Pato em i wanpela turis. Em i go long sip ya we i save kisim ol turis i go wokabaut long wara Sepik ya. Em i kambek na em i tokim turis ofisa long ol samting em i bin lukim long wara.

Pato is a tourist. She went on a boat that takes tourists on trips on the Sepik River. She has come back and is now telling a tourist officer about the things she saw on the river.

Ofisa: Wokabaut bilong yu i olsem wanem? I gutpela o wanem?

What was your trip like? Good or what?

Pato: Nambawan tru ya. Mipela olgeta i amamas tru long en.

Great. We were all very pleased with it.

Ofisa: Yupela olgeta i lukim wanem.

What did you (all) see?

Pato: O, mipela i lukim planti viles ya we ol i stap arere long wara. Na tu mipela olgeta i go lukim dispela wanpela bikpela haus long Maprik ol i kolim haus tambaran.

Oh, we saw many villages on the river bank. And we went and looked at that big building at Maprik which is called a spirit house.

Ofisa: Ol i tok¹ wara i laik pulap long ol gras nogut ya, ating salvinia.² Em tru o nogat?

It is said that the river is almost covered in a weed, presumably salvinia. Is that so or not?

Pato: Ol i tok olsem tasol mipela
i no lukim planti tumas.

*They say so but we didn't see very
much of it.*

Ofisa: Em i fes taim bilong yu long
go long wara Sepik?

*Is it the first time you've been to
the Sepik?*

Pato: Nogat. Tasol em i fes taim
bilong mi long go long bot
bilong ol turis.

*No. But it's the first time I've
been on a tourist boat.*

¹Note the expression ol i tok (lit. *they say*) for *it is said*.

²Salvinia is a water weed that was introduced to the Sepik accidentally a few years ago and rapidly spread to cover about 60% of the water surface area. As a result it disrupted normal fishing activities and consequently the livelihood of many Sepik villagers. However, following a very successful biological control campaign in the last eighteen months this weed has all but been wiped out and now covers only about 2% of the water surface area.



(4) "Mi paitim gita"

Raka i intivium wanpela memba
bilong band:¹

Raka interviews a member of a band.

Raka: Wanem nem bilong band yu
save pilai long en?

*What's the name of the band you
play with?*

Man band: Sepik Singas.

Sepik Singers.

Raka: Hamas memba i stap?

How many members are there in it?

Man band: Faivpela olgeta.

Five in all.

Raka: Yu pilaim wanem instrumen?

Which instrument do you play?

Man band: Mi paitim gita na sampela
taim mi save sek sekim ratol.

*I play the guitar and sometimes I
play the rattle.*

Raka: Ratol em i wanem samting?

What's a rattle.

Man band: Em, dispela samting ya we ol i ropim long botoltop.

This thing here with bottle tops strung on it.

Raka: Na ol narapela i mekim wanem?

And what do the others play?

Man band: O, John i save paitim ukelele na Gia em i save singsing na-- o, sori poro ol i laik statim danis nau.

Oh, John plays the ukelele and Gia sings and-- oh excuse me they're about to start the dance now.

Raka: Oke, tenkyu tru.

Okay. Thanks very much.

¹Note in this conversation the expressions used for playing different instruments in Tok Pisin.



(5) "Tasol mi no spakman"

Vakita em man bilong ples na em i toktok wantaim Iri long sindaun bilong en.

Vakita is a villager and here he is talking to Iri about his life (in the village).

Iri: Yu mekim wanem wok long ples?

What do you do in the village?

Vakita: Nogat. Mi sindaun nating.¹ Mi man nating. Mi no bin go long skul. Mi no gat mani, na mi no gat samting.

Nothing. I don't do anything. I'm a nobody. I didn't go to school. I haven't got any money and I don't own anything.

Iri: Tasol yu kisim mani bilong dring bia we?

Well where do you get money to drink beer with?

Vakita: Pikinini bilong mi em i wok long Rabaul, na em i save salim mani i kam long mipela olgeta taim.

My son works in Rabaul and he sends money to us all the time.

- Iri: Yu save dring bia na ol strongpela dring olsem ram tu?
Do you drink beer and other alcoholic drinks like rum too?
- Vakita: Yes, mi save dring. Tasol mi no spakman. Sampela taim tasol mi save spak long bia. Mi no save spak olgeta taim.
Yes, I drink alcoholic drinks. But I'm not a drunkard. Only sometimes I get drunk on beer. I don't always get drunk.
- Iri: Yu save long dispela dring ol i kolim meri buka?²
Do you know the drink called Meri Buka?
- Vakita: Yes, mi save.
Yes, I do.
- Iri: Em i wanem?
What is it?
- Vakita: A, em i wanpela kain ram. Em i kam long botol we i gat piksa bilong meri i stap ausait long en.
Ah, it's a brand of rum. It comes in a bottle that's got a picture of a lady on the outside.

¹Note the use of nating in this conversation. Other useful expressions are:

bokis nating	<i>just a box, an empty box</i>
pipia nating	<i>just so much dirt, worthless</i>
bun nating	<i>just skin and bone, emaciated</i>
kanaka nating	<i>just an ordinary person (not an official).</i>

²Buka used in this expression means *jet black*.

[Singing]

"Meri Sepik" (Ararua Band of Wewak)

VOCABULARY

1. Drills

Exercise 1: Simple substitution

Frame: Em i save salim mani i kam.

He usually sends money.

go painim kapul¹

to hunt cuscus or possum

baim gras bilong kumul

buy Bird of Paradise feathers

spak long pati

get drunk at a party

tambuim gaden

put a taboo on a garden

sapim kanu

carve a canoe

salim mani i kam

Now see if you can say the following in Tok Pisin. Ready?

1. *Vakita is carving a canoe.*

(Use i stap too)

Vakita is sapim kanu i stap.

¹In some areas go lukautim is also heard for *to hunt*.

2. *They don't want to buy Bird of Paradise feathers.*

O*l* i no laik balm gras bilong kumul.

3. *Why did your father put a taboo on this coconut tree?*

Bilong wanem papa bilong yu i tambuim dispela kokonas?

Bilong wanem papa bilong yu i putim tambu long dispela kokonas?

Exercise 2: Simple substitution

Frame: Mi stap nating.

bilas

pret

taitim bun¹

kisim

wok

stap

I'm not doing anything.

dress up for no reason

afraid for no reason

stretch for no reason, exert oneself for no reason

take for no reason, unintentionally, free

work for nothing

Now test yourself with the following. Ready?

1. What was the expression for *to be afraid for no reason*.

Mi pret nating.

2. What was the expression for *to exert oneself for no reason*.

Mi taitim bun nating.

3. What was the expression for *to dress up for no reason*.

Mi bilas nating.

Exercise 3: Simple substitution

Frame: Sampela taim mi save spak long bia.

pasim laplap

rausim kolsinglis

ainim klos bilong slip

bilasim paspas bilong pes

spak long bia

Sometimes I get drunk on beer.

put on a laplap

take off sweat shirt

iron pyjamas

decorate headband

Now answer the following questions using the cues provided. Ready?

1. Yu save ainim klos bilong slip?

(nogat)

Nogat, mi no save ainim klos bilong slip.

¹Compare also: taitim skru
taitim skin bilong palai
long kundu
taitim rot

to tighten a screw or bolt

to tighten the goanna skin on a drum

to hurry or stride out on a journey

2. Yu bin pasim nupela laplap gen? (yes)
 Yes mi bin pasim nupela laplap gen.
3. Yu bilasim hamas paspas pinis? (fopela)
 MI bilasim fopela paspas pinis.

Exercise 4: Revision exercise

So far in this course you have learned how to use the following expressions to indicate position or direction:

long	<i>in, at, to, on, about</i>
bihain long	<i>behind</i>
klostu long	<i>near</i>
long fran bilong	<i>at the front of</i>

Now open your textbook and study the list of other similar expressions before attempting the following exercise.

insait long	<i>inside of</i>
namel long	<i>in the middle of</i>
ananit long	<i>underneath</i>
arere long	<i>beside</i>
bipo long	<i>in front of</i>
longwe liklik long/abrus long	<i>apart from</i>
antap long	<i>on top of</i>

Now see if you can say the following in Tok Pisin? Ready?

- The tourist was sitting on the fence yesterday.*
 Asde turis i bin sindaun antap long banis i stap.
- The village is beside the river.*
 Ples i stap arere long wara.
- My grassknife is under the house.*
 Sarip bilong mi i stap ananit long haus.
- His truck was in front of the shop.*
 Trak bilong en i bin stap long front bilong stua.
- Put the plate in the middle of the table!*
 Yu putim plet long namel long tebol.

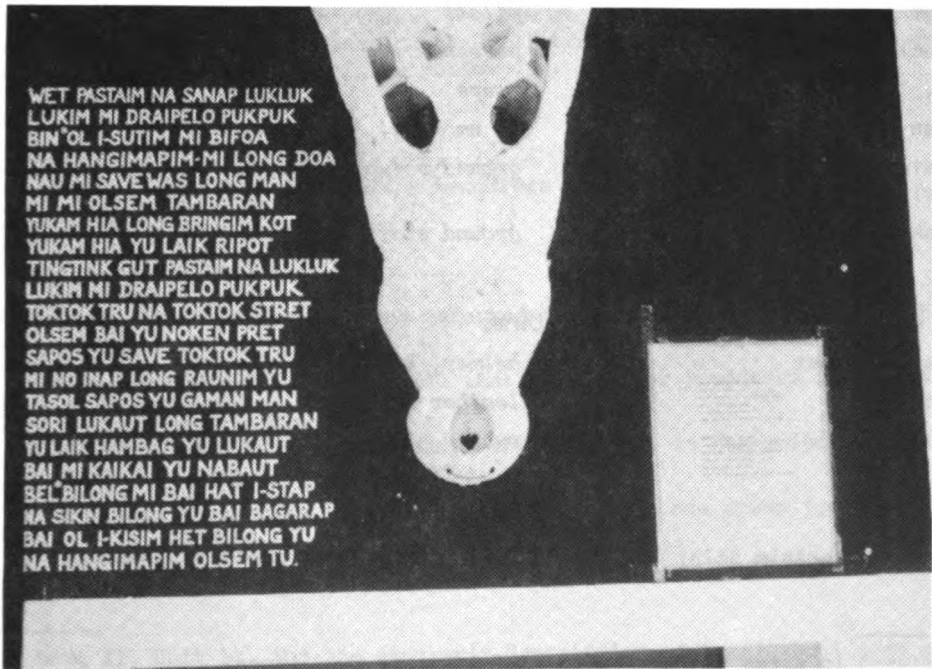
2. Supplementary vocabulary

Some Papua New Guinea animals

natnat, moskito	<i>mosquito</i>
pis	<i>fish</i>
maleo	<i>eel</i>
kindam	<i>crayfish</i>

pukpuk ¹	<i>crocodile</i>
binatang	<i>insect</i>
rokrok	<i>frog</i>
snek	<i>snake</i>
snek i gat gip/poisen } poisensnek }	<i>poisonous snake</i>
moran	<i>python (speckled), carpet snake</i>
sikau	<i>wallaby</i>
muruk	<i>cassowary</i>
blakbokis	<i>flying fox</i>
mumut	<i>bandicoot</i>
sikau bilong antap	<i>tree kangaroo</i>
rat	<i>rat</i>
liklik rat	<i>mouse</i>
kokomo	<i>hornbill</i>
koki	<i>cockatoo</i>
kalangal	<i>parakeet, parrot</i>

¹See text 13, Unit 14, for an interesting account of how some people catch crocodiles. Compare also text 9. Meanwhile see if you can make sense of the following poem which used to stand above the klap's office door at Ioma Patrol Post, Northern (or Oro) Province:



kumul	<i>Bird of Paradise</i>
mausgras	<i>catfish</i>
nilpis	<i>perch or any spiny fish</i>
makao	<i>tilapia (fish sp.)</i>
palai	<i>lizard, goanna</i>

Some vocabulary associated with flying

smokbalus	<i>jet plane</i>
liklik balus	<i>small plane, feeder service plane</i>
kalap long balus	<i>board, get into a plane</i>
balus i gat koropela/propela	<i>propeller-driven plane</i>
ensin i tanim propela i go raun	} <i>the engine is turning the propeller around</i>
ensin i mekim propela i go raun	
propela i raun	} <i>the propeller is turning round</i>
propela i wok long raun o	
tantanim	
sindaun long sit	<i>to sit on a seat</i>
sia	<i>chair</i>
pasim let	<i>fasten seatbelt</i>
hostes	<i>hostess</i>
stiudod	<i>steward</i>
boskru bilong balus/sip	<i>crew of a plane/ship</i>
pailat	<i>pilot</i>
pasindia	<i>passenger</i>
step, lata	<i>steps</i>
No ken smok!	<i>No smoking! Do not smoke!</i>
ol lain bilong lukautim bensin/petrol long epot	<i>ground refuelling crew</i>
ol wokman long epot	<i>ground staff, workmen</i>

Some more clothing and decoration terms

hat ain, helmet	<i>helmet, hard hat</i>
su let	<i>leather shoes</i>
su gumi	<i>rubber shoes, sand shoes, sneakers</i>
mal	<i>genital covering, G-string</i>
kam ¹	<i>shell as penis covering</i>
wel (bilong grisim skin)	<i>fat (for greasing the body), oil</i>

¹Only used in areas where this form of dress is traditional.

kundu	<i>hourglass drum</i>
garamut	<i>slitgong</i>
spia, supia	<i>spear</i>
supia bilong banara	<i>arrow</i>
banara	<i>bow</i>
supsup	<i>pronged spear for spearing fish</i>
supsup bilong banara	<i>three (or more) pronged arrow used for shooting birds or fish</i>
supia i gat huk	<i>barbed arrow or spear</i>
rop bilong banara	<i>bow string</i>
plang bilong pait	<i>shield</i>
stik bilong pait	<i>club</i>
tanget	<i>cordyline plant. Its large leaves are used in magic and as a decoration</i>
gras kumul bilong het	<i>Bird of Paradise headdress</i>
pin bilong nus	<i>nose pin</i>
akis ¹	<i>axe</i>
tamiok	<i>tomahawk</i>
naip	<i>knife</i>

Exercises

1. Pretend you are visiting Papua New Guinea for the first time and are writing back to your relatives about what you saw at the Goroka Show. What Tok Pisin words would you need to describe the following parts of the clothing and decorations used by some of the performers:

<i>shield</i>	<i>decorations (in general)</i>	<i>woman's (grass) skirt (U.3)</i>
<i>drum</i>	<i>barbed arrow</i>	<i>arm band (U.3)</i>
<i>bow</i>	<i>Bird of Paradise headdress</i>	<i>netbag (U.3)</i>
<i>nose pin</i>	<i>penis covering</i>	
<i>spear</i>	<i>club</i>	

2. What animals or birds are being referred to in the following sentences? Give their names in Tok Pisin:

- a large bird with a large bill that is used for headdress in some areas (hornbill)
- a large snake that usually lives in the trees, is non-poisonous, but sometimes comes into houses after rats (python)
- a lizard whose skin is used as the vellum on kundu drums (goanna)
- a multicoloured bird used for headdress (parrot)

¹See text 11, Unit 14, for one speaker's description of traditional axes and adzes.

- (e) an animal that steals food from gardens (bandicoot)
 (f) the large dangerous animal that lives in swamps (tais) and coastal waterways (crocodile)
 (g) the fish that looks like a snake (eel).

3. What do these words refer to in Tok Pisin?

liklik rat	kina	paspas bilong lek
supsup	su let	sikau bilong antap
tamiok	wel	blakbokis
kindam	binatang	natnat

4. The following scrambled Tok Pisin words are names for fish and animals. What are they? Give the English equivalents.

ukrum	kokror	mikand
iakus	kupkup	tumum
tinganba	leamo	kens

[Singsing]

"Meri Sepik" (Ararua Band of Wewak)

GRAMMAR

6.1 Pronouns: olgeta forms

When reference is made in Tok Pisin to all of the participants in an action the adjective *olgeta* *all* is placed after the pronouns *mipela*, *yumi*, *yupela*, and *em*, although *olgeta* by itself is generally used for *em olgeta*. Thus the set of pronouns presented in the preceding units should now be expanded to include the following:

Tok Pisin	Refers to	English
<i>mipela olgeta</i>	the speaker and all those with him but not including the person spoken to	<i>all of us</i> (excl.)
<i>yumi olgeta</i>	the speaker and all those with him together with the person spoken to	<i>all of us</i> (incl.)
<i>yupela olgeta</i>	all of the persons spoken to	<i>all of you</i>
<i>em olgeta</i>	all of the persons or things spoken about	<i>all of them</i>

Practice drills

Exercise 1: Simple substitution

Frame: Yupela olgeta i save pilaim piano?

(yumi olgeta, em olgeta, mipela olgeta, yupela olgeta)

Exercise 2: Repeat the following sentences substituting the *olgeta* form of the pronoun for the dual and trial ones used. Ready?

1. Emtripela i no sindaun nating.
Em olgeta i no sindaun nating.
2. Mi no pret long yutupela.
Mi no pret long yupela olgeta.
3. Bai mitripela i bilasim haus tambaran.
Bai mipela olgeta i bilasim haus tambaran.
4. Meri ya i singaut long emtupela long hap.
Meri ya i singaut long em olgeta long hap.
5. Masta i wetim yumitripela.
Masta i wetim yumi olgeta.

Evaluation exercise

Answer the following questions using the cues provided. You may have to make more than one change in some sentences. Ready?

1. Em olgeta i go we? (Manus Provins)
Em olgeta i go long Manus Provins.
2. Hamas taim yupela olgeta i bin go long Siapan? (wanpela taim tasol)
Mipela olgeta i bin go long Siapan wanpela taim tasol.
3. Yupela olgeta i stap we na yupela i kam? (long Waigani)
Mipela olgeta i stap long Waigani na mipela i kam.
4. Em olgeta i mekim wanem? (taitim rot)
Em olgeta i taitim rot.
5. Husat i sutim kakaruk long banara? (mipela olgeta)
Mipela olgeta i sutim kakaruk long banara.

6.2 Beginning relative clauses: *who*, *which*, *that*

Relative clauses in English are those parts of sentences which begin with *who*, *which* or *that*. For example, in the sentence *I saw the dog that chased my pig* the part underlined is a relative clause.

These clauses come from sentences that have been joined or added to other sentences in a special way. Any sentence can be made into a relative clause and incorporated into another provided it contains a noun or noun phrase that occurs in the other sentence and that refers to the same thing. For example, either of the two sentences:

- 1a. *I saw the dog*
- 1b. *The dog chased my pig*

can be relativised and incorporated into the other because each has the noun phrase *the dog* referring to the same particular animal in it. Thus we could have:

1c. *I saw the dog that chased my pig*

1d. *The dog that I saw chased my pig.*

In Tok Pisin there are three main ways of making such clauses. One way is to take the common noun or noun phrase and change it to *em* (for singular) and *ol* (for plural). For example, consider:

Mi lukim dok em i ranim pik bilong mi

I saw the dog that chased my pig

Mi lukim ol dok (em) ol i ranim pik bilong mi

I saw the dogs that chased my pig

This *em* or *(em) ol* may then be left out as in:

Mi lukim dok i ranim pik bilong mi

Mi lukim ol dok i ranim pik bilong mi.

We will practice this method briefly before returning to the other two methods.

Practice drills

Exercise 1: Simple substitution (using em)

Frame: Mi lukim dok em i ranim pik bilong mi.

(*em i pekpek wara, em i sik nogut tru, em i kaikai rais bilong yu, em i ranim pik bilong mi*)

Now say what the following mean in English. Ready?

1. Mi lukim man em i spak long pati.

I saw the man who was drunk at the party.

2. Husat i lukim pukpuk em i slip long san?

Who saw the crocodile that was sleeping in the sun?

3. Pikinini bilong mi i brukim klok em i stap long haus bilong mi.

My child broke the clock (or watch) that was in my house.

Exercise 2: Simple substitution (leaving out em)

Frame: Ol i soim mi trak mipela i wetim.

(*sampela raskol i bin bagarapim, ol i laik baim, mipela i wetim*)

Now see if you can say the following things in Tok Pisin using the method you have just learned. Ready?

1. *They dug out the kaukau that they had planted.*

Ol i kamautim kaukau ol i bin planim.

2. *I am not able to see the village you are showing me.*

Mi no inap lukim ples yu soim long mi.

Mi no inap lukim ples yu soim mi.

3. *Those (two) are showing me the cargo they brought.*

Emtupela i soim mi kago emtupela i kisim i kam.

Exercise 3: Simple substitution (using em ol)

Frame: Entupela i sutim ol pukpuk em ol i stap long tais.

(painim, salim, hukim, sutim)

Now say what the following mean in English. Ready?

1. Mama bilong en i singautim olgeta pikinini em ol i sindaun long rot.

His (or her) mother is calling all the children that are sitting on the road.

2. Mi laikim ol aiskrim em ol i gat suka insait long ol.

I like ice-creams that have sugar in them.

3. Bai em i baim sampela kakaruk em ol i save gro kwik.

He will buy some chickens that grow quickly.

A second, and increasingly popular way to mark relative clauses in Tok Pisin is to use we (for animate as well as inanimate things)¹, as, for example, in:

Mi lukim ol dok we i ranim pik bilong mi. *I saw the dog that chased my pig.*

Mi lukim bas we i bagarap. *I saw the bus that was broken down.*

We shall practice this method of marking relative clauses briefly before going on to the third method.

Exercise 4: Study the examples given in your textbook again then repeat the following and say what they mean in English. Ready?

1. Mi lukim dok we i ranim pik bilong mi.

I saw the dog that chased my pig.

2. Husat i lukim pukpuk we i slip long san?

Who saw the crocodile that was sleeping in the sun?

3. Ol i kamautim kaukau we ol i bin planim.

They dug up the sweet potatoes they had planted.

4. Ol i no soim mi meri we i samapim siot bilong mi.

They didn't show me the woman that sewed up my shirt.

5. Pikinini we i seksekim ratol em i stap we?

Where is the child who is/was shaking the rattle?

6. Ol i go painim muruk we i stap long bikbus.

They are going to look for the cassowary that is in the jungle.

7. Mi no save kakaikaukau we i nupela.

I don't usually eat sweet potato that is not ready for harvesting.

8. Bai ol raskol i kam brukim haus we i no gat planti man long en.

The raskols will come and break into the house which hasn't got many people in it.

¹Husat is now also sometimes used for *who* in clauses of this type, although it is not yet very widespread.

9. Brata bilong mi i spak long wanpela pati we i stap long taun.

My brother is drunk at the party which is in town.

10. Ol turis we i go long Sepik ol i slip long Ambunti lots.

Tourists who go to the Sepik sleep at the Ambunti lodge.

A third and also increasingly popular way of marking relative clauses in Tok Pisin is to place *ya*, which has already been introduced in other contexts in this course, before and after the relative clause as though they were brackets.¹ Thus for example, the sentences given above as illustrations of the other method could be said as:

Mi lukim dok ya {^{em}_{we}} i ranim pik bilong mi ya.

Mi lukim ol dok ya {^{em}_{we}} ol i ranim pik bilong mi ya.

Mi lukim ol man ya {^{em}_{we}} ol i ranim pik bilong mi.

Mi lukim ol bas ya {^{ol}_{em}} i bagarap ya.

We shall practise this method of marking relative clauses briefly by going back over some of the sentences you are already familiar with. Ready?

Exercise 5: Study the examples given in your text book again and then repeat the following sentences and say what they mean in English. Ready?

1. Husat i lukim pukpuk ya we i slip long san?

Who saw the crocodile that was sleeping in the sun?

2. Ol i no soim mi meri ya em i samapim siot bilong mi.

They didn't show me the woman that sewed up my shirt.

3. Ol turis ya i go long Sepik ya ol i slip long Ambunti lots.

Tourists who go to the Sepik sleep at the Ambunti lodge.

4. Mi no save kaikai kaukau ya we i nupela ya.

I don't usually eat sweet potato that is not ready for harvesting.

Evaluation exercises

Exercise 1: Say the following things in Tok Pisin. Use whichever method you like best. Ready?

1. *I didn't see the flying-fox that ate my pawpaw.*

{
Mi no lukim blakbokis em i kaikai popo bilong mi.
Mi no lukim blakbokis i kaikai popo bilong mi
Mi no lukim blakbokis we i kaikai popo bilong mi.
Mi no lukim blakbokis ya we i kaikai popo bilong mi ya.

2. *Where is the child who fell from the truck?*

{
Pikinini em i pundaun long trak em i stap we?
Pikinini we i pundaun long trak em i stap we?
Pikinini ya em i pundaun long trak ya em i stap we?

¹Sometimes the final *ya* is omitted.

3. Give me the Wantok newspaper you bought.

- { Yu givim mi Wantok niuspepa yu bin baim.
 { Yu givim mi Wantok niuspepa we yu bin baim.
 { Yu givim mi Wantok niuspepa ya yu bin baim.

Exercise 2: Repeat the following sentences and then say what they mean in English. Ready?

- Bai em i baim wanpela taksi em i gat wailis long en.
He'll buy a taxi which has a wireless in it.
- Yu ting wanem? Kago we i kam long balus asde em i stap we?
Where do you think the cargo is that came on the plane yesterday?
- Tupela wantok i lukim kumul i sindaun long banis.
Two friends saw the Bird of Paradise sitting on the fence.
- Dispela man ya em i bilasim het bilong en ya em i wantok bilong mi ya.
This man who had decorated his head is a friend of mine.
- Mi laik go long Konedobu. Olsem na mi no baim bas i go long Kilakila.
I want to go to Konedobu. Consequently I won't catch a bus that goes to Kilakila.

Exercise 3: See if you can say the following in Tok Pisin using the cues provided. Ready?

- The money which is beside the box is mine.* (Use em)
Mani em i stap arere long bokis em i bilong mi.
- Did you see the boys who shot my cassowary?* (Use we)
Yu lukim ol manki we i sutim muruk bilong mi?
- I like this tinned meat which has rice in it.* (Use ya)
Mi laikim dispela timmit ya em i gat rais insait long en ya.
Mi laikim dispela timmit ya we i gat rais insait long en ya.
- Where is the plane that is broken down?* (Use no marker)
Dispela balus i bagarap em i stap we?
- All Simbu like decorations that have Bird of Paradise feathers in them.* (Use em ol)
Olgeta Simbu i laikim ol bilas em ol i gat gras bilong kumul long en.

6.3 Adjectives

The typical adjective in Tok Pisin ends in *-pela* and comes before the noun, for example, *bikpela maunten big mountain*, *yangpela meri young woman*. However, these can also be used as predicates of sentences after *i*, for example, *maunten i bikpela the mountain is big*, *meri i yangpela the woman is young*. At such times most retain the *-pela* but there are some which do not. To complicate the matter even further there are a few pairs of adjectives which have the same form when they come before the noun but different forms — one with and one without *-pela* — when they occur as predicates. The following sets illustrate.

Set 1: Adjectives which retain *-pela* in predicative position

Dispela i bikpela haus.	Dispela haus i bikpela	(big)
Dispela i gutpela kaikai.	Dispela kaikai i gutpela.	(good)
Dispela i longpela diwai.	Dispela diwai i longpela.	(long)
Dispela i blakpela pik.	Dispela pik i blakpela.	(black)
Dispela i raunpela ston.	Dispela ston i raunpela.	(round)
Dispela i hatpela ston.	Dispela ston i hatpela.	(hard)
Dispela i traipela pik. ¹	Dispela pik i traipela.	(large, fat)
Dispela i strongpela diwai.	Dispela diwai i strongpela.	(strong)
Dispela i stretpela pos.	Dispela pos i stretpela.	(straight)

Set 2: Adjectives which lose *-pela* in predicative position²

Dispela i strongpela kaikai.	Dispela kaikai i strong.	(hard)
Dispela i klinpela trausis.	Dispela trausis i klin.	(clean)
Dispela i kolpela wara.	Dispela wara i kol.	(cold)
Dispela i hotpela wara. ¹	Dispela wara i hot.	(hot)
Dispela i sappela spia.	Dispela spia i sap.	(sharp)
Dispela i stretpela man.	Dispela man i stret.	(honest)
Dispela i stretpela tok.	Dispela tok i stret.	(correct)
Dispela i draipela siot. ¹	Dispela siot i drai.	(dry)

Set 3: Adjectives which have two forms in predicative position

Dispela i stretpela man.	Dispela man i stret.	(honest)
Dispela i stretpela man.	Dispela man i stretpela.	(well postured, straight)

Note that there are other sets of adjectives which are not marked by *-pela*. There are two such sets. One set is very small and consists of words like *liklik small* and *lapun old* which you are already familiar with. These come before the noun, for example, as in *liklik pikinini little child* and *lapun man old man*. The other set is very large and consists of words like *nating ordinary*, *bruk broken*, *klia clear*, *Inglis English* which you are also already familiar with. They come after the noun as in the following:

man nating	<i>just an ordinary person</i>
tok giaman	<i>false talk, lies</i>

¹In modern Tok Pisin *traipela large, fat* and *draipela dry* are distinguished as are *hot hot* and *hat hard*.

²This set, except for *strong*, *sap*, and *drai* may also occur with *-pela* in the predicative position, as for example: *Dispela trausis i klinpela*.

ples hait	<i>secret place</i>
bokis nating	<i>empty box</i>
saming nogut	<i>something bad</i>
tok Inglis	<i>English language</i>
ples i go daun	<i>valley</i>
ples malomalo	<i>soft or muddy place</i>
ples tambu	<i>forbidden place</i>
han kais	<i>left hand</i>
han sut	<i>right hand</i>
man kros	<i>angry man</i>
haus marit	<i>married quarters</i>
banana mau	<i>ripe banana</i>
pren tru	<i>real or genuine friend</i>
man yaupas	<i>deaf person</i>
man mauspas	<i>dumb person</i>
man aipas	<i>blind person</i>

In the following exercises all these will be drilled.

Practice drills

Exercise 1: Open your textbook again and study the adjectives given in sets 1 to 3. Now see if you can give the meanings of the following Tok Pisin phrases. Ready?

longpela diwai	<i>long pole</i>
traipela pik	<i>huge pig</i>
hotpela kaikai	<i>hot food</i>
stretpela tok	<i>correct language</i>
draipela siot	<i>dry shirt</i>

Exercise 2: Put the adjectives in the following sentences into the predicate. They all change form. English cues remind you of their meanings. Ready?

1. Ol dispela i kolpela ti. *(cold)*
Ol dispela ti i kol.
2. Dispela i strongpela susu. *(stiff, strong)*
Dispela susu i strong.
3. Dispela i stretpela pikinini. *(honest)*
Dispela pikinini i stret.
4. Ol dispela i draipela trausis. *(dry)*
Ol dispela trausis i drai.
5. Dispela i hotpela ston. *(hot)*
Dispela ston i hot.

Exercise 3: Open your textbook again and study the list of adjectives given as common noun followers. This is the set beginning with *man nating*. Now say what the following phrases mean in English. Ready?

<i>ples nating</i>	<i>empty place</i>
<i>saming nogut</i>	<i>something bad</i>
<i>haus marit</i>	<i>married quarters</i>
<i>han kais</i>	<i>left hand</i>
<i>graun malomalo¹</i>	<i>soft or muddy ground</i>
<i>ples tambu</i>	<i>forbidden place</i>
<i>man yaupas</i>	<i>deaf person</i>
<i>ples i go daun</i>	<i>valley</i>
<i>tok giaman</i>	<i>false talk, lies</i>
<i>ples hait</i>	<i>secret place</i>

Evaluation exercises

Exercise 1: How would you say the following English expressions in Tok Pisin? Ready?

<i>big rat</i>	<i>bikpela rat</i>
<i>broken cup</i>	<i>kap bruk</i>
<i>good bread</i>	<i>gutpela bret</i>
<i>long python</i>	<i>longpela moran</i>
<i>left hand</i>	<i>han kais</i>
<i>soft food</i>	<i>kaikai malomalo</i>
<i>black crocodile</i>	<i>blakpela pukpuk</i>
<i>valley</i>	<i>ples i go daun</i>
<i>dumb child</i>	<i>pikinini mauspas</i>
<i>fat or huge pig</i>	<i>traipela pik</i>

Exercise 2: Repeat the following sentences and say what they mean in English. Ready?

1. *Dispela haus long hap i gutpela.*
That house over there is good.
2. *Kaikai bilong en i hot o nogat?*
Is his food hot or not?
3. *Yu kisim i kam ol siot i drai!*
Bring the shirts that are dry!

¹Malomalo is pronounced malumalum by many speakers from New Britain and New Ireland.

4. Ol dispela meri ya i stret ya em ol i stap we?

Where are those women who are honest?

5. Yupela i inap karim i kam ol dispela raunpela ston?

Are you (pl.) able to bring these round stones?

6.4 laik and klostu + verb: about to

Verbs preceded by laik, especially in combination with nau now, denote actions or states that are about to take place or be realised, for example:

Balus i laik kirap nau *The plane is about to take off.*

This use is similar to that used for expressing a wish or desire that has already been introduced. The two meanings are closely associated in fact and are sometimes ambiguous. Thus, for example, Ol i laik kamapim kantri can mean either *They'd like to improve the country* or *They're about to improve the country*.

A similar result may be achieved by using klostu (or klosap) near, soon instead of laik + verb + nau. Compare, for example:

Klostu balus i kirap.	}	<i>The plane is about to take off.</i>
Balus klostu i kirap.		
Balus i laik kirap nau.		

Klostu diwai i pundaun.	}	<i>The tree is nearly falling down/is about to fall.</i>
Diwai klostu i pundaun.		
Diwai i laik pundaun nau.		

Hariap, klostu paia i dai.	}	<i>Quickly, the fire's just about out.</i>
Hariap, paia i laik dai nau.		

Maski, klostu ren i pinis.	}	<i>Never mind, the rain is on the verge of stopping.</i>
Maski, ren i laik pinis nau.		

Note, however, with respect to klostu, that it does not immediately precede the verb (as laik does) but like the future marker bai pivots around the subject. In general klostu may come before or after the subject although it is generally placed before. There is, however, one important exception and that is for subjects containing adjectives of number like olgeta, tenpela, etc. In those cases klostu must come after the subject if the wrong interpretation is to be avoided without special intonation and pausing. Compare, for example:

Klostu olgeta haus i pundaun. *Nearly all the houses are falling down.*

Olgeta haus klostu i pundaun. *All the houses are just about falling down.*

Klostu may of course be used after the verb and with long to convey the idea of nearby or near as in the following, for example:

Em i stap klostu. *It's nearby.*

Em i stap klostu long haus. *It's near the house.*

In the following exercises emphasis will be placed on the use of klostu, as laik + verb + nau should already be well known by students who have reached this point.

Practice drills

Exercise 1: Simple substitution

Frame: Klostu ol i paitim gita.

(go sutim kapul, kam, sindaun gen, pasim stua, rausim pipia, paitim gita)

Exercise 2: Say what the following Tok Pisin sentences mean in English. Be ready for the klostu olgeta type. Ready?

1. Ol manmeri klostu i go long haus tambaran.

The people are about to go to the spirit house.

2. Klostu olgeta pasindia i sindaun long sit bilong en.

Nearly all the passengers are sitting in their seats.

3. Wewak i stap klostu long wara Sepik.

Wewak is close to the Sepik River.

4. Klostu em i kirapim nupela stua.

*He'll be opening a new store soon.
He's about to open a new store.*

5. Klostu olgeta balus i nidim spepat.

Nearly all the planes need spare parts.

Evaluation exercise

See if you can say the following in Tok Pisin using the cues provided. Ready?

1. *Hurry up, they're about to go.*

(Use laik)

Hariap, ol i laik go nau.

2. *The carpet snake was about to eat the egg.*

(Use klostu)

Klostu moran i bin kaikai kiau.
Moran i bin klostu kalkai kiau.

3. *The hostess is near the steps of the plane.*

(Use klostu long)

Hostes i stap klostu long lata bilong balus.

4. *Look out! The tree is on the verge of falling.*

(Use laik)

Lukaut! Diwai i laik pundaun nau.

5. *My sore is about to heal.*

(Use klostu)

Klostu sua bilong mi i drai.
Sua bilong mi klostu em i drai.

[Singsing]

Feast dance, Finschhafen area,
Morobe Province



Kundu drum

TEXTS

(1) Salvinia

Listen to the following conversation with Jakob Gimbu who comes from the Angoram area on the lower Sepik River. Jakob is discussing the salvinia weed but speaks very fast and has a distinctive pronunciation. See how much of it you can understand.



Jakob

D: A--ating mi bin harim long niuspepa a--nius, na ridim long niuspepa. I gat wanpela kain gras em i save gro long wara. A--yu tok olsem wanem long en, em i k--planti i stap, ol ol i wokim wanem long en?

J: O, ol i tok long dispela gras, ol i tok long sarapina. Em sarapina gras olgeta i pinis. Ol i troimwe liklik binatang i kaikaim olgeta kru bilong ol na olgeta i dai pinis. I no gat mo sarapina. Bai yu go nating tasol em-- Sepik em i wanpela bikpela haiwe. I gat bikpela tait. Tru insait long raunwara, yes! Wan wan ples em i gat dispela i stap. Nau long Sepik, no gat dispela. Stret bai yu ran tasol yu kisim Ambunti, em no gat samting.

English translation

D: Ah--I guess I've heard in the newspaper ah--news, and read in the newspaper that there is a kind of grass that grows in the water. Ah--what do you have to say about it, is it--is there lots of it or what have they done to it?

J: O, they're talking about this grass, they're talking about salvinia. That grass is completely gone. They let small insects go and they ate all the shoots so all the grass has died out. There's no more salvinia left. You'll be able to go without hindrance at all. The Sepik is a big highway. The current is strong. It's true that in the lakes there's some, yes! Individual places have still got some of this. But in the Sepik now there's none. You'll be able to go straight up to Ambunti without any problems.

Ol kwestin

1. Jakob i tok wanem samting i bagarapim wara Sepik bipo?
2. Ol i daunim dispela problem long wanem?

(2) Long go insait long balus

In this interview Julie Piau, whom you met in Unit 1, talks about boarding an aircraft.

D: Nau bai mi askim yu nau long pasin bilong--o askim long ol samting yu save lukim taim ol i askim man na meri go nau long balus. Ol wanem samting yu lukim na wanem samting i save kamap. Yu save long dispela taim bai ol i tok "Passengers on board". Em, samting olsem, o flait dipatja i olsem na bihain ol i laik go nau. Yu nap tokim mipela wanem samting i save kamap?

J: Wet! Taim yu go antap long balus o yu stap yet insait?

- D: Ating yu stat long haus bilong ples balus na bihain i go, go, i go kamap olgeta long insait long balus.
- J: Oke, taim yu go na sekim tiket bilong yu na samting olsem, yu bai i go insait na bai ol man sanap baksait long kaunta ya, bai ol i kisim pepa bilong yu i tok olsem yu lusim Papua Niu Gini nau, bai yu go insait.
- Yu go insait i gat wanpela liklik samting ya, mi no save wanem samting gat--i gat insait tasol olsem sapos yu karim ol samting olsem ain na samting olsem, bai samting ya kra i na bai ol sekim poket bilong yu samting olsem.
- Oke yu go insait am--na yu ken go sindaun liklik o i gat stua insait tu sapos yu laik baim ol sampela smok na olsem hatpela dring na wanem mo?--ol kain kain presen nabaut, yu ken kisim.
- Oke nau --nau bai ol singautim yu long go insait long balus nau. Em ol singautim yu bai yu go wokabaut antap long sea--sea, i no sea a--steps na yu go antap insait long balus. Yu go insait stret long dua ya bai wanpela e hostes bai i stap. Em bai i stap nau, bai yu soim em tiket bilong yu. Bai yu soim tiket bilong yu nau bai em tokim yu, sapos yu sindaun klostu em bai em--pointim a--sea bilong yu na tok, "Yu go daun na stap olsem". O sapos yu sindaun baksait stret, bai em tok, "O yu go na abrusim narapela hostes ya o narapela tupela ya, bai em makim a-- sit bilong yu na bai yu go sindaun".
- D: Gutpela! Na taim yu sindaun pinis, wanem samting bai yu lukim o ol i askim yu long wokim?
- J: Yu--yu sindaun pinis bai olsem lait ya bai i kamap long arere long windo bilong balus ya, ol bai tok olsem yu mas pasim wanem?--let long sea bilong yu na yu no ken--i tambu tu long smok. Na bai yu wokim olsem stap nau bai --sampela taim bai ol karim ol liklik pepa ya i gat olsem--pepa o taul. Yea, sampela taim i gat taul wantaim olsem ol-- i wet a? Na bai ol karim kam givim yu na yu wasim han bilong yu na olsem klinim pes bilong yu kain samting olsem.

English translation

- D: *Now I'm going to ask you about the way--or ask you about the things one sees when they ask passengers to go on board a plane. The things one sees and that usually happen. You know, the time they call out "Passengers on board". That, something like that, or flight departure is like that, and then they are about to go. Could you tell us what happens?*
- J: *Wait! When one goes up into the plane or when one is still inside (the terminal)?*
- D: *I guess you start in the terminal and then go through everything until you get through to being inside the plane.*
- J: *Okay, when you go and check your ticket and things like that you go inside and the attendants behind the counter there take your papers and tell you you are leaving Papua New Guinea and to go inside.*
- When you go inside there is this little thing, I don't know what--it's got inside but nevertheless suppose you are carrying something like iron or something similar this thing will squeal and they will check your pockets or similar places.*
- Okay, you go inside ah--and you can go and sit down for a little while. There is a shop inside too if you want to buy some cigarettes and hard liquor and, what else?, different kinds of presents that are displayed, you can buy them.*

Okay, then --then they will call you to go on board. They will call you to go up into your chair--chair, it's not a chair ah--steps and you go inside the plane.

You go inside right through the door and an air hostess will be there. She'll be there and you will show her your ticket. Having shown her your ticket she'll tell you if you are going to be seated close to where she is, she--she--will point out ah--your seat and tell you to go down further and stay there. Or if you are to be seated right down the back she'll say, "You go and bypass this other hostess or these other two --and she'll indicate--your seat and you'll go and sit down".

D: Good. And when you've sat down, what will you see or what will they ask you to do?

J: You--when you've seated yourself the lights beside the window will come on and they tell you you have to fasten, what is it?--your seat belt and also that you aren't allowed--it's forbidden to smoke. And so you do these things and--sometimes they bring around these little serviettes which have like-- papers or towels. Yes, sometimes there are towels too which-- are wet aren't they? And they'll bring them and give them to you and you wash your hands and wipe your face or similar kinds of things.

Sampela kwestin

1. Wanem kain man i sekim tiket bilong ol man/meri i laik go long balus?
2. Julie i tok wanem samting i stap insait long haus bilong wetim balus long epot?
3. Hamas sea i stap insait long balus?
4. "Abrusim...hostess" i min wanem?
5. Taim yu sindaun pinis long sea bilong yu, orait bai yu lukim wanem samting i kamap? Em i tok wanem?
6. Ol i save kaikai wanem samting o dring wanem kain dring long balus?

Now we'll end this unit with a bit of fun -- a recording entitled "Rausim laplap" which is sung by Gekko, the creation of Greg Seeto of Rabaul. Gekko recordings are popular with Papua New Guinea children.

"RAUSIM LAPLAP"

Rausim laplap mi laik lukim wanem yu save haitim
 No ken seksek mi no ken wokim kain pasin nogut
 Yu no ken pretim mi ya
 Yu no ken ting mi busman
 Mi laik lukim yu, mi laik lukim yu.

Mi laikim yu na mi save yu laikim mi tu
 Mi no marit na mi save yu no marit tu
 Yu mas tokim mama
 Yu mas tokim papa
 Gekko i gat laik, Gekko i gat laik.

Taim mi liklik mi no bin save long kain pasin nogut
 Nau mi lapun mi gat ol kain tingting nogut
 Susu bilong yu em i sanap
 Na mi tu mi sanap
 Yu kam yumi sindaun, yu kam yumi sindaun.

Rausim laplap mi laik lukim wanem yu save haitim
 Yu no ken pretim mi ya, yu no ken ting mi lusman
 Mi laik lukim yu, mi laik lukim yu.

Nau mi lapun no ken sem
 Yu mas kam palnim mi gen
 Mi amamas na mi save yu amamas tu
 Bai mi no ken toktok
 Na yu tu yu no ken toktok
 Bilong yu na mi tasol, mitupela save tasol.

Supplementary exercises

1. Read the following article that appeared in *Wantok* No.580 (20 Julai, 1985, pes 23) and say what it was about in your own words in Tok Pisin.

AITAPE MERI TRAIM VANIMO – VOLIBAL

LONG Sarere 6 Julai ol tim bilong ol meri long Aitape i bin go long Vanimo long salensim ol meri Vanimo long basketbal na volibal.

Moa long 300 pipel i bin kamap long ples pilai long lukim ol meri Aitape i salensim Vanimo long volibal.

Pilai i bin stat gut na tupela tim wantaim i bin bun guria liklik. Long wanem ol sapota bilong tupela tim wantaim i wok long singaut na dispela i mekim ol meri long tupela tim wantaim i guria liklik.

Ol lain Aitape i bin sevim bal. Na tupela sait wantaim i no luksave long husat i spaika. Tasol long taim Aitape i sev Elizabeth Mongas i no isi long bal. Na em i no givim sans i go long ol lain meri Vanimo.

Elizabeth i bin kisim gutpela fiding i kam long Mary Warus na Nolyn Bidau. Tasol i gat wanpela moa lep na rait spaika bilong ol Aitape em Jenny Kungwano.

Ol pilaia bilong Aitape i wok long givim gutpela spaik tru long stat bilong pilai tasol ol Vanimo i no seksek. Rachael ToBudi, Mary Yape, Robina Pona na Luisy Sikraku i wok long stapim bal na pilai isi tasol.

Skoa i wankain inap tupela tim wantaim i gat 11 poin long namba wan set. Em nau ol pilaia bilong Vanimo i stat long soim pawa bilong ol na bikpela das i kamap long ples pilai.

Elizabeth Mongas wantaim ol lain bilong em i wok long pilai strong tru. Rachael ToBadi i flai stret antap na em i wok long bomim Aitape stret i go inap long namba wan set i pinis.

Tupela tim wantaim i go insait wantaim ol nupela pes. Ol nupela pes bilong Aitape em Helen Labau, Rebecca Lega na Lucy Kowe. Na long tim bilong Vanimo ol i putim Scholie Hababuk wantaim Florence Feda.

Pilai long namba tu set i hat tru. Gem i tait na ol spaika bilong Aitape i pilai narakain stret. Ol i pilai wan-ap-na wandaun stail.

Gutpela tim pilai i kam long Elizabeth, Nolyn na Martina Alu. Vanimo i pilai kranksi na liklik taim skoa i sanap 6-10. Tasol liklik Florence Feda i flai wantaim Rachael na Robina na pilai i kamap stail stret.

Pilai i go yet na tupela tim wantaim i gat 12-pela poin. Aitape i laik abrusim Vanimo tasol ol i no inap. Vanimo i strong yet na i winim Aitape long tupela set wantaim. Namba tu pilai i bin kamap na dispela em i 5 set gem. Aitape i bin winim dispela gem 3-2.

Dispela pilai namel long Vanimo na Aitape em i gutpela long wanem em i givim sans long ol

meri long tupela distrik wantaim long kam bung na lukim stail na strong bilong ol long dispela gem. Na tu ol meri long tupela tim wantaim i ken skelim gut pilai na traime long strongim tim bilong ol long taim ol i go bek. Asosiesen bilong ol meri long Aitape i bin tingting long dispela olsem na ol i salim ol meri bilong ol i go pilai wantaim tim bilong ol meri long Vanimo.

2. Write a letter to the editor of *Wantok* agreeing or disagreeing with the sentiments expressed in the letter given in the Supplementary exercises in Unit 3: "Meri mas balm dua .
3. Listen to texts 8 and 22 in Unit 14 and then say what they are about in your own words.
4. Here is a letter from a son to his mother. The mother has brought it along to you to tell her what is in it because she cannot read. Explain to her what is in it. The letter is based on a real letter and is typical of the structure of letters in Tok Pisin.

Dia Mama,

Nau mi Elijah i kam stap sambai pinis long toktok wantaim yu. Halo na gutnait tru mama mi pikinini bilong yu Elijah. Mi laik tokim yu bilong wanem mi no bekim pas bilong yu.

Yes mama mi no gat sik samting tasol mi no stap long wanpela hap tasol. Mi wok long raun raun nabaut na mi no bekim pas bilong yu.

Yu ken kros liklik long mi. No gat tok. Orait yu harim gut nau. Long namba 12 de long mun Oktoba mi na 4pela man mipela i go patrol long hap bilong Striklan riva. Mipela i go patrol 3pela wik na mipela kam bek gen long Sande.

Long Sande mipela kamap long kem na stap long Mande, Tunde, Trinde na Fonde. Long Fraide ol i salim mi i go stret long Ed Pos. Na mi stap long Ed Pos wan mun olgeta. Olsem na mi no bekim pas bilong yu kwik. Long Novemba 3 mi go stap na long Desemba 8 mi kam bek long kem gen. Taim mi kamap mi kisim pas bilong yu wantaim papa. Tasol mama mi laik yu tokim mi long wanpela liklik tokwin mi bin harim long Maria em i wokabaut wantaim narapela man. Mi laik bai yupela mas tok stret long mi. Na bai mi save.

Mi wari long dispela toktok. Plis yu bekim pas bilong mi kwiktaim. Mi krosim yupela bipo. Yupela harim o nogat? Mi bai mi kam long Mun Februeri long 1987. Em tasol tok bilong mi. Gutnait mama. Mi

Elijah.

5. Expand these sentences in each of the following ways:
 - (a) with a suitable adjective;
 - (b) with a relative clause in the three ways taught in this unit:
 - i. Husat i lukautim dispela pikinini?
 - ii. Ol i go painim kanu.
 - iii. Yu go kisim laplap bilong mi i kam!

6. Restate the following sentences changing the adjectives to ones of opposite meaning:

- i. Yupela i rausim ol bikpela kiau o nogat?
- ii. Dispela su gumi i gutpela.
- iii. Dogare i putim longpela sok long lek bilongen.
- iv. Mi no save kaikai hotpela kaikai.
- v. Ol blakpela man i olsem brata bilong mipela.

INTRODUCTION

In this unit we shall be focussing on:

- (1) how to answer *why* questions using bilong wanem *because*;
- (2) how to make more relative clauses corresponding to those beginning with *to which*, *to whom* in English;
- (3) how to explain when something will happen or has happened;
- (4) how to tell someone not to do something, that is, to give negative commands or imperatives.

These points will be introduced in the conversations that follow and will be discussed and drilled in more detail in the grammatical sections that follow them.

Other things that are worth knowing are drawn to your attention in footnotes to the conversations and grammatical sections.

CONVERSATIONS

(1) "Mi raskol"

Long dispela toktok Moka intaviuim wampela raskol.

Moka: Bilong wanem ol i kolim yu raskol?

Raskol: Bilong wanem mi save brukim haus, stilim sampela samting o bagarapim ol samting bilong narapela man.

Moka: Bilong wanem yu mekim kain pasin olsem?

Raskol: Bilong wanem mi no gat mani.

Moka: Bilong wanem? Yu no bin go long skul?

Raskol: Taim mi manki yet papa bilong mi i bin dai na ol i holim mi pas long ples bilong lukautim mama bilong mipela.

Moka: Na bihain, taim yu bikpela, yu mekim wanem?

Raskol: O mi les long stap long ples na mi ranawe i kam long Mosbi bilong painim wok. Tasol mi no gat wok na mi kamap raskol wantaim olgeta arapela lain i stap long biktaun ya.

In this conversation Moka is interviewing a raskol.

Why are you called a raskol?

Because I break houses, steal things or spoil other people's things.

Why do you do those kinds of things?

Because I haven't got any money.

Why? Didn't you go to school?

While I was still a boy my father died and I was kept in the village to look after our mother.

And afterwards when you were grown up what did you do?

Oh, I was tired of staying in the village so I ran away to Port Moresby to look for work. But there wasn't any so I became a raskol together with all the others who are living in this city.

(2) "Mi stap longwe liklik long wok"

Marus i wanpela taipis long Pablik Sevis. Sampela taim em i kam let¹ long wok. Wanpela taim em i kam let orait bos bilong em i singautim em i go insait long opis bilong em.

Bosman: E Marus, mi laik askim yu long wanem yu save kam let long wok?

Marus: O mi sori tumas. Mi stap longwe liklik² long ples bilong wok na mi no inap kam long taim bilong stat.

Bosman: Yu save? Husat man na meri i let long wok bai ol i rausim ol.

Marus: Mi save. Tasol i gat planti ka na bas long rot long moning na bas mi kisim i no inap ran kwik.

Bosman: Tru a? Ating mi save nau. Tasol ating i mobeta sapos yu lusim dispela bas na kisim narapela. Nogut mi rausim yu long wok.

Marus: Orait mi save. Bai mi traim.

Marus is a typist in the Public Service. Sometimes she comes late to work. Once when she came late her boss called her into his office.

Marus, I'd like to ask you why you come late to work?

I'm very sorry but I live quite a distance away from the office and I can't get here on time.

You know that whoever is late for work will be dismissed?

I know but there is a lot of traffic on the roads in the morning and the bus that I catch is not able to travel quickly.

Is that so? I guess I understand now. But it would be better if you gave up that bus and caught another one. It wouldn't be good if I sacked you.

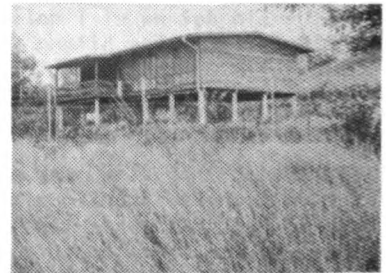
All right I understand. I'll try.

¹In older forms of Tok Pisin bihaintaim was used for let *late* and bipotaim for modern eli *early*. Nowadays bihaintaim is used for *later on* and bihain long X for *behind in X* as in Mi bihain long wok bilong mi *I'm behind in my work* or *I'm late with my work*.

²For ways of modifying and intensifying adjectives see sub-section 9.3 below.

(3) "Bilong wanem haus i liklik"

Long dispela toktok Ovin na Lanset tupela i toktok long haus bilong Ovin na man bilong en.



A new Housing Commission house, Port Moresby

In this conversation Ovin and Lanset talk about Ovin and her husband's house.

Lanset: Bilong wanem yupela i go long nupela haus?

Ovin: Bilong wanem haus mipela i bin i stap long en bipo em i liklik. Dispela nupela ya em i bikpela.

Lanset: Yu baim dispela haus pinis?

Ovin: Nogat, mipela i rentim long Hausing Komisen. Mipela i ken baim sapos mipela i laik. Tasol bipo long taim mipela i ken baim mipela i mas sevim o bungim planti mani.

Lanset: Yu bungim mani long beng i stap?

Ovin: Nogat ya! Mipela i holim long han.

Lanset: O bilong wanem? Yu no ken mekim olsem! Yu mas lusim dispela pasin. Nogut bai raskol i kam stilim.

Ovin: Ol i ken kam. Mipela i haitim gut tru.

Lanset: Oloman! Kas bilong yu!

Why did you shift to a new house?

Because the house that we were in before was small. This new one is big.

Have you bought this one?

No we rent it from the Housing Commission. We can buy it if we want to. But before we can buy it we have to save or amass a lot of money.

Are you saving it in the bank?

Certainly not! We're keeping it at home.

Oh what for? You shouldn't do that. Give that up. It wouldn't be good if a raskol came and stole it.

They can come. We've hidden it very well.

My God! That's your lookout!

(4) "Mi sapota bilong Pangu Pati"



Peta i wokabout long rot na bungim wantok bilong en Ngatur em i putim T-siot bilong Pangu Pati.

Peta: E, plis, Ngatur. Bilong wanem yu putim dispela T-siot i gat mak "Pangu Pati i save rot" long en?

Ngatur: A, long wanem mi sapota bilong Pangu Pati ya.

Peta: Bilong wanem yu sapotim dispela pati?

Ngatur: Mi sapotim bikos em i gat gutpela polisi.

Peta: Wanem kain polisi stret bilong Pangu Pati?

Peta is walking about on the street and meets a friend Ngatur who has a Pangu Party T-shirt on.

Heh, Ngatur, why have you got that T-shirt on with that advertisement "Pangu Party knows the way" on it?

Because I'm a supporter of the Pangu Party.

Why do you support this party?

I support it because it has good policies.

What's its policy like?

Ngatur: A, namba wan polisi bilong em i olsem: yumi ol Papua Niu Gini i mas bung wantaim na mekim kantri bilong yumi i gohet. Nogut sampela lain i pulim kantri bilong yumi i go long narapela hap na sampela i pulim i go long narapela hap.

Peta: Olsem wanem na yu kamap sapota bilong en?

Ngatur: O taim independens i kamap mi bin harim tok polisi bilong ol pati na mi bin ting Pangu Pati i gat gutpela polisi bilong en. Olsem na mi bin kirap sapotim.

Peta: Yu ting wanem? Dispela vot ov no konfidens long prai minista em gutpela samting o nogat?

Ngatur: A, nogat ya. Em no gutpela pasin. Em, ol i kamapim pasin hambak, tasol.

Its main policy is like this: we Papua New Guineans have to unite and make our country go ahead. It's no good if different people pull in different directions.

How did you become a supporter of it?

Oh when Independence arrived I listened to the policies of the different parties and I thought the Pangu Party had a good policy so I became a supporter.

Do you think this Vote of No Confidence in the Prime Minister is sensible or not?

No, certainly not. That's not sensible. They just want to be nuisances.



[Singing]

"Welcome to the House" (Sanguma Band)

VOCABULARY

1. Drills

Exercise 1: Simple substitution

Frame: Bilong wanem ol i kolim yu raskol?

hambakman

bulsitman

giamanman

man bilong bikmaus¹

raskol

Why do they call you a raskol?

a nuisance

a skite, con man

a liar

a loudmouth

Exercise 2: Simple substitution

Frame: Bilong wanem yu laik sapotim dispela pati?

autim

daunim

rabisim

kirapim

kamapim

strongim

bihainim

sapotim

Why do you want to support this party?

get rid of, force out

reduce the power of

denigrate, make fun of

found, establish

develop, strengthen

promote

follow, copy

Now see if you can say what the following phrases are in Tok Pisin. Ready?

- | | |
|--------------------------|----------|
| 1. to get rid of | autim |
| 2. to promote | strongim |
| 3. to make fun of | rabisim |
| 4. to develop | kamapim |
| 5. to found or establish | kirapim |

Exercise 3: Simple substitution

Frame: Mipela i haitim gut tru.

pasim

holim

klinim

sikrapim

sikrapim bel bilong en

hambakim

haitim

We've hidden it very well.

shut, block

hold

clean

scrape, scratch

excite him/her

tease, annoy

¹Note that bikmausman is unacceptable.

Now say what the following sentences mean in English. Ready?

1. Em i sikrapim bel bilong mi na mi holim em.

He/she excited me and I held onto him/her.

2. Long Niu Kaledonia ol Kanak i pasim olgeta rot.

In New Caledonia the Kanaks blocked all the roads.

3. Ol manki i hambakim tisa bilong ol.

The boys annoyed their teacher.

Exercise 4: Simple substitution

Frame: Ol i holim mi pas long ples.

I was kept in the village.

holim kalabusim mi

detained, arrested

kalabusim mi

imprisoned

kotim mi

taken to court

hansapim mi

bailed up, stopped

holim mi pas

Now see if you can remember what the following phrases mean. Ready?

1. Bai polis i kotim yu.

The police will take you to court.

2. Bihain bai ol i kalabusim yu.

Then they will put you in prison.

3. Pastaim tru bai ol i hansapim yu.

First of all they will bail you up.

Exercise 5: Simple substitution

Frame: Yu no ken wokim olsem.

You shouldn't do that.

wasim klos

wash clothes

karamapim pikinini

cover the child

karamapim tok

be vague, be deceitful

sakim tok bilong en

disobey him/her

pasim rot

block the way

kros nating

get angry for no reason

wokim

Now say the following in Tok Pisin. Ready?

1. *You shouldn't be deceitful like that.*

Yu no ken karamapim tok olsem.

2. *You shouldn't disobey your mother!*

Yu no ken sakim tok bilong mama bilong yul

3. *But she got angry with me for no reason.*

Tasol em i krosim mi nating.

4. *Okay, but don't cover up the baby with plastic. (use bebi and plastik)*

Oke, tasol yu no ken karamapim bebi long plastik.

2. Supplementary vocabulary

Some political terms



The Papua New Guinea flag¹



Papua New Guinea's national symbol²

Nesanel Gavman

National Government

Palamen

Parliament

Prai Minista

Prime Minister

kabinet

Cabinet

spika

Speaker

membra

member

rijonel memba

regional member

odineri memba

ordinary member

lokal memba

local member

Premia bilong X Provins

Premier of X Province

lida

leader

sekreteri

secretary

direkta

director

representim X
makim maus bilong X }

to represent X

holim wok Premia

to be Premier

lusim wok Premia

to quit being Premier

¹The flag is coloured black and red with a yellow Bird of Paradise (*kumul*) in the upper left-hand corner. The white Southern Cross in the lower left-hand corner symbolises Papua New Guinea's close connection with the South Pacific and its special relationship with Australia.

²The symbol consists of a Bird of Paradise sitting on a kundu drum with ceremonial spear behind.

lusim Yunaitet Pati	<i>to leave the United Party</i>
resain long X	<i>to resign from X</i>
joinim Yunaitet Pati	<i>to join the United Party</i>
joinim kem bilong X	<i>to join X's camp</i>
tokaut long X	<i>to speak out about X</i>
painimautim X	<i>to discover X</i>
grup, lain	<i>group</i>
konstituensi	<i>constituency</i>
kempen long kisim X	<i>to campaign to get X</i>
vot long	<i>to vote for</i>
kibung, kivung, miting	<i>a meeting</i>
ranim gavman	<i>to run the Government</i>
gavman i (no) ran gut	<i>the Government is (not) functioning well</i>
namba bilong kibung i liklik	<i>the number (of members or representatives) at the meeting was small</i>
baset, bajet	<i>budget</i>
projek	<i>a project</i>
yusim mani bilong gavman nating	<i>to use Government money illegally, embezzle</i>
korapt	<i>corrupt</i>
putim mani bilong gavmen long poket nating	<i>to embezzle</i>
saspenim gavman	<i>to suspend a Government</i>
no gat sans long X	<i>not to have a chance to do X</i>
divelopmen i kamap	<i>things are developing</i>
birua	<i>enemy, contretemps, anything that works against one's aims</i>
X i bosim Y	<i>X is in charge of Y, control, own (e.g. husat i bosim dispela graun? who controls this land?)</i>
resis	<i>competition</i>
rijon	<i>region</i>
distrik	<i>district</i>
eria	<i>area</i>
Some legal and other terms	
X i kotim Y	<i>X takes Y to court</i>
sanap long kot	<i>to appear in court</i>
sasim	<i>to charge</i>
kotim em long 3-pela sas	<i>to charge someone on three accounts</i>
baim rum gat	<i>to pay bail</i>

baim kot	<i>to pay the court fine</i>
sakim tok bilong kot	<i>to not follow the court's ruling</i>
brukim lo/kalapim lo	<i>to transgress the law</i>
majestret	<i>magistrate</i>
jas	<i>judge</i>
loia	<i>lawyer</i>
majik/puripuri	<i>magic, sorcery</i>
mekim/wokim polsen long X mekim/wokim puripuri long X }	<i>to make magic or sorcery against X</i>
sanguma	<i>witchcraft</i>
bos, bosman	<i>boss, overseer, person in charge</i>
bosboi	<i>overseer on plantation</i>
wokman	<i>worker</i>
studen	<i>student</i>
skulboi	<i>school boy</i>
skulmeri, skulgel	<i>school girl</i>
soldia	<i>soldier</i>
raifol	<i>rifle</i>
masket	<i>gun, shotgun</i>
masket i pairap	<i>the gun goes off</i>
pairapim masket	<i>to fire off a gun</i>
X i paia	<i>X is on fire, X caught fire</i>
X i kukim gras	<i>X set the grass on fire</i>

Exercises

1. See if you can match the following Tok Pisin and English expressions.

birua	<i>represent</i>
kukim gras	<i>burn the grass</i>
eria	<i>shotgun</i>
kivung	<i>enemy</i>
sasim	<i>pay the court fine</i>
makim maus bilong	<i>charge someone</i>
kalapim lo	<i>transgress the law</i>
painimautim	<i>area</i>
masket	<i>meeting</i>
baset	<i>discover</i>
baim kot	<i>budget</i>

2. What is the difference, if any, between these pairs of expressions?

- (a) kukim gras and gras i paia
(b) sakim tok and bihainim tok

[continued overleaf]

- (c) lusim Pangu Pati and resain long Pangu Pati
- (d) kiving and kabinet
- (e) i pairap and pairapim

3. How would you explain these terms in Tok Pisin?

budget
Prime Minister
constituency
suspend a Government
corruption

[Singing]

"Welcome to the House" (Sanguma Band)

GRAMMAR

7.1 Reason clauses (*because*)

The idea of *because* is expressed in Tok Pisin by bilong wanem (or long wanem for those who use long for bilong) or bikos. As you will note bilong wanem (or long wanem) is the same as that used for asking the question *why* in Tok Pisin. Note, however, that the clause introduced by *because* always follows the main clause.

Examples:

<p>Mi kotim dispela man bilong wanem em i stilim samting bilong mi. Mi kotim dispela man bikos em i stilim samting bilong mi.</p>	}	<p><i>I took this man to court because he stole something of mine.</i></p>
--	---	--

In answer to questions, however, main clauses may be omitted, giving a short answer which, on paper, looks much like another *why* question when bilong wanem or long wanem is used. In spoken Tok Pisin, however, there is no confusion because of the context and the intonational differences between the question and the answer. For example:

<p>Q: Bilong wanem yu no kam? A: Bilong wanem mi sik. Long wanem mi sik. }</p>	<p><i>Why didn't you come?</i> <i>Because I was sick.</i></p>
--	--

Practice drills

Exercise 1: Progressive substitution

Frame: Mi kotim em bilong wanem em i stilim samting bilong mi.
 Mi lusim em bilong wanem em i stilim samting bilong mi.
 Mi lusim em bilong wanem em i kamap raskol.
 Mi paitim em bilong wanem em i kamap raskol.
 Mi paitim em bilong wanem em i kolim mi bulsitman.
 Mi kotim em bilong wanem em i kolim mi bulsitman.
 Mi kotim em bilong wanem em i stilim samting bilong mi.

Exercise 2: Simple substitution

Frame: Em i no save slip gut bikos em i sik.

(kros, sori, hangre, hot, kol, sik)

Exercise 3: Give short answers to the following questions using bilong wanem and the cues provided. Ready?

1. Bilong wanem ol i holim em pas long ples? (*because he's a thief*)
Bilong wanem em i stilman.
2. Bilong wanem yu no laikim mi? (*because you're always angry with me*)
{Bilong wanem yu krosim mi olgeta taim.
{Bilong wanem olgeta taim yu krosim mi.
3. Bilong wanem yu putim T-siot? (*because I'm cold*)
Bilong wanem mi kol.

Exercise 4: Give short answers to the following questions using bikos and the cues provided. Ready?

1. Bilong wanem ol i sikrapim kokonas? (*because they want to cook with it*)
Bikos ol i laik kukim kaikai long en.
2. Bilong wanem yupela i kalap long banis? (*because we are frightened of the snake*)
Bikos mipela i pret long snek.
3. Bilong wanem em olgeta i mekim kain pasin olsem? (*because they want to help the country progress*)
Bikos ol i laik halivim kantri i gohet.

Evaluation exercise

Give short answers to the following questions using the cues provided. You can use either form of *because*. Ready?

1. Bilong wanem em i go long taun? (*Because she wanted to get some money.*)
{Bilong wanem em i laik kisim mani.
{Bikos em i laik kisim mani.
2. Bilong wanem ol i singaut? (*Because the child is sick. It's probably about to die.*)
{Bilong wanem pikinini i sik. Ating klostu em i dai.
{Bikos pikinini i sik. Ating klostu em i dai.
3. Bilong wanem yupela i sapim kanu olsem? (*Because that's the way we do it.*)
{Bilong wanem em pasin bilong mipela.
{Bikos em pasin bilong mipela.
4. Bilong wanem entupela i hait long bus? (*Because they're waiting for the cargo to come.*)
{Bilong wanem tupela i wetim kago bai i kam.
{Bikos tupela i wetim kago bai i kam.

5. Bilong wanem dispela man ya i kam? (*Because he wants to buy crocodile skins.*)

{ Bilong wanem em i laik baim skin bilong pukpuk.
Bikos em i laik baim skin bilong pukpuk.

7.2 More on relative clauses (*to whom, whoever*)

In Unit 6 you were introduced to Relative Clauses and were given some practice in forming and interpreting the least complicated type. In this section we shall consider those cases in which the noun common to the two sentences to be joined occurs after long in one of those sentences. Take, for example, the sentences:

- 1a. Yu givim mani long pikinini. *You gave money to the child.*
1b. Pikinini i stap long hap. *The child is over there.*

in which the word pikinini is common to both but occurs after long in 1a. Now, as already indicated in Unit 6, either of these two sentences can be made into a relative clause and incorporated into the other (since they have pikinini in common). Thus one could have:

- 1c. Yu givim mani long pikinini (ya) *You gave money to the child who is*
 em } I stap long hap (ya). *over there.*
 we }

(in which the relative clause em i stap long hap (or variants) is derived from sentence 1b), or one could have:

- 1d. Pikinini (ya) yu givim mani long *The child to whom you gave money is*
 en (ya) em i stap long hap. *over there.*

(or, Pikinini we yu givim mani long en ...)

(in which yu givim mani long en is derived from sentence 1a).

However, it is this last sentence that is of interest to us here. You will notice in it that pikinini has been replaced by en after long. The reason for this is that when sentence 1a became a relative clause pikinini became en — remember em generally becomes en after long and bilong — just as you were taught in Unit 6. So although the actual process of making the relative clause is the same as you have been taught before you have to remember to make the change after long and not at the beginning of the clause, although we and ya...ya may be used optionally with it, as indicated by sentence 1d.

Finally it is convenient at this point to introduce you to two other forms connected with relative clauses in Tok Pisin. These are husat man/meri and wanem man/meri *whoever*. These are very much the same except that one would not use the husat form for animals or other things which are not human.

Examples:

Husat } man em i save kaikai bulmakau em i olsem Yuropen.
Wanem }

Whoever } eats beef is just like a European.
Whatever man }

Wanem kokonas i pundaun em i bilong mi.

Whichever coconut falls down is mine.

Practice drills

Exercise 1: Simple substitution

Frame: Pikinini yu givim mani long en
em i stap long hap.

yu baim balus bilong en
ol i singaut long en
mipela i soim rot long en
yu givim mani long en

The child to whom you gave the money
is over there.

for whom you bought the ticket
to whom they called out
to whom we showed the road

Exercise 2: Repeat the following sentences after the instructor and say what they mean in English. Ready?

1. Dispela lapun meri we yupela i lukim em i sik nogut tru.
This old lady whom you (plural) saw is very sick.
2. Mi no lukim pailat we ol i givim tiket long en.
I didn't see the pilot to whom they gave the ticket.
3. Husat i lukim hul ya ol rat i save go insait long en ya?
Who has seen the hole that the rats go into?
4. E, yu go kukim dispela gras we ol snek i stap insait long en.
Heh, go and burn the grass in which the snakes live.
5. Putim kotren insait long bokis tislol i stap long en.
Put the raincoat in the box in which the T-shirt is.

Exercise 3: Simple substitution

Frame: Husat man em i save kaikai bulmakau em i olsem Yuropen.

(Husat meri, Wanem pikinini, Wanem man, Husat man)

Evaluation exercise

Say what the following sentences mean in English. Ready?

1. Wanem ka i kamap pastaim em i ka bilong mi.
Whichever car arrives first is mine.
2. Ol dispela man yupela i tok gude long ol em ol i bilong Indonesia.
Those men you (plural) said good day to are Indonesians.
3. Husat memba i rabisim premia bilong en bai em i no kamap sekreteri bilong en.
Whichever member denigrates his premier will not become his secretary.
4. Mama bilong mi i no save kukim kiau we i gat pikinini kakaruk insait long en.
My mother doesn't cook eggs that have baby chickens in them.
5. Bai mi no joinim pati we i gat tupela memba tasol long en.
I will not join a party that has only two members in it.

7.3 Time clauses (*when*)

Clauses introduced by *taim* or *long taim* express the idea of *when* in Tok Pisin, for example,

(Long) *taim mi manki yet papa bilong mi i dai.*

My father died when I was still a child.

(Long) *taim em i pundaun long diwai mi stap long narapela hap.*

When he fell out of the tree I was somewhere else.

Other related time concepts are expressed in a similar way by the following phrases containing *taim*:

Phrase	English	Example
<i>stret long taim</i>	<i>as soon as, just when</i>	<i>Stret long taim em i dai mi kamap long haus bilong em.</i> <i>I arrived at his house just when he died.</i>
<i>bihain long taim</i>	<i>after</i>	<i>Bihain long taim em i dai mi kamap long haus bilong en.</i> <i>I arrived after he died.</i>
<i>bipo long taim</i>	<i>before</i>	<i>Bipo long taim em i dai, mi kamap long haus bilong en.</i> <i>I arrived before he died.</i>
<i>long wanem taim</i>	<i>whenever, at whatever time</i>	<i>Long wanem taim em i dai bai mi stap long haus bilong en.</i> <i>At whatever time he dies I'll be in his house.</i>
<i>olgeta taim</i>	<i>every time</i>	<i>Olgeta taim em i sik mi stap long haus bilong en.</i> <i>Every time he is sick I'm in his house.</i>
(long) <i>taim...yet</i> <i>insait long</i> <i>taim...yet</i>	} <i>while</i>	(Long) <i>taim em i sik yet mi stap long haus bilong en.</i> <i>While he was sick I was in his house.</i>

Note that all of these clauses come first in Tok Pisin sentences whereas the order is much freer in English. Notice also that these sentences are different from those containing *bilong* (e.g. *taim bilong kaikai*) which you should check again in sub-section 4.2 above.

Finally note that not every *when* clause in English becomes a *taim* clause in Tok Pisin. For example, sentences like *When he arrived home he had dinner* will be expressed differently in Tok Pisin depending on how one interprets the *when* in English. For example, if one takes this sentence to mean *As soon as he arrived home he had dinner* then one would express this idea in Tok Pisin with *Stret long taim em i kamap long haus em i kaikai*. But if, as I think we would normally do in English, we take this to mean *He arrived home and then had dinner* then this would be expressed in Tok Pisin as *Em i kamap long haus bilong en na (bihain) em i kaikai* or *Em i kamap long haus bilong en, orait na em i kaikai*. In either case *Taim em i kamap long haus bilong en em i kaikai* would not be a good translation. Consequently as English speakers you would be particularly careful of merely substituting *taim* for *when* wherever it occurs in English.

Practice drills

Exercise 1: Simple substitution

Frame: Taim Independens i kamap mi joinim dispela pati.

(gavman i senis, mi stap long Pablik Sevis, ol i autim mi long skul,
mi no gat wok, Independens i kamap)

Exercise 2: Simple substitution

Frame: Stret long taim san i godaun, ol blakbokis i plai nabaut.

(bihain long taim, long wanem taim, bipo long taim, stret long taim)

Evaluation exercises

Exercise 1: Repeat the following Tok Pisin sentences and then say what they mean in English. Ready?

1. Taim yu bin stap long Goroka bipo yu wok wantaim husat?
Previously, when you were in Goroka, whom did you work with?
2. Stret long taim em i pispis blut em i go hariap long haus sik.
As soon as he/she urinated blood he/she went to the hospital.
3. Taim Aso i wet long go long balus em i ritim Wantok.
While Aso was waiting to board the plane he was reading Wantok.
4. Long wanem taim ol i kolim yu bikmaus yu paitim ol.
Whenever they call you a loudmouth you hit them.
5. Bihain long taim yumi vot yumi smok.
After we've voted we'll have a smoke.
6. Olgeta taim em i sikrapim lek bilong mi, mi lap.
Every time he scratches my leg I laugh.

Exercise 2: How would you say the following in Tok Pisin? Ready?

1. *Why do you laugh every time you (two) play?*

{	Olgeta taim yutupela i pilai, bilong wanem yu save lap?
	Olgeta taim yutupela i pilai, yu save lap, bilong wanem?
	Bilong wanem yu save lap olgeta taim yutupela i pilai?
2. *While they were coming they were talking.*
Long taim ol i kam yet, ol i toktok.
3. *After he disobeyed what the premier said he was sacked.*
Bihain long taim em i sakim tok bilong Premia ol i autim/pinisim em long wok bilong en.
4. *Whenever it rains the ground becomes soft.*
Long wanem taim ren i pundaun graun i malomalo.¹

¹Better: Taim ren i pundaun graun i save malomalo.

5. *I don't know when he will arrive.*

Mi no save long wanem taim bai em i kamap.

7.4 Negative imperatives: no, no ken, nogut, maski

Commands or requests designed to prohibit someone or some thing from doing something are expressed in one of several ways in Tok Pisin.

One way is to negate affirmative commands by placing *no* between the subject and the verb, for example:

Yu go!	<i>You go!</i>
Yu no go!	<i>Don't go!</i>
Yumi go!	<i>Let's go!</i>
Yumi no go!	<i>Let's not go!</i>

A second way is to use *no ken can't* or *shouldn't*,¹ the interpretation depending on the verb used, for example:

Yu no ken go!	<i>You can't go!</i>
Yu no ken wokim olsem!	<i>{You shouldn't do that!</i> <i>{You can't do it like that!</i>
Yumi no ken hambak!	<i>Don't let's fool around!</i>

A third option is to prefix sentences with *nogut bad* as occurs in conversation 3 of this unit, for example:

Nogut bai raskol i kam stilim.	<i>It wouldn't be good for the raskols to come and steal it! or, Don't let the raskols come and steal it!</i>
--------------------------------	---

Nogut yu sindaun nating!	<i>It wouldn't be good for you to sit down doing nothing (when there are other things to be done). Don't sit there doing nothing (when there's other things to be done).</i>
--------------------------	--

Yu holim dok. Nogut em i kalkaim mil	<i>Hold the dog. Don't let it bite me!</i>
--------------------------------------	--

A fourth option is to use *maski (long) forget about*. This may be placed before or after the subject pronoun, although the pronoun itself is often omitted if it is clear from the context who is being addressed. Consider, for example:

Maski (long) hambak! }	<i>Don't fool around! Don't be a nuisance!</i>
Yu, maski hambak! }	

Practice drills

Exercise 1: Simple substitution

Frame: Yu no sindaun nating! Yu wok!
(toktok, wokabaut, wet, sindaun)

¹No ken can be used with other persons as well of course since it literally means *not allowed to*.

Exercise 2: Simple substitution

Frame: Yupela no ken pilai soka long hial! Go long hap!

(kukim kaikai, bungim pipia, sikrapim kokonas, seksekim ratol,
pilai soka)

Exercise 3: Repeat the following sentences and say what they mean in English.
Ready?

1. Yu banisim pik bilong yu. Nogut em i kam bagarapim gaden bilong mipela.
Put your pig in a sty. Don't let it come and spoil our garden!
2. Yu holim dok. Nogut em i kalkaim mi.
Hold the dog. Don't let it bite me!
3. Yu haitim mani. Nogut raskol i kam stillim.
Hide the money. Don't let the raskols come and steal it!
4. Yu pasim dua. Nogut dok i go insait.
Shut the door. Don't let the dog go inside!
5. Yu lukautim pikinini bilong yu gut. Nogut em i sik!
Take good care of your child. Don't let it get sick!

Exercise 4: Simple substitution

Frame: Maski long singsing long hial

Don't dance here!

rausim pipla

throw away rubbish

sikrapim kokonas

scrape coconuts

seksekim ratol

shake the rattle

singsing

Evaluation exercises

Exercise 1: Choosing between no, no ken, nogut and maski long how would you tell someone the following things? Ready?

1. How would you tell him/her that it wouldn't be wise to take the premier to court?
Nogut yu kotim premia!
2. How would you tell him/her not to denigrate the Government?

{	Yu no rabisim Gavman!
	Yu no ken rabisim Gavman!
	Maski long rabisim Gavman! ¹
3. How would you tell him/her to write to his/her parents; it wouldn't be good for them to be waiting in vain?
Yu salim pas i go long papamama bilong yu. Nogut tupela i wet nating!

¹Compare: Pinis long rabisim Gavman! *Let's have an end to this Government bashing!*

4. How would you tell him/her that he/she is not allowed to shoot Birds of Paradise?

Yu no ken sutim kumul!

5. How would you tell him/her to cook rice and not worry about sweet potato?

Yu kukim rais, maski long kaukau!

Exercise 2: How would you say the following in English? Ready?

1. Koan, yupela kaikai! Nogut yupela i hangre!

Go on, eat. Don't go hungry!/It wouldn't be good for you (plural) to go hungry!

2. Ol meri i no ken lukim dispela samting i tambu long ol.

Women shouldn't see this thing that is forbidden to them.

3. E, maski long kalap long fran bilong ka!

Heh, don't jump up on the front of the car!

4. Yu no ken go long haus yet! Sampela wok mo i stap.

Don't go home yet. There's some more work left.

5. Maski long holim dispela kain pis. Nogut em i kaikaim yu!

Don't hold on to his kind of fish. It might bite you.

[Singing]

Kaluli ceremonial song, Southern Highlands Province

TEXTS

(1) Mi memba bilong Baining

Stanis Johannes is the member for Baining in the East New Britain Provincial Government. In this interview he talks about his position and political affiliations.



Stanis

S: A mi --wanpela memba bilong a --Siniwit Konstituensi. Em, mi representim ol pipel insait long Provinsol Gavman. Na long liklik ples bilong mi, em long a--Dadul, antap long Baining yet, sait bilong Warangoi, so mi--mi gat a--tripela ten faiv a--sori, tripela ten tu o tetitu krismas long dispela taim. So long wok bilong mi olsem a--mi representim pipel insait long a-- dispela a--Is Niu Briten a-- Provinsol Palamen. Mi stap tasol olsem odineri memba. Mi no kisim wanpela potfolio insait long dispela Gavman. O--ol pipel tu, ol i amamas long mi long dispela olsem mi no kisim wanpela potfolio insait long dispela a--gavman. Em tok klia bilong mi tasol olsem.¹

¹This sentence does not translate easily into English. Stanis is referring to the points he made above – about his age, origin and present position – which were in response to a general question.

T: Olsem wanem yu kamap sapota bilong Pangu Pati?

S: Olsem. A--mipela i lukim olsem a--olsem mipela i bilip olsem mipela i inap sapos mipela i a--bikpela lain tumas insait long a--gavman. Mipela inap long wokim sampela kain a-- wokkirap long halivim pipel we a-- polisi bilong mipela i toktok long en long mas lukim stret a--pipel husat ol ol i stap ananit we a--yumi ken kolim olsem grat--a-- gras rut level. So em dispela nau na mipela i gat a-- sapot long dispela long a--long dispela pati bilong traिम long kirapim mo developmen insait long pipel.

English translation

S: *Ah, I'm--a member of the ah--Siniwit constituency. I represent the people in the Provincial Government. And in my home village, which is at ah--Dadul, in upper Baining, on the Warangoi side, so I--I am ah--thirty-five ah--sorry, thirty-two years old at the moment. So my work is like this ah--I represent the people in ah--this ah--New Britain ah--Provincial Parliament. But I'm an ordinary member. I haven't got a portfolio within the Government. The people are also happy that I haven't got a portfolio within this ah-- Government. That's my clarification (of who I am and what I do).*

T: *How did you become a Pangu Party supporter?*

S: *It is like this. A--we saw that ah--we believed that we could do something if we ah--were a large group in ah--the Government. We could do some development work to help the people who ah--our policy says with respect to that, that we must consider first and foremost ah--the people who are underneath whom ah--we can call grat--the grass roots level. So for that reason we have ah--support for this ah--for this party to try to originate more development for the people.*

01 kwestin

1. Husat memba i makim Pangu Pati insait long gavman bilong Is Niu Briten Provins?
2. Stanis i yusim wanem wot long 'represent'?
3. Stanis i kamap sapota bilong Pangu Pati olsem wanem?

(2) Halivim bilong mi

In this interview Roboam Sailas talks about his involvement with unemployed youth in Kavieng. Roboam, who is from the east coast of New Ireland south of Namatanai, is a university graduate in Economics.



Roboam

T: Mi laik askim yu long dispela klab yu bin stap insait long en, dispela fut--a--i no gat futbols--sofbol klab a? Yu inap toksave long dispela long mipela plis?

R: A, thenkyu. Dispela sofbol klab yet i bin a--fomeisen bilong en mipela i bin stat long no gat mani tru ya. Dispela klab mipela i bin fomim o mi yet mi bin fomim wantaim sampela lain long a-- ol skuldropouts. Ol skuldropouts, sampela long ol manki ol skuldropouts em bilong ol tripela ples klostu tasol long a-- Kavieng taun. Na planti taim ol dispela skuldropout no gat wok na ol i hangaraun na traिम kosim ol -- sampela liklik problem tasol. I no olsem bikpela problem long Mosbi. Oraim mi yet mi bin ting olsem i gutpela bai mi traिम involvim ol dispela--ol dispela yangpela boi na involvim ol long spots long wiken bai olsem bai i kipim ol bisi. Oraim mi kisim oltogetha long fes yia mipela i bin kam las tru long kompetisen lida a--lada. Long seken yia tu mipela i las. Las yia em i festaim bilong plai long a--kam thed. Mipela atendum preliminari finol. Ating long wanem ol ma--dispela lain manki i wok long plai wantaim bilong ova thri yias na ol i save gut liklik nau long a--plai sofbol na nau --na mi ting olsem bilong neks sisen em i stat tasol long mun Septemba bai em i --dispela tim bilong mi bai oraim. Mipela bin askim tu long bai wanpela kampani i bin sponsorim mipela long yunifoms bilong mipela na wanpela --wanpela logging kampani Amerikan Chanel Timbas i bin givim mipela long K1379.65 bilong baim set ov 15 yunifoms na mipela i bin kisim direkt long Korea i kam na ol manki i amamas na em i--oraim na mi amamas tru long wanem i involvim ol dispela manki long--long spot.

English translation

T: *I'd like to ask you about this club that you've been involved in, this foot--a--there are no footballs--softball club eh? Could you tell us about this please?*

R: *A, thank you. This softball club was--its formation we started without any money at all. This club that we formed or that I formed myself together with some ah--school dropouts. The school dropouts, some of those boys amongst them come from three villages quite close to Kavieng. And mostly these school dropouts don't have any work and hang around and just try to cause--small-scale trouble. They're not like the big troubles in Port Moresby. So I myself thought that it would be good if I tried to involve them -- these young boys in sports on the weekend and thereby keep them busy. So I got them together and in the first year we came bottom of the competition leader --ladder. In the second year we were last too. Last year was the first we a--came third. We took part in the preliminary final. I guess the reason is that -- this group of boys have been busy playing together for over three years and they know a little bit about a -- playing softball and now-- I think that next season which starts in September they will--this team of mine will be all right. We have asked a company to sponsor us too for uniforms and a--a logging company, American Channel Timbers has given us K1379.65 to buy a set of fifteen uniforms with and we got these direct from Korea. The boys are thrilled and they--so am I because it involves these boys in--in sport.*

Sampela kwestin

1. Roboam i bin kirapim wanem kain klab? Bilong wanem?
2. 'Skuldropout' i min wanem?
3. Sofbol tim bilong Roboam i bin stap hamas yia nau?
4. Husat i bin sapatim klab bilong Roboam na halivim em long baim yunifom?

Now to end this unit listen to the recording of Papua New Guinea's national song 'O arise all you sons', the music and words of which were composed by Mr T. Shacklady.¹

O ARISE ALL YOU SONS

Verse 1

O arise all you sons of this land
Let us sing of our joy to be free,
Praising God and rejoicing to be
Papua New Guinea.

Chorus

Shout our name from the mountains to seas
Papua New Guinea;
Let us raise our voices and proclaim
Papua New Guinea.

Verse 2

Now give thanks to the good Lord above
For His kindness, His wisdom and love
For this land of our fathers so free,
Papua New Guinea.

Chorus

Shout again for the whole world to hear
Papua New Guinea,
We're independent and we're free,

PAPUA NEW GUINEA.

Supplementary exercises

1. Compose interesting sentences by making suitable additions to the following:

1. Oi i no ken _____ bilong wanem _____.
2. Husat i inap _____?
3. Bai mipela i salim _____.
4. Yu _____ gut mani. Nogut _____.
5. Bilong wanem em i sanapim _____?
6. Wok bilong yumi _____.
7. Oi Kolarí _____.
8. Olsem wanem yu brukim _____?
9. Entupela i no save pilai susap bilong wanem _____.
10. Yu pasim dua. Nogut _____.

¹Before Independence a national competition was held for a national song. The winning entry was judged to be Mr Shacklady's. Mr Shacklady was the band master of the Royal Papua and New Guinea Constabulary for many years.

2. Write a reply to the letter given in Unit 6 Supplementary exercises. That is write a letter to the son from the mother. Tell him these things:
- his letter was received, thank you.
 - you were worried about him because you hadn't heard from him for a long time.
 - you want to write back about the rumour (tokwin) referred to in his letter. That didn't come from you. It is nonsense. She is still in the village waiting for him. She was happy to hear about him.
 - when he's coming home he must let you know so you can go and meet him. Let you know the time and place and manner of coming. You're happy to know he is well again. You are busy helping to prepare new coffee gardens.
 - that's all. See you. Sign off.
3. Read the story called Muruk below and then answer the questions given about it in Tok Pisin.

Muruk

Dispela em i wanpela stori nating. Em i olsem.

Bipo tru tupela pisin i stap. Nem bilong tupela Muruk na Kokomo. Muruk em i stap antap long diwai olsem ol narapela pisin. Em i kaikai ol pikinini bilong diwai olsem Kokomo. Tasol Kokomo i no laikim dispela pasin bilong Muruk. Olsem na em i laik pasim Muruk long kaikai bilong en. Orait Kokomo i singaut long wanpela liklik pisin long kam katim raun han bilong diwai Muruk i save slip long en. Liklik pisin i kam katim pinis na i go. Muruk i kam sindaun na dispela han diwai i bruk. Muruk wantaim han diwai i pundaun long graun. Wing bilong Muruk i bruk. Bipo Muruk em i gat wing olsem ol narapela pisin. Tasol taim em i pundaun i brukim wing bilong en. Olsem na em i no gat wing mo nau. Nau yu lukim wing bilong Muruk i olsem pul bilong trosel. Em hap nating tasol i stap na Muruk em i no inap flai mo. Nau em i save wokabaut long graun tasol bilong painim kaikai.

Em tasol stori bilong mi long Muruk. Em olsem stori bilong tumbuna bilong mi. Em i tru o nogat, mi no save. Tenkyu.

01 kwestin

1. Bipo tru Muruk i save stap we?
 2. Husat i no laikim pasin bilong Muruk? Bilong wanem?
 3. Muruk i pundaun long graun olsem wanem?
 4. Taim Muruk i pundaun long graun, wanem samting nogut i kamap long en?
 5. Tede Muruk i save stap we?
 6. Yu wokim piksa bilong Muruk na Kokomo. Tupela i luk olsem wanem?
4. Listen to texts 23 and 25 in Unit 14 and discuss.

5. Read the following conditions about renting Housing Commission houses and answer the attached questions about them in Tok Pisin. This information is based on that that appeared in the Housing Commission's booklet *Housing Commission, Papua New Guinea: Information for Tenants* (Port Moresby, n.d. but c.1977):

EM HAUS YU SINDAUN LONG EN

Gude Poroman!

Nau bai yu kam sindaun long wanpela haus bilong Hausing Komisen. Mipela long Hausing Komisen i amamas long yu sindaun long haus bilong mipela. Mipela i amamas sapos yu laikim dispela haus, na yu sindaun lukautim haus gut tru.

HAUSING KOMISEN

- Em i stap long han bilong gavman bilong Papua Niu Gini. Olsem na Hausing Komisen i kisim moni long gavman long sanapim ol haus ol pipel i ken peim rent o baim.

HAUS

- Em ol wanwan haus o haus ol i bung wantaim olsem "flat", em i sanap yet long hap graun Hausing Komisen i papa long en.

PAPA BILONG HAUS

- Hausing Komisen em i papa bilong haus.

TENENT

- Em man o meri i save peim rent moni long olgeta fotnait long sindaun long haus.

RENT

- Em nem bilong dispela moni yu peim long olgeta fotnait long stap long haus. Oli kolim "rent".
- Rent bilong haus i no dia tumas. Olsem Hausing Komisen em i no laik kamapim sampela winmoni.
- Oli yusim rent olsem: Dispela rent em i moni bilong baim graun na samting bilong wokim haus. Rent tu i moni bilong stretim na fiksिम haus taim i laik bagarap. Oli kolim dispela EKONOMIK RENT.

KONTRAK BILONG HAUS — EM I YELOPELA PEPA

- Lo bilong Hausing Komisen i tok yu mas putim nem o mak bilong yu long wanpela kontrak pepa ol i kolim "Conditions of Tenancy". Bihain yu ken kisim haus.
- Taim yu putim nem o mak bilong yu long dispela kontrak pepa dispela em i promis bilong yu long bihainim ol samting insait long kontrak.

Adres bilong Namba Wan Opis bilong Hausing Komisen:

HOUSING COMMISSION
KOURA WAY
TOKARARA
PORT MORESBY

Telefon Namba: 53255
Adres bilong skin pas:
P.O. Box 1550,
BOROKO

Adres bilong ol narapela opis:

DARU
Area Officer,
P.O. Box 26,
Telefon Namba 37

GOROKA
Regional Manager,
P.O. Box 325,
Telefon Namba: 721994

ALOTAU
P.O. Box 72,
Telefon Namba: 643

BULOLO
P.O. Box 135,
Telefon Namba: 445365

01 kwestin

1. What is the address of the main Housing Commission office?
2. Who is the owner of the house occupied by the tenant?
3. How is the tenant defined?
4. Why does the Housing Commission charge rent for its houses? That is, what is the rent designed to cover?
5. Does it aim to make a profit from renting or not? Quote the sentence supporting your answer.
6. What is the Housing Commission?
7. What does signing a contract mean?

INTRODUCTION

In this unit we shall be focussing on:

- (1) how to say and use *I alone, I myself, only I, you alone* etc.;
- (2) how to use *sapos if*;
- (3) the difference between verbs that occur with or without long and -im;
- (4) how to make relative clauses corresponding to those in English that begin with *where* and *what*.

These points will be introduced in the conversations that follow and will be discussed and drilled in more detail in the grammatical sections that follow them.

Other things that are worth knowing are drawn to your attention in footnotes to the conversations and grammatical sections.

CONVERSATIONS

(1) "Mi luteran"

Long dispela intaviu Aili i toksave long olsem wanem em i stap luteran.

Intaviua: Aili, yu save lotu?

Aili: Yes, mi luteran.

Intaviua: Bilong wanem yu luteran?

Aili: Bilong wanem mama i karim mi long ples ol i save lotu long dispela misin. Bipo long taim mama i karim mi pinis ol misinare i kam na kirapim misin long hap bilong mipela. Na mipela olgeta i save bihainim dispela misin luteran.

Intaviua: Tasol sapos yu go wok long narapela ples we i no gat¹ luteran long em bai yu mekim wanem?

Aili: Ating i gat misin luteran long olgeta hap bilong Papua Niu Gini. Tasol sapos i no gat orait bai mi beten nating long haus bilong mi.

In this interview Aili explains why she is a Lutheran.

Aili, do you go to church?

Yes, I'm a Lutheran.

Why are you a Lutheran?

Because I was born in an area where this mission is. Before I was born missionaries came and established a mission in our area. And so all of us belong to this Lutheran mission.

But what if you go to work in another location where there aren't any Lutherans what will you do?

There are probably Lutheran missions everywhere in Papua New Guinea. But if there aren't then I will worship by myself in my own house.

¹Remember i (no) gat means *there is/are(n't)*. This is discussed and drilled in sub-section 9.1 below.

(2) "Kristen i wanem samting?"

Long dispela intaviu bai yu harim toktok Aili i toksave long olsem wanem em i stap kristen.

Intaviua: Yu tok pinis bipo yu kristen tru ya. Inap yu toksave long kristen i wanem samting?

Aili: Kristen i olsem. Ol i bilip long God i stap long heven na em i save lukautim yumi olgeta long graun ya.

Intaviua: Tru ya? Tasol Jisas Kraist i husat?

Aili: Em i pikinini man bilong God. God yet i salim em i kam daun long graun bilong soim olgeta pasin na tingting bilong God long olgeta. Jisas i mekim olsem.

Intaviua: Olsem wanem yupela ol kristen i save long ol dispela samting?

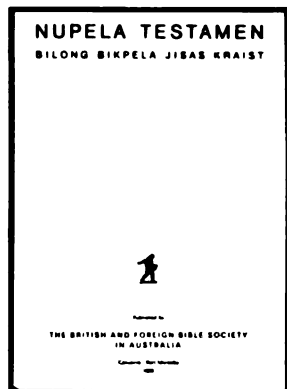
Aili: Em i stap long Baibel.

Intaviua: Baibel i wanem samting?

Aili: Em i bikpela buk bilong ol kristen. Disaipel bilong Jisas Kraist ol i bin raitim.

(3) "Mi no bilipim ol dispela giaman toktok."

Milat em i studen bilong yunivesiti. Em i no save lotu. Em i no laikim pasin lotu. Long dispela intaviu bai yu harim Milat tokaut long tingting bilong en long pasin lotu.

**The New Testament in Tok Pisin**

In this interview you will hear Aili explaining why she is a Christian.

Before you said you were a real Christian. Could you say something about what a Christian is?

Christians are like this. They believe that God lives in Heaven and takes care of us all here on earth.

Is that so? But who is Jesus Christ?

He was the son of God. God himself sent him down to Earth to show everyone what God's tenets are. Jesus did that.

How do you Christians know all this?

It's in the Bible.

What's the Bible?

It's the Christians' important book. Jesus' disciples wrote it.

Milat is a university student. He doesn't go to church. He doesn't like religion. In this interview you will hear Milat rail against church-going.

Intaviua: Olsem wanem yu no save go long haus lotu?

Why don't you go to church?

Milat: Mi no bilipim ol dispela glaman toktok.

I don't believe this nonsense.

Intaviua: Bilong wanem?

Why not?

Milat: Em i olsem tok gris bilong ol kainkain man. Sapos God i stap bilong wanem i gat planti manmeri i no gat kaikai samting olsem long dispela graun? Bilong wanem planti pait tumas i save kamap oltaim oltaim long olgeta hap bilong dispela graun? I gat planti misin tumas long Papua Niu Gini tu. Mo long tirtisiks. Sapos God i stap bilong wanem ol misin i no bung wantaim na helpim tingting bilong mipela. Ol i stap paulim tingting bilong mipela tasol.

It's nonsense. If there were a God how come there are so many people on Earth here who have no food and things. Why is there always so much fighting everywhere? There are far too many missions in Papua New Guinea too. More than 36. If there were a God why don't the missions join together and help us. They're just confusing us.

Intaviua: Yu ting misin i samting nogut long Papua Niu Gini? Yu ting em i pasin nogut misin i bin autim yupela long tudak? Yu no laik stap long lait?

Do you think the missions are something bad for Papua New Guinea? Do you think it was bad for the missions to have brought you people out of ignorance? Don't you want to live in an enlightened way?

Milat: Tru, sampela samting i gutpela. Tasol ol i bin bagarapim planti kastom bilong mipela na mi kros long dispela. Bilong wanem ol i mekim olsem? I no gat as bilong dispela.

It's true that some things they did are good. But they destroyed many of our customs and I'm cross about that. Why did they do that? There was no need for it.

Intaviua: Yes, tasol sampela long ol dispela kastom i nogut. Lukim! Bipo ol i save pait na kilim i dai man nating. Nau nogat.

Yes, but some of those customs were bad. Look! Before they used to fight and kill people for no reason. Now they don't.

Milat: Yes, tasol i no stopim olgeta pasin tumbuna. Sampela kastom misin i bin larim i stap. Tasol long mi yet mi no laikim ol misinare.

Yes, but they didn't stop all traditional customs. They left some. But as for me personally I don't like missionaries.

(4) "Sanguma"

Akira i laikim wanpela man bilong Sepik. Em i laik maritim em tasol papa bilong em i no laikim man ya.

Akira is fond of a man from the Sepik. She wants to marry him but her father doesn't like him.

Olsem na Akira em i wari. Em i go toktok wantaim welfe ofisa long dispela wari bilong em.

Ofisa: Mi save yu laik maritim wanpela man bilong Sepik tasol papa bilong yu i no larim yu. Em stret a?

Akira: Em i stret.

Ofisa: Bilong wanem? As bilong dispela problem i olsem wanem?

Akira: Em i tok mi mas maritim wanpela wantok¹ stret bilong mipela. Mi no ken maritim man bilong narapela hap long wanem ol i gat difren kastom long mipela. Ating em i pret nogut² mi go stap long ples bilong man bilong mi na bai mi no kam lukim em gen. Em i ting tu nogut mi sik na dai long narapela hap. Em i pret nogut sampela i mekim poisen long mi.

Ofisa: Yu bilipim ol inap poisenim yu?

Akira: Yes ya! Long ples bilong mi ol i save wokim planti pasin sanguma³ na kilim i dai sampela man. Olsem na mipela i pret tru long sanguma.

Ofisa: Ol i wokim pasin sanguma olsem wanem?

Akira: Ol i klsim wanpela samting long yu-- olsem gras bilong het, kapa bilong pinga o wanem liklik samting bilong bodi bilong yu na mikisim wantaim sampela narapela samting olsem kawawar⁴ na tok poisen long en. Olsem na pawa bilong dispela i kam kilim yu.⁵

Ofisa: Sapos yu no bilip long dispela samting bai wanem samting i kamap? Pawa bai i kilim yu o nogat?

Akira: Mi no save. Tasol planti manmeri i bilip long en. Em i wanpela bikpela samting nogut long Papua Niu Gini.

Consequently Akira is worried. She goes and discusses her problem with a Welfare Officer.

I understand you want to marry a man from the Sepik but that your father won't let you. That's correct isn't it?

That's correct.

Why? What's the reason?

He says that I have to marry someone from our area. I'm not allowed to marry someone from another area because they have different customs from us. I guess he's afraid that if I go and live in my husband's village I won't come and see him again. He also thinks that I might get sick and die in another place. He's afraid someone will make black magic against me.

Do you believe they could kill you with sorcery/black magic?

Of course. In my area they make a lot of sanguma and kill men. As a result we are really afraid of sanguma.

How do they make this sanguma?

They get something from you - like hair from your head, fingernails or whatever small piece of your body they can and mix it up with something else like ginger and make magic over it. And so the power in this comes and kills you.

What if you don't believe in this what will happen? Will the power injure you or not?

I don't know. But lots of people believe in it. It's an evil thing in Papua New Guinea.

[footnotes opposite]

¹It is useful here to draw the learner's attention to the fact that *wan* is a very productive element in Tok Pisin. Thus it can be combined with many other elements to indicate a *fellow whatever* as in the following:

wanwok	<i>fellow worker</i>
wanhaus	<i>a person living in the same house, flat mate</i>
wanlain	<i>a person of the same (age, social) group</i>
wanpes	<i>a person of the same appearance, persons who look alike</i>
wanskul	<i>a schoolmate</i>
wansospen/wantebol	<i>a messmate</i>
wanwokabaut	<i>a travelling companion</i>

These and others will be presented in the Vocabulary section below.

²Note the use of *nogut* after *pret* in this conversation.

³*Sanguma* is a particular form of black magic or sorcery. Victims are waylaid and killed by inserting thorns or slivers of bamboo into parts of the body.

⁴*Gorgor* is used for *ginger* in some areas. There are two varieties of ginger that are eaten in Papua New Guinea and/or are used for medicinal/magical purposes. One is a small plant with edible roots (which is the one generally referred to as *kawawar* in Tok Pisin) and the other a tall plant like a *tanget* whose shoots are eaten. This latter is the one generally referred to as *gorgor* in Tok Pisin.

⁵Normally *kilim* just means *to injure* (in contrast to *kilim i dai to kill*) but it is increasingly being used for *to kill* as in this conversation where *sanguma* is being talked about.

[Singsing]

"Wanpela Meri" (Kalibobo Band)

VOCABULARY

1. Drills

Exercise 1: Simple substitution

Frame: Em i laikim wanpela man bilong Sepik.

She is fond of a man from the Sepik.

traim

is tempting

pulim

is seducing, raping

tok grisim

is flattering

mangalim

is coveting, jealous of

rongim

is doing wrong to, offending, doing injustice to

laikim

Now see if you can remember the Tok Pisin words for the following. Ready:

1. *to seduce or rape someone*

pulim

2. *to covet or be jealous of*

mangalim

3. *to flatter*

tok grisim

Exercise 2: Simple substitution

Frame: Em i pret nogut sampela i
mekim poisen long en.

killim i dai pik bilong en

tok nogutim em

solapim em¹

sakim tok bilong en

strafim em¹

mekim poisen long en

He's afraid someone will make black magic against him/her.

kill his/her pig

insult him/her

slap, thrash him/her

disobey him/her

punish him/her

Now see if you can say the following in Tok Pisin. Ready?

1. *They are afraid that you will insult us.*

Ol i pret nogut yu tok nogutim mipela.

2. *I am afraid the Government will punish me.*

Mi pret nogut Gavman i strafim mi.

3. *Are you afraid this dog will kill your pig?*

Yu pret nogut dispela dok i killim i dai pik bilong yu?

Exercise 3: Simple substitution

Frame: Papa i tok mi mas maritim wangepela
wantok bilong mi.

wanples

wannem

wanhaus

wanpilai

wanskul

wantok

*My father says that I have to marry
a wantok.*

person from same village

namesake

flat mate

playmate

schoolmate

Now how do you think you would form words for the following? Ready?

1. *a messmate (that is someone who eats food that comes from the same
saucepan or at the same table)*

wansospen/wantebol

2. *a person of the same religion*

wanlotu

3. *a blood relative*

wanblut

¹One could also use wipim (from English *whip*) for this.

Exercise 4: Simple substitution

Frame: Bilong wanem ol i mekim olsem?Why do they do that like that?

hangapim

hang (something) up

krungutim

bend (something), crumple (something)

klinim

clean (something)

skelim

share (something) out, weigh (something) out

tanim

turn (something)

mekim

Here is a short test: what is the meaning of the following Tok Pisin sentences? Ready?

1. Ol i hangapim bilum long huk.

They hang up the bilum or string bag on a hook.

2. Ol i skelim kaikai i go long olgeta tambu bilong ol.

They share out the food to all the in-laws.

3. Lukautim ka bilong mi gut. Nogut yu krungutim!

Take care of my car. Don't dent (or crumple) it!

2. Supplementary vocabulary

kristen¹*Christian*

haus lotu, sios

church

mekim Misa

to celebrate Mass

go long Misa

to go (to hear) Mass

lusim Misa

to miss, skip Mass

lotu

religion, to worship

lotuim (God)

to worship (God)

beten

to pray, prayer

holi

holy

hel

Hell

halivim bek, kisim bek

to save

Papa God

God the Father

Jisas, pikinini man bilong God

Jesus, the son of God

God giaman

false God, idol

satan, setan

the Devil

ensel

angel

spirit bilong God

Holy Ghost

¹Learners should be warned that some religious terms differ from denomination to denomination.

wasim, baptaisim	<i>to baptise</i>
buk beten	<i>prayer book</i>
tok tru	<i>truth</i>
tok giaman	<i>untruth, lie</i>
hop long	<i>to hope for</i>
mangal	<i>envy</i>
marimari, marimari long	<i>pity, mercy, to pity</i>
lusim tingting long ¹	<i>to forgive</i>
hevi, wari	<i>guilt, worry</i>
dinau	<i>debt</i>
daunpasin	<i>humility</i>
tubel, tumaus	<i>hypocrite</i>
rong	<i>offence, a wrong</i>
hiden, pegen, man i no gat lotu	<i>pagan, heathen</i>
promis, promisim	<i>promise, to promise</i>
sutim bel, sutim nus, sikirapim bel	<i>to provoke</i>
pekato, sin	<i>sin</i>
traim	<i>temptation</i>
gutpela pasin, gutpasin	<i>virtue</i>
profet	<i>prophet</i>
alta, tebol tambu	<i>altar</i>
laplap bilong alta	<i>altar cloth</i>
diwai kros	<i>a cross</i>
pasim han	<i>fold hands</i>
singsing bilong lotu	<i>hymn</i>
Ekelesia	<i>church members</i>
Katolik	<i>Catholic Church</i>

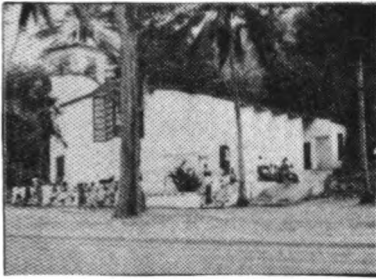


The Roman Catholic Cathedral,
Port Moresby

¹Lusim has other meanings. Its basic meaning is *to lose* but it is used for
 (a) *to spend money*: Mi lusim mani long stua;
 (b) *to leave behind, abandon, desert*: Mi lusim ples or Mi lusim meri bilong mi;
 (c) *to forget, forgive*: Yu no lusim tok bilong mi or Lusim tingting long man
 nogut ya!
 (d) *to loosen, set free*: Lusim anka! or Lusim dual! or Lusim kalabusman!

konpesen
 konpesen, tokaut long ol sin,
 tokautim sin
 tanim bel, tanim tingting
 kamapim samting
 kisim bel
 gat bel
 disaipel
 lain bilong Jisas
 gut olgeta, stret olgeta
 (mi) seven de

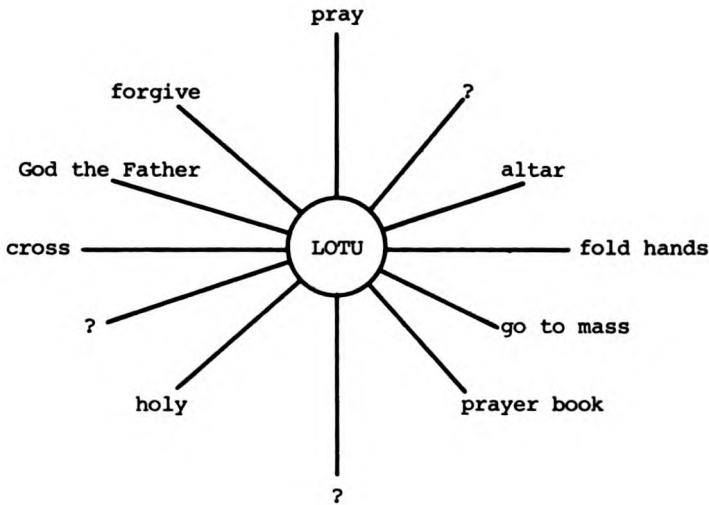
confession
to confess
to convert
to create
to conceive (a child)
to be pregnant
disciple
disciples
perfect
(I'm) a Seventh Day Adventist



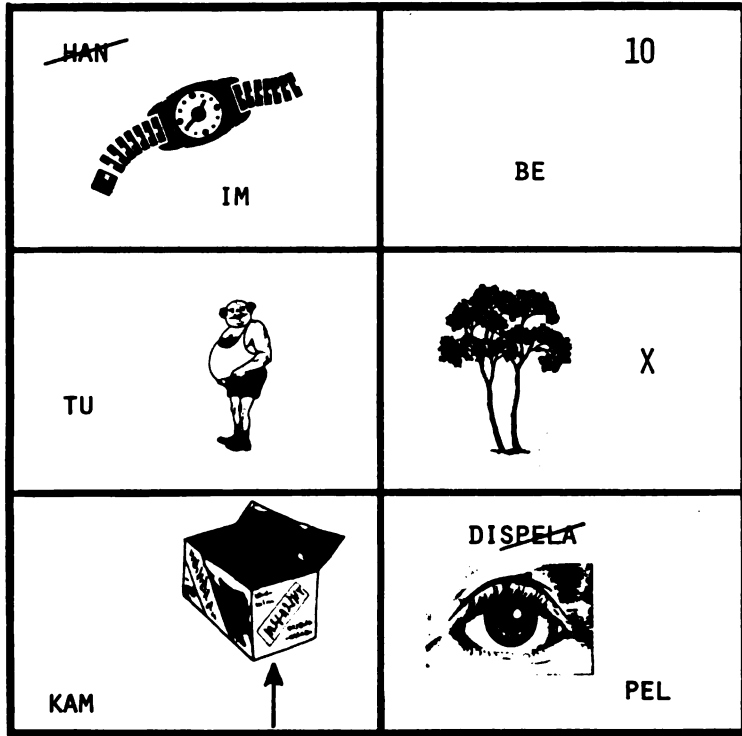
Seventh Day Adventist Church,
 Ela Beach, Port Moresby

Exercises

1. Give some of the Tok Pisin vocabulary you would need to talk about a church service. Here are some English ones to prompt you.



2. See if you can complete the following puzzle in Tok Pisin and then give the English for the words found.



(disaipel, beten, tubel, kamapim, wasim, diwai kros)

[Singsing]
"Wanpela Meri" (Kalibobo Band)

GRAMMAR

8.1 Emphatic pronouns: yet, tasol, wanpela

In Tok Pisin there are several ways of emphasising the fact that you (or someone else) performed an action on your (or his/her) own, or were the object of some action.

One is by placing yet after the pronoun representing the person or persons involved, for example:

Mi yet $\left\{ \begin{matrix} i \\ mi \end{matrix} \right\}$ klinim gaden.

*{ I clean(ed) the garden myself.
I myself clean(ed) the garden.*

Oi yet i paitim mi.

They hit me (I didn't hit them).

Em kas bilong yu yet.

That's your luck and yours alone.

Another is by placing *tasol* *only* after the pronoun representing the person or persons involved, for example:

Mi $\left\{ \begin{matrix} i \\ mi \end{matrix} \right\}$ klinim gaden.

Only I (no one else) clean(ed) the garden.

Ol i paitim mi *tasol*.

They hit only me.

A third is by placing *wanpela* *alone* after the pronouns *mi*, *yu*, and *em* representing the person involved, for example:

Mi $\left\{ \begin{matrix} i \\ mi \end{matrix} \right\}$ wanpela klinim gaden.

I alone clean(ed) the garden.

Ol i paitim mi *wanpela*.

They hit me (and I was the only one).

Note that in this last case there is no possible form *mipela wanpela* for *we alone* etc. One would have to express this by using either *yet* or *tasol* given above.

Thus the set of pronouns presented so far can now be expanded to include the following:

Pidgin	English	Pidgin	English	Pidgin	English
mi yet	<i>I myself me myself</i>	mi <i>tasol</i>	<i>only I only me</i>	mi <i>wanpela</i>	<i>I alone me alone</i>
yu yet	<i>you yourself</i>	yu <i>tasol</i>	<i>only you</i>	yu <i>wanpela</i>	<i>you alone</i>
em yet	<i>he himself she herself it itself</i>	em <i>tasol</i>	<i>only he only she only it</i>	em <i>wanpela</i>	<i>he alone she alone it alone</i>
mipela yet	<i>we ourselves</i>	mipela <i>tasol</i>	<i>only we</i>		
yumi yet	<i>we ourselves</i>	yumi <i>tasol</i>	<i>only we</i>		
ol yet	<i>they themselves</i>	ol <i>tasol</i>	<i>only they</i>		

Finally notice that all of these emphatic forms are followed by the predicative marker *i* or the corresponding non-emphatic pronoun when they occur in the subject position.

Practice drills

Exercise 1: Simple substitution

Frame: Mi wanpela i go beten long haus lotu.

(yu wanpela, mipela *tasol*, em yet, yumi *tasol*, mi wanpela)

Exercise 2: Progressive substitution

Frame: Em wanpela i klinim gaden.

Em wanpela i pret long intaviua.

Em yet i pret long intaviua.

Em yet i save mekim poisen.

Mi tasol i save mekim poisen.

Mi tasol i bihainim pasin tumbuna.

Em wanpela i bihainim pasin tumbuna.

Em wanpela i klinim gaden.

Exercise 3: Repeat the following sentences and say what they mean in English. Ready?

1. Husat i lukim yu wanpela?

Who saw you alone?

2. Dispela man ya em i wokim poisen long poisenim mi yet.

This is the man who performed sorcery against me.

3. God tasol i stap long heven.

Only God lives in Heaven.

4. Em wanpela i mangalim meri bilong Api.

Only that person is covetous of Api's wife.

5. Ol birua i bin kilim i dai papa bilong mi yet long sanguma.

Enemies killed my father with sanguma.

Evaluation exercise

How would you say the following in Tok Pisin? Ready?

1. *That's your luck and yours alone.*

Em kas bilong yu yet.

2. *Only the two playmates usually share out the lollies.*

Tupela wanpilai tasol i save skelim ol loli.

3. *They will begin to pray themselves.*

*{ Bai ol yet i stat beten.
Ol yet bai i stat beten.*

4. *He alone is dressing up for the dance.*

*{ Em wanpela i bilas bilong singsing.
Em wanpela tasol i bilasim em yet bilong singsing.*

5. *Only children are supposed to drink milk.*

*{ Pikinini tasol i ken dring susu.
Ol pikinini tasol i ken dring susu.*

6. *I did it myself.*

*{ Mi yet i mekim.
Mi yet mi mekim.*

8.2 Conditional clauses: sapos

Clauses introduced by sapos *if, suppose* in Tok Pisin are conditional clauses. They generally come first in a sentence and may be connected to what follows by *orait*.

Examples:

Sapos yu go wok long narapela ples
bai yu mekim wanem?

*Supposing you go to work somewhere
else what will you do?*

Sapos i no gat misin long dispela
hap orait bai mi beten nating long
haus bilong mi.

*If there is no mission in this area
then I'll pray by myself in my
house.*

Notice in these clauses that the subject generally comes immediately after **sapos** (or if there is no subject **i gat** does) and other phrases come later in the clause.

Practice drills

Exercise 1: Simple substitution

Frame: Sapos yu go wok long narapela hap bai yu mekim wanem?
(em tupela i, ol i, em i, yupela i, yu)

Exercise 2: Simple substitution

Frame: Sapos mi sik, orait bai mi no wok.
(les, pulap, sotwin, kus, kol, sik)

Exercise 3: Repeat the following sentences and then say what they mean in English. Ready?

- Sapos ol i no halivim mi, orait bai mi no inap halivim ol.
If they don't help me then I won't help them.
- Sapos gavman i no lukautim yumi gut bai yumi paulim wok bilong en.
If the Government doesn't take care of us properly we'll interfere with its work.
- Sapos welfe ofisa i tok olsem, orait yu bihainim tok bilong en.
If the Welfare Officer says so then you do what he/she says.
- Sapos Jisas Krai i stap long graun ya ating bai yumi olgeta i kamap kristen.
If Jesus Christ was on earth I guess we'd all become Christians.
- Sapos yu bilip long God orait yu no ken wokim pasin sanguma.
If you believe in God then you shouldn't perform witchcraft.
- Sapos yu memem kawawar bai maus bilong yu i hot.
If you chew ginger your mouth will be hot.
- Sapos em i no lusim tu kina asde orait em i inap baim narapela gita nau.
If he hadn't lost/spent two kina yesterday then he'd be able to buy another guitar now.
- Sapos yupela i save Tok Inglis bai yupela i kisim wok hariap.
If you (plural) knew English you'd get work quickly.

Evaluation exercise

How would you say the following in Tok Pisin? Ready?

- If you are happy then I'm happy too.*
Sapos yu amamas orait mi amamas tu.
- If your father plants coffee will you help him or not?*
Sapos papa bilong yu i planim kopi bai yu halivim em o nogat?

3. *If we unite the country will progress. If not, it won't.*
 Sapos yumi bung wantaim bai kantri i gohet. Sapos nogat, orait bai nogat.
4. *If he expresses himself then we'll know what he believes.*
 { Sapos em autim tingting bilong en orait bai yumi ken save em i bilipim wanem.
 { Sapos em tokaut long tingting bilong en orait bai yumi ken save em bilipim wanem.
5. *If you mix this with that it will become red.*
 Sapos yu miksim dispela i go long dispela ya bai retpela kala i kamap.
6. *Supposing it rains what are we going to do?*
 Sapos ren i pundaun bai yumi i mekim wanem?

8.3 More on verbs: stative, Verb + long, Verb + im

As learners of Tok Pisin you should now have begun to notice that many verbs in Tok Pisin are very similar in form and related in meaning to other words. Consider, for example, the following pairs which have been introduced so far:

wok	to work	wokim	to make (something)
tok	to say	tokim	to tell (someone)
kirap	to arise or get up	kirapim	to begin or start (something)
bilas	decoration	bilasim	to decorate (something)
wet	to wait/wet	wetim	to wait for (someone)/to wet (someone)

Tok Pisin has many such verb forms. In general those marked by -im are, as already pointed out in Section 1.2 above, transitive (i.e. they require an object), while those not so marked are intransitive,¹ including some which are generally referred to as stative, e.g., bruk in kap i bruk *the cup broke* or *the cup is broken*. Study the following list of verbs paying particular attention to the differences in meaning between the last group and then proceed to the exercises given below.

bagarap	to be or get spoilt, to be ruined	bagarapim	to ruin, spoil (sthg) ²
bilas	decoration, be decorated	bilasim	to decorate (sthg)
boil	to be boiling	boilim	to boil (sthg)
hait	to be hidden	haitim	to hide (sthg)
bruk	to be broken	brukim	to break (sthg)
op	to be open	opim	to open (sthg)
kamaut	to come out	kamautim	to pull or take out (sthg)

¹But see sub-section 3.5 for certain exceptions.

²sthg = something

klia¹	<i>to be clear</i>	klirim	<i>to clear or explain (sthg)</i>
kros	<i>to be angry</i>	krosim	<i>to scold (sthg)</i>
marit	<i>to be married</i>	maritim	<i>to marry (sthg)</i>
pas	<i>to be stuck</i>	pasim	<i>to fasten (sthg)</i>
pinis	<i>to be finished, or completed</i>	pinisim	<i>to finish (sthg)</i>
ran, ron	<i>to run</i>	ranim	<i>to chase (sthg)</i>
sanap	<i>to stand up, to be erect</i>	sanapim	<i>to stand up (sthg), to erect (sthg)</i>
slek	<i>to be slack, loose</i>	slekim	<i>to loosen or slacken (sthg)</i>
slip	<i>to sleep or be asleep or lying down</i>	slipim	<i>to lay (sthg) down</i>
singaut long	<i>to call out to</i>	singautim	<i>to call (sthg)</i>
tok gris long	<i>to talk in a flattering way to</i>	tok grisim	<i>to flatter (sthg)</i>
lukaut long	<i>to be careful of</i>	lukautim	<i>to look after (sthg)</i>
sut long	<i>to shoot at/with</i>	sutim	<i>to shoot (sthg)</i>
wok long	<i>to be busy (doing sthg)</i>	wokim	<i>to build (sthg)</i>
tok giaman long	<i>to tell lies to</i>	giamanim	<i>to tell lies to, to fool (sthg)</i>
kirap long	<i>to get up from (bed for example)</i>	kirapim	<i>to begin, start (sthg), to get (sthg) up from bed</i>
skul long	<i>to go to school in (a place)</i>	skulim long	<i>to teach (someone) about (sthg)</i>
lain long	<i>to learn about</i>	lainim	<i>to learn (sthg)</i>

Practice drills

Exercise 1: Answer the following questions in Tok Pisin using the cues provided. Ready?

- 1. Husat i halt?** (em tasol)
Em tasol i halt.
- 2. Wanem samting i bagarap?** (han bilong mi)
Han bilong mi i bagarap.
- 3. Tin i stap open?²** (yes)
Yes, tin i stap open.

¹Note that words ending in a generally add r when they have the transitive verb marker -im suffixed to them, e.g., hama *hammer* becomes hamarim *to hammer* (Obj.), *to beat up, knock*. But for words like spia *spear* and klia *clear* ending in a sequence of vowels the a is 'dropped'. For example, spia becomes spirim *to spear* (Obj.) and klia becomes klirim *to clear* (Obj.).

²Many speakers still use op for open.

4. OI i klirim graun bilong husat? (dispela lain)
 OI i klirim graun bilong dispela lain.
5. Wanem santing i kapsait? (pasindia trak)
 Pasindia trak i kapsait.
6. Kap i bruk? (nogat)
 Nogat, kap i no bruk.
7. Yu mekim wanem long rop? (slekim tasol)
 Mi slekim (rop) tasol.

Exercise 2: Pretend you are in charge of a group of workmen. Give them the following instructions in Tok Pisin. Ready?

- Tell them to open that box over there.
 {Yupela opim dispela bokis long hap!
 {Yupela opim dispela bokis ya long hap!
- Tell them to eat up all the food.
 Yupela pinisim olgeta kaikail!
- Tell them to stand up two posts.
 Yupela sanapim tupela pos!
- Tell them to loosen the rope.
 Yupela slekim rop!
- Tell them to block all the roads.
 Yupela pasim olgeta rot!

Evaluation exercise

Make up an appropriate question from the following Tok Pisin sentences. Use the corresponding transitive verbs marked by -im and the question word husat. For example, if the instructor were to give the sentence Wara i boil your answer should be Husat i boylim wara? Ready?

- Klok bilong mi i bagarap.
 Husat i bagarapim klok bilong yu?
- Wara i boil.
 Husat i boylim wara?
- Olgeta liklik plet i bruk.
 Husat i brukim olgeta liklik plet?
- Ti i kapsait.
 Husat i kapsaitim ti?
- Meri ya em i marit.
 Husat i maritim meri ya?
- Wok bilong mi i pinis.
 Husat i pinisim wok bilong yu?

7. Fopela pos i sanap.

Husat i sanapim fopela pos?

8. Rop i skel.

Husat i skelim rop?

9. Pik i ran i go long bus.

Husat i ranim pik i go long bus?

10. Mi skul long Kembera.

Husat i skulim yu long Kembera.

8.4 Still more on relative clauses (*where, what*)

Following on from sub-sections 6.2 and 7.2 above there is one more important point to be made about relative clauses in Tok Pisin. This is that *where, wherever, what* and *whatever* in certain English sentences are expressed by nouns or noun phrases plus relative clauses in Tok Pisin and not by *we* and *wanem* as most learners expect. Thus *where* and *wherever* are expressed by (dispela) ples + relative clause and *wanem* ples + relative clause respectively. That is, Tok Pisin approximates to the literal forms of *in the place which ...* for *where*; *in which place in which ...* for *wherever*; *this thing that ...* for *what* and *which thing that ...* for *whatever* in English. The following examples illustrate the relevant kinds of sentences.

where/wherever

Yu putim kago long (dispela) ples
(we) diwai i sanap long en.

*Put the goods where the tree is
standing (lit. in the place in
which the tree is standing).*

Ol i planim kopi long (dispela) ples
mi (bin) soim ol (long en).¹

*They planted the coffee where I
showed them to.*

Mi save long dispela ples yu go
long en.

I know the place to which you went.

Mi inap painim yu long wanem ples
yu haít long en.

*I'll be able to find you wherever
you hide.*

what/whatever

Mi save dispela samting yu laik
kisim.

*I know what you want to get (lit.
that which you want ...).*

Husat i troimwe dispela samting mi
no bin kukim?

Who threw out what I didn't cook?

Bai emtupela i lusim ol samting yu
wokim long tupela.

*Those two will lose whatever you
make for them.*

¹This sentence is better without the long en in it.

Practice drills

Exercise 1: Simple substitution

Frame: Yu putim kago long ples diwai i sanap long en.

(ol i no inap stilim long en, stuakipa i soim yu, we i klia, diwai i sanap long en)

Exercise 2: Simple substitution

Frame: Mi save long dispela samting yu laik kisim.

(em i lukim dispela samting, pikinini i lusim dispela samting, dok i kaka i dispela samting, em i no kukim dispela samting, mi save long dispela samting)

Exercise 3: Simple substitution

Frame: God i save wanem samting yu mekim.

(mamapapa bilong yu i lukim, meri bilong en i harim, nogut ol i kam paulim, bai mitupela i bilasim, God i save)

Evaluation exercise

We are going to ask you to draw a picture of two boys in a garden. A pig is near the boys and a man is standing outside. Now stop the tape and get yourself a piece of paper to draw your picture.

Now answer the following questions in Tok Pisin using the cues provided. Answer in complete sentences. Ready?

1. Yu inap lukim ples ya pik i stap long en? *(yes)*
Yes, mi inap lukim ples pik i stap long en.
2. Orait, pik i stap we? *(near where the two boys are standing)*
Pik i stap klostu long ples we tupela manki i sanap long en.
3. Yu inap lukim dispela samting pik i mekim? *(no)*
Nogat, mi no inap lukim dispela samting pik i mekim.
4. Husat i inap lukim? *(this man outside the fence)*
Dispela man i stap ausait long banis em i inap lukim.
5. Yu save long wanem samting man i tokim tupela manki? *(no)*
Nogat, mi no save long wanem samting man i tokim tupela manki.
6. Sapos pik i brukim banis bai man i mekim wanem? *(shoot it)*
Sapos pik i brukim banis bai man i sutim.

[Singing]

Duke of York Islands lullaby

TEXTS

(1) Sanguma

In the following interview you will hear Paius Pasen talking about sanguma. Paius comes from the Ambunti area of the Sepik River.



Paius

T: Yu inap stori mitupela tu long wanpela samting mitupela i laik harim as bilong en ol i tok long sanguma. Yu save long dispela samting o nogat?

P: Yea. Bilong sanguma we long--hap bilong mi yet long dispela eria bilong mipela long Ambunti na mipela kolim mipela yet olsem ol Manambu. Tasol mipela yet, mipela save i gat arapela kain rot bilong sanguma na pasin we mipela save lukim. Olsem bilong Sepik wara mipela gat arapela kain rot bilong sanguma. Na bilong ol arapela hap, olsem long Wewak, na haiwe, Sepik haiwe, ol i gat arapela. Ol i gat bilong givim sut, olsem ol dokta yusim, na givim poisen long man, em i kaikai na em i dai. Na mipela long wara mipela gat arapela kain. Em bilong --mipela save tok Pukpuk Kanu. Na man i mas go long dispela na go long Pukpuk Kanu nau bagarapim narapela man. Na man i mas dai long dispela.

D: Bai yu wokim wanem--bai yu wokim olsem wanem stret long ba--bagarapim narapela man?

P: O em dispela em ol i gat wanpela man em i save long dispela, olsem sip. Em bai em i mas trenim ol arapela yangpela man olsem ol i mas go kaikai mit bilong man o samting olsem nau, na bihain long dispela bai ol i save long dispela nau, ol i inap long go na we mipela sindaun olsem mipela no inap lukim ol kam insait olsem na kam givim tamiok long wanpela bilong mipela. Bihain nau mipela painimaut olsem, "O man ya i mas indai nau".

Em dispela kain em, em i bikpela. Ol man i yusim bilong bagarapim man. Na long man i sin--kirap na go nating na wokim, em dispela mipela i no gat. Na mipela gat save long ol sain we i save kamap long taim mipela i lukim--luk lukim na save olsem ol Pukpuk Kanu i kam o ol sanguma kam. Na mipela i save lukim ol kainkain ol pisin, olsem aul em i wanpela bilong ol. Na narapela em i braunpela pisin save--i gat waitpela long nek bilong en na blak long het bilong en i save stap long Sepik.

D: Yupela kolim wanem?

P: Long pijin em mi no klia gut tumas long nem bilong en, tasol long tokples mipela kolim *kutu*. Na dispela em i save kam singaut mipela save se, "O em sanguma i kam nau" na ol i mas givim rot na i ranawe na hait nabaut long haus.

D: Tenkyu tru.

T: Oke. Em gutpela. Tenkyu tru.

English translation

T: *Could you also tell us (two) about something we would like to hear about and why it exists. It's called sanguma. Do you know about this or not?*

P: *Yea. About sanguma which -- our region in the Ambunti area, we call ourselves the Manambu. We know there are other methods of performing sanguma and which we know about. We of the Sepik River use a different way of performing sanguma, and those in other areas, like around Wewak and along the highway, the Sepik Highway, they have their own. They have ones involving injections like doctors, and giving poison to a person in food who eats it and dies. We of the river have other ways. That of ours is called the Crocodile Canoe. And someone has to go on this, on this Crocodile Canoe, and injure another person and that person has to die from that.*

D: *What do you do--what do you really do to-- injure another person?*

P: *Oh that, there is a man who understands this, say a chief. He has to train the other young men. For example, they have to go and eat the flesh of a human being or something like that and afterwards they will know about this then. They will be able to go to where we are sitting but we wouldn't see them come inside and they'd come and hit one of us with a tomahawk. Then we'd deduce that this person will die then.*

This kind of sanguma is widespread. Men use it to get rid of people. And as for a person getting up and going on his own accord without training and doing it we don't have that kind. We recognise certain signs that arise and when we notice them we know that the Crocodile Canoes are coming or the sanguma are coming. And we notice different kinds of birds, the owl is one of them. Another is a brown bird which usually --which has white feathers on its neck and black on its head and which lives on the Sepik River.

D: *What do you call it?*

P: *I'm not very sure of its name in Tok Pisin but in our language we call it kutu. And this one comes and calls out and we say, "Oh the sanguma is coming now" and they have to avoid it. They run away and hide around about in the house.*

D: *Thank you.*

T: *Okay. That's good. Thank you very much.*

(2) Komuniti wok na Yunaitet Sios

In this section you will hear two interviews with Redin Gamala from Koselok village near Kavieng in New Ireland Province. In the first Redin talks about community work.



Redin (on right) and friend
talking to Dicks Thomas

D: *Oke am--nau ating bai mi askim yu long pasin bilong komuniti wok insait long dispela ples Kaselok. Am--yu inap tokim mi husat i go pas long dispela komuniti long Kaselok?*

R: *A--i gat tupela komiti long hia, olsem komiti bilong kaunsil na em tupela yet i save rulim wok insait long dispela komuniti long Kaselok long ol wok. Olsem tede a--i gat--i gat komiti bilong kaunsil tasol long hia long wok long etpos i gat komiti tu bilong helt em i stap. Olsem na sapos ol komiti bilong helt ol i lukim olsem ples i --i bagarap liklik long bus, o i no klin, orait ol i ken putim aut dispela tingting i kam long komiti bilong*

kaunsil. Olsem em yet na i rulim dispela viles olgeta long Kaselok. Na bai tupela yet i toktok long en, na tokim ol pipel long kam bung wantaim na klinim dispela etpos nau.

D: Gutpela. Oke taim ol i kam na wok wantaim am--husat save kukim kaikai, husat save bringim wara bilong ol lain manmeri i save kam wok?

R: Ating dispela nau, em long taim bilong wok nau, em i gat tupela teng i stap klostu long dispela hap. Em ol man i save laik dring, wok na pilim dring na ol i go kisim wara bilong dring. Na tru long kaikai wan wan i save kisim kaikai bilong en i kam long fitim dispela de sapos ol i pilim hangre na kaikai.

English translation

D: *Okay am--now I guess I'd like to ask you about what community work here at Kaselok is like. Am--could you tell me who is the leader in the Kaselok community?*

R: *Ah--there are two committees here, council committees and those two control the work within the community. Thus today¹ there is--there is only the council committee working here on the aidpost. There is also a health committee. Thus suppose the health committee (members) notice that the area is--is becoming untidy, or is not clean, then they let the council committee know. It's like that because it (the council committee) controls all the villages in Kaselok. And the two of them will discuss it and tell the people to come and gather together and clean the aidpost.*

D: *Good. Okay when they come and work together am--who cooks food, who brings water for those groups who come to work?*

R: *I think with this, when they come to work, there are two tanks nearby and those who want to drink or who are working and become thirsty, they go and get water to drink. And as for food,² each person brings his/her own sufficient for³ the day. If they feel hungry they eat.*

Ol kwestin

1. I gat hamas komiti i lukautim Kaselok? Kolim nem bilong tupela!
2. Wanem komiti i save makim wok bilong kaunsil komiti long etpos?
3. Husat i save bringim wara bilong ol wokmanmeri i kam na kukim kaikai bilong ol long taim bilong wok?

¹At the time of the recording the people were cleaning around the aidpost, cutting the grass and generally tidying up.

²The tru in Redin's statement refers back to the question.

³Lit. *fitting the day* or *fit for the day*.

In this interview Redin is discussing the United Church.

T: Na yu tok yupela i kamap Yunaitet Sios a? Olsem wanem dispela i kamap? Mi ting a--i no gat Yunaitet Sios long dispela hap na em i stap yet.

R: I tru tumas. Dispela-- dispela Yunaitet Sios tasol i bin kamap tru bipo Metodis a-- i kam inap olsem ol senis i wok long kam na ating bikpela bung wantaim ol i bin putim dispela Yunaitet na i gat Yunaitet Sios i bin kamap a--name! long Metodis i bin--ol i bin senisim dispela tupela nem. Olsem na dispela Yunaitet Sios i stap. Na dispela i bin kam bipo tru olsem ol bikman ol i bin kam long lotu ol i bin kamap long hia ol i bin-- kam--ol i bin kam olsem ol sampela man ol i bin stap long dispela hap bilong mipela, ol i no gutpela man, olsem ol man bilong kaikaim man, man bilong poisen olsem dispela lotu bin kamap na a--pinisim dispela ol man na i kamap nau tede em ol i bin kam olsem gutpela sindaun, na em lotu yet i bin stap. Na nau ol i kolim olsem Yunaitet Sios.

English translation

T: *And you said you (plural) have become United Church didn't you? How did this come about? I thought ah--there was no United Church in this area but there is still.*

R: *That's quite true. The United Church that has come up was really Methodist before ah-- till changes were taking place and I guess it was when they had a big unification that they gave it the name United Church and ah-- it was among the Methodists -- they changed these two names. As a result this United Church is here. And those who came here a long time ago, that is, officials of the church arrived when there were people in this area who weren't good. They were cannibals and sorcerers and the church arrived and ah--overcame these men and today we have peace and now there is only the church. And it's called the United Church.*

01 kwestin

1. Redin i tok wanem? Husat i stap bilong long taim lotu i kamap?
2. Wanem lotu i bin kam kamap pastaim?
3. Yunaitet Sios i bin kamap olsem wanem?

Now to end this unit a Tok Pisin song composed and sung by Mr Mike Goodson, a European Agricultural Officer in Papua New Guinea. This recording was made in the field in the early 1970s.¹

MIPELA DIDIMAN

Mipela mipela didiman
Husat meri laik i ken
Ol i kolim mipela nambawan man
O mipela didiman

Mipela wok long nait na de
Na mipela no gat dola-de
Mipela no gat gutpela pe
O mipela didiman

[continued opposite]

¹This recording was made by Dr D. Laycock of The Australian National University.

Mipela save go wok bus
 Kaikai pinis na mi smok brus
 Tingting long olgeta samting i lus
 O mipela didiman

Kiap i ting mi rabisman
 Mi holim meri long tupela han
 Sapos em i laik kotim mi i ken
 O mipela didiman

O hapkas pikinini ples pulap
 Inap long go long wangepela trak
 Maski long moa, ating em inap
 O mipela didiman

Supplementary exercises

1. Pretend you are a Papua New Guinean and tell this story into a tape-recorder. Then transcribe what you said and check through it with a speaker of Tok Pisin. Here is what you want to say in English.

A RAT STORY

This is a story about rats. It's made-up. Once upon a time some rats lived underground. They didn't have any food. And so they used to eat only tree roots. At night they didn't sleep; they sat up and talked a lot. But one night they dug a hole and came up outside, on top, and went and looked for some new food. They found plenty of ripe bananas about that had fallen down. But one ate something that wasn't any good and his stomach swelled up. So they all returned underground again via the hole they had come up. They followed the fat one. They're there. That's the end.

2. Yu tanim ol dispela hap tok i go long Tok Pisin.

1. You (two) put the leftovers in the refrigerator!
2. Have you got any lemon drink?
3. I like to have barbecue sauce with fresh eggs and pork.
4. Your cup of tea is beside the plate.
5. How much is the dessert?
6. Aso gave the condensed milk back to the old woman.
7. Thirty-seven Europeans want to leave Papua New Guinea.
8. Where are the tea-leaves?
9. The cook got rid of the shoulder of pork.
10. The two of them see something small under the house for visiting Government officials.

3. Read the following passage from the *Nupela Testamen bilong Bikpela Jisas Kraist* (published by the British and Foreign Bible Society, Canberra-Port Moresby, 1969, p.156) and answer the questions about it below:

Mak 10: 1

156

SAPTA 10

Jisas i tok long pasin bilong katim marit

(Mt 19: 1-12; Lu 16: 18)

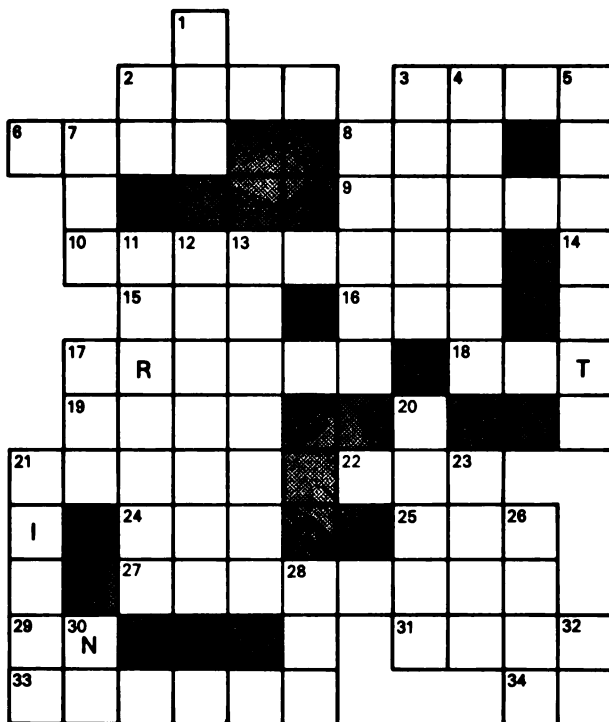
Jisas i kirap na i lusim dispela hap, na em i go 1
long hap bilong Judia na long Jordan hap i go. Na
planti manmeri ol i kam bung gen long em. Na em i
bihainim pasin bilong en, na i givim tok bilong God
long ol.

Na ol Ferisi i kam long em, na ol i traिम em. Ol 2
i tok, "Lo bilong yumi em i orait long man i ken rausim
meri bilong en, no nogat?" / Jisas i bekim tok 3
long ol, i spik, "Moses i givim wanem lo long yu-
pela?" / Ol i tok, "Moses em i orait long man i ken 4
raitim pepa bilong katim marit na i ken rausim
meri." / Tasol Jisas i tokim ol, "Yupela i bikhet, 5
olsem na Moses i raitim dispela lo long yupela. /
Bipo tru, long taim God i wokim olgeta samting, 'em 6
i wokim man na meri. / Olsem na bai man i lusim 7
papamama na i pas wantaim meri bilong en. / Na 8
tupela bai i stap wanpela bodi.' Olsem na tupela i no
olsem tupela moa. Nogat. Tupela i olsem wanpela 9
bodi tasol. / Olsem na samting God i pasim pinis,
em man i no ken katim."

Bihain ol i go bek long haus, na ol disaipel ol i 10
askim em long dispela samting. / Em i tokim ol, i 11
spik, "Sapos wanpela man em i lusim meri bilong en
na i maritim narapela meri, dispela man em i rongim 12
meri bilong en na i bagarapim marit. / Na sapos
wanpela meri i lusim man bilong en na i maritim
narapela man, dispela meri em i bagarapim marit."

Kwestin

1. Jisas i mekim wanem long ol manmeri i kam bung long en?
 2. Lo bilong Moses em i tok wanem?
 3. Jisas i wanbel long dispela lo o nogat? Sapos nogat, em i tok wanem?
 4. Ol Ferisi i laik wokim wanem long Jisas?
4. Try your hand at the following crossword puzzle that appeared in *Wantok* (Namba 6, 1970) many years ago.



Rit i go long raithan:

- 2. dispela de
- 3. ol man na meri i save pasim
- 6. ol trikman i save tumas long dispela
- 8. samting bilong sindaun
- 9. bikpela tamiok
- 10. laikim tumas long kisim
- 15. samting bilong dring
- 16. ol soldia i stap long em
- 17. 'arrowroot' long tok pisin
- 18. abus
- 19. i swit tumas
- 21. klinim long wara
- 22. yu ken pulimapim samting long en
- 24. rait INU tasol

Rit i go daun:

- 1. bilong pulim pis
- 2. samting bilong dring
- 3. paitim long fut
- 4. pasim wantaim glu
- 5. bilong katim diwai
- 7. olgeta haus i gat wanpela
- 8. wanpela lip nogut i skrap tumas
- 11. go arere long samting
- 12. nem bilong kantri bilong yumi
- 13. ol i salim tok long en
- 14. yu paitim na musik i kamap
- 17. as tasol
- 20. i olsem kukamba
- 21. bilong haisapim ol samting
- 23. boskru

[continued overleaf]

- | | |
|------------------------------|-----------------------------|
| 25. bilong pasim trausis | 26. klok i soim |
| 27. yu na mi wantaim | 28. 'hooray' long tok pisin |
| 29. insait (long tok Inglis) | 30. wantaim |
| 31. sapos em i.... yu laikim | 32. solwara i kalap |
| 33. wanpela de bilong wik | |
| 34. mi tasol | |

5. Listen to texts 12 and 20 in Unit 14 and discuss them in Tok Pisin.

INTRODUCTION

In this unit we shall be focussing on:

- (1) how to say *there is, there are*;
- (2) how to express the idea of *until*;
- (3) how to say something is quite good or big, very good or big, and make similar comparisons;
- (4) how to express the idea of *whether*.

These points will be introduced in the conversations that follow and will be discussed and drilled in more detail in the grammatical sections that follow them.

Other things that are worth knowing are drawn to your attention in footnotes to the conversations and grammatical sections.

CONVERSATIONS

(1) "Mi bin lainim long skul"

Long dispela intaviu bai yu harim toktok bilong wanpela meri. Nem bilong en, Kinua. Em i wanpela sekreteri bilong Gavman. Niusman bilong NBC askim em bilong toksave em i bin lainim Tok Inglis we?

Niusman: E, Kinua, you bin lainim Tok Inglis we?

Kinua: Mi bin lainim long skul.

Niusman: Yu bin stat lainim long wanem taim?

Kinua: Taim mi bin go long Komuniti Skul. Mi no klia tumas long wanem taim stret. Ating mi bin stat lainim long yia namba wan o yia namba tu.

Niusman: Taim yu stat long lainim Tok Inglis, yu bin lainim pasin bilong raitim Tok Inglis pastaim o pasin bilong toktok pastaim?

Kinua: Nogat, mipela i bin lainim pasin bilong toktok. Tasol mi no save toktok gut inap long taim wanpela Yuropen tisa i bin kam.

Niusman: Em i bin gupela tisa?

Kinua: Ye. Em i bin mo mo yet. Em i bin winim ol narapela tisa bilong mipela. Wet! Mi giaman. Mi bin gat sampela

In this interview you will hear a woman talking. Her name is Kinua. She is a Government secretary. An NBC reporter asks her to explain where she learnt English.

Where did you learn English, Kinua?

At school.

When did you start learning it?

When I went to Community School. I don't really know when exactly. I guess I started learning in first grade or second grade.

When you started to learn English did you start by learning to write it or by learning to speak it first?

No, we learnt to talk. But I couldn't speak well until a European teacher came along.

Was he a good teacher?

Yes, exceptionally so. He was better than any of our teachers. Wait! I'm telling lies. I had some good Papua New Guinean teachers

gutupela tisa bilong Papua Niu Gini tasol ol i no bin tokim gutpela Tok Inglis. Yuropen tisa i bin gutpela long wanem Tok Inglis i as tokples bilong em yet.

Niusman: Olsem wanem? Ol tisa i bin askim yupela long yusim Tok Inglis tasol long skul? No ken toktok long tokples bilong yupela yet?

Kinua: Yes. Ol i save tok, "Yupela i no ken yusim Tok Pisin o tokples. Yupela i mas yusim Tok Inglis tasol." Sapos mipela i no tokim Tok Inglis bai mipela i no inap painim rot ya.

but they didn't speak English very well. The European teacher was good because English was his mother tongue.

How come? Did the teachers used to ask you to use only English at school? Weren't you allowed to speak in your mother tongues?

Yes. They used to say, "You (plural) are not allowed to use Tok Pisin or your own languages. You have to use only English." If we didn't speak English we wouldn't be able to get on.¹

¹Lit. *find the road* (i.e. *the road to success*).

(2) "Mi dai long buai"

Nau bai yu harim tupela studen bilong yunivesiti i toktok. Tupela i laik tru long kaikai buai.¹ Olsem na tupela i toktok i stap. Ating ai bilong tupela i laik slip. Olsem na tupela i painim buai.

A: E, poro, mi dai long buai ya. I gat liklik hap bilong yu o nogat?

B: Nogat. Mi no gat mo.

A: Yu ting wanem? Yakob i gat sampela?

B: Mi no save. Em i gat o no gat.² Yu go traिम askim em.³

A: Maski, bihain! Mi gat wanpela leksa ya. Mi mas go pastaim long leksa.



Street sellers, Port Moresby

Now you're going to hear two university students talking. They are talking about wanting to chew betelnut. They're apparently sleepy and are looking for betelnut.

Heh, friend, I'm dying for some betelnut. Have you got any or not?

No. I haven't got any more.

Do you think Jakob would have any?

I don't know whether she's got any or not. Go and ask her.

Forget it, later. I've got a lecture. I have to go to it first.

B: Sapos yu wet inap taim lekse i pinis yunitupela i ken go long bung.

If you wait till after the lecture we (two) can go to the market.

A: Yes tasol mi laikim sampela nau. Skin bilong mi i les na mi pilim ai bilong mi i laik slip tu.

Yes but I want some now. I'm tired and feel like going to sleep.

¹Betelnut chewing is an important social pastime in most areas of Papua New Guinea. The central ingredient in this is the nut kernel of bitolnat/bilinat, the areca nut, which is generally referred to as buai, although buai can also refer to the whole chewing mix. This buai is chewed with kambang lime (usually carried in a gourd called skin kambang or sel kambang) and leaves, flowers or other parts of the stem or root of the pepper vine daka, producing a brilliant red pulp in the mouth. See text 2, at the end of this unit, for one speaker's description of how to chew betelnut.

²This is the traditional way of saying *I don't know if/whether ...* As will be pointed out later the modern trend is for speakers to use sapos for *if/whether*, e.g. Mi no save sapos em i gat o nogat so that is resembles English more closely.

³Traim is discussed and drilled in sub-section 12.3 below.

(3) "Tok Pisin em inap"

Long dispela intaviu bai yu harim niusman i toktok wantaim wanpela studen bilong yunivesiti. Niusman i askim studen long tingting bilong en long yus bilong Tok Pisin long yunivesiti.

In this interview you'll be hearing a reporter talking to a university student. The reporter is asking him about his ideas on the use of Tok Pisin in the university.

Niusman: Yu ting em i orait sapos ol tisa i yusim Tok Pisin long ol lekse bilong ol long yunivesiti?

Do you think it would be all right if teachers used Tok Pisin in lectures at the university?

Sumatin: Mi no save. Tasol mipela ol sumatin i save yusim Tok Pisin long tokim ol samting mipela i no klia gut long ol long Tok Inglis.

I don't know. But we students use Tok Pisin to explain things that we don't understand well in English.

Niusman: Tasol i gat planti teksbuk long Tok Inglis. Husat bai i tanim ol i go long Tok Pisin?

But there are lots of textbooks written in English. Who would translate them into Tok Pisin?

Sumatin: Mipela yet inap wokim. Mipela yet inap tanim Tok Inglis i kam long Tok Pisin. Ol narapela kantri i bin wokim pinis olsem. Ol i bin tanim Tok Inglis i go long tokples bilong ol yet na raifim teksbuk bilong ol yet.

We could do it ourselves. We could translate English into Tok Pisin ourselves. Other countries have done it. They have translated English into their languages and written textbooks in their own languages.

Niusman: Ya, em i tru. Tasol bai yupela i nidim Tok Inglis long sampela wok, laka?

Yes, that's true. But you would need English for some things, wouldn't you?

Sumatin: Yes ya. Sampela i nidim Tok Inglis. Tasol i no olgeta manmeri. Tok Pisin i nambawan tokples bilong mipela.

Yes. Some would, but not everyone. Tok Pisin is our most important language.

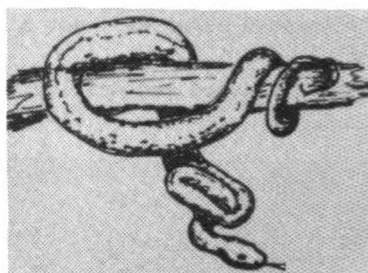
Niusman: Olsem wanem long ol liklik tokples nabaut?

What about the little local languages?

Sumatin: Em dispela mipela i mas lukautim tu ol dispela tokples long wanem ol dispela tokples i save halivim mipela long save long ol man na kastom bilong ol.

We should look after these too, because they help us to understand people and customs from different places.

(4) "Dispela moran i longpela liklik"



Long dispela toktok bai yu harim Mioko na Nume i toktok. Mioko i tokim stori bilong moran long Nume.

In this conversation you will hear Mioko and Nume talking. Mioko is telling Nume the story about the carpet snake.

Nume: Mi bin harim tok asde olsem yu lukim wanpela moran insait long haus bilong yu.

I have heard that yesterday you found a carpet snake in your house.

Mioko: Yes ya, em i stret. Mi lukim em i stap ananit long bet long rum.

Yes, that's correct. I saw it under the bed in the room.

Nume: Yu lukim em bikpela o i liklik?

What was it like? Big or small?

Mioko: A, dispela moran i longpela liklik. Ating olsem fo fit o wan na hap mita.

Ah, this one was quite big. About four feet or one and a half metres I suppose.

Nume: Em i bin wokim wanem long rum?

What was it doing in the room?

Mioko: Mi no save. Ating em i painim rat o wanem. Tasol em i pretim mipela olgeta.

I've no idea. Looking for a rat or something. But it frightened us all.

Nume: Yu bin rausim olsem wanem?

How did you get rid of it?

Mioko: Mi bin ringim man bilong mi long ofis. Em i bin kam na kilim long hap diwai na rausim.

I rang my husband at the office and he came and killed it with a stick and threw it out.

Numé: I gat moran long ples
bilong yu?

Mioko: Planti tru. Ol bikpela i
save stap long bikbus. Ol i
save kaikai kapul.

*Are there carpet snakes where you
come from?*

*Lots. Big ones in the jungle.
They live on possums.*

[Singsing]

"Sugu Kupma" (Sanguma Band)

VOCABULARY

1. Drills

Exercise 1: Simple substitution

Frame: Sapos yu wet inap taim lekxa
i pinis yumitupela i ken go
long bung.

*If you wait till after the lecture
we can get some at the market.*

potnait i kamap

payweek

papa bilong yu i kam

your father comes

yu sevim mani pinis

you save money

yu sot long en

you are short of it

mi gat mani

I have money

lekxa i pinis

Now see if you can say the following in Tok Pisin. Ready?

1. *When I am short of food I don't eat.*

Taim mi sot long kaikai mi no save kaikai.

2. *If next week is payweek I'll be able to buy some fish.*

Sapos neks wik i potnait orait mi ken baim sampela pis.

3. *Have you saved enough money to buy this bicycle?*

{ Yu sevim inap mani pinis bilong baim dispela wilwil?
{ Yu bin sevim inap mani bilong baim dispela wilwil?

Exercise 2: Simple substitution

Frame: I gat liklik buai bilong yu
o nogat?

Have you got any betelnut or not?

kambang

lime

daka

pepper

bitolnat

betelnuts

brus

leaf tobacco, village tobacco

stik tabak

stick tobacco, twist tobacco

buai

All right, now give the Tok Pisin for the following. Ready?

betelnut
lime
pepper

bitolnat
kambang
daka

What is the name also for *village tobacco*? Answer: brus.

Exercise 3: Simple substitution

Frame: Yakob i gat sampela o nogat?

Does Jakob have any or not?

wok long painim

busy looking for

wari long

is worried about

amamas long

pleased about

agens long

against, opposed to

laik tru long wokim

very keen on making

gat

Now see if you can fill in the gaps in the following sentences with the appropriate phrases. Ready?

1. Heni i gat problem. Em i _____ long mani bilong en.

Heni i gat problem. Em i wari long mani bilong en.

2. Meri bilong mi i karim pikinini pinis. Mi _____ long dispela samting.

Meri bilong mi i karim pikinini pinis. Mi amamas long dispela samting.

3. Em i lusim naip long gras. Nau em i _____ long _____.

Em i lusim naip long gras. Nau em i wok long painim.

Exercise 4: Simple substitution

Frame: Nogat, dispela i longpela liklik.

No, this one was quite long.

bikpela

big

malomalo

soft

antap

up high

tamblo

down

longpela

2. Supplementary vocabulary

rop daka

betel pepper vine

lip daka

leaf of betel pepper

pikinini daka

fruit of betel pepper

skin kambang

lime gourd

stik kambang

lime spatula

rop/han bilong buai

a branch/cluster of betelnuts

spet bilong buai

*spittle associated with chewing
betelnut (usually bright red)*

meme bilong buai	<i>chewed up betelnut, cud, scraps</i>
buai i meme pinis	<i>the betelnut is chewed up</i>
mi memeim buai	<i>I am chewing betelnut</i>
bitolnat, bilinat	<i>a betelnut as an object; general word for different varieties of small nuts from palms</i>
(waitpela) sit bilong paia	<i>(white) ashes</i>
sol bilong kanaka	<i>native salt (made from ashes)</i>
limbum, limbung	<i>areca palm</i>
wailimum, wailimumbung	<i>black palm</i>
kaikaim	<i>to bite (cf. kaikai to eat)</i>
kaikai buai/memeim buai	<i>to chew betelnut</i>
dringim suga	<i>to chew sugarcane</i>
mekim ai i raun	<i>to make one feel giddy or dizzy</i>
dilim buai	<i>to portion out betelnut</i>
em i pait	<i>bitter, strong</i>
em i no inap mekim i dai man/ em i no gat gip	<i>non-poisonous (note the Pidgin word polsen sorcery, magic)</i>
kamap retpela olsem blut	<i>to become red like blood</i>
filim olsem yu laik sik	<i>to feel as if you are getting sick</i>
kru bilong het	<i>brain</i>
kilim kros i dai/tok i dai	<i>to subdue discord</i>
strongpela kaikai	<i>solid, powerful food</i>
ol i spak long buai	<i>they're high on betelnut</i>
maski trolmwe skin	<i>don't throw away the skin</i>
holim pipia	<i>hold the scraps</i>
paip	<i>native pipe</i>
brus	<i>native (leaf) tobacco</i>
tobako	<i>European tobacco</i>
stik tabak	<i>stick tobacco</i>
masis	<i>matches</i>
laita	<i>gas lighter</i>
ston masis	<i>flint lighter</i>
slekim masis	<i>to strike a match</i>
mekim i dai masis	<i>to blow out/put out a match</i>
masis i kol	<i>the matches are no good/wet/won't light</i>
pulim smok	<i>to draw on a smoke</i>
paia	<i>fire</i>
palawut	<i>firewood</i>

sit bilong paia

subim kaukau i go ananit long paia

paia i lait

paia i dai pinis

kilim paia

ashes

to put kaukau under the ashes to cook

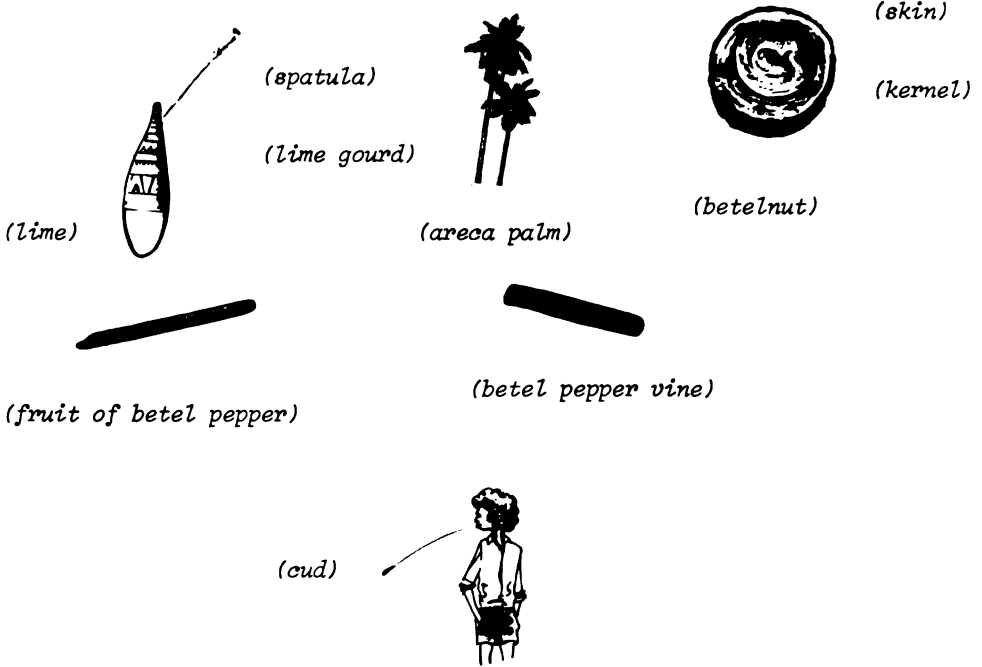
the fire is burning

the fire is out

to put the fire out

Exercises

1. Give the Tok Pisin names for the following objects associated with betelnut chewing:



2. Which belongs to which?

brus

paiauwit

sit bilong paia

limbum

ston masis

em i pait

paip

native pipe

flint

(leaf) tobacco

flint

ashes

bitter, strong

firewood

[Singsing]

"Sugu Kupma" (Sanguma Band)

GRAMMAR

9.1 *i* gat: *there is/there are* and other sentences without subjects

There are many sentences in Tok Pisin which have no subjects and which begin with the predicative marker *i*. For example:

I no gat rais long stua.

There's no rice in the store.

I gat planti welpik long bus.

There are a lot of wild pigs in the bush.

I gat sampela susu i kam bek?

Is there any milk left?

I tudak pinis.

It's already dark.

I kol pinis.

*{It's already cold.
It's flat (of a battery).}*

I ken.

It's possible.

I no ken tru. }
I no lnap tru. }

*It's not possible or
You can't ... at all.*

I no longtaim.

Soon (lit. It's not a long time.)

Of these *i* (no) gat is the most productive in that it can be used with any object while the others are restricted to certain topics (such as the weather and time) or to certain situations (such as discussing the possibility of doing something). Study these examples before beginning the following exercises. Note that all these sentences without subjects can take such tense and aspect markers as *bin*, *mas*, *save*, and *pinis* in the right circumstances. For example,

Bai i gat rais long stua.

There will be rice in the store.

I no bin gat rais long stua.

There wasn't any rice in the store.

Bai i ken.

It will be possible.

I mas kol.

It must be flat (of battery).

Practice drills

Exercise 1: Simple substitution

Frame: I gat planti natnat long tais?

(welpik, pukpuk, maleo, nilpis, natnat)

Exercise 2: Simple substitution

Frame: I no gat bitolnat bilong yu.

(kambang, daka, stik tabak, brus, bitolnat)

Exercise 3: Change the following statements into questions using the question tag *laka*. Ready?

1. Tumora bai i gat nupela kaukau long maket.

Tumora bai i gat nupela kaukau long maket laka?

2. Bipo long taim ol Yuropen i bin kam long Papua Niu Gini i gat as ples tasol i stap longen.
Bipo long taim ol Yuropen i bin kam long Papua Niu Gini i gat as ples tasol i stap longen laka?
3. I gat blakbokis long ples bilong yu.
I gat blakbokis long ples bilong yu laka?
4. Taim yu bin go long Wewak i bin gat tupela motel i stap long en.
Taim yu bin go long Wewak i bin gat tupela motel i stap long en laka?
5. I mas gat masis long hausukuk.
I mas gat masis long hausukuk laka?

Evaluation exercise

How would you say the following in Tok Pisin? Ready?

1. *There are two huge pigs in your garden.*
I gat tupela traipela pik long gaden bilong yu.
2. *He'll come soon.*
{ I no longtaim bai em i kam.
{ Klostu bai em i kam.
3. *That's not possible.*
{ I no ken tru.
{ I no inap tru.
4. *There are no letters for you.*
I no gat pas bilong yu.
5. *Are there two hands of betelnut in my bilum or not?*
I gat tupela han buai long bilum bilong mi o nogat?
6. *The fire's not burning. It's out.*
Paia i no lait. Em i dai pinis.

9.2 Inap long: *until, up to, as far as*

Inap long in Tok Pisin expresses the idea of *until, up to, as far as* in English. Often, as in English, this form is used in association with repeated verbs to indicate actions that are repeated or kept on until something else happens.

Examples:

<p>Yu holim pasim inap long taim polis i kam.</p> <p>Mi wet, wet, wet inap long taim ai bilong mi i hevl.</p> <p>Mi wet, wet, wet inap long Mande.</p> <p>Ol i bin laik (tru) long wok inap long taim ol i painimaut ol i wok nating.</p>	<p><i>Hold on to him until the police come.</i></p> <p><i>I waited and waited until I got sleepy.</i></p> <p><i>I kept waiting until Monday.</i></p> <p><i>They were keen on working until they found out that they were working in vain.</i></p>
---	---

Sampela stuakipa i antapim prais inap long tu kina.

Some storekeepers increased the price to two kina.

Hallans Haiwe i go daun inap long Lae.

The Highlands Highway goes (down) as far as Lae.

Dispela wok em i inap long tripela de.

There's enough work here for three days (or This is three days' work).

Mi bin sik inap long wiken.

I was sick up until the weekend.

Notice that many speakers now use inap without long or long taim so that the first two sentences above, for example, are said:

Yu holim pasim inap polis i kam.

Hold on to him until the police come.

Mi wet, wet, wet inap ai bilong mi i hevi.

I waited and waited until I got tired.

For teaching purposes the longer form will be practised first and the shorter form will be used where practical elsewhere.

Practice drills

Exercise 1: Simple substitution

Frame: Maski kam bek gen inap long Trinde.

(Sarere, mun Oqus, de namba ten bilong mun Mel, tu klok samting, Trinde)

Exercise 2: Simple substitution

Frame: Memeim inap long taim em i malomalo pinis.

(retpela, kol, nogut, malomalo)

Exercise 3: Progressive substitution

Frame: Mi wet, wet, wet inap long taim ol i kirapim wok.

Mi wok long raitim pas inap long taim ol i kirapim wok.

Mi wok long raitim pas inap ol i mumuim kaikai.

Mi wok long lukautim pikinini inap ol i mumuim kaikai.

Mi wok long lukautim pikinini inap ol i katim diwai i pundaun.

Mi wet, wet, wet inap ol i katim diwai i pundaun.

Mi wet, wet, wet inap long taim ol i kirapim wok.

Evaluation exercises

Exercise 1: Repeat the following sentences in Tok Pisin and then say what they mean in English. Ready?

1. Guria i seksekim Rabaul inap long taim sampela haus i bin pundaun.

The earthquake shook Rabaul until some houses collapsed.

2. Dispela rot i go inap long wara Markham.

This road goes as far as the Markham River.

3. Mi sindaun sapim kanu. Sapim, sapim, sapim inap mi pinisim.
I sat carving and carving the canoe until I finished it.
4. Em pulim smok i go i go inap long taim em i filim olsem em i sik.
He drew on the smoke until he felt he was getting sick.
5. Yupela dilim pik long olgeta inap long taim pik i pinis.
Share out the pig to everyone until it runs out.
6. Mipela i no laik long wok bus inap long taim yu antapim pe bilong mipela.
We (excl.) are not keen on going on patrol until you increase our wages.
7. Mi bin sik inap long tupela de tasol.
I was only sick for two days.

Exercise 2: How would you say the following in Tok Pisin? Ready?

1. *I waited and waited until I fell asleep.*
Mi bin wet, wet, wet inap long taim mi slip.
2. *They will be keen on working until they get tired.*
Bai ol i laik long wok inap long taim ol i les.
3. *How long shall I remain standing?*
Bai mi sanap i stap inap long wanem taim?
4. *Yesterday a carpet snake came into our house as far as the kitchen.*
Asde wanpela moran i kam insait inap long hauskuk long haus bilong mipela.
5. *The parents of these children usually bring enough food for three days.*
(Use bringim i kam.)
Papamama bilong ol dispela pikinini i save bringim kaikai i kam inap long tripela de.

9.3 Intensification of adjectives

In Tok Pisin the relative sizes and qualities of things can be intensified by adding *liklik* *little*, *mo* *more*, *mo* yet *still more*, *tumas* *very much*, *tru* *really* or *olgeta* *completely* after the adjective of one's choice.¹ Except for *liklik* the order between these depends on one's preference or emphasis. For example, *tru* may be used for *very* whereas in the following listing *mo* has been so used.

Examples:

Mi bin lukim tupela moran. Wanpela i longpela na narapela i longpela liklik.

I saw two pythons. One was long and the other fairly long/moderately long (i.e. not as long as the first).

¹Other methods are to double the adjective, as in *blakpela blakpela klaut* (a) *very black cloud* or *gutpela gutpela meri* (a) *very good woman*, or to use *nogut tru* after the phrase, as in *blakpela klaut nogut tru* or *gutpela meri nogut tru*, or to lengthen the vowel of the adjective involved, as in *bla:::kpela klaut* or *gu:::tpela meri*.

Mi bin lukim tupela moran. Wanpela i longpela na narapela i longpela mo.

I saw two pythons. One was long and the other was very long.

Mi bin lukim tupela moran. Wanpela i longpela na narapela i longpela mo yet.

I saw two pythons. One was long and the other was very, very long.

Mi bin lukim tupela moran. Wanpela i longpela na narapela i longpela tumas.

I saw two pythons. One was long and the other was extremely long.

Mi bin lukim tupela moran. Wanpela i longpela na narapela i longpela tru.

I saw two pythons. One was long and the other was really long.

Mi bin lukim tupela moran. Wanpela i longpela na narapela i longpela olgeta.

I saw two pythons. One was long and the other was unbelievably long.

Some of these have already been introduced into the lessons so far (e.g. tumas, tru) and so should not present much difficulty though they have not been specifically drilled. Note, however, that when adjectives are intensified in this way they usually (except for one or two common cases)¹ come after the noun (if they are not already there) in relative clauses as indicated by the predicative marker i. Compare, for example, the following pairs of acceptable and non-acceptable sentences. Unacceptable sentences are starred.

Adjective Only

1. Mi lukim wanpela longpela moran.

I saw a long python.

2. Dispela i bikpela haus.

This is a big house.

Adjective + liklik

Mi lukim wanpela moran (em) i longpela liklik.

*Mi lukim wanpela longpela liklik moran.²

I saw a fairly long python.

Dispela haus i bikpela liklik.

This is a fairly big house.

Practice drills

Exercise 1: Repeat the following sentences adding the Tok Pisin cues after the adjectives. Ready?

1. Dispela kaikai i gutpela.

(tru)

Dispela kaikai i gutpela tru.

2. Tok bilong en i stret.

(liklik)

Tok bilong en i stret liklik.

¹These are those intensified by tru, and in some areas tumas. For example, expressions like longpela moran tru *very long python* or bikpela man tru *a very big man* are acceptable whereas longpela tru moran; bikpela tru man; longpela moran liklik or bikpela man liklik are not.

²This could mean, however, *I saw a long small snake (that is, of some small variety of snakes).*

3. Dispela ston long hap i raunpela. (mo)
Dispela ston long hap i raunpela mo.
4. Olgeta klos i stap long san i drai. (liklik)
Olgeta klos i stap long san i drai liklik.
5. Ol dispela lapun meri ya, em ol i stap we? (tru)
Ol dispela lapun meri tru ya, em ol i stap we?

Exercise 2: In this exercise the adjectives precede the nouns. Reword these sentences adding tru. Remember the adjective plus tru must follow the noun together with the predicative marker i. For example, if the instructor were to say *Mi lukim wanpela longpela moran* your answer should be *Mi lukim wanpela moran i longpela tru*. Remember, however, that some adjectives will lose -pela in these positions. Ready?

- Em i laik maritim dispela yangpela meri.
Em i laik maritim dispela meri i yangpela tru.
- Husat i sutim dispela blakpela pik?
Husat i sutim dispela pik i blakpela tru?
- Mi sindaun long wanpela hotpela ston na i kukim as bilong mi.
Mi sindaun long wanpela ston i hot tru na i kukim as bilong mi.
- Yu no stretpela man; yu man bilong tok giaman.
Yu no man we i stret tru; yu man bilong tok giaman.
- Yu bringim i kam olgeta strongpela diwai!
Yu bringim i kam olgeta diwai i strongpela tru.

Evaluation exercise

How would you say the following in Tok Pisin? Use tru for *very* in your answers. Ready?

- I heard some very bad language.*
Mi harim sampela tok i nogut tru.
- All Europeans like very soft food.*
Olgeta Yuropen i laikim kaikai i malomalo tru.
- There are not many Papua New Guineans living in very wet places.*
I no gat planti manmeri bilong Papua Niu Gini i stap long ples i wet tru.
- She doesn't like very hot food.*
Em i no laikim kaikai i hot tru.
- Could you please fetch me my very clean trousers.*
{Inap yu kisim trausis bilong mi, we i klin tru, i kam?
{Yu inap kisim klinpela trausis tru bilong mi i kam?
- There are some very high buildings in Port Moresby now.*
I gat sampela haus i go antap tru long Mosbi nau.

9.4 Whether clauses

There is no equivalent word in Tok Pisin at the moment for *whether* (or *if* in certain sentences) in English.¹ These ideas are expressed in Tok Pisin by giving positive and negative sides of the idea in doubt before or after an opinion of judgement is given, or asked for, about them. Normally these clauses come first in Tok Pisin (as opposed to English) although they may come last if one is being asked for an opinion. The following examples give the general case.

Examples:

Em i gat (sampela) o i no gat, mi no save.

I don't know whether/if he's got some or not.

Yu lukim balus i pundaun o i no pundaun?²

Did you see whether/if the plane landed?

Mi no save bai em i kam o i no kam.

I don't know whether he will come or not.

Practice drills

Exercise 1: Simple substitution

Frame: Jakob i gat sampela o i no gat, mi no save.

(redi long pilai, agenstim gavman, amamas, sik, gat sampela)

Exercise 2: Progressive substitution

Frame: Bai ol i kam o i no kam, Pita i no save.

Bai ol i ridim Baibel o i no ridim, Pita i no save.

Bai ol i ridim Baibel o i no ridim, mi no ken wari.

Bai em i bagarap o i no bagarap, mi no ken wari.

Bai em i bagarap o i no bagarap, Pita i no save.

Bai ol i kam o i no kam, Pita i no save.

Evaluation exercises

Exercise 1: Repeat the following sentences in Tok Pisin and say what they mean in English. Ready?

1. Ol i no tokim mi yu kukim pipia o yu no kukim.

They didn't tell me if you burnt the rubbish or not.

2. Dispela i nogut o dispela long hap ya i nogut, ol i no save.

They don't know whether this one here or that one there is no good.

¹Sapos is, however, being used by some for this purpose now. Consider, for example, the following sentence which appeared in *Wantok*, 580:2 "Ol lain wokman bilong Ramu Suga i no bin inap long holim wanpela vot long painimaut sapos ol i ken mekim wanpela straik o nogat."

²This is slightly different from Yu lukim balus i pundaun o nogat? *Did you see the plane land or not?*

3. Yu go askim papa bilong yu long buai, yu tok, "E papa, buai i pinis o i no pinis?"

You go and ask your father whether/if the betelnut is finished or not.

4. Ol i sekan o ol i no sekan, husat i save?

Who knows whether they shook hands?

5. Yu wantok stret bilong mi o nogat?

Are you a real friend of mine or not?

Exercise 2: How would you say the following in Tok Pisin? Ready?

1. *Do you know if there is an old man in the village or not?*

Yu save, i gat wampela lapun man i stap long ples o i no gat?

2. *They asked the teacher whether school was finished or not.*

Ol i askim tisa, "Tisa, skul i pinis o i no pinis?"

3. *We don't know whether you are nine or ten years old.*

Mipela i no save, yu gat nainpela krismas o tenpela.

4. *She did not hear whether they were speaking English or Tok Pisin.*

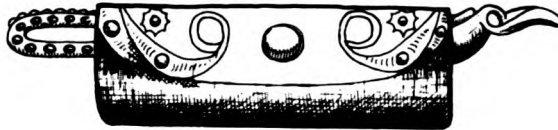
Ol i toktok long Tok Inglis o long Tok Pisin, em i no harim.

5. *I don't know whether my mother is sick or not.*

Mama bilong mi i sik o i no sik, mi no save.

[Singsing]

Iatmul garamut, Sepik River



TEXTS

(1) Nesing na Pesonol Komuniti Helt

In this interview Satu Anis and Peter Roana discuss their training in nursing and community health.



Peter and Satu

- D: Wanem kain samting tru yutupela i wokim? Kos, yes, yutupela i wokim medikol o nesing kos. Wanem samting tru yutupela i wokim long dispela kos?
- S: Mm. A--long nesing kos em mipela lainim matimatiks, a--anatomi na fisioloji em mipela lainim long a-- bodi bilong man hau em i wok, olsem wanem bodi i save wok, jenerol nesing em i go olsem ba--olsem wanem kain tru bai man i w--lainim dispela kos bai ol i putimaut olgeta samting em i lainim i go long praktikol ... bieivrol sains em mi--mipela lainim olsem bai wanem wanem man i stap long komuniti bai ekt olsem wanem wanem kain pasin em mipela lainim long dispela. Na PCH, Pesonol Komuniti Helt Kea, em olsem mipela lainim long wanem-- wanem kain as tru bai wanpela man yet em i ken lukautim em na em i ken kamap i stap helti long laip bilong em.
- D: Yu laikim tru wanem subjekt--wanem peberat subjekt bilong yu?
- P: Am--mi laikim tru em PCH, em Pesonol Komuniti Helt. Mi laik a--edukeitim ol--ol man bilong yumi long ples ol i no save gut long lukautim ol yet na tu ol sampela yangpela bilong yumi.
- D: Gutpela. Na yupela tok, yupela laik edukeitim ol lain bilong yumi long ples, wanem tokples yupela ting bai yupela ken yusim long toksave long kain pasin bilong lukautim skin o bodi?
- P: Ating bai mipela olsem yusim bikpela tokples bilong yumi ol--ol man save yusim long kantri bilong yumi yet, em ating Tok Pisin i mobeta long olgeta.
- T: Na taim yu lainim subjekt bilong yu, yu lainim em long Tok Pisin o yu lainim em long Inglis tasol?
- P: Taim mi lainim subjekt bilong mi, em mi lainim long Inglis tasol. Mi save olsem ol man long ples i no inap andastendim mi long dispela tokples, orait mi ken yusim--sapos mi save long tokples bilong ol, mi ken lainim ol long tokples. Nogat, bai mi lainim ol long Inglis a --Tok Pisin.

English translation

- D: *What is it you really do? We know of course that you are doing a medical or nursing course. What is it that you really do in this course?*
- S: *Mm. Ah--in the nursing course we learn mathematics ah--anatomy and physiology. We learn about ah--the human body, how it works, how the body works, general nursing which treats -- that is how one really-- one who takes this course will be able to put all the things one learns into practice (background car noise) behavioural science that -- we learn how different individual people in a community act, that is, different behaviour, we learn about that. And PCH, Personal Community Health Care, in that we learn-- about how (lit. which kind of basis) a person can take care of himself and can be healthy in his life.*
- D: *What subjects do you like best--what is your favourite subject?*
- P: *Am-- I like PCH best, that's Personal Community Health. I want to ah-- educate our village people who don't know how to take care of themselves well and also some of the young ones.*
- D: *Good. And you (plural) say that you want to educate our village folk. Which language do you think you could use to inform them about the way of taking care of their skin or bodies?*
- P: *I guess we would use the largest language --which people use in our country, and that is Tok Pisin, that would be the best of all.*

T: *And when you are learning your subjects do you learn them in Tok Pisin or only in English?*

P: *When I am learning my subjects I learn them only in English. I know that village people will not be able to understand me, so I will use--if I know the local language, I can teach them in the local language. If not, I can teach them in English -- oh I beg your pardon -- in Tok Pisin.*

Sampela kwestin

1. Tupela i stadim wanem subjekt long kos bilong tupela?
2. Tupela i laikim wanem subjekt tru long nesing kos?
3. Bai Pita i mekim wanem taim tupela i greduet pinis?
4. Tupela i ting wanem long Tok Pisin?

(2) Pasin bilong memeim buai

In this interview Moruwo Domai, whom you have heard before, talks about chewing betelnut.



Moruwo demonstrating how to chew betelnut

M: Ah--em, long hap bilong mipela long Hailens i no gat buai. Tasol araun long --long solwara na ol mipela bin kolim long¹ nambis. Em long nambis mipela i raun long maket na ples we ol i salim buai long en, mipela i raun lukluk. Ol i putim buai mipela givim twenti toea na kisim buai na daka wantaim na mi--mipela brukim, rausim skin, na kaikai insait bilong en, pikinini bilong en buai ya. Mipela kaikai. Brukim long tit pinis na bihain mipela kisim daka na--na putim spet long daka pinis, putim i go insait long kambang na mipela i kaikai wantaim daka, na--am--bihain mipela traिम spet i go arasait long graun. Mipela lukim i ret pinis. Oke mipela i kaikai buai. Long hapsait long nambis em ol i no inap long rausim spet. Ol i ken kaikai wantaim spet na kambang. Bai buai i stap insait long maus bilong ol. Tasol mipela em--mipela i bilong--wokim ret long maus tasol.

T: Na taim yu kaikai yu pilim olsem wanem?

M: A--taim mipela kaikai mipela pilim kol o--o skin i les olsem, mipela kaikai buai na i tuhat i kamap long skin bilong mipela. Mipela amamas long kaikai.

¹Note the use of kolim long here. This is a variant of kolim used in some areas.

English translation

M: Ah--that. We don't have betelnut in our area in the Highlands but (they do) around the--coast, what we called the coast. So when we are on the coast we go to the market and places where betelnut is sold and investigate. Where there is betelnut we give (the sellers) twenty toea and get betelnut and pepper together and we--break it open, take off the skin, and chew the inside part, the kernel of the betelnut. We chew it, break it open with our teeth and then we take the pepper and--wet it (the pepper) and dip it into the lime and then eat it together with the pepper and--afterwards we try to spit out on the ground. We look to see if it (the spit) has gone red. That's how we chew betel. On the coast they don't spit out the juice. They chew the betelnut together with the juice and lime. They keep the betelnut inside their mouth. But we--we only make it red in our mouth.

T: And when you chew how do you feel?

M: Ah--when we chew. If we feel cold or--or we are tired we chew betelnut, and sweat appears on our skin. We enjoy chewing.

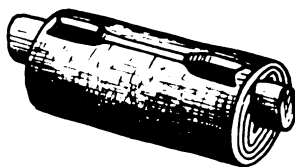
Sampela kwestin

1. Moruwo i tok wanem? Buai i samting bilong wanem hap tru long Papua Niu Gini?
2. Buai na daka i kostim hamas long maket o ples we ol i save salim long nambis?
3. Moruwo i save kaikai buai olsem wanem?
4. Long wanem taim Moruwo i save laik kaikai buai?

This unit will end with another garamut tune. It is played by Enos from Vunakaur village, Kokopo sub-district, East New Britain.

[Singing]

Gazelle Peninsula garamut, East New Britain



Supplementary exercises

1. See if you can unravel the following conversation. To check your answer look at Conversation 2 in this unit.

Yu go tra'im na askim em.

Yes tasol mi laik sampela nau.

Nogat. Mi no gat mo.

Maski, bihain. Mi gat wanpela leksa.

[continued overleaf]

Mi no save em i gat o nogat.

E, poro, mi dai long buai ya.

Skin bilong mi i slek na mi pilim ai bilong mi i laik slip tu.

Sapos yu wet lnap long taim lekxa i pinis yumitupela i ken go long bung.

Yu ting wanem? Yakob i gat sampela?

I gat liklik hap long yu o nogat?

Mi mas go pastaim long lekxa.

2. Listen to text 5 in Unit 14 and translate it into English.
3. Pretend you are listening to your radio in a Papua New Guinea village where no one understands English. Explain to your friends in Tok Pisin what the main items of news are that are currently being broadcast in English.
4. In June 1985 a State of Emergency was declared for the National Capital District to deal with the frightening crime rate in Port Moresby. Here are Tok Pisin versions of the declarations that appeared in the *Post Courier*, Tuesday, June 18, 1985, p.9. Read these and discuss their content and the Tok Pisin used in them.

INDEPENDENT STATE OF PAPUA NEW GUINEA

EMERGENCY (NATIONAL CAPITOL DISTRIK)

GENERAL POWERS ACTS 1985

Mi David TASON Controla, undernit long pawa ol i putin antap long mi long Emergency (National Capitol Distrik) (General Powers) Act 1985 mi naw wokim ol Orders bai ol i givim pawa long ron bilong Emergency bikpela tambu tru or (Curfew) long taim namel long taim olsem 10.30pm na 4.30am long olgeta nait

002. Long dispela taim yet bai nogat demonstration na mas protest bai kamap
003. Ol peles igat licence long salim bia or strongpela drink bai pasim, ol dispela ples igat ol guest long 9.00pm tasol or registered hotel or iken kisim bihain long 9.15pm
004. Ol peles bilong wokim ol hamamas o disco bai pas long 9.00pm no olgeta man na meri mas lusim dispela ol ples
005. Ol taxi bi no ken ron bihain long 10.00pm
006. Ol Rural PMV bai no mas wokim ol binis insait long boundri or mark bilong NCD bihain long 8.00pm
007. Olgeta stoa (ol taka box na ol Carava Shop) bai mas pas long 8.00pm olgeta dei
008. Nogat Gavman kar bai i ron bihain long 6.00pm. Ol kar bilong Departmental Het n al Member bilong Parliament na tu ol kar ikisim tok olrait long Controla iken ron bihain long dispela taim
009. Bai nogat man iken salim ol samtin long rot long dispela taim

[continued opposite]

010. Nogat ship, boat, canoe or dingi, bai ron ikam insait long bilis long taim bilong Curfew. Dispela em igo long olgeta kostal boat n ol overseas boat tu
011. No gat take away beer or strongpela drink bihain long 5.00pm long Mande igo inap long Fonde. Long Fridel igo inap long Sandei bai i pas
012. I tambu tru long givim ol tok orait permit or Curfew Pass igo long ol narapela lain long olgeta taim insait long taim bilong Emergency

Dispela ol Orders bai is stat long Mande 17th dei bilong mun June, 1985 na bai ron olgeta wan wan dei igo inap lusim tupela ten one (21) days stat long Fridel June 14th 1985

Dated 15th dei long mun June 1985

D TASION QPM
Controller

OL MAN WE TU I NO TAMBUIM OL

Ol dispela lain man, meri bai dispela tu marimari long ol.

1. Het man bilong Papua Niugini; o
2. Ol memba bilong Paliman; o
3. Ol memba bilong Interim Commission; o
4. Ol i wok long nait; o
5. Ol memba bilong Motu-Koita Assembly; o
6. Ol memba bilong Central Provincial Government; o
7. Ol Village Kot Magistrate bilong NCD; o
8. Ol Peace Officers bilong NCD; or
9. Ol Polisman na meri ol i wok or i laik go wok, i kam bek long wok; o
10. Uniformed Opisa or Memba bilong (PNGDF) Soldia, Defence Opisa or Correctional Opisa taim ol i go wok o i kam bek long wok; o
11. Ol Dokta, nurse, or Ambulance Driva taim ol i wok, o kam bek long wok o i laik go wok.

Ol lain man na meri we ol i kamap long dispela lis antap i mas karim tok orait permit bilong ol we committee i givim na bai ol i save tok save long ol bosman long Phone: 244350

Sapos ol man na meri we ol i gat sampela hariap long wok long dispela taim we rot i pas pinis bai i mas ringim opis long Phone: 244350 na tok save na i mas go na kisim pas bilong wokabaut, sapos opis i pas em i mas tok save long husait polis man em i bugim long rot long kisim pas bilong tok orait long wokabaut.

Olget bel hevi, askim or asua bai i tok save i go long opis long Phone: 244350 bilong halivim. Dispela opis bai i op oltaim long olgeta de na nait.

5. Study the following "ETPELA ROT I MEKIM KANTRI I GO HET". This was the text of an early blueprint for development for the newly independent country of Papua New Guinea. Translate and discuss.



ETPELA ROT I MEKIM KANTRI I GO HET

1 Ol Papua Nu Gini yet i mas bosim moa na moa wok bisnis

Em i min olsem: Hariap tasol moa na moa Papua Nu Gini i mas bosim ol kampani na wok bisnis. Olsem bai moa na moa winmani i ken kamap long han bilong ol yet.

2 Skelim na tilim ol gutsamting bai olgeta pipel i kisim wan mak

Em i min olsem: Skelim na tilim ol winmani, ol pe bilong olkain wokman, na olkain gutpela helpim bilong gavman (olsem skul, haus sik, rot) bai olgeta distrik i kisim wan mak.

3 Helpim ol kain kain bisnis i stap ausait long ol taun

Em i min olsem: Gavman i mas tilim mani long ol wan wan distrik na larim distrik na lokal gavman kaunsil yet i yusim bilong mekim go het wok didiman na helpim ol smolpela bisnis long ples. Ol i mas lukaut tu bai ol pipel i gat rot bilong baim na salim olkain gutpela samting ol i bin mekim kamapim.

4 Helpim ol smolpela bisnisan i go het

Em i min olsem: Gavman i mas strong long helpim ol kain kain smolpela wok bisnis, na liklik bisnisan i save mekim wok bisnis bilong em long pasin bilong ples.

5 Yumi mas helpim yumi yet

Em i min olsem: Ol wok bisnis bilong yumi i no ken hangamap long ol man na long olkain samting i save kam long ol narapela kantri. Yumi yet i mas traim wokim olgeta samting ol pipel bilong yumi i mas gat bilong sindaun gut.

6 Painim takismani long kantri yet

Em i min olsem: Yumi mas painim kain kain pasin bilong winim takismani bai gavman i ken mekim planti wok bilong en.

7 Ol meri i mas mekim wankain wok olsem ol man

Em i min olsem: Moa na moa meri i mas insait long olkain bisnis na wok bilong helpim kantri i go het.

8 Gavman i mas insait wantaim na stiaim ol wok bilong go het

Em i min olsem: Gavman yet i mas insait long sampela kain bisnis na lukautim ol lo na pasin bilong en, bai bisnis i no ken daunim go het bilong kantri.

INTRODUCTION

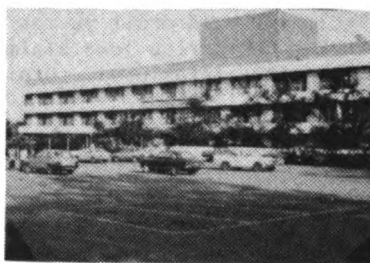
In this unit we shall be focussing on:

- (1) how to ask and answer negative questions;
- (2) how to use *mas have to, ought to, should*;
- (3) how to form and use reflexive pronouns like *myself, yourself, etc.*;
- (4) how to make sentences using *olsem that, as if, just like*.

These points will be introduced in the conversations that follow and will be discussed and drilled in more detail in the grammatical sections that follow them.

Other things that are worth knowing are drawn to your attention in footnotes to the conversations and grammatical sections.

CONVERSATIONS

(1) "Ating mi gat malaria"

General Hospital, Port Moresby

Long wanpela de Malolo i pilim sik
olsem em i gat malaria na i go
long haus sik.

Dokta: Yes, olsem wanem?

Malolo: O mi sik nogut tru.

Dokta: Yu pilim olsem wanem? Het
bilong yu i pen o nogat?

Malolo: O yes, het bilong mi i pen
nogut tru na skin tu i
guria.

Dokta: Olsem wanem? Bel bilong
yu i pen tu a?

Malolo: Yes.

Dokta: Long wanem de dispela sik
i kamap?

Malolo: Long Fonde.

Dokta: Olsem wanem? Yu no kaikai
sampela kaikai we i nogut?

Malolo: Nogat. Mi kaikai ol kaikai
mi save kaikai.

*One day Malolo felt sick as if she
had malaria and so she went to the
hospital.*

What's the matter?

Oh, I'm really sick.

*What do you feel like? Is your
head hurting or not?*

*Oh yes, my head's hurting like any-
thing and I'm shivering.*

*Why? You've got a pain in the
stomach too have you?*

Yes.

When did you start feeling sick?

On Thursday.

*How come? Did you eat something
that was bad?*

*No I didn't. I ate the things I
usually eat.*

Dokta: Mm, o, mi ting malaria i bagarapim yu tasol. Bai mi givim yu sampela marasin bilong daunim malaria. Yu bihainim tok bilong mi na dringim dispela marasin. Orait bai yu kamap gut gen.

Malolo: Tenkyu. Tasol mi ting long kisim sut. Bai yu givim mi wanpela o nogat?

Dokta: A, nogat. Mi no save givim sut long malaria.

Malolo: Orait maski. Mi go.

Dokta: A, wet pastaim! Harim! Yu mas lukautim gut yu yet. Sapos sik i no slek inap long tumora orait yu mas kam bek hariap long kisim sampela marasin mo. Orait a?

Malolo: Orait, mi harim.

Olsem na Malolo i kisim marasin dokta i bin givim em na em i go bek long haus bilong em.

Mm, oh, I think you've been hit by malaria. I'll give you some medicine to beat it. You do as I tell you and take this medicine. Then you'll be all right again.

Thank you. But I was thinking about an injection. Are you going to give me one or not?

No. I don't give injections for malaria.

Okay it doesn't matter. I'm going.

Wait first. Listen. You have to take good care of yourself. If the disease doesn't ease off by tomorrow come back again immediately to get some more medicine. Is that okay?

Okay, I understand.

And so Malolo took the medicine the doctor gave her and went home.

(2) "Mi katim lek bilong mi"

Peka i bin katim lek bilong en long akis. Nau bai yu harim toktok bilong en wantaim pren bilong en, Alien.

Alien: Yu bin katim lek bilong yu olsem wanem?

Peka: A, mi bin wok long wokim gaden mi na mi katim mi. Mi bin laik katim diwai tasol akis i abrusim diwai na kisim lek.

Peka cut his leg with an axe. Now you can hear him talking about it with his friend Alien.

How did you come to cut your leg?

Ah, I was busy making a garden and I cut myself. I was about to cut a tree but the axe skidded off and cut me on the leg.



Alien: Na yu bin lusim planti blut tu?

Peka: Oloman, mi bin lusim planti blut. Lukim! Sua i longpela na i go insait tru. Em bikpela sua ya.

Alien: Taim yu katim yu pinis, yu bin mekim wanem?

Peka: Mi bin wokabout i go bek long ples long wanem i gat liklik klinik long ples na dokta i bin putim marasin.

Alien: Em i no bin givim yu sut a?

Peka: Yes, em i no bin givim mi. Dispela dokta i no save pasin bilong givim sut. Em i no bin lainim pasin bilong givim sut.

Alien: O, em i no gutpela. Na bihain yu wokim wanem gen?

Peka: Mi bin go long haus. Tasol lek belong mi i solap nogut tru. Em i bin laik bruk. Pen no bin isi tu. Ol lain bilong mi i kisim mi i go long Mosbi. Nau long Mosbi dokta i givim mi sut. Olsem na sua i pinis nau.

And did you lose a lot of blood?

Man, lots of it. Look! The wound was long and very deep. It was quite a cut.

What did you do when you cut yourself?

I went back to the village because there is a small clinic there and the doctor treated it.

Didn't he give you an injection?

No he didn't. This doctor doesn't know how to give injections. He never learnt.

Oh, that's no good. And then what did you do?

I went home. But my leg swelled up something terrible. It was about to burst. The pain was bad as well. My family took me to Port Moresby. There the doctor gave me an injection. And so the wound is better now.

(3) "Mi pekpek wara tasol"



Visiting hours sign,
Wewak General Hospital

(Sign reads: *Haua belong kam lukim pipel 3 kilok apinun inap 8 kilok nait long oigeta dei.*)

Sabilobo em i sik. Em i pekpek wara. Olsem na em i bun nating. Em i luk olsem stik masis. Nau em i go long haus sik.

Sabilobo is sick. He has diarrhoea. As a result he's all skin and bone. He looks like a matchstick. So he goes to the hospital.

Dokta: Oloman! Yu mekim wanem? Yu bun nating tru ya!

Gee, what have you been up to? You're all skin and bone.

- Sabilobo: O dokta, mi sik nogut tru. Mi pekpek wara ya. *Oh doctor, I'm very sick. I've got diarrhoea.*
- Dokta: Yu bin pekpek wara long hamas de olgeta? *How many days have you had it?*
- Sabilobo: Ating em inap fopela de nau. *I guess it's four days now.*
- Dokta: Bilong wanem yu no kam askim halivim¹ bilong ol dokta? *Why didn't you come and seek assistance from the doctors?*
- Sabilobo: Ya, mi ting sik bai i no kamap bikpela. Tasol nogat. Em i kamap bikpela na mekim mi slek olgeta. *Yes, I thought it wouldn't develop into something serious. But on the contrary it has become serious and has debilitated me.*
- Dokta: Em i no stret. Dispela i pasin bilong ol het diwai. I mobeta sapos yu bin kam tokim dokta stret long taim dispela sik i bin kamap. Em i bikpela sik tru ya na sapos yu no tritim orait bai narapela man i kisim long yu. *That's no good. That's how fools behave. It would have been better if you had come and told the doctor as soon as you were first sick. This is a very dangerous sickness and if you don't treat it someone else will get it from you.*
- Sabilobo: Yes, tasol mi no laik kam nating na westim taim bilong yu. *Yes, but I didn't want to come without justification and waste your time.*
- Dokta: Orait. Taim yu pekpek wara blut tu i save kam? *Okay. When you defecate do you pass blood too?*
- Sabilobo: Nogat. Em wara tasol. *No. Only liquid.*
- Dokta: Orait yu kam slip long tebol. Bai mi givim sut long yu. Harim! Yu mas wasim han bilong yu stret long taim yu go pekpek pinis bilong wanem ol jem o liklik snek i save stap insait long bodi bilong yu na i save kamaut wantaim pekpek na go long han bilong yu taim yu klinim as bilong yu. Olsem na yu mas wasim han bilong yu long wara na long sop. *Okay come and lie down on the table. I'll give you an injection. But listen! You have to wash your hands as soon as you have been to the toilet because germs or tiny microbes live in your body and come out together with your motions and get on your hands when you clean your bottom. Consequently you have to wash your hands in soap and water.*

¹Note the use of the verb halivim as a noun. This is a very common way of forming nouns in Tok Pisin. Here are some others in similar vein:

taipim bilong yu *your typing*
 draivim bilong yu *your driving*
 raitim bilong yu *your writing*

Others, however, use taip, draiv, rait, or taiping, draiving, raiting, respectively. This is an area of vocabulary that has not stabilised yet. It is now becoming further destabilised through contact with English.

(4) "Em i gat bikpela kus"

Pikinini bilong Api i gat bikpela kus¹. Olsem na mama bilong en i kisim em i go long klinik.

Nes: Yes, wanem rong long pikinini? Manki bilong yu i sik a?

Api: Yes, em i gat bikpela kus.

Nes: Wanem? Em i kus tasol o kus wantaim skin i hot?

Api: Nogat, em i kus tasol. Long nait em i no save slip gut. Em i kus, kus, kus tasol na em i no inap pulim win. Em i save krai tasol na laikim mi.

Nes: Yes dispela i samting nogut tru. Long Tok Inglis ol i kolim flu. Na ol i tok em i kirap long Saina. Oke, mi givim sampela marasin long yu bilong daunim dispela. Tasol em bai i no inap pinis kwiktaim. Ating tri o fopela wik samting i go. Bihain bai sik i pinis.

Api: Tenkyu sista.

Api's son has a bad cold. Consequently his mother has taken him to the clinic.

Yes, what's up with the child? Is your boy sick?

Yes, he's got a bad cold.

What? Has he just got a cold or is his skin also hot?

No, he's only got a cold. But he's not sleeping well at night. He coughs and coughs and can't breathe. He just cries and wants me.

Yes this is really something bad. It's called flu in English, and is said to have originated in China. All right I'll give you some medicine to overcome it. But it won't be gone quickly. Probably it will take three or four weeks before it will be gone.

Thank you sister.

[Singsing]

"Bikpela Susu" (Ararua Band of Wewak)

VOCABULARY

1. Drills

Exercise 1: Simple substitution

Frame: Het bilong mi i pen nogut tru na skin tu i guria.

Bel bilong mi i tantanim

Skru bilong lek bilong mi i lus

Nek bilong mi i drai

Het bilong mi i pen

My head's hurting like anything and I'm shivering

I'm nauseated

I'm lame

My throat's dry

Now see if you can remember the Tok Pisin expressions for the following. Ready?

1. *I'm nauseated.*

2. *I've got a headache.*

3. *I'm lame.*

Bel bilong mi i tantanim.

Het bilong mi i pen.

Skru bilong lek bilong mi i lus.

¹Note kus is polysemic in Tok Pisin. It can mean either a cold, a cough or mucus in the nose, or a combination of these, as in this conversation.

Exercise 2: Simple substitution

Frame: Yu mas lukautim gut yu yet.*You have to take good care of yourself.*

wasim

wash

glasim

take temperature

karamapim

cover up

amamasim

be proud of

lukautim

What do the following sentences mean in English. Ready?

1. Mama i karamapim pikinini bilong en long plastik.

The mother covered up her child with a sheet of plastic.

2. Nes i glasim mi pastaim na bihain givim marasin long mi.

The nurse took my temperature first and then gave me some medicine.

3. Ol pikinini rat i no inap lukautim gut ol yet.

Baby rats can't look after themselves well.

Exercise 3: Simple substitution

Frame: Mi no save pasin bilong givim sut.*I don't know how to give an injection.*

klinim sua

clean/dress a wound

samapim sua

suture a wound

pasim sua

bandage a wound

katim buk

lance a boil

givim sut

Now give the appropriate response for the following. Ready?

1. Sapos mi katim lek bilong mi long akis bai dokta i mekim wanem long dispela sua?

Bai em i samapim.

2. Sapos mi gat buk long han bilong mi bai dokta i mekim wanem long dispela?

Bai em i katim.

3. Sapos mi sik nogut tru bai dokta i mekim wanem long mi long daunim dispela sik?

Bai em i givim mi sut.

Exercise 4: Progressive substitution

Frame: Satu i pilim sik olsem em i gat malaria.Satu i pilim sik olsem em i kaikai planti tumas.Peka i pilim hot olsem em i kaikai planti tumas.Peka i pilim hot olsem san i kukim em.¹Malolo i dai long wara² olsem san i kukim em.¹got sunburnt²dying for a drink

Malolo i dai long wara olsem em i laik traut.¹

Satu i pilim sik olsem em i laik traut.

Satu i pilim sik olsem em i gat malaria.

2. Supplementary vocabulary

Some more body parts

pes	face
gras bilong ai	eyebrow, eyelash
baksait bilong nek	back (nape) of neck
han antap	upper arm
han tambolo/daunbilo	lower arm
lek antap	upper leg
lek tambolo/daunbilo	lower leg
sangana	armpit, groin
pinga bilong lek	toe
kapa bilong pinga	fingernail or toenail
raithan, han sut	right hand
lephan, han kais	left hand
mit bilong lek	thigh
baksait bilong lek	calf of leg
insait bilong han	palm of hand
ananit bilong lek	sole of foot
banis	ribs
dewel bilong man ²	man's shadow
dewel bilong man i dai	ghost (of a dead person)
wetliva/lang	lungs
lewa	liver
mambu bilong nek ³	gullet, windpipe
mambu bilong blut	artery, vein
rot bilong blut	circulatory system
rot bilong kaikai	digestive system
bodi	body
hap bel or hap rop bilong bel mama	
i katim (less frequently	
butoma or bitono)	navel
kru bilong het	brain

¹vomit

²Compare dewel bilong diwai *tree's shadow*

³Compare mambu bilong wara *water pipe*
mambu bilong bensin *petrol pipe*

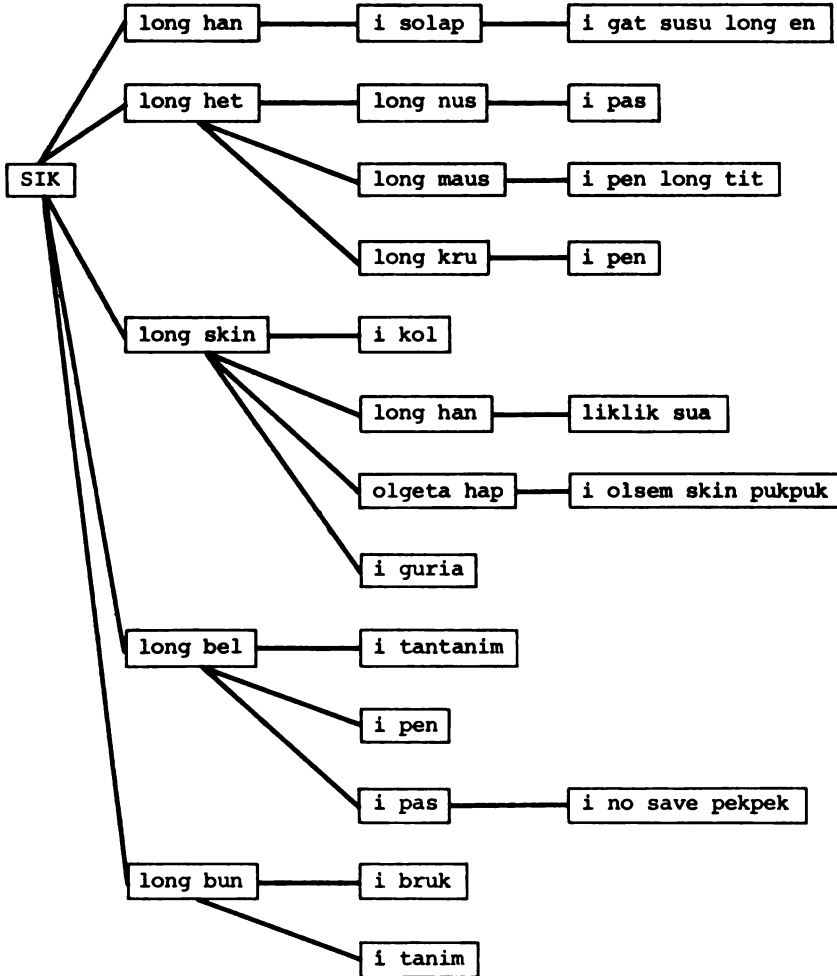
Some medical terms

skin i kol	<i>a chill</i>
skin i hat	<i>fever</i>
bun i bruk	<i>fracture, broken bone</i>
bel i tantanim	<i>to be nauseated</i>
sua i sting	<i>the sore or wound is festered or stinking or rotten</i>
sua i gat susu (long en)	<i>the sore has pus in it</i>
tanim skru	<i>sprain</i>
tit i pen	<i>toothache</i>
(em i) piak } (em i) kapupu }	<i>to flatulate, pass wind, fart</i>
strongim bel	<i>settle stomach</i>
pasim bel	<i>to take contraceptives</i>
bel i pas	<i>constipated</i>
sore/sori	<i>sad, depressed</i>
no inap karim pikinini	<i>barren</i>
het i pas	<i>stupid, looney, mad, to be unable to think (as in a test)</i>
longlongman/meri	<i>mad person</i>
nek i pas	<i>hoarse</i>
skin i les/slek/dai } bun i slek }	<i>to be tired, weary or lazy</i>
blut i kamap	<i>to bleed</i>
skin i solap	<i>skin swells up</i>
sua i drai	<i>sore heals</i>
pikinini i dring susu yet	<i>the baby is not weaned yet (lit. the baby is still drinking milk)</i>
koten	<i>cotton wool</i>
plasta	<i>adhesive plaster, sticking plaster</i>
marasin bilong kilim jem	<i>antiseptic</i>
kaswel	<i>castor oil</i>
dentis/dokta bilong (lukautim) tit	<i>dentist</i>
solmarasin	<i>epsom salts, laxative</i>
gris	<i>ointment</i>
sikman or sikmeri	<i>a patient</i>
aipas(man/meri)	<i>blind (person)</i>
matakiau	<i>blind in one eye</i>
mauspas(man/meri)	<i>dumb (person)</i>
yaupas(man/meri)	<i>deaf (person)</i>
daiman	<i>dead person or the dead</i>

laipman	<i>living person or the living</i>
grile, o skin pukpuk	<i>ringworm, tinea</i>
kaskas	<i>scabies</i>
buk	<i>boil</i>

Exercises

1. What sicknesses or diseases have the following symptoms or characteristics in Tok Pisin:



2. What are the Tok Pisin terms for the following parts of the body:

- circulatory system*
- windpipe*
- brain*
- gullet*
- artery*

Generated on 2022-02-10 03:58 GMT / https://hdl.handle.net/2027/uc1.32106009345213
Creative Commons Attribution-NonCommercial-NoDerivatives / http://www.hathitrust.org/access_use#cc-by-nc-nd-4.0

3. Write in the Tok Pisin terms for the following:



(*epsom salts*)



(*ointment*)



(*sticking plaster*)



(*cotton wool*)



(*thermometer*)



(*antiseptic*)



(*castor oil*)

4. What parts of the body are being referred to in Tok Pisin here:

han tambolo

sangana

banis

han kais

pes

kapa bilong pinga

sua

klok

buk

gras bilong ai

pinga bilong lek

baksait bilong nek

wetliva

[Singsing]

"Bikpela Susu" (Ararua Band of Wewak)

GRAMMAR

10.1 Answering negative questions

Negative questions are questions which contain a negative, as for example, *em i no go a? didn't he go?* In that respect they present no particular difficulty for English speakers. Where the difficulty arises is in answering them because for English speakers the answers always seem to be the reverse of what one expects them to be.¹ Thus, for example, if a Tok Pisin speaker were answering the above question he/she would answer *nogat* if he/she meant that the person referred to did go, and *yes* if he/she meant that the person referred to did not go. However, despite its rather bewildering initial impact the system behind this answering scheme is quite simple and regular. All the Tok Pisin speaker is doing is agreeing or disagreeing with what is asked in the negative question (just as for positive ones). That is, by answering *nogat* the Tok Pisin speaker is really saying *what you say is untrue* and by answering *yes* he/she is saying *what you say is true*. Compare the following:

Q: Em i no go?

Didn't he go?

A₁: Yes, em i no go.

No, he didn't! (= what you say is true, he didn't go).

A₂: Nogat, em i go (pinis).

Yes, he went (= what you say is untrue, he went).

¹Another difficulty is that many educated speakers now answer these questions in an English way thereby making the whole system confusing.

- Q: Yu no traut? *You didn't vomit eh?*
 A₁: Yes, mi no traut. *No, I didn't (= what you say is true, I didn't vomit).*
 A₂: Nogat, mi traut. *Yes, I did (= what you say is untrue, I did vomit).*

Note that if one uses the question tag *a?* at the end of the sentence the answer is not affected. It will still be *nogat* or *yes* as above, for example:

- Q: Dispela i nogut a? *This is no good eh?*
 A₁: Yes, em i nogut. *No it isn't.*
 A₂: Nogat, em i gutpela. *Yes, it's good.*

Practice drills

Exercise 1: Give a positive reply to all of the following questions. Begin your answer with *yes*. Ready?

- Ol i no save long Tok Pisin a?
Yes, ol i no save long Tok Pisin.
- Dispela man i no kam asde a?
Yes, dispela man i no kam asde.
- Bai ol i no bekim pas a?
Yes, bai ol i no bekim pas.
- Yu no save long pasin bilong draivim ka a?
Yes, mi no save long pasin bilong draivim ka.
- Yupela i no bin sindaun nating a?
Yes, mipela i no bin sindaun nating.

Exercise 2: Give a negative response to the same questions, beginning your answer with *nogat*. Ready?

- Ol i no save long Tok Pisin a?
Nogat, ol i save long Tok Pisin.
- Dispela man i no kam asde a?
Nogat, dispela man i kam asde.
- Bai ol i no bekim pas a?
Nogat, bai ol i bekim pas.
- Yu no save long pasin bilong draivim ka a?
Nogat, mi save long pasin bilong draivim ka.
- Yupela i no bin sindaun nating a?
Nogat, mipela i bin sindaun nating.

Exercise 3: Now answer the following questions using the cues provided.
Ready?

1. Yu no dokta a? (yes)
Yes, mi no dokta.
2. Emtripela i no laik peim takis a? (nogat)
Nogat, emtripela i laik peim takis.
3. Pren bilong en i no kamap yet a? (yes)
Yes, pren bilong en i no kamap yet.
4. Ol i no inap lainim tokples a? (nogat)
Nogat, ol i inap lainim tokples.
5. Kaikai bilong yu i no hot a? (nogat)
Nogat, kaikai bilong mi i hot.

Evaluation exercise

Pretend you are visiting Madang for the first time from Port Moresby and you are talking to a local resident. Give appropriate answers to the resident's questions. Ready?

R: Nau i nambawan taim yu kam long Madang a?

A: Yes, nau i nambawan taim mi kam long Madang.

R: Yu no kam long hia bipo a?

A: Yes, mi no kam long hia bipo.

R: Yu bin stap we na yu kam?

A: Mi stap long Mosbi na mi kam.

R: Oloman! Yu bin stap long Mosbi na yu no kam liklik long Madang bipo a?

A: Yes. Mi stap long Mosbi na mi no kam liklik long Madang bipo.

R: Bai yu go bek long Mosbi gen o nogat?

A: Yes, bai mi go bek long Mosbi gen.

R: Orait, mi go. Apinun.

A: Orait, apinun.

10.2 mas + verb: obligation

Verbs preceded by *mas* in Tok Pisin indicate actions that the actor is obliged to carry out, for example:

Ol i mas lukautim gut papamama bilong ol.

They must/should look after their parents well.

Yu mas rausim olgeta pipia i stap nabaut long dispela ples ya.

You must/should/have to get rid of all the rubbish around about here.

This usage is similar to that of *must* in English except that negative prohibition is generally expressed in Tok Pisin by using the negative imperatives *no*, *no ken* etc. already introduced in sub-section 7.4.

Note also that *mas* (and its negative counterpart *no ken*) are frequently used in sentences such as the following:

Em i mas hot. Em i no ken kol.

It should be hot. It shouldn't be cold.

Em i mas gat twenti krismas.

He must be 20 years old.

Practice drills

Exercise 1: Simple substitution

Frame: Tete yu mas wasim klos bilong mi.

(ainim, samapim, redim, klinim, wasim)

Exercise 2: Answer the following questions in Tok Pisin using *mas* and the other cues given. Ready?

- Em i gat hamas krismas? (fiftin)
Em i mas gat fiftin krismas.
- Wara bai i boil olsem wanem? (hot)
Em i mas hot.
- Bilong wanem ol i no baim kopi? (ating prais antap)
Ating prais i mas antap.

Exercise 3: Change the following sentences into ones expressing negative prohibition by using *no ken* before the verb. Ready?

- Ol pipel bilong dispela liklik ples i mas wok long gavman.
Ol pipel bilong dispela liklik ples i no ken wok long gavman.
- Sapos yu laikim man long kam hariap yu mas bikmaus long en.
Sapos yu laikim man long kam hariap yu no ken bikmaus long en.
- Taim em i toktok yumi mas sindaun nating.
Taim em i toktok yumi no ken sindaun nating.
- Olgeta i mas agenstim kaunsil.
Olgeta i no ken agenstim kaunsil.
- Sapos ol i apim prais bilong kopi bai ol i mas daunim prais bilong ti.
Sapos ol i apim prais bilong kopi bai ol i no ken daunim prais bilong ti.

Evaluation exercises

Exercise 1: Say what the following sentences mean in English. Ready?

- Mipela i mas sanapim wanpela nupela haus tambaran.
We (exclusive) have to erect a new spirit house.
- Long taim bilong wok yupela i no ken ritim Wantok.
You (plural) must not read Wantok during working hours.

3. Olgeta i mas redi long pilai stret long taim wok i pinis.
Everyone must be ready to play as soon as work is finished.
4. Em i mas rabim het bilong en isi isi.
He/she should rub his/her head carefully.
5. Bihain long taim mi pasim stua, yu mas kirap hotim kopra.
After I shut the store you should begin to heat the copra.

Exercise 2: How would you say the following in Tok Pisin? Ready?

1. *When you go into the church you must not talk!*
Taim yu go insait long haus lotu yu no ken toktok.
2. *If it rains we and you must cover up the copra.*
Sapos ren i pundaun yumi i mas karamapim kopra.
3. *They must not chew betelnut in my house.*
Ol i no ken kaikai buai insait long haus bilong mi.
4. *Should you and I address the envelope for her or not?*
Yumitupela i mas adresim skin pas bilong en o nogat?
5. *You must not burn the kunai grass. Understand?*
Yu no ken kukim kunai. Save?

10.3 Reflexive personal pronouns

When the subject and the object (or indirect object in the case of verbs like *givim*, *soim* etc.) are the same the object (or indirect object) is expressed by the corresponding pronoun plus *yet*. For example:

- Mi paitim mi yet. *I hit myself.*
- Dispela dok i kilim i dai em yet. *This dog killed itself.*
- Yupela i no lukim yupela yet a? *Didn't you (plural) see yourselves?*

You should have no difficulty recognising these as parallelling the English *self* forms. However, be careful not to confuse them with the emphatic forms given in sub-section 8.1 above which are of the same form. Consider, for example:

- Mi paitim mi yet *I hit myself.*
- Mi yet i paitim en. }
Mi yet mi paitim en. } *I hit him myself.*
I hit him.
(i.e. I was the one who hit him, not someone else.)
- Mi patim het bilong mi yet. *I hit my own head.*

Practice drills

Exercise 1: *Simple substitution*

Frame: *Nogat yu katim yu yet.*

(sutim, kilim i dai, kukim, bagarapim, katim)

Exercise 2: Change the pronouns in the following frame using the cues provided. Ready?

Frame: Em i brukim han bilong em yet.

(mi, ol, yu, mipela, em)

Exercise 3: In the following sentences you will hear a word or phrase repeated as an object or indirect object. Change these objects into reflexive pronouns. Ready?

1. Asde Pita i sutim Pita long masket.
Asde Pita i sutim em yet long masket.
2. Dispela dokta i inap glasim dispela dokta.
Dispela dokta i inap glasim em yet.
3. Masalai i save tanim masalai i go long man o diwai saming.
Masalai i save tanim em yet i go long man o diwai saming.
4. Mi skulim mi long Tok Pisin.
Mi skulim mi yet long Tok Pisin.
5. Taim mi wok long rot mi lukim dok i likim dok.
Taim mi wok long rot mi lukim dok i likim em yet.

Evaluation exercise

Say what the following sentences mean in English. Ready?

1. Yu sindaun long ples bilong yu yet! Maski wokabaut nating long rum.
Sit down in your own place. Don't walk around aimlessly in the room.
2. Stuakipa ya em yet i opim stua.
This storekeeper opened the store himself.
3. Kiap i tok, "Olgeta manmeri i mas lukautim ol yet. Gavman i no inap lukautim yupela".
The Government Officer said, "All the people must take care of themselves. The Government is not able to do it any more".
4. Husat i ken raitim nem bilong en yet?
Who can write his/her own name?
5. Taim mi stap long Pablik Sevis mi bin lain long draivim ka.
When I was in the Public Service I learned how to drive a car.

10.4 olsem + clause: *that, as, just like, as if, as though*

olsem joining clauses in Tok Pisin covers two main meanings in English depending on the verb in the first clause. The first type of sentence is that in which olsem corresponds to *that* in English, as in:

Em i tok olsem bai em i kam.

He said that he would come.

Mi save olsem em i bin giamanim yu.

*I know that he pulled your leg
(or hoodwinked you).*

This use of *olsem* is increasing although the sentences would be just as acceptable without *olsem* in them.

The second type of sentence is that in which *olsem* corresponds to *as*, *just like*, *as if*, *as though* in English, as in:

Ol i save wokem haus *olsem* papa bilong ol i bin soim.

They build houses just like their fathers showed them to.

Malolo i pilim sik *olsem* em i gat malaria.

Malolo felt sick as though she had malaria.

Em i paitim het bilong mi *olsem* em i longlong.

He struck me on the head as if he were mad.

Mi lainim Tok Pisin *olsem*¹ mi inap toktok wantaim ol man/meri bilong Papua Niu Gini.

I am learning Tok Pisin so that I will be able to talk to Papua New Guineans.

If *olsem* precedes the first clause and *olsem* na the second the idea of *just as ... so (then) ...* is expressed. For example:

Olsem olgeta narapela i save kaikai *olsem* na yupela tu i mas kaikai.

Just as others eat so you must eat too!

Practice drills

Exercise 1: Simple substitution

Frame: Em i tok *olsem* bai em i kam.

(kilim i dai em yet, sik, agenstim premia, kam)

Exercise 2: Simple substitution

Frame: Ol i save wokim haus *olsem* papa bilong ol i bin soim.

(sapim kanu, brukim graun, mekim poisen, wokim haus)

Exercise 3: Progressive substitution

Frame: Mi lainim Tok Pisin *olsem* bai mi ken toktok wantaim ol Papua Niu Gini.

Mi go long Papua Niu Gini *olsem* bai mi ken toktok wantaim ol Papua Niu Gini.

Mi go long Papua Niu Gini *olsem* bai mi ken kisim save long en.

Mi ritim Baibel *olsem* bai mi ken kisim save long en.

Mi ritim Baibel *olsem* bai mi ken save long ol stori long en.

Mi lainim Tok Pisin *olsem* bai mi ken save long ol stori long en.

Mi lainim Tok Pisin *olsem* bai mi ken toktok wantaim ol Papua Niu Gini.

Exercise 4: Simple substitution

Frame: *Olsem* ol narapela i save kaikai *olsem* na yu tu i mas kaikai.

(toktok, waswas, draivim ka, givim sut, kaikai)

¹Modern speakers also use so for this *olsem*.

Evaluation exercise

Join the following pairs of sentences together using *olsem* or *olsem ... olsem na*. Then say what your answer means in English. For example:

- a. Mi go long skul.
 b. Bai mi ken kisim save. (olsem)

Your answer should then be:

Mi go long skul olsem bai mi ken kisim save. That is,
I am going to school so that I can get or gain knowledge.

Ready?

- 1a. Pisin i pundaun.
 1b. Han bilongen i bruk. (olsem)
 Pisin i pundaun olsem han bilongen i bruk.
The bird fell down as if its wing were broken.
- 2a. Mama bilong yu i skulim yu.
 2b. Yu mas skulim pikinini bilong yu tu. (olsem ... olsem na)
 Olsem mama bilong yu i skulim yu olsem na yu mas skulim pikinini bilong yu tu.
Just as your mother taught you so you must teach your child too.
- 3a. Susa bilong mi i go bek long ples.
 3b. Bai em i ken lukautim mamapapa bilong mipela. (olsem)
 Susa bilong mi i go bek long ples olsem bai em i ken lukautim mamapapa bilong mipela.
My sister went back home so that she can look after our parents.
- 4a. Sampela i kik pawa tumas.
 4b. Ol i laik kilim i dai ol narapela. (olsem)
 Sampela i kik pawa tumas olsem ol i laik kilim i dai ol narapela.
Some play football very hard as if they want to kill everybody else.
- 5a. San i save kamap olgeta de.
 5b. Mun tu i save kamap olgeta nait. (olsem ... olsem na)
 Olsem san i save kamap olgeta de olsem na mun tu i save kamap olgeta nait.
Just as the sun comes up every day so the moon comes up every night.

[Singsing]

"Yo Yara Wayo" — a traditional Simbu love charm,
 Simbu Province

TEXTS

(1) Bekbun i bruk

In early June, 1985, Paul Kabau fell out of a coconut tree and broke his back. In this interview you will hear Paul talking about his accident and what happened since. Paul is from the coastal area of the Madang Province.



Paul in hospital

- D: Orait a-- mi laik askim yu nau long dispela samting a-- wanem samting i bin kamap long yu na nau yu kam slip long haus sik i stap?
- P: Dispela em mi bin--i go wok long Brandi Wara Saplai, wokim pai--e, wanem?--dren, dren bilong bikpela tenk bilong storis bilong ol wara. Yu save ol wara i save kam stap pinis tasol i save go aut. Mi wokim --mipela wok long dispela ol, wanem?--drenij i stap. Lans nau mi go antap long kulau long arere tasol long Brandi wara. Mi go antap, i go, kisim kulau, rausim kulau kam daun nau. Taim mi laik kam bek, kam daun bek long graun, em nau mi holim ol panggala. Lef*, lef ha--lek mi salim kam daun na tupela han em mi holim panggala antap. Nau tha sem taim em lef han* mi holim long en, i lus. Pangala i lus nau. Rait han mi holim tu, em olsem em i lus nau. Na long lek em i lus. Em nau mi pundaun* nau. Pundaun i kam, ded lok, kwila i bin i stap ananit* long kokonas. Na mi kam pundaun antap. Baksait bilong mi i kam pundaun antap stret long dispela diwai ya. Em nau bek--bekbun bilong mi olgeta i bruk. Orait mi slip i stap. Ol wanwok i kam kisim ka i go daun. Ol i no inap long karim mi long ka nau, ol i ring i kam long hospital, long Boram. Ambulans i go daun karim stretsabet. I go nau na ol i kisim mi kam. I kam nau, em, mi kam slip long haus sik.
- D: Gutpela. A--na nau yu stap hamas olgeta--hamas wik o mun yu stap pinis long haus sik long dispela taim?
- P: O nau mi stap olsem fopela wik nau. Ol dispela baksait bilong mi bun i bruk ya em i kamap i orait pinis. Ol i katim mi na ol putim tupela stil i go namel long arere long dispela tupela bun--bun nau na ol i nat--natim nau na em nau baksait bilong mi i strong mi kirap sindaun nau. Olsem long as bilong mi tasol long lek em mi no inap muvim kos em yet i paralais olgeta. Dispela nau namel tasol --namel em orait. I kam inap long lek bilong mi em no inap. Sindaun tasol. Mi no inap wokabaut.

English translation

- D: *All right ah--I'd like to ask you now about this ah--what happened to you so that you are now in hospital?*
- P: *This. I was--went to work at Brandi Water Supply, to make pip--eh, what is it?--drain, the drain for the big water storage supply tank. You know, the water (normally) comes in and stays (there) but it has been leaking. I made --we were working on these, what is it?--drainage. At lunchtime I climbed up a tree for young coconuts beside Brandi River. I went up and up and got the young nuts, knocked them down. When I wanted to come back, come back down to the ground, I held on to the base of the fronds. I placed my left, left ha--leg down and my two hands were holding on to the bases of the fronds up above. Then as I was putting my leg down my left hand slipped simultaneously. The frondbase came loose, and then the one I was holding on to with my right hand came loose too. And then the one that my foot was on came loose. So it was (lit. that's it) that I fell down then. I fell down. There was a dead log, a kwila log, there under the coconut tree. And I fell down on top of it. My back landed right on top of this log. So it was that all the bones in my back were broken. I was lying there. My co-workers came and got a vehicle to go down. They couldn't carry me in the vehicle. They rang the hospital at Boram. An ambulance came down with a stretcher. It went then and collected me. It brought me to hospital.*
- D: *Well fine. Ah--and now you have been here for how -- for how many weeks or months altogether in the hospital?*

*Note that Paul's pronunciation of lef, pundaun, and ananit approximate standard English.

P: *Oh I've been here for four weeks now. The broken bones in my back have recovered. They operated on me and put two steel pins in the middle of my back along the side of these two bones--and they -- bolted them and so my back is strong now. I am beginning to sit up now. But only my bottom--I can't move my legs because they are completely paralysed. Only the middle part of my body is okay. When you get to my legs they're not able (to move). I can't walk about. I can only sit.*

01 kwestin

1. Paul i bin wok we taim em i kisim bagarap?
2. Em na ol wanwok bilong en i laik wokim wanem bipo long taim Paul i kisim bagarap?
3. Long belo kaikai Paul i mekim wanem?
4. Wanem hap bilong Paul i bagarap?
5. Husat i kisim em i go long haus sik?
6. Ol dokta i mekim wanem long en?
7. Sindaun bilong Paul i olsem wanem nau?

(2) Dispela sik, TB

In this interview Willie Kudor talks about his illness and how the doctors have tried to help him. Willie comes from the Schouten Islands near the mouth of the Sepik River.



Willie in hospital

D: Oke. Wanem samting i wokim yu na yu kam long haus sik?

W: Mi, wanpela sik tasol i bin kisim mi na mi bin bagarap na nau mi kam stap long haus sik. Dispela sik nem bilong en TB. Pastaim tru dispela sik i bin kisim mi, mi bin kam stap long Boram hospital. Mi stap i go na wanpela sik gen i bin kamap gen long mi. Olsem susu i bin pulap long bros bilong mi na nau mi stap, dispela si--TB i bin pinis na nau ol dokta wok long statim mi long rausim susu long sait bilong mi.

D: Gutpela. Na yu stap long haus sik hamas mun nau long dispela sik susu long baksait bilong yu?

W: O, taim mi stap long dispela haus sik, ating samting inap olsem wan yia siks mans nau. Long wanem dispela taim mi gat tupela sik wantaim i stap wantaim.

T: Olsem wanem ol dokta i--i--i rausim dispela sik bilong yu?

W: Ol dokta i tok long bai i katim mi na ol i ken rausim. Tasol ol i save putim gumi i go na ol i traिम long pulim na susu i no pinis yet. Olsem na long dispela de tasol ol i bin katim mi na nau ol i rausim ol tripela hap bun i stap insait long bo--sait bilong mi. Nau ol i putim gu--raba na susu i stap--susu i kamap long go--kam ausait.

English translation

D: *Okay, what happened that you had to come to hospital?*

W: *As for me, I got a sickness and I was incapacitated and I came to the hospital. This sickness is called TB. When I first got this sickness I came to Boram hospital. I stayed on and I got another sickness, notably, pus developed in my chest and now I'm here. This si--TB went and now the doctors have started getting rid of the pus in my side.*

D: *Good. And how many months have you been in hospital with this pus in your back?*

W: *Oh, I guess I've been in this hospital for something like one year six months now, because I got two sicknesses at the same time.*

T: *How are the doctors --getting rid of this sickness of yours?*

W: *The doctors spoke about operating on me and getting rid of it. But they put a tube into me and tried to draw off the pus but it still didn't stop. So just today they operated on me and took out three pieces of bone from my bo--side. Now they've put in a tube -- and pus that is there -- the pus is coming up and going --coming out.*

01 kwestin

1. Wanem kain sik i bin kamap long Willie pastaim? Na wanem bihain?
2. Em i stap hamas mun long haus sik nau?
3. O1 dokta i mekim wanem long Willie long traim pinisim dispela sik bilong Willie?

Now to end this unit here is a healing song sung by the Yeftim people of the Yellow River area of the Upper Sepik.¹ It is being sung to cure a man's illness.

[Singsing]

Yeftim healing song, West Sepik Province

Supplementary exercises

1. Pretend some relative of yours is in hospital in Kavieng. Ring up (or pretend to go to) the hospital and ask for information about the relative. Pretend that the hospital cannot find a record card for your relative. Explain the case (e.g., the nature of the illness/injury, date of entry into hospital, treatment etc.) in Tok Pisin to the person at the reception desk.
2. Either (a) read a Tok Pisin book you have, or can find, and tell someone what it was about in Tok Pisin, or (b) tell someone your favourite fairy story in Tok Pisin.
3. Listen to texts 4 and 9 in Unit 14 and say what they are about in your own words in Tok Pisin.

¹This song was recorded by Don Kulick of the Department of Anthropology, University of Stockholm, Sweden in July, 1985.

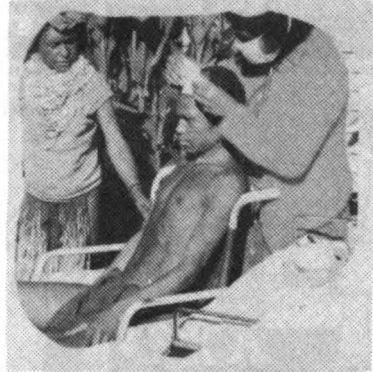
4. Here are photographs of two people who are sick or have been injured. Look at them and then:

(a) make up a story in Tok Pisin about one of them to explain what sickness or injury he/she has, where he/she got it, what the treatment for it is etc.;

(b) turn this description into a conversation about the same things between you and the patient (in Tok Pisin).



1. Bikpela sua long lek.



2. Het i gat sua.

5. On the next page is a World Health Organisation poster that appeared in *Wantok*, Namba 165, on 9th April, 1977 (p.16). Discuss the concept of immunisation that is referred to in it in Tok Pisin.

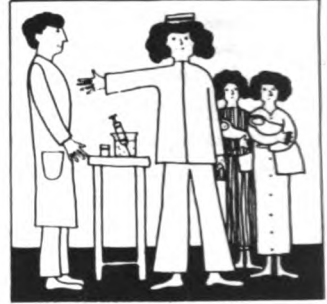
WORLD HEALTH DAY, 7 APRIL 1977



I GAT 6-PELA SIK I SAVE PAINIM OL PIKININI



OL NES I SAVE WARI LONG DISPELA SAMTING



OL I TOK SAVE LONG OL MAMA



OL I TOK: OL PIKININI I MAS KISIM SUT



SAMPELA MAMA I NO LAIK



OL I TOK PIKININI BILONG OL BAI ORAIT



TASOL SAMPELA MAMA I ORAIT LONG SUT



NAU PIKININI BILONG OL I GAT STRONG



TRU TUMAS, BIKPELA SIK I KAMAP LONG PLES



PIKININI I GAT SUT, I STRONG PINIS



NAU BIKHET MAMA TU I LAIKIM SUT



TABOL SORI, I LET TUMAS, PIKININI I DAI



WORLD HEALTH ORGANIZATION

Generated on 2022-02-10 03:58 GMT / https://hdl.handle.net/2027/uci:32106009345213 Creative Commons Attribution-NonCommercial-NoDerivatives / http://www.hathitrust.org/access_use#cc-by-nc-nd-4.0

INTRODUCTION

In this unit we shall be focussing on:

- (1) how to use *kain kind of, sort of* and *wankain the same, similar*;
- (2) how to express the idea of *no one, nobody, nothing*;
- (3) how to compare qualities, that is, how to say that something is better, bigger etc. than something else;
- (4) how to use *larim to let, allow* and similar verbs;
- (5) how to indicate that actions are repeated.

These points will be introduced in the conversations that follow and will be discussed and drilled in more detail in the grammatical sections that follow them.

Other things that are worth knowing are drawn to your attention in footnotes to the conversations and grammatical sections.

CONVERSATIONS

(1) "Mi halivim ol long redim kaikai"

Taru i stap wok long wanpela famili long Mosbi. Hia nau em i toksave long wok bilong en.

Taru works for a family in Port Moresby. Here she is telling about her work.

Intaviua: Taru, wanem kain wok yu save mekim long famili yu wok long en?

Taru, what kind of work do you do for the family you work for?

Taru: Mi halivim ol long redim kaikai. Mi save wokim planti kain liklik samting, stretim tebol, sea samting. Na taim ol i laik kaikai mi save sutim kaikai na karim i go long tebol. Sampela taim mi kaikai wantaim ol.

I help them prepare meals. I do lots of other kinds of small jobs like getting the table and chairs ready etc. And when they want to eat I usually serve up the food and take it to the table. Sometimes I eat with them.

Intaviua: Taim ol i go baim kaikai yu save go wantaim bilong karim kaikai?

When they go shopping do you usually go along to carry the food?

Taru: Yes, tasol sampela taim ol i salim mi yet long go baim kaikai long maket o long stua.

Yes, but sometimes they send me shopping by myself to the market or shops.

Intaviua: Sapos kiau i sot ol i save larim yu go baim kiau yu yet?

Suppose eggs are short on (that is, there are not many left) do they let you go and buy some by yourself?

Taru: Nogat, sampela taim tasol, bilong wanem ol i pret nogut mi lusim mani taim sampela raskol i paitim mi long rot.

No, only sometimes, because they're frightened that I might lose the money should raskols attack me on the way.

Intaviua: Na yu save pinis long olgeta kain kaikai bilong ol Yuropen a?

Taru: Yes, mi save: bin, tomato, karet, kabis, letas, sioko¹, kastet, kari samting.

Intaviua: Ah, sioko. Em wanem samting?

Taru: Em i wanpela kain sayur samting olsem kukamba. Tasol tupela i no wankain. Ol i save kukim sioko, na kukamba nogat. Long tingting bilong mi sioko i rabis kaikai.

And you know all the different kinds of European foods, don't you?

Yes I know: beans, tomatoes, carrots, cabbage, lettuce, choko, custard, curry etc.

Ah, what sort of a thing is a choko?

It's a kind of vegetable like a cucumber. But the two are not the same. They cook chokos but not cucumbers. To my way of thinking chokos are not worth eating.

¹Sioko (*Sechium edule*) is a green fleshy vegetable about the size of a large pear (and somewhat the same shape) which grows on a rampant vine. When cooked chokos become soft and taste somewhat like marrow. In Papua New Guinea the leaves of the choko vine are also sometimes cooked and eaten as greens.

(2) "Mi gat laik long baim vidiorikoda"

Muruk em i laik baim vidiorikoda. Hia nau em toktok wantaim man bilong salim vidio long en.

Muruk: Mi gat laik long baim vidiorikoda. Yu inap soim mi wanem kain i gutpela?

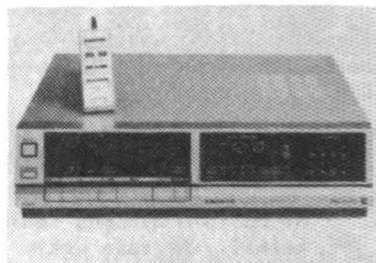
Man: Yes, mipela i gat tupela kain, Soni na Nesinel.

Muruk: Tupela wantaim i gutpela o wanem?

Man: Yes, tupela wantaim i gutpela. Tasol long tingting bilong mi mi ting Soni i winim Nesinel liklik, long wanem em i gat nupela kain plaibek sistem long en.

Muruk: Tru a?

Man: Yes, bilong wanem tep i save pilai i go, i go, i go inap long taim em i pinis na sapos yu no laik stopim.



Muruk would like to buy a video-recorder. Here you hear him discussing it with a video salesman.

I'd like to buy a videorecorder. Could you please show me which kinds you'd recommend.

Yes, we've got two kinds, Sony and National.

Are both equally good or what?

Yes, the two are equally good. But in my opinion the Sony is slightly better than the National, because it has a new kind of playback system.

Is that so?

Yes, because a tape will keep playing until it is finished if you don't want to stop it.

- Muruk:** Yu min wanpela tep inap long pilai pilai i go long wanpela de sapos yu larim em i go olsem?
Do you mean that a tape could keep playing for a whole day if you let it?
- Man:** Yes, em stret.
Yes, that's correct.
- Muruk:** E, hamas long en?
Eh, how much is it?
- Man:** Long Soni em wan tausen tu handet kina na Nesinel em wan tausen tu handet en fifti kina tasol.
The Sony is K1200 and the National is only K1250.
- Muruk:** Man! Na wanpela wanpela tep i kostim hamas?
Gosh! And how much does each tape cost?
- Man:** O, em ol nain kina tasol.
Oh, they're only K9.
- Muruk:** Tenkyu. Larim em i stap. Mi mas go tingting pastaim long ol dispela.
Thank you. Leave it. I have to go away and think about those points first.

(3) "Mi sekreteri"

- Nau long hia bai yumi harim Fofos i toktok wantaim intaviua long wok bilong en long Pablik Sevis.**
Now we're going to listen to Fofos talking about her work in the Public Service with the interviewer.
- Intaviua:** Yu bin toktok pinis bipo olsem yu save long Tok Inglis. Nau mi laik save tru wanem wok stret bilong yu?
You mentioned before that you know English. Now I'd like to know exactly what your job is.
- Fofos:** Mi sekreteri.
I'm a secretary.
- Intaviua:** Wok sekreteri em i wanem kain wok?
What kind of work is secretarial work?
- Fofos:** Wok sekreteri i min olsem mi helpim bos bilong mi long wanem seksen o dipatmen mi wok long en. Olsem na mi save raitim pas long sothan na mi taipim. Na tu mi save ansaim telepon na stretim olgeta kain liklik samting insait long opis.
Secretarial work means helping my boss in whatever section or department I work in. Consequently I take letters in shorthand and type them. I also answer the telephone and attend to the various small things that need doing in the office.
- Intaviua:** Yu gat komputa long opis bilong yu?
Do you have a computer in your office?
- Fofos:** Nogat, i no gat wanpela. Ol i tok bai ol i kisim wanpela, tasol i no yet.
No, there isn't any. They've talked about getting one but so far haven't got one.
- Intaviua:** Yu ting wanem? Komputa i mobeta long taipraitaita o nogat?
Do you think computers are better than typewriters or not?

Fofos: Mi no save, tasol ol i tok komputa i mobeta long taiprait bilong wanem sapos yu raitim leta long em em i isi long stretim pas bipo yu prinim long masin. Na tu komputa i save holim planti infomasen o fail. Sapos yu laik painimaut wanpela samting yu ken painim kwiktaim long komputa.

Intaviua: Na yu laikim dispela wok bilong yu?

Fofos: Yes, tasol pe bilong em i no bikpela. I mobeta sapos ol i apim pe liklik.

Intaviua: Tenkyu tru sekreteri.

Fofos: Em i orait tasol.

I don't know, but it is said that computers are better than typewriters because if you write a letter on them it is easy to correct before it is printed. As well computers store a lot of information or files. If you want to find out something you can quickly on the computer.

Do you like your job?

Yes I do, but the pay is not great. It would be better if they would increase it a bit.

Thank you secretary.

That's okay.

(4) "Tupela i wankain"

Ambros i go long nupela haus palamen. Saveman bilong haus palamen i soim em olgeta samting insait long haus.

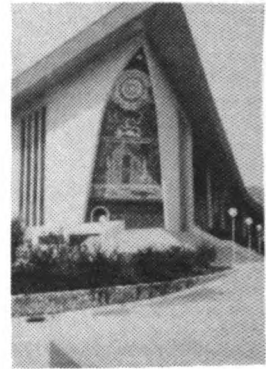
Ambros: E, dispela hap i luk olsem haus tambaran ya.

Saveman: Yes, tupela i wankain. Tasol rup bilong dispela i narakain. Ol i wokim long liklik hap diwai ya. Na tu ol i wokim plua long narapela samting. Ol i no wokim long limbum. Ol i wokim long liklik hap plang, putim glu na slipim ol klostu klostu long semen. Yu ting wanem? Dispela i winim haus tambaran bilong bipo?

Ambros went to the new House of Parliament. A guide is showing him everything.

Heh, this part looks like a spirit house.

Yes, the two are similar, except that the roof on this is different. They made it out of shingles. They also made the floor out of something else. They didn't make it out of black palm. It's made out of small planks, glued and laid on cement. Do you think that this is better than the old time spirit houses?



Ambros: Ating em i win. Tasol em i nupela kain stail bilong wokim haus. I gat sampela pangal na tumbuan long en tu?

I guess so. But it's a new way of building. Are there any paintings or masks in it too?

Saveman: Nogat, i no gat. Ol i droim piksa tasol long wol. Lukim! Ol i penim i go i go i go antap tru long rup.

No, none. Only imitations have been drawn on the walls. See! They've been painted right up to the roof!

Ambros: Hamas sea bilong ol memba i stap insait long palamen?

How many members' seats are there in the House?

Saveman: A, mi no save. Tasol em i gat mo long olupela haus palamen.

I don't know. But there are more than in the old House.

[Singsing]

"Namilai" (Sanguma Band)

VOCABULARY

1. Drills

Exercise 1: Simple substitution

Frame: Em i nupela kain stail bilong wokim haus.

It's a new way of building!

pretim yumi

frightening us

solapim kalabusman

thrashing the prisoner

strafim dispela raskol

punishing this raskol

tok nogutim ol

insulting them

bulsitim mi

deceiving me

wokim haus

Now see if you can say what the following sentences mean in English. Ready?

1. Papa i solapim pikinini bilong en bilong wanem em i brukim busnaip bilong en.

The father thrashed his child because it broke his bush knife.

2. Sapos yu tok nogutim mi bai mi strafim yu.

If you insult me I'll punish you.

3. Long nait pik i pretim dispela tupela meri.

A pig frightened these two women during the night.

Exercise 2: Simple substitution

Frame: Mi no gat laik long baim
vidlorikoda.

mumutim kaikai

abusim saksak long pik

hapim kaikai

hapim wok

baim vidlorikoda

*I don't want to buy a video-
recorder.*

scavenge

garnish sago with pork

halve the food

do a job incompletely

Now give the Tok Pisin for the following. Ready?

1. *to scavenge*
2. *to do a job incompletely*
3. *to garnish rice with meat*

mumutim kaikai

hapim wok

abusim rais long mit

Exercise 3: Simple substitution

Frame: Larim em i stap.

pulapim kap long ti¹

kirap nogut

hipim ol kaukau long rum

hapim kaikai

stap

Let him stay!

fill up the cup with tea

be surprised

*pile up the sweet potatoes in
the room*

Now see if you can remember the Tok Pisin words for the following. Ready?

1. *to be surprised*
2. *to fill up a cup with tea*
3. *to pile up things*

kirap nogut

pulapim kap long ti

hipim ol samting

Exercise 4:

How would you say the following in Tok Pisin? Use the construction I mobeta sapos ol i. Ready?

1. *It would be better if they stopped the recorder.*
I mobeta sapos ol i stopim rikoda.
2. *It would be better if they let it go.*
I mobeta sapos ol i larim em i go.
3. *It would be better if they talked about their problem.*
I mobeta sapos ol i toktok long wari/problem bilong ol.
4. *It would be better if they listened to what is said.*
I mobeta sapos ol i harim tok.

¹Pulimapin may also be heard for pulapim.

2. Supplementary vocabulary

blanket	<i>blanket</i>
betsit/laplap bilong bet/sitbet	<i>a (bed) sheet</i>
matres	<i>mattress</i>
brukim bet	<i>strip a bed</i>
bet sel ¹	<i>a canvas stretcher or sleeve for making a bed in the bush</i>
glas bilong lukluk	<i>mirror</i>
grileglas	<i>frosted glass</i>
taunam	<i>mosquito net</i>
pilo	<i>pillow</i>
skin pilo	<i>pillow slip, pillow case</i>
dis	<i>dish, basin, bowl</i>
rum bilong waswas	<i>bathroom</i>
kapet	<i>cupboard</i>
stretim/lainim tebol	<i>set the table</i>
klirim tebol	<i>clear the table</i>
botol	<i>bottle, jar, vase</i>
tin pipia	<i>rubbish tin</i>
mat	<i>mat</i>
lam	<i>lamp</i>
lam bensin	<i>pressure lamp</i>
kamapim lait	<i>light the lamp</i>
mekim i dai lait	<i>put the light out</i>
sop	<i>soap</i>
sop i gat smel	<i>toilet soap</i>
bokis ais	<i>refrigerator, icebox</i>
kes/sutkes/bokis	<i>case, suitcase</i>
katen	<i>carton</i>
sospen	<i>saucepan, pot</i>
sospen graun ²	<i>clay pot</i>
tuptup	<i>cover or lid of saucepan</i>
strena	<i>strainer</i>
stilwul	<i>steel wool</i>
tipot	<i>teapot</i>
stov	<i>stove</i>

¹Note also the following: bet bilong kanu *a platform on a canoe*
bet bilong kaikai *a shelf for food*

²Compare text 6, Unit 14.

tos	<i>toast</i>
tostim/kukim (bret)	<i>to toast (bread)</i>
kukim bret (o kek o kaikai) long aven	<i>to bake, roast bread (cakes, food)</i>
kukim (antap) long paia	<i>to grill, barbecue</i>
giamanim long paia	<i>to singe</i>
sambai long kukim kaikai	<i>to be prepared to cook, stand by to cook</i>
lukautim kaikai taim yu kuk	<i>watch over food while cooking</i>
boilim wara	<i>to boil water</i>
praim	<i>to fry</i>
praipan	<i>frypan</i>
wokim/paitim bret	<i>to knead bread</i>
spunim o savolim	<i>to spoon out, ladle out</i>
mumui ¹	<i>to cook in a ground oven, to pressure-cook, steam</i>
sikirapim kokonas	<i>to scrape coconut</i>
wasim	<i>to wash</i>
polisim	<i>to polish</i>
haus win	<i>summer house, garden house</i>
veranda	<i>patio</i>
lusim dua ²	<i>to unlock a door</i>
lokim dua	<i>to lock a door</i>
Mi wok kalabus long misis!	<i>I really work hard for the mistress of the house.</i>

Exercises

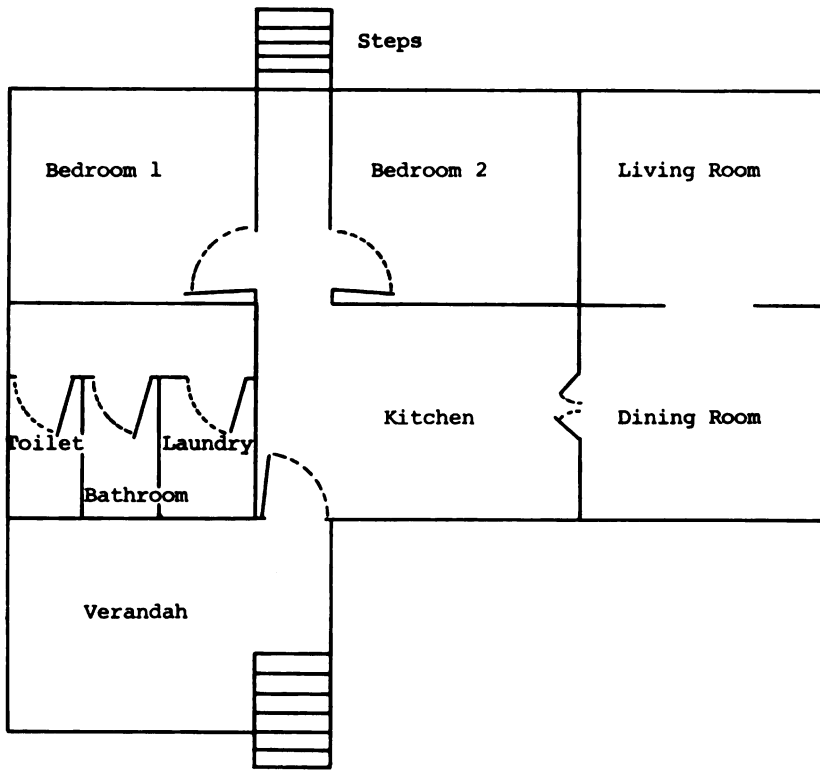
1. What are the Tok Pisin words for the following:

<i>frying pan</i>	<i>to set a table</i>
<i>to switch off a light</i>	<i>to pressure-cook food</i>
<i>a curtain</i>	<i>pillow slip</i>
<i>toilet soap</i>	<i>lid of a saucepan</i>
<i>to scrape a coconut</i>	<i>to strip a bed</i>
<i>a mirror</i>	<i>rubbish tin</i>

¹Compare text 24, Unit 14.

²Note also Lusim ol kakaruk (i go aut)! or Larim ol kakaruk i go aut! *Let the fowls out (of their pen)!*

2. Fill in the Tok Pisin names for the rooms shown in this plan of a house:



You may have to check Unit 5 for some of these!

[Singing]
"Namilai" (Sanguma Band)

GRAMMAR

11.1 kain kind of and wankain same

In Tok Pisin there are a number of constructions based on different uses of the word *kain* kind of, sort of which are very useful even though they present no great difficulty for English speakers. These are divisible into two types:

(1) those which occur before nouns as adjectives, for example:

a. *dispela kain N this kind of N, such Ns, Ns of this sort*

Yu gat dispela kain mani long Papua Niu Gini?

Have you got this kind of money in Papua New Guinea?

b. *wanem kain N which kind/sort of N?*

Yu gat wanem kain mani long Papua Niu Gini?

What kind of money have you got in Papua New Guinea?

c. *planti kain N many kinds of N, plenty of kinds of N*

Mipela i gat planti kain mani long Papua Niu Gini.

We have many kinds of money in Papua New Guinea.

d. kainkain N *various kinds of N, all sorts of N*

Mipela i gat (olgeta) kainkain mani long Papua Niu Gini.
We have (all) different kinds of money in Papua New Guinea.

Note in these that dispela kain N is sometimes (though not very often) shortened to diskain N or may alternatively be expressed as kain N olsem, for example:

Yu no ken mekim kain tok olsem!
Don't say that kind of thing or Don't say that!

- (2) those which occur after the predicative marker *i* as predicates or verbless sentences, to express the idea of *same* or *different*, for example:

a. wankain *same*

Tupela koki i wankain.
The two parrots are the same (the one kind).

Tupela koki i wankain liklik.
The two parrots are similar.

Tupela koki i no wankain tumas.
The two parrots are not very similar.

Sik bilong ol i wankain.
They all have the same disease.

Note that the Tok Pisin sentence is often 'turned around' compared with English, and that the use of wankain is different from the use of olsem and wangepela kain, for example:

Dispela koki i olsem dispela (koki).
These two parrots are alike/same.

Mipela i gat wangepela kain mani long Papua Niu Gini tasol.
We've got only one kind of money in Papua New Guinea.

b. narakain *different*¹

Dispela tupela koki i no wankain; dispela hia i narakain.
These two parrots are not the same; this one is different.

Practice drills

Exercise 1: Simple substitution

Frame: Mipela i gat dispela kain mani long Papua Niu Gini.

(planti kain, kainkain, olgeta kain, wangepela kain, dispela kain)

Exercise 2: Simple substitution

Frame: Tupela koki i wankain.

(sik bilong ol, olgeta asples bilong Papua Niu Gini, ol dispela supia, tokples bilong olgeta hap, tupela koki)

¹Dipren/difren is now being used for this by many speakers.

Exercise 3: Give answers to the following questions using the Tok Pisin cues provided. Ready?

1. Papua Niu Gini i gat wanem kain abus i stap insait long bus bilong en? (kainkain)
Papua Niu Gini i gat kainkain abus i stap insait long bus bilong en.
2. Husat i givim yupela dispela kain mani? (wantok bilong mi)
Wantok bilong mi i givim mipela dispela kain mani.
3. Ol i smokim wanem kain brus long Austrelia? (tupela kain)
Ol i smokim tupela kain brus long Austrelia.
4. Asde ol i lukim planti kain pis long wara o nogat? (yes)
Yes, asde ol i lukim planti kain pis long wara.
5. Bai mi kisim ol dispela kain ston we? (long graun)
Bai yu kisim ol dispela kain ston long graun.

Exercise 4: Answer the following questions using the cues provided. If the cue is *nogat* add the explanation *dispela ya i narakain* or an appropriately adjusted version. For example, if the question were: *Dispela tupela koki i wankain o nogat?* and the cue given was *yes* then your answer should be *Yes, dispela tupela koki i wankain; on the other hand if the cue were nogat then your answer should be Nogat, dispela tupela koki i no wankain; dispela ya i narakain.* Ready?

1. Yu painim pinis tupela hanwas i wankain a? (yes)
Yes, mi painim pinis tupela hanwas i wankain.
2. Ol dispela taro i wankain o nogat? (nogat)
Nogat, ol dispela taro i no wankain; dispela ya i narakain.
3. Dispela sik bilong ol i wankain em i kamap we? (long Saina)
Dispela sik bilong ol i wankain em i kamap long Saina.
4. Mani bilong Austrelia na mani bilong Papua Niu Gini i olsem wanem--tupela i wankain o wanem? (nogat)
Nogat, mani bilong Austrelia na mani bilong Papua Niu Gini i no wankain; mani bilong Papua Niu Gini i narakain.
5. Olgeta su bilong yu i wankain liklik o nogat? (nogat)
Nogat, olgeta su bilong mi i no wankain liklik; dispela ya i narakain.

Evaluation exercise

How would you say the following in Tok Pisin? Ready?

1. *We all have the same kinds of houses.*
Ol haus bilong yumi olgeta i wankain.
2. *The languages of Papua New Guinea are not all the same; some are like ours and some are different.*
Olgeta tokples bilong Papua Niu Gini i no wankain--sampela i olsem tokples bilong yumi; sampela i narakain.

3. *What kind of bird will you shoot?*

Bai yu sutim wanem kain pisin?

4. *There are different kinds of fish in the sea.*

I gat kainkain pis long solwara.

5. *Don't say that kind of thing!*

Yu no ken mekim kain tok olsem!
Yu no ken mekim dispela kain tok!
Maski mekim kain tok olsem!

11.2 i no gat wanpela: *nobody, no one, nothing*

There is no single word in Tok Pisin corresponding to *nobody, nothing, no one* in English. However, the same idea is expressed in Tok Pisin by using the negative form of *i gat there is, there are* introduced in Unit 9, for example:

Q: Husat i stap?

Who's there?

A: I no gat wanpela (i stap)!¹

(There is) no one (there)!

Q: Wanem samting i stap?

What's there?

A: I no gat sampela (samting)
(i stap)!

Nothing!

I no gat man (i stap)!

There's no one here!

I no gat sampela (mo) (i stap)!

There isn't any (more)!

I no gat mo (i stap)!

There isn't any more!

Note that English speakers should be particularly careful of using *nating* as an equivalent of *nothing* in Tok Pisin.² That is, one cannot say *Mi gat nating* for *I haven't got anything*. One has to say *Mi no gat wanpela samting*.

Note also that *no gat* is not the same as *nogat no*.

Practice drills

Exercise 1: Answer the following questions using the cues provided. In each case your answer should begin with *i no gat*. For example, if the question were *Husat i stap?* and the cue was *wanpela* your answer should be *I no gat wanpela i stap*. Ready?

1. Hamas kaukau i stap?

(planti mo)

I no gat planti mo i stap.

2. Husat i kirap nogut?

(wanpela)

I no gat wanpela i kirap nogut.

¹Often these answers will be heard without the predicative marker *i*, e.g. *No gat wanpela*. However, note that this cannot be done for *I gat wanpela there is one*, that is, one cannot say *Gat wanpela*.

²Compare sub-section 2.4 where it was indicated that *nating*, *not* or *siro* are generally used in the classroom for *nought* or *zero* and Unit 1 where *nating for no reason* was introduced.

3. I gat sampela meri i kam tu? (nogat)
 Nogat, i no gat sampela meri i kam tu.
4. Wanem samting i sanap long hap? (wanpela samting)
 I no gat wanpela samting i sanap long hap.
5. Husat i dringim sup asde? (wanpela)
 I no gat wanpela i dringim sup asde.

Exercise 2: Change the subjects in the following sentences to *no one, nobody, or nothing*. Each answer will be based on the structure *i no gat* but you will have to vary the objects to suit the particular sentences. For example, if the given sentence were *Mipela i gat planti pik* your answer should be *I no gat wanpela bilong mipela i gat planti pik* (lit. *There is not one of us who has lots of pigs*). Ready?

- Dispela pikinini i save mumutim kaikai.
 I no gat wanpela pikinini i save mumutim kaikai.
- I gat sampela mo i stap long stua.
 I no gat sampela mo i stap long stua.
- Ol trak i bagarap.
 I no gat wanpela trak i bagarap.
- Olgeta wokman i pinisim wok o nogat?
 Nogat, i no gat wanpela wokman i pinisim wok.
- Mipela i gat planti pik.
 I no gat wanpela bilong mipela i gat planti pik.

Evaluation exercise

How would you say the following in Tok Pisin? Ready?

- Isn't there any milk left?*
 I no gat sampela susu i kam bek?
- I am sitting down doing nothing.*
 Mi sindaun nating.
- I didn't see anything.*
 Mi no lukim wanpela samting.
- Q: *Where is the plate?* A: *There isn't any.*
 Q: Plet i stap we? A: I no gat wanpela i stap.
- Q: *Old man, is there anyone in this village?* A: *No there isn't. They've all gone to the garden.*
 Q: Lapun, i gat sampela man i stap long ples ya? A: Nogat, i no gat wanpela. Olgeta i go pinis long gaden.

11.3 Comparison of adjectives and adverbs

In sub-section 9.3 you were introduced to the way one intensifies or emphasises the sizes or qualities of things in Tok Pisin. Now besides doing this one can also compare the sizes or qualities of two or more things. For example, in English, one says *This car is (very much) better than that one.* In Tok Pisin there are several common ways of doing this but for the purposes of this course we shall concentrate on those exemplified in the following sentences:

1. Dispela moran i longpela mo long dispela.¹

This python is longer than this one.

2. Dispela moran i longpela olsem dispela.

This python is as long as this one.

3. Dispela moran i longpela $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{liklik} \\ \text{tru} \end{array} \right.$ long dispela.

This python is $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{slightly} \\ \text{considerably} \end{array} \right.$ longer than this one.

4. $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{Tasol, dispela moran i longpela long olgeta.}^2 \\ \text{Tasol, dispela moran i longpela winim olgeta.} \end{array} \right.$

But this python is the longest of all.

Note that the same constructions can be used with adverbs also. Consider:

1. Em i digim baret hariap long mi.³

He dug the trench faster than I did.

2. Em i digim baret hariap olsem mi.

He dug the trench as fast as I did.

3. Em i digim baret hariap liklik long mi.

He dug the trench slightly faster than I did.

4. Tasol em i digim baret (hariap) winim olgeta.

But he dug the trench the fastest.

5. Em i (bin) ran winim olgeta.

He ran the fastest.

6. Em i draivim ka winim olgeta.

He drove the fastest.

Finally note that mo gutpela can also be said mo gut or mobeta.

Practice drills

Exercise 1: Simple substitution

Frame: Haus bilong en i mobeta long haus bilong mipela.

(bikpela mo, nupela mo, liklik mo, strongpela mo, mobeta)

¹Some speakers use mo before the adjective in these kinds of sentences, e.g. Dispela man i mo longpela long dispela. But in this course only the behind position will be drilled.

²One could also say Dispela i longpela bilong winim ol although this implies comparison in a competition e.g. *it's long enough to take to the competition.*

³Or alternatively Tasol em i winim mi long wokim baret.

Exercise 2: Simple substitution

Frame: Dispela ka i nupela olsem dispela.

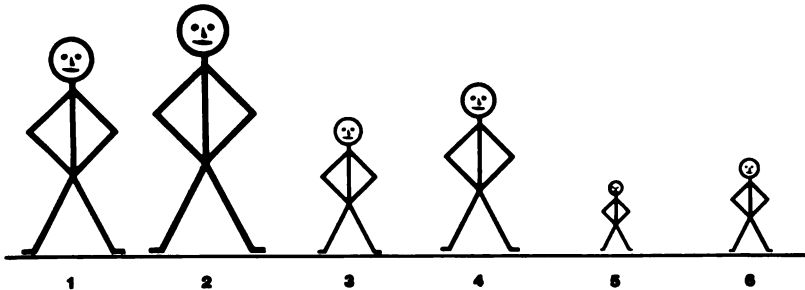
(bikpela, liklik, sotpela, longpela, nupela)

Exercise 3: Repeat the following sentences substituting the adjective given.
Ready?

1. Han bilong mi i longpela mo long han bilong yu. (klinpela)
Han bilong mi i klinpela mo long han bilong yu.
2. Dispela supia long hap i sap mo long dispela long hia. (bikpela)
Dispela supia long hap i bikpela mo long dispela long hia.
3. I gat wanpela rot long Austrelia i mobeta long dispela ya long Papua Niu Gini. (longpela)
I gat wanpela rot long Austrelia i longpela mo long dispela ya long Papua Niu Gini.
4. Sampela ston i hevi mo long ol narapela. (raun)
Sampela ston i raun mo long ol narapela.
5. Husat i longpela long olgeta? (lapun)
Husat i lapun long olgeta?

Evaluation exercises

Exercise 1: Open your book and look at the stick men drawn there and then answer the following questions? Ready?



1. Wanem man i longpela long olgeta?
Man namba tu i longpela long olgeta.
2. Wanem man i sotpela mo long namba sikis?
Man namba faiv i sotpela mo long namba sikis.
3. Wanem man i sotpela long olgeta?
Man namba faiv i sotpela long olgeta.
4. Wanem man i longpela olsem namba foa?
I no gat wanpela man i longpela olsem namba foa.

Exercise 2: How would you say the following in Tok Pisin. Ready?

1. *Dogare is taller than Wanipe.*

Dogare i longpela mo long Wanipe.

2. *Wanipe is really much taller than Malolo.*

Wanipe i longpela tru long Malolo.

3. *Dogare is not as strong as Wanipe but is stronger than Malolo.*

Dogare i no strong olsem Wanipe tasol i strongpela mo long Malolo.

4. *Whose is the best bow?*

Banara bilong husat i gutpela long olgeta?

5. *This finger is as long as this one.*

Dispela pinga i longpela olsem dispela.

11.4 larim and similar verbs

In Tok Pisin larim *let* (and similar verbs such as tokim *tell someone to do something*, singautim *call out to*, helpim *help*, mekim *to cause or make someone or something do something*) are used as their counterparts are in English.¹ That is, these verbs come first in the sentence and are followed by clauses whose structure is the same as that in the sentences from which they are derived. Thus, in Mi larim yu kaikai the verb larim is followed by the clause yu kaikai which has the same structure as the sentence yu kaikai *you are eating* from which it is derived. Consider:

Papa bilong mi i larim mi draivim
ka bilong en.

My father lets me drive his car.

Bai san i mekim klos i drai.

*The sun will make the clothes dry
(or the sun will cause the clothes
to dry).*

Em i salim mi go.

He sent me away.

The only complication is that one common verb, singautim, takes long before the verb in the following clause and a few other common verbs like laikim *to like*, mekim *to make* may do so optionally also.² Consider, for example:

Yu singautim mi long kirap o nogat?

*Did you call out to me to get up or
not?*

Yu laikim mi (long) kirap o nogat?

Do you want me to get up or not?

Gavman i mekim mipela (long) planim
kokonas.

*The Government makes us plant
coconuts.*

For present purposes we shall not be drilling the optional uses of long with the two verbs mentioned above.

¹In older forms of Tok Pisin the predicative marker i was required after the subject of the clause following larim and similar verbs, irrespective of the subject. Consider: Papa bilong mi i larim mi i draivim ka bilong en.

²Larim may also take long optionally. Consider: Yu larim mi long kirap. However, this is not very common.

Practice drills

Exercise 1: Simple substitution

Frame: Papa bilong mi i larim mi draivim ka bilong en.

(halivim, mekim, singautim ...long, tokim ...long, larim)

Exercise 2: Give answers to the following questions using the Tok Pisin cues provided. Ready?

1. Husat i larim yu kam wantaim mipela? (mama bilong mi)
Mama bilong mi i larim mi kam wantaim yupela.
2. Long wanem de bos i tokim yupela mas katim gras? (long Trinde)
Long Trinde bos i tokim mipela mas katim gras.
3. Husat i singautim yu long kam tokim mi long go long haus sik? (meri ya)
Meri ya i singautim mi long kam tokim yu long go long haus sik.
4. Wanem santing i kam mekim kaikai i sting. (ating wanpela rat)
Ating wanpela rat i kam mekim kaikai i sting.
5. Hamas man i bin halivim yu hipim ol kokonas long nambis? (tupela tasol)
Tupela man tasol i bin halivim mi hipim ol kokonas long nambis.

Evaluation exercise

How would you say the following in Tok Pisin? Ready?

1. *Make the child get down!* Yu mekim pikinini i kam daun!
2. *Leave it there!* Larim i stap!/Larim em i stap!
3. *Let the Bird of Paradise go!* Larim kumul i go!
4. *She sang out to me to bring her a knife.* Em i singautim mi long kisim wanpela naip i go long en.
5. *Come and help me hang this string bag up!* { Yu kam halivim mi hangamapim dispela bilum!
Yu kam halivim mi long hangamapim dispela bilum!



[Singsing]
"Tilatilo" flute, Gazelle Peninsula,
East New Britain Province

TEXTS

(1) Mi taipist

Anelta Taula is a secretary in one of the Government offices in Waigani. She comes from Mussau Island north of Kavieng in the New Ireland Province. Anelta is well educated and uses many English expressions quite naturally in her Tok Pisin.



Anelta

D: A, wanem wok bilong yu?

A: A--wok bilong mi olsem a--wanpela taipist.

D: A--taipist. A--yupela i save wokim wanem samting?

A: O, espesili mipela save mekim taiping, ansarim telepon, failing, na wokim wanem kain wok mi--a--bos bilong mipela i save laik bai mipela wokim.

T: Yu gat diktapon long opis bilong yu tu?

A: Nogat yet. Mipela wok long traिम long kisim nau diktapon masin bilong mipela. Mipela no kisim yet.

T: Na komputa. Yu save dispela samting? Yu laik toksave liklik long aidia bilong yu long komputa em i wanem samting?

A: Komputa! O wel--mi no--mi no yusim yet wanpela komputa bat yu tok--long mi mi ting olsem komputa wanpela gutpela masin long yusim long opis.

D: Bilong wanem?

A: Em--i save helpim ol a--wok olsem em i save isia long wokim.

D: A--yu inap givim wanpela tok piksa long dispela o eksampol long dispela taim yu tok em i wokim wok em i go isi?

A: Olsem bai--sapos yu putim wanpela samting go insait long masin, na bihain yu laik painim gen, yu ken isili kisim long komputa. Olsem sapos yu laik painim wo--go bek gen long en bai yu kisim kam bek gen kwiktaim tasol.

D: Na sapos long a-- putim tasol long fail autsait?

A: Em! Tasol sampela taim bai fail i--espesili bai--sapos sampela i kisim long opis na bai yu no inap save i go we na bai i hatwok long yu long painim gen. Na long komputa em bai yu save i stap yet long hap so bai yu kisim kamaut tasol.

D: Tru? Gutpela.

English translation

D: Ah--what sort of work do you do?

A: Ah--my work is like this ah--I'm a typist.

D: Typist. Ah--what do you (pl.) do?

A: Oh, we type especially, answer the telephone, do filing and do whatever kind of work we ah--our boss wants us to do.

T: Have you got a dictaphone in your office too?

A: Not yet. We are busy trying to get a dictaphone machine for us. We haven't got it yet.

- T: *And a computer. Do you know what that is? Could you say something about what sort of thing that is to your mind.*
- A: *Computer. Oh well--I haven't--I haven't used a computer yet but you talk--to my mind I think that a computer is a good machine to use in the office.*
- D: *Why?*
- A: *It--it helps ah--make work easier to do.*
- D: *Ah--could you give a description or example of what you mean when you say it makes work easier?*
- A: *Like this. It will--suppose you put something into the machine and later on you want to find it again you can easily get it in the computer. For example, suppose you want to look for wo--to go back to something you can retrieve it again quite quickly.*
- D: *And what if you ah--put it in a (normal kind of) file outside?*
- A: *That's a good point! But sometimes the files--especially will--if someone takes them to the office you won't have any way of knowing where they are and you will have great difficulty in locating them again. But in the computer you'll know that they're there so you can just retrieve them.*
- D: *Truly? Good.*

01 kwestin

1. Anelta i save wokim wanem kain wok?
2. Wok bilong taipist olsem Anelta i olsem wanem?
3. Anelta i ting wanem long komputa. Em i laikim o nogat?

(2) E trafik kontrola

In this interview Desmah Thomas talks about aspects of her work in the Department of Civil Aviation. Desmah also comes from Mussau Island and is twenty-one years old.



Desmah

- I: *Bilong wanem yupela save wokim dispela kain wok long a--wokim balus i flai antap long skai?*
- D: *Yumi--yumi olgeta i save olsem balus i--i no olsem sip na ka yumi inap --i save ran isi isi na yumi inap tingting na tingting bai dispela hap i rong na yumi no inap kisim asua long dispela hap na bai yumi tanim kwik olsem na olsem balus wanpela kain samting ol waitman i wokim i save ran hariap hariap tru na mi mas hariap tru long givim kain kain toktok long halivim ol man i flai antap long skai na halivim ol long separeitim ol balus bai ol i no ken bam na kapsait.*
- I: *A, taim yupela i stap insait wanem kain toktok stret a--yupela save givim long ol pasindia o save givim long ol pailot?*

D: Mipela no save toktok long ol pasindia. Mipela save toktok long ol pailot tasol. Taim pailot bipo em i go long flai em i save kam na ol lain bilong mipela ol i save toktok long en, "Yu go ol--dispela hap olsem nau olsem ren i pundaun long hap olsem". Bihain taim em i --em i go narapela pailot i kam gen mipela kisim info--wanem ya bilong en?--a--toktok bilong en plen bilong en bai i flai we. Mipela i save putim i stap. Te--bikos taim ol i flai ol i save wanpela balus i kam hia wanpela i kam hia so em wok bilong mipela long toksave long ol, "Yu go olsem. Yu flai long dispela hap. Yu go daun olsem. Yu go antap olsem."

English translation

- I: *Why do you (plural) do this kind of work -- making planes fly up in the sky?*
- D: *We--we all know that planes--are not like ships and cars which we can--which go slow and where we have time to think and control them so we don't have accidents and we can turn quickly. But planes, which are made by Europeans and which go very fast have to be given different kinds of information by me to help them fly up in the sky and to help them keep apart so they don't run into each other and crash.*
- I: *Ah, when you are inside (your office) what kind of information do you give to passengers or pilots?*
- D: *We don't communicate with passengers. We only communicate with pilots. Before pilots go on flights they come and we tell them to go in this direction because it's raining over there (in the direction they want to go). Later on-- another pilot comes and we get info-- what is it of?--his information about where his plane will be flying. We keep that. Te--because when they fly they know one plane is coming here and one here so our work is to inform them, "You go this way. You fly in this direction. You go down there. You go up there."*

Sampela kwestin

1. Desmah i mekim wanem kain wok?
2. Wanem as bilong dispela wok?
3. Ol pailot i save mekim wanem bipo long taim ol i plai?
4. Ol e trafik kontrola i save halivim ol pailot olsem wanem?

Now to end this unit listen to an excerpt from the Papua New Guinea service of Radio Australia.¹

Supplementary exercises

1. Pretend you are a Papua New Guinean who has just returned from a trip overseas and that your relatives and friends are inquisitive about some of the more novel things you saw or heard about. How would you explain one or more of the following to them in Tok Pisin:

a hippie	a welding robot on a	an Old Age Persons
a monorail train	car assembly line	Home
Halley's comet	Disneyland	RSI
a heart transplant	a penguin	the Australian Mint

¹This service is broadcast from Melbourne every day between 6 p.m. and 9 p.m. EST and 7 p.m. and 10 p.m. Summer Time on 5995, 6080 and 9760 KHz. Approximately the first half of the broadcast is in English and the rest in Tok Pisin. In this particular broadcast the announcer is talking about the weather in Melbourne over Christmas 1985. It was unscripted.

2. Pretend you are a reporter. Cut out a picture from any newspaper (excluding *Wantok*) and write up a small column about it in Tok Pisin for display on a notice board or for inclusion in *Wantok*.
3. Pretend you want to buy a new car but can't make up your mind whether it should be a Mazda or a Toyota. What are the questions you would ask a salesman in Tok Pisin that correspond to the following answers:

A: (*Greeting*)

B: Yes, gude.

A: (*Say you are interested in buying a Mazda but you don't know which is best Mazda or Toyota.*)

B: O long tingting bilong mi mi ting Mazda i mobeta long Toyota.

A: (*Ask if the two are the same in power.*)

B: Ating, Mazda i winim Toyota long pawa.

A: (*But the Toyota has more room in it, doesn't it?*)

B: Yes, Toyota bikpela mo long Mazda long spes bilong ol pasindia.

A: (*What about costs/price?*)

B: O prais bilong tupela i wankain.

4. Listen to texts 17 and 19 in Unit 14 and discuss some of the concepts therein in Tok Pisin.
5. See if you can complete the following cross-word puzzle in Tok Pisin. It comes from *Wantok*, Namba 8, 1970.

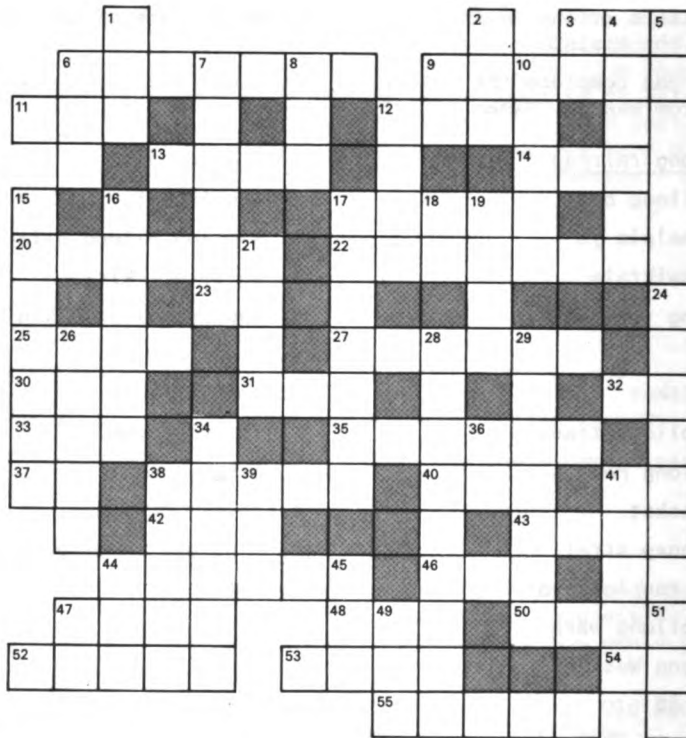
Rit i go long raithan:

3. smok bilong bus
6. man i helpim yu
9. mekim kwiktaim
11. yu dring long en
12. boskru
13. kain bisket
14. bilum bilong trausis
17. man bilong Malaysia
20. kain masket
22. tok: sanap stret
23. i save ran long rot
25. pisin bilong wara
27. ples long Wes Sepik Distrik
30. raitim 80
31. i gat pait
32. EM tasol
33. dram i gat hul i save....
35. stap daunbilu
37. raitim AN tasol

Rit i go daun:

1. liklik hat
2. samting bilong pilai
3. solwara i kirap
4. laplap bilong pikinini
5. i no pas
6. long arasait....
7. i smel nogut....
8. i save ros....
9. raitim HE tasol
10. i no gat samting
12. kirap mekim
15. i no dispela
16. i olsem pitpit
17. spirit bilong bus
18. raitim LE tasol
19. i pasim sip
21. binatang bilong gras bilong het
24. arere bilong solwara
26. mi ting olsem

- 38. snek i gat lek
- 40. salim tok long pepa
- 41. I no yu....
- 42. raitim ASI tasol
- 43. kon tasol
- 44. saksak ol i kukim long paia
- 46. nem bilong meri
- 47. raitim sori arakain liklik
- 48. soldia
- 50. pairap
- 52. kasang
- 53. kleva
- 54. poroman bilong lek
- 55. lap long
- 28. masin bilong rait
- 29. man bilong lo
- 34. bilong karim samting....
- 36. wantaim
- 38. yu kukim, em i pairap
- 39. smolpela pangal bilong kokonas
- 41. meri bilong waitman
- 42. kain diwai
- 45. kamap
- 47. wara i kalap
- 49. laplap bilong tumbuna
- 51. kain kaikai



Generated on 2022-02-10 03:58 GMT / <https://hdl.handle.net/2027/uci:32106009345213>
 Creative Commons Attribution-NonCommercial-NoDerivatives / http://www.hathitrust.org/access_use#cc-by-nc-nd-4.0

INTRODUCTION

In this unit we shall be focussing on:

- (1) how to use *maski* to express *although*;
- (2) how to refer to each other, one another;
- (3) how to use *traim to try*;
- (4) how to indicate that actions are repeated.

These points will be introduced in the conversations that follow and will be discussed and drilled in more detail in the grammatical sections that follow them.

Other things that are worth knowing are drawn to your attention in footnotes to the conversations and grammatical sections.

CONVERSATIONS

(1) "Statim ensin!"

Pinat i lainim pasin bilong draivim ka. Tasol maski em i hatwok tru em i no kisim save kwiktaim. Olsem na instrakta i skulim em long wanpela wanpela samting pastaim.

Instrakta: Orait, statim ensin olsem mi bin soim yul

Pinat: Oke.

Instrakta: Wet! Holit! Ating yu lusim tingting long giastik ya?

Pinat: O sori, yes, em i tru. Em i no stap long nutrol. Nutrol i stap long namel a?

Instrakta: Yes, yu lukim! Maski ka i stap nating o i stap we we yu no ken kirapim nating. Yu mas putim giastik long namel o nutrol pastaim.

Pinat: Olsem a?

Instrakta: Em. Orait, statim ensin gen!

[Nois bilong ensin]

Instrakta: Gutpela! Orait, taim yu laik ranim ka i go yu mas krungutim klas i go daun pastaim na bihain, subim giastik. Yu klia nau?

Pinat is learning how to drive. But although he is putting a lot of effort into it he is not learning quickly. Consequently the instructor is teaching him about one thing at a time first.

Okay, start the engine like I have shown you!

Right oh!

Wait! Hold on! You seem to have forgotten about the gearstick, haven't you?

Oh pardon me yes, that's correct. It's not in neutral. Neutral is in the middle, isn't it?

Yes, look! Even though the car is just standing or wherever it is you don't start it without thinking. You must put the gearstick in the middle or in neutral first.

Like that eh?

Right! Okay, start the engine again!

Good! Okay when you want the car to go you must push the clutch down first and then move the gearstick. Have you got that?

Pinat: Ya, ating.

Yes, I guess so.

Instrakta: Orait. Yu traím wokim olsem mi tok.

All right. Try to do it like I've said.

Pinat: O sori, mi no harim gut. Yu tokim mi gen.

Oh I beg your pardon I didn't get it properly. Tell me again.

Olsem na tupela i hatwok tru long lainim pasin bilong draivim ka.

And so the two of them were putting a lot of effort into learning how to drive.

(2) "Mi traím winim tasol mi lus long en"

Bihain long taim Pinat i lainim pasin bilong draivim ka em i go long polis stesin bilong traím kisim laisens. Tasol maski em i test planti taim em i no bin pas. Nau bai yu harim em toktok wantaim intaviua bilong wanem i no bin pas.

After Pinat had learnt to drive he went to the police station to try to get a licence. However, although he went for tests many times he didn't pass. Now you can hear him talking with the interviewer about why he didn't pass.

Intaviua: Yu no pasim test a?

You didn't pass your test eh?

Pinat: Yes, mi traím traím tasol mi no inap. Polis i tok mi mas go stadim mo rulbuk na praktis mo long ka.

No. I kept trying but I wasn't able to. The police told me I had to go and study the rules some more and practise in the car some more.

Intaviua: Yu mekim wanem ya? Bilong wanem yu no kisim pemit?

What did you do for Heaven's sake? Why didn't you get a permit?

Pinat: A, taim mi laik tanim ka mi no putim sain. Na mi mekim tutri taim. Polis i tok, taim ka i ran o taim yu kamap long wanem hap yu mas lukluk gut pastaím na putim sain. Sapos yu no bihainim dispela bai yu asua na planti ka i kisim bagarap.

Ah, I didn't indicate when I wanted to turn. And I did it several times. The police said that when the car is in motion or when one comes to wherever place one should look carefully and indicate. If you don't you'll have an accident and lots of cars will be damaged.

Intaviua: Em tasol na polis i pelim yu?

Is that all and the police failed you (for it) huh?

Pinat: Em tasol. Em liklik asua bilong mi tasol. Mi mas brukim het yet long lainim rul na praktis mo.

That's all. That's all my little fault was. I have to really try hard (lit. break my head) to learn the rules and practise more.

(3) "Wanpela ka i bamim"

Pikinini bilong Bibo i bin kisim bagarap long rot. Nau bai yu harim wanpela pren i toktok wantaim Bibo.

One of Bibo's children had an accident on the road. Now you will hear a friend talking to Bibo about it.

Pren: Pकिनिं बिलंग यु i किसिं बगराप वे?

Where did your child have the accident?

Bibo: Long ples wokabaut klostu long skul.

On the zebra-crossing near the school.

Pren: Wanem samting i kamap?

What happened?

Bibo: Wanpela ka i bamim em taim em i laik wokabaut i go long narapela sait.

A car ran into him as he was about to cross over the road.

Pren: Olsem wanem? Draiva i no bin lukim pकिनिं? O asua bilong husat?

How come? Didn't the driver see him? Or whose fault was it?

Bibo: Mi no save gut. Tasol pकिनिं bilong mi i save gut long pasin bilong wokabaut long rot we i gat planti ka. Tisa i save skulim ol tu long pasin bilong wokabaut.

I don't know rightly. But my son knows how to walk on roads where there are plenty of cars. The teacher also teaches them how to walk about (on roads).

Pren: Na olsem wanem? Bai yu kotim draiva o bai yu larim dispela samting i go nating?

And what's happening about it? Will you be taking the driver to court or are you going to let the matter rest?

Bibo: Bai mipela kotim draiva na askem em long baim kompensesen long faiv handet kina. Nogut bai em i hambak i stap sapos mipela no kotim em.

We are going to take the driver to court and ask him to pay K500 compensation. He could cause trouble if we didn't take him to court.



(4) "Ensin i no inap stat"

Outboard motor powered canoes
at Pagwi on the Sepik River

William i baim wampela autbotmota. Tasol maski autbotmota i nupela, em i no inap stat. Olsem na William i kisim ensin i go bek long stua na i toktok wantaim stuakipa.

Stuakipa: Yes, wanem samting?

William: A, dispela ensin mi baim asde long hia mi traim long statim tasol i no stat. Yu ting wanem samting i rong long en?

Stuakipa: Yu bin miksim gut petrol na wel olsem mi bin soim yu?

William: Yes, mi skelim gut petrol na wel. Mi bihainim gut ol toktok yu bin tokim mi asde.

Stuakipa: Yu putim hamas wel?

William: O, mi bin putim wampela kap wel long fopela galen petrol.

Stuakipa: Wanem kain petrol yu bin yusim? Standet o supa?

William: Em standet.

Stuakipa: Na spakplak i klin tu o nogat?

William: Yes. Mi sekim pinis. Na em i klin. I no wet.

Stuakipa: Orait i luk olsem i gat liklik problem bilong kabureta. Inap yu larim ensin i stap inap long apinun bai mi ken sekim. Ating i gat pipia long rot bilong petrol.

William: Em i orait. Mi ken kam bek long apinun.

William bought an outboard motor. But even though it was new it wouldn't start. So William took the engine back to the store and spoke to the storekeeper.

Yes, what's the problem?

Er, this engine that I bought here yesterday I have tried to start it but it won't start. What do you think is wrong with it?

Did you mix the petrol and oil as I showed you?

Yes, I measured the petrol and oil properly. I followed the instructions you gave me yesterday.

How much oil did you put in?

I put a cup of oil in to four gallons of petrol.

What kind of petrol did you use? Standard or super?

Standard!

And is the spark plug clean too or not?

Yes I checked it. It's clean. It's not wet.

So it looks as if there's a slight problem with the carburettor. Could you leave the engine till this afternoon so I can check it over. There's probably dirt in the fuel line.

That's fine. I can come back this afternoon.

[Singing]

"Sepik Disco" (Ararua Band of Wewak)

VOCABULARY

1. Drills

Exercise 1: Simple substitution

Frame: Pinat i lainim pasin bilong
draivim ka.

ranim balus¹

stopim ka

tanim kanu²

piksim motobaik

abrusim narapela ka³

winim klirim rot bilong

petrol long ka

draivim ka

Pinat is learning how to drive a car.

to fly/pilot a plane

to stop a car

to turn a canoe around

to fix a motorbike

to overtake another car

to clear a petrol blockage by

blowing into the petrol line

Now answer the following questions in Tok Pisin using the cues provided.
Ready?

1. Pinat i mekim wanem long ka? *(fixing it)*
Pinat i piksim.
2. Pinat i wok long mekim wanem long ka? *(turning it around)*
Pinat i wok long tanim.
3. Pinat i wok long wokim wanem long rot bilong petrol long ka? *(clearing a blockage by blowing into it)*
Pinat i winim klirim rot bilong petrol long ka.

Exercise 2: Simple substitution

Frame: Ora!t statim ensin olsem mi
bin soim yu!

sloim ka

tanim stia

harlapim ensin

legoim brek

stirim ka

statim ensin

Okay start the car like I showed you to!

slow down

turn the steering wheel

speed up the engine

release the brake

steer the car

¹Note that ranim is generally only used for bicycles, motorcycles, aeroplanes and outboard motors while draivim is used for cars, buses, taxis and the like (although ranim may also be used, but is less common).

²Note the difference between tanim and bautim. Bautim can only be used for moving objects one is in control of such as canoes, cars or aeroplanes while tanim can be used for both moving and stationary objects. Thus one can say bautim kanu or tanim kanu or tanim kanu i go raun for *turn the canoe around*. However, one cannot say bautim pensil or bautim kap or bautim balus na subim i go insait long haus bilong en for tanim pensil, tanim kap or tanim balus na subim i go insait long haus bilong en.

³Compare this with mitim ka or bungim ka for *to pass (an oncoming) car*.

Now see if you can say the following in Tok Pisin? Ready?

1. *Turn the steering wheel to the right as I showed you.*

Tanim stia i go long raithan salt olsem mi bin soim yu.

2. *Pinat didn't steer the car properly.*

Pinat i no stirim gut ka.

3. *Okay, slow down at the corner there!*

Oke, sloim ka long kona long hap ya!

Exercise 3: Simple substitution

Frame: Olsem na tupela i hatwok tru long draivim ka.

spoilm ka bilong en

stap isi

tokim gut Tok Pisin

pul long kanu

pulim kanu long rop

draivim ka

And so the two were putting a lot of effort into driving the car.

wrecking his car

behaving themselves

speaking Tok Pisin well

rowing/paddling the canoe

pulling the canoe with a rope, towing

Now listen to the following and say what they mean in English. Ready?

1. *Tupela meri i hatwok tru long traिम pulim kanu long nambis.*

The two women were putting a lot of effort into trying to pull the canoe on to the beach.

2. *Dispela kanu i bikpela tru. Mi no inap pul long en.*

This canoe is very big. I can't paddle it.

3. *Pikinini bilong mi i hatwok tru long stap isi.*

My child is putting a lot of effort into behaving itself.

Exercise 4: Simple substitution

Frame: Mipela i traिम kotim em.

paitim em long kanda

poisenim em¹

tanim em i go long masalai

bamim narapela

krungutim ka bilong en

kotim em

We are going to try to take him to court.

hit him/her/it with a cane

poison/make magic against

turn him/her into a spirit

bump or run into another

crumple his car

¹Some speakers now distinguish between this in the sense of *to poison* and *majikim to make magic against*.

Now see if you can remember the Tok Pisin expressions for the following.
Ready?

1. *to turn someone into a spirit*
tanim man i go long masalai
2. *to run into another person*
bamim narapela man
3. *to hit someone with a cane*
paitim man long kanda

2. Supplementary vocabulary

bateri	<i>battery</i>
bateri i kol (pinis)	<i>battery is flat</i>
sasim/hotim bateri	<i>charge the battery</i>
bensin/petrol	<i>petrol</i>
skru	<i>screw, bolt</i>
nat	<i>nut (of bolt)</i>
ring	<i>washer</i>
nat na bolt bilong en	<i>nut and bolt</i>
bomasin/masin bilong boa	<i>drilling machine</i>
golo/lam	<i>bulb</i>
buldoza/buldok	<i>bulldozer</i>
senka(r)	<i>tracked vehicle</i>
bampa	<i>bumper</i>
sen	<i>chain</i>
sutlam	<i>torch, headlamps (on car)</i>
pawa/elektrik/elektrisiti	<i>electricity</i>
ensin	<i>engine</i>
kabureta	<i>carburettor</i>
redielta	<i>radiator</i>
brek	<i>brake(s)</i>
akselareta	<i>accelerator</i>
klats	<i>clutch</i>
stia	<i>steering wheel</i>
spak plag	<i>spark plug</i>
pilta	<i>filter</i>
sekim wel/wara/brek pluid	<i>to check oil/water/brake fluid</i>
wokim glas i go antap waindim glas i go antap } waipa	<i>to wind up a window</i>
winskrin	<i>windscreen wipers</i>
	<i>windscreen</i>

eksospaip	<i>exhaust pipe</i>
mafla	<i>muffler</i>
karapela/koropela/propela	<i>fan, propeller</i>
let bilong karapela	<i>fan belt</i>
pam	<i>pump</i>
tap	<i>tap, cock</i>
giabokis	<i>gearbox</i>
welim/grisim	<i>to grease or oil</i>
haisapim/apim/winsim	<i>to lift up, hoist</i>
blokim	<i>to raise with block and tackle</i>
jek	<i>jack</i>
hama	<i>hammer</i>
plais	<i>pliers</i>
kapa	<i>sheet metal of any kind</i>
wil/taia	<i>wheel (with tyre on)</i>
taia/taia stret	<i>tyre (in contrast to wheel)</i>
gumi	<i>inner tube</i>
maus bilong gumi	<i>valve stem on inner tube</i>
taia i plat ¹	<i>flat tyre</i>
fowil draiv	<i>four-wheel drive</i>
birua	<i>enemy, opponent, something that blocks something else (e.g. rot bilong benzin i gat birua long en)</i>
pasin birua	<i>ill-will, hostility, hatred</i>
kisim asua/birua } painim asua/birua }	<i>to have an accident</i>
givim spes (long en)	<i>to give room (to, for it)</i>
ka i gat spes inap long etpela man	<i>a vehicle with room for eight</i>
fran bilong ka	<i>the front of a car</i>
baksait bilong ka	<i>the rear of a car</i>
hap kais bilong rot	<i>left hand side of the road</i>
hap sut bilong rot	<i>right hand side of the road</i>
sain	<i>sign, signal</i>

¹ Motoring terms are often used metaphorically in describing physical states, e.g. Mi no inap go mo, taia i plat.
 Mi no inap go mo, taia i slek.
 Mi no inap go mo, bateri i kol.
 Mi no inap go mo, bensin i pinis. } *I can't keep it up, I'm finished.*
 Orait, yu putim long fowil draiv. } *Well draw on your reserve power!*
 Givim long waia lus ya! } *Give it to this chap who's slightly crazy.*
 Waia i lus a? } *Are you crazy?*

givim sain (long signal lait)	<i>to give a signal, put on traffic indicators</i>
signal lait	<i>trafficator, traffic indicator light</i>
givim sain long han } mekim sain long han }	<i>to signal with one's hand(s)</i>
spit	<i>speed</i>
Oke, givim siksti hia!	<i>Okay, go fast here!</i>
(ples we) tupela rot i bung	<i>cross-roads</i>
kona o ples we rot i go raun	<i>corner</i>
bris	<i>bridge</i>
ples (bilong) wokabaut	<i>zebra crossing</i>
em rong/asua bilong yu a?	<i>that was your mistake/fault wasn't it?</i>
givim/paltim/wokim/hon	<i>to sound the horn</i>

Exercises

1. Draw a picture of a car and mark in the following parts on it in Tok Pisin:

steering wheel	gear stick
brake (pedal)	headlight
bumper bar	gearbox
tyre	muffler
traffic indicator light	tyre valve stem
fan	fan belt

2. Match the following English and Tok Pisin vocabulary items:

<i>charge a battery</i>	ples (bilong) wokabaut
<i>bolt and nut</i>	haisapim
<i>bulb</i>	pasin birua
<i>to hoist</i>	hotim bateri
<i>tap</i>	hap kais bilong rot
<i>washer</i>	kiau
<i>zebra crossing</i>	ring
<i>give room to</i>	tap
<i>bridge</i>	rong
<i>left hand side of road</i>	rot i bung
<i>mistake</i>	bolt na nat
<i>cross-road</i>	givim spes long
<i>hostility</i>	bris

3. Complete the following conversation with appropriate Tok Pisin words:

Q: Yes plis?

A: Mi laik kisim _____ (petrol).

Q: Wanem kain? _____ o _____ (super, standard)?

A: Standet plis.

Q: Hamas lita?

A: Ating twenti i inap. Tasol pulimapim.

Q: _____ i olsem wanem? (*oil*)

A: I orait. Tasol yu sekim _____ (*tyres*) plis.

Q: A, _____ (*tyre is flat*)! _____ (*tube*) i bagarap.

A: O sorì, yu inap _____ (*fix*)?

[Singsing]

"Sepik Disco" (Ararua Band of Wewak)

GRAMMAR

12.1 maski + clause: *although, no matter, even if*

Clauses preceded by *maski* express the idea of *although* or *no matter* in Tok Pisin, for example:

Maski em i hatwok tru em i no kisim save kwiktaim.

Em i no kisim save kwiktaim, maski em i hatwok tru.

Although he put a lot of effort into it he doesn't learn quickly. (Or Despite the fact that he works hard at it he doesn't learn quickly.)

Maski mi sik mi save go long taun.

Although I am sick I still (=habitually) go to town.

Maski yu stap we, God i inap lukim yu. }
God i inap lukim yu, maski yu stap we. }

No matter where you are God can see you.

If one wants to strengthen this idea to *even if/although* one merely adds *tasol* to the beginning of the following clause, for example:

Maski em i hatwok tru, tasol em i no save kwiktaim.

Even if he works hard at it he won't learn quickly.

Practice drills

Exercise 1: Simple substitution

Frame: Maski yu giamanim mi, mi no inap krosim yu.

(kisim asua, givim sain nogut long mi, krungutim ka bilong mi, spit, giamanim mi)

Exercise 2: Simple substitution

Frame: Maski yu stap we, God i lukim yu.

(yu husat, yu ritim Baibel o nogat, yu mekim wanem, yu stap we)

Exercise 3: Make corresponding *even if* sentences by adding *tasol* to the beginning of the second clause. Ready?

1. Maski yu laik wokim banara bilong mi, mi no laikim banara.

Maski yu laik wokim banara bilong mi, tasol mi no laikim banara.

2. Maski ol i planim kopi, bai ol i no kisim bikpela pe longen.

Maski ol i planim kopi, tasol bai ol i no kisim bikpela pe longen.

3. Maski misis i traim kilim i dai em yet, em i no inap.
Maski misis i traim kilim i dai em yet, tasol em i no inap.
4. Maski yu no inap kam long pati, yu mas salim pas i kam.
Maski yu no inap kam long pati, tasol yu mas salim pas i kam.
5. Maski dok i no hangre, em i save kaikai.
Maski dok i no hangre, tasol em i save kaikai.

Evaluation exercise

How would you say the following in Tok Pisin? Ready?

- Although Pinat started the car he couldn't drive.*
Maski Pinat i statim ka em i no inap draivim.
- I'll not let you ride the bicycle even if I fix it.*
Maski mi fiksिम wilwil, tasol bai mi no larim yu ran long en.
- No matter who is sleeping in the house this rooster crows.*
Maski husat i slip long haus dispela kakaruk man i save singaut.
- We (three) (exclusive) ran into a tree although we were going carefully.*
Maski mitripela i go isi isi, mitripela i bamim wanpela diwai.
- They should not overtake another car even if the road is clear.*
Maski rot i klia, tasol ol i no ken abrusim narapela ka.
- He is still dirty although he washes every day.*
Maski em i waswas olgeta de em i doti yet.
- Even if you are involved in an accident on the road don't run away!*
Maski birua i painim yu long rot yu no ken ranewe!
- Australia must continue to help Papua New Guinea even though she is now independent.*
Maski Papua Niu Gini i kisim independens pinis, tasol Austrelia i mas halivim em yet.
- No matter where you are, send me a letter!*
Maski yu stap we, yu salim pas i kam long mi!
- Although my sister is dead I do not forget her.*
Maski susa bilong mi i dai pinis, mi no lusim tingting long en.

12.2 Distributive and reciprocal pronouns: *each, one another*

In Tok Pisin there is no one way of expressing the idea of *each other* or *one another*. Most generally this is achieved by repeating numerals, as for example in:

Tupela i paltim tupela yet.

The two of them hit each other.

Wanpela wanpela i kisim pe bilong en.

Each one collected his wages.

Ol i kisim tupela tupela.¹

They received two each (of everything available).

¹Perhaps better would be Wanpela man i kisim tupela tupela.

Tupela tupela i kisim wampela blanket.

Each two received a blanket.

However, this is limited so that one often has to explain the circumstances before it is clear what is being said, for example:

Tupela man i pait; wampela i paitim wampela.

Two men fought; they hit each other.

Tupela man i pait; narapela i paitim narapela.

Ai bilong mi i lukim yu na ai bilong yu i lukim mi; yumitupela i lukim yumitupela.

We (two) see each other.

Ai bilong yumitupela i bung.

Note also that repetition of numerals may have different meanings in different sentences. Compare the examples given above with the following:

Ol i kamap wampela wampela.

They came up one by one.

Tupela ka (yet) i bam.

Two cars collided (with each other).

Tupela i paitim wampela wampela.

*{ Those (two) fought one and then the other.
Those (two) fought one at a time.*

Practice drills

Exercise 1: Simple substitution

Frame: Tupela i paitim tupela yet.

(sutim, halivim, wasim, sekan long, paitim)

Exercise 2: Simple substitution

Frame: Tupela tupela i kisim blanket.

(stilim, bringim i kam, brukim, kisim)

Exercise 3: Simple substitution

Frame: Olgeta i kamap wampela wampela.

(sindaun, i dai pinis, krai, sanap, kamap)

Exercise 4: Change the numbers in the following sentences using the cues provided. Ready?

1. Tupela tupela i kisim blanket. (tripela tripela)

Tripela tripela i kisim blanket.

2. Ol i nildaun wampela wampela. (tupela tupela)

Ol i nildaun tupela tupela.

3. Wampela wampela i sutim pik. (tupela tupela)

Tupela tupela i sutim pik.

4. Bai mipela i sanap wanpela wanpela o nogat? (faivpela faivpela)
 Bai mipela i sanap faivpela faivpela o nogat?
5. Husat i tok, "O! i ken go insait long haus
 tambaran tupela tupela?" (wanpela wanpela)
 Husat i tok, "O! i ken go insait long
 haus tambaran wanpela wanpela"?

Evaluation exercise

Repeat the following sentences and say what they mean in English. Ready?

1. Em rong bilong yutupela. Bilong wanem yutupela i tok nogotim yutupela yet?

That's your fault, you two. Why did you (two) abuse each other?

2. Planti man i pait; ol i paitim wanpela wanpela long ol yet.

Many men fought; they hit each other.

3. Tupela i katim wanpela wanpela olsem wanem?

How did the two of them cut each other?

4. Ai bilong yumitupela i bung.

We see each other.

5. Tripela tripela i mas go long wanpela taksi, bilong wanem spes i no lnap long olgeta.

Only three passengers to a taxi because there is not enough room for all!

12.3 traिम: try or attempt

The idea of trying (or attempting) to do something is most commonly expressed in Tok Pisin by placing traिम or traिम long before the verb,¹ for example:

Yu traिम (long) tanim dispela longpela kanu. *Try to turn this long canoe around.*

Finally, note that if one wants to draw particular attention to the object of the action then this may be mentioned first in the sentence. For example, if one were making a bow for a friend and he/she came and asked what it was that you were making you would probably answer Banara yu bin askim mi long en, em mi traिम wokim *It's the bow you asked me for that I am trying to make.*

Practice drills

Exercise 1: Simple substitution

Frame: Yu traिम tanim dispela longpela kanu.

(legoim, kapsaitim, stirim, stopim, tanim)

¹Traिम may alternatively be placed after the verb or the object but this is much less common and it is also less acceptable if the objects of the sentences are pronouns or long phrases, for example, Yu tanim traिम dispela longpela kanu. Yu tanim dispela longpela kanu i traिम. ?Yu tanim dispela longpela kanu i stap long hap i traिम. Yu tanim traिम (em). These are not drilled in this course.

Exercise 2: Simple substitution

Frame: Mipela i tra'im long hukim pls.

(winim maní long lakí, pinisim kaikai, halivim ol sikman, klirim rot, hukim pls)

Exercise 3: Repeat the following sentences and say what they mean in English. Ready?

1. Liklik manki bai i laik tra'im draivim ka.

The little boy would like to try to drive the car.

2. Studen i tra'im hat long no ken hapim wok bilong en.

The student is trying hard to complete his work (lit. not to do only half of it).

3. Susa bilong mi i tra'im long haisapim jek.

My sister is trying to lift up the jack.

4. Stilman i tra'im karamapim tok.

The thief is trying to be vague or ambiguous.

5. Kalabusman i tra'im long kilim i dai polisman.

The prisoner is trying to kill the policeman.

6. Bilong wanem ol i tra'im abrusim dispela trak i pasim rot.

Why are they trying to get around this truck that is blocking the road?

Evaluation exercise

Pretend you have a Tok Pisin-speaking friend and explain to him or her the meaning of the following English sentences. Use the tra'im form in your answers. Ready?

1. *He's trying to play a jew's harp.*

Em i tra'im pilaim susap.

2. *When you want to make a fire try to find some dry wood.*

Taim yu laik wokim paia yu tra'im painim sampela paiauwut i drai.

3. *I tried to get some green coconuts but I couldn't find any.*

Mi tra'im painim sampela kulau, tasol mi no painim sampela.

4. *Who will try to carry me?*

Husat bai i tra'im karim mi?

5. *My mother is trying to bake a cake.*

Mama bilong mi i tra'im kukim kek long aven.

12.4 Intense repetitious actions

Actions which are conceived of as being performed over and over without any significant interruption are expressed in Tok Pisin by repeating the verb (or verb plus adjuncts like *i go*, or *i kam*, or objects if these are short) or by substituting and repeating *i go* or *mekim* for the action described in the first

part of the sentence. The result corresponds to the translation *kept doing (something)* in English. The following examples illustrate the common kinds of variation likely to be encountered:

Bai ol i wokim haus tambaran;
 { wokim, wokim, wokim,
 { mekim, mekim, mekim,
 { wokim i go, i go, i go,
 taim) ol i pinisim.

They will keep on building the men's house until they finish it.

Mi wet, wet, wet, tasol trak i no kam.
 Mi wet i go, i go, i go tasol trak i no kam.

I waited and waited but the truck didn't come or I kept waiting but the truck didn't come.

Trak i go, i go, i go, orait i kamap long Goroka.

The truck kept going and (eventually) arrived at Goroka.

Note that for go, kam and stap as verbs the predicative marker is generally repeated with the verb. Note also that there is no fixed number of repetitions. One varies these according to how one wants to emphasise the time span involved.

Finally, similar semantic results can be achieved by using *tasol* or *wok long to be busy at (doing something)* with no repetitions, in a way that has already been presented, for example:

Pikinini bilong en i krai, krai, krai tasol.
 Pikinini bilong en i wok long krai tasol.

His child does nothing but cry.

Practice drills

Exercise 1: Simple substitution

Frame: Mi wet, wet, wet, tasol trak i no kam.
 (sanap, slip, singaut, wok, wet)

Exercise 2: Simple substitution

Frame: Ol i wokim haus tambaran, wokim, wokim, Inap long taim ol i pinisim em.
 (kalkai buai, daunim marasin, dring bia, wokim haus tambaran)

Exercise 3: Simple substitution

Frame: Susa bilong en i swe, swe, swe tasol.
 (traim mi, hambak, kros, krai, swe)

Exercise 4: Change the verbs in the following sentences into ones indicating intense repetitious actions. To do this you have to repeat the verb and other elements as required. Ready?

- Ol asples i wet, tasol kago i no kamap.
 Ol asples i wet, wet, wet, tasol kago i no kamap.
- Kila i kaunim mani, Inap long taim ai bilong en i laik slip.
 Kila i kaunim mani, kaunim, kaunim, Inap long taim ai bilong en i laik slip.

3. Olgeta pikinini bilong dispela ples i pilai tasol.

Olgeta pikinini bilong dispela ples i pilai, pilai, pilai tasol.

4. Yupela subim ka i go inap long taim em i brukim dispela graun malomalo. Save?

Yupela subim ka i go, i go, i go, inap long taim em i brukim dispela graun malomalo. Save?

5. Kaunsila i krosim olgeta stilman inap long taim polisman i kamap.

Kaunsila i krosim olgeta stilman, krosim, krosim, inap long taim polisman i kamap.

Evaluation exercise

Repeat the following sentences and say what they mean in English. Ready?

1. Wanpela bikpela sik i kam, i kam, i kam daunim mipela.

A plague came and came until it reached us and affected us.

2. Ol wokman i wok long slip tasol.

The labourers do nothing but sleep.

3. Rat i kam mumutim kalkai bilong mi, mumutim, mumutim inap long taim mi sutim.

The rat kept coming and scavenging my food until I shot it.

4. Mi ridim Wantok, ridim, ridim, inap long taim san i go daun.

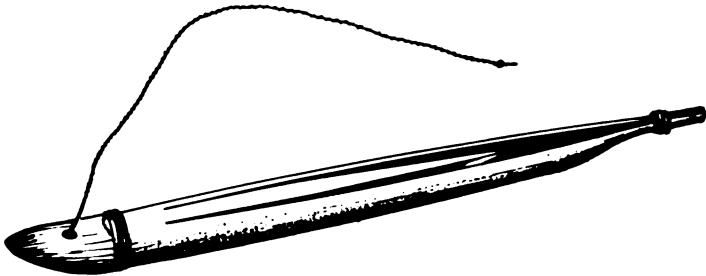
I read and read Wantok until the sun went down.

5. Yu krangi, watpo yu krai, krai, krai tasol?

You nuisance, why do you do nothing but cry?

[Singsing]

Kaluli susap, Southern Highlands Province



TEXTS

(1) Trak i bagarap

Maurice Sumbuoin is a truck driver from Dreikikir in the East Sepik Province. On 3rd July, 1985, the brakes of his truck failed as he was driving to Wewak. In this interview, recorded at the scene of the accident, Maurice talks briefly about what happened.



Maurice and his truck

M: Taim mi kam daun nau na mi tanim kona mi lukim ka i sanap long rot. Orait mi tanim kona mi holim brek antap, i no inap. A--mi pamim tupela taim nau na em brek i kik olgeta. Em nau mi ron nating. Nau mi tokim ol tu--tripela man i sanap long hap sait. Mi tok, "O, klia nau, ka i nogut ya! Na sapos mi go daun long sait olsem bai mi mas i dai." Na mi tok, "Maski, mi go olgeta mi go antap long en". Orait mi kam nau mi go bam antap long en. Em tasol.

T: Na trak bilong yu em i--

M: Trak bilong mi em i bagarap. Sap i kamaut i go antap. Em brek i nogut. Olgeta samting. Na glas i orait na sait bilong ka i bagarap.

English translation

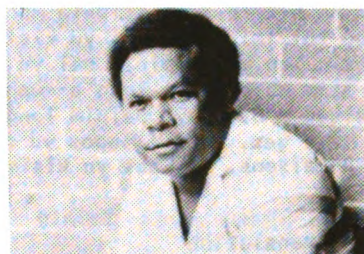
M: *I was coming down then and I turned the corner and saw a truck parked on the road. As I turned the corner I put the brakes on up on top (of the rise) but they wouldn't work. Ah--I pumped them twice but they kicked right back. So that was it. I ran on out of control then. I sang out to the two--three men standing up on the back. I said, "Oh, get clear. The truck is out of control. And if I go down over the side I must (surely) get killed." So I said, "Irrespective of the consequences I'm going to go on down and run into him". And so I came and ran into him. That's all.*

T: *And your truck it's--*

M: *My truck's wrecked. The shaft has come out and gone up over the top (of its housing). The brake is no good. Everything has had it. But the windows are okay. The side of the truck is damaged.*

(2) Pasin bilong kisim laisens

In this interview Dicks Thomas talks about getting his driver's licence.



Dicks

T: Bipo long taim yu baim ka ating yu mas go long polis stesin na kisim laisens bilong draivim ka. Yu inap toksave long dispela pasin bilong kisim laisens long Papua Niu Gini tu?

D: A--gutpela tru. A--bai mi traím tokim stori bilong pasin bilong kisim laisens. A--taim mi bin baim dispela ka mi no bin gat laisens. Tasol mi bin harim long sampela man o pren bilong mi ol i bin tok sapos yu no inap draivim ka, em bai yu no inap draivim ka long wanem yu no gat ka. Orait olsem na mi tok ating mi mas baim pastaim ka na bihain ol sampela wantok bilong mi bai i ken soim mi pasin bilong ranim ka. Olsem na mi baim dispela liklik ka ya. Na mi save yusim.

Orait taim mi bin baim, mi bin kisim wanpela pren bilong mi em i gat laisens na mitupela i go na kisim dispela ka. Bihain mi askim man ya, "Bai mi kisim laisens olsem wanem?" Em i tok, "A--yu go long trefik opis long Boroko na baim siks kina long nupela, ol i kolim a--draiving laisens, lenas pemit".

Orait mi bin go na putim siks kina i go insait long kaunta na man i stap insait long kaunta i kisim siks kina bilong mi na em i raitim risit bilong mi. Mi kisim na em i givim mi dispela lenas pemit. Na mi bin kisim na i inap--olsem ol i bin tok bai mi kam test gen long tri mun i pinis.

Orait mi kisim dispela lenas pemit na mi kisim wanpela liklik buk bilong stadim pasin bilong ranim ka na pasin bilong lo long ranim ka long siti na long hap rot nabaut.

Orait taim mi kam long haus, mi putim na mi ritim gut na mi tok, "Oke bai mi traím dispela". Mi bin praktis long draiv i go, i go, i go. Mi wokim paralel paking. Sampela taim mi save go long maunten. Namel long maunten bai mi stopim ka na bihain statim gen na tekof. Em, mi bin wokim dispela na mi ting mi bin kisim gut. Olsem na taim tripela mun i pinis, mi go long polis stesin na ol i askim mi sampela kwestin. Mi ansaim gut tru, mi ansaim olgeta kwestin. Mi givim gutpela ansa tasol na man em i tok, "Oke, bai mi kisim yu go long rot na yu go praktikol long draiv".

Oke mitupela i go long rot nau. Mitupela i ran i go, i go, i go, i go. Olgeta samting i orait tasol. A--ples we em sain em i tok stop, mi stop. Ples sain em i tok yu ran tasol long teti kilomita long wanpela haua, mi wokim dispela. Mi kam long ples bilong giwwe, mi giwwe. Olgeta samting i gutpela tasol.

Orait mipela i kam long opis bilong ol polis na wanpela polis i tok, "Ye, yu pas pinis. I no gat asua bilong yu long test bilong yu." Olsem na mi baim samting olsem ten kina gen long baim laisens.

Na dispela laisens ol i kolim provisonol laisens. I no laisens tru yet. Taim wan yia i pinis, orait bai mi kisim laisens tru. Olsem na taim mi bin kisim dispela, mi ranim ka i go, i go wan yia i pinis nau, mi kisim ol i kolim ful laisens. Na nau mi wanpela ful laisens bilong Papua Niu Gini.

Pasin bilong kisim laisens em i hat liklik long wanem bai yu ken wet tripela mun na bihain long tripela mun yu ken kisim laisens bilong yu. Na gen i no--i no ful laisens. Bai yu kisim dispela P-laisens o provisonol laisens na bihain wan yia i pinis bai yu kisim ful laisens. Em, sapos long dispela yia na taim yu opereit long a--wanem ya?-- provisonol laisens--sapos yu gat eksiden o birua yu painim long rot, em, bai yu no inap kisim laisens, bai yu test gen. Tasol sapos yu ran gut i go, i go inap long wan yia long dispela a--P-laisens, em, bai yu kisim ful laisens. Ating em tasol.

English translation

T: *Before you bought a car I guess you had to go to the police station and get a licence to drive. Could you say something about how one gets a licence in Papua New Guinea too?*

D: Ah--very good. Ah--I will try to describe how to get a licence. Ah--when I bought this car I didn't have a licence. But I had heard from some people and friends of mine that if one could not drive a car one wouldn't be able to drive because one didn't have a car. Consequently I said (to myself) I guess I would have to buy a car first and later some of my friends could teach me how to drive. So I bought this small car here. And I'm using it.

When I bought it I took a friend who had a licence along with me and we (two) went and got this car. Afterwards I asked this person, "How do I get a licence?" He said, "Ah, you go to the Traffic Office in Boroko and pay K6 for a new, it's called ah--a driving licence, a learner's permit".

So I went and passed K6 over the counter and the officer behind the counter took my K6 and wrote me a receipt. I took it and he gave me the learner's permit. And I took it and after -- they said I had to come and have a test after three months.

So I took this learner's permit and a little book to study how to drive a car and about the laws of driving in the city and on the roads around about.

Then when I came home I put it (the car) away and I read (the book) well and said (to myself), "Okay, I'll have a go at this". I practised and practised and practised driving. I practised parallel parking. Sometimes I went up on a hill. (Then) halfway up I'd stop the car and then start it up again and take off. So I did that and I thought I knew it well. So when three months were up I went to the police station and they asked me some questions. I gave only correct answers and the officer said, "Okay, I'll take you out on the roads and give you your practical (test)".

So we (two) went out on the roads then. We (two) drove and drove and drove. Everything was okay. Ah--wherever he indicated for me to stop I'd stop. Wherever there was a sign saying 30 km/h I did that. When I came to a give way sign I'd give way. Everything was just fine.

So we came back to the police station and an officer said, "Yes, you have passed. You didn't put a foot wrong during your test." So I paid something like K10 again to get the licence.

This licence is called a provisional licence. It's not yet a proper licence. After a year I got a proper licence. So when I got this one I kept driving and it's over a year now. I got it. It's called a full licence. And now I'm a holder of a full licence of Papua New Guinea.

Getting a licence is a little difficult because you have to wait three months and after that time you get your licence. And then again it's not--it's not a full licence. You will get this P-licence or provisional licence and later on after a year you will get a full licence. And if, during the year and while you are operating on ah--what is it?-- the provisional licence--if you have an accident or you are involved in an accident, that will be it, you won't get a licence. You'll have to go through the test again. But if you keep driving accident free for a year on this ah--P-licence, that'll be it, you'll get your full licence. I guess that's all there is.

01 kwestin

1. Taim Dicks i laik baim ka em i gat laisens pinis? Sapos nogat, em i किसिम का ओलसेम वानेम?
2. Sapos yu nupela long draivim ka na yu laik किसिम laisens long Papua Niu Gini bai yu mekim wanam pastaim?
3. P-laisens i min wanam?

4. Sapos yu kisim P-laisens pinis bai yu kisim ful laisens olsem wanem?
5. Dicks i bin stadim wanem buk na bihain em i draivim ka bilong en?
6. Ful laisens i kostim hamas long Papua Niu Gini? Bai yu baim we?

Now to end this unit another track by Gekko, "Oh Sit Mi".

OH SIT MI

Chorus

Oh sit mi, dispela meri mi bin giamanim
Oh sit mi, nau em i kotim mi long viles kot.

1. Taim yu bin go na lukim papa bilong yu
Mi bin pren long wanpela e hostes
Mi save ringim yu na tokim yu
"Bai yu stap long taim liklik wantaim papa bilong yu".
2. Mi wetim yu tasol yu no bin kam bek
Mi kalap long balus na mi bihainim yu
Yumi kam bek na mi bin giamanim yu
Mi ting yu no bin save tasol mi kirap nogut.

Supplementary exercises

1. Here is some advice about driving. Read it and then answer the questions about it given below in Tok Pisin:

Sapos yu laik draivim ka orait yu mas pasim sefti belt bilong yu pastaim. Wok bilong dispela let i olsem: sapos wanpela ka i bamim narapela dispela let bai i holim yu pas tru na bai yu no inap pundaun i go ausait long ka o bamim ol hap insait bilong ka. Olsem yu no inap kisim bagarap o spoilim bodi bilong yu. Olsem na yu mas pasim sefti belt olgeta taim.

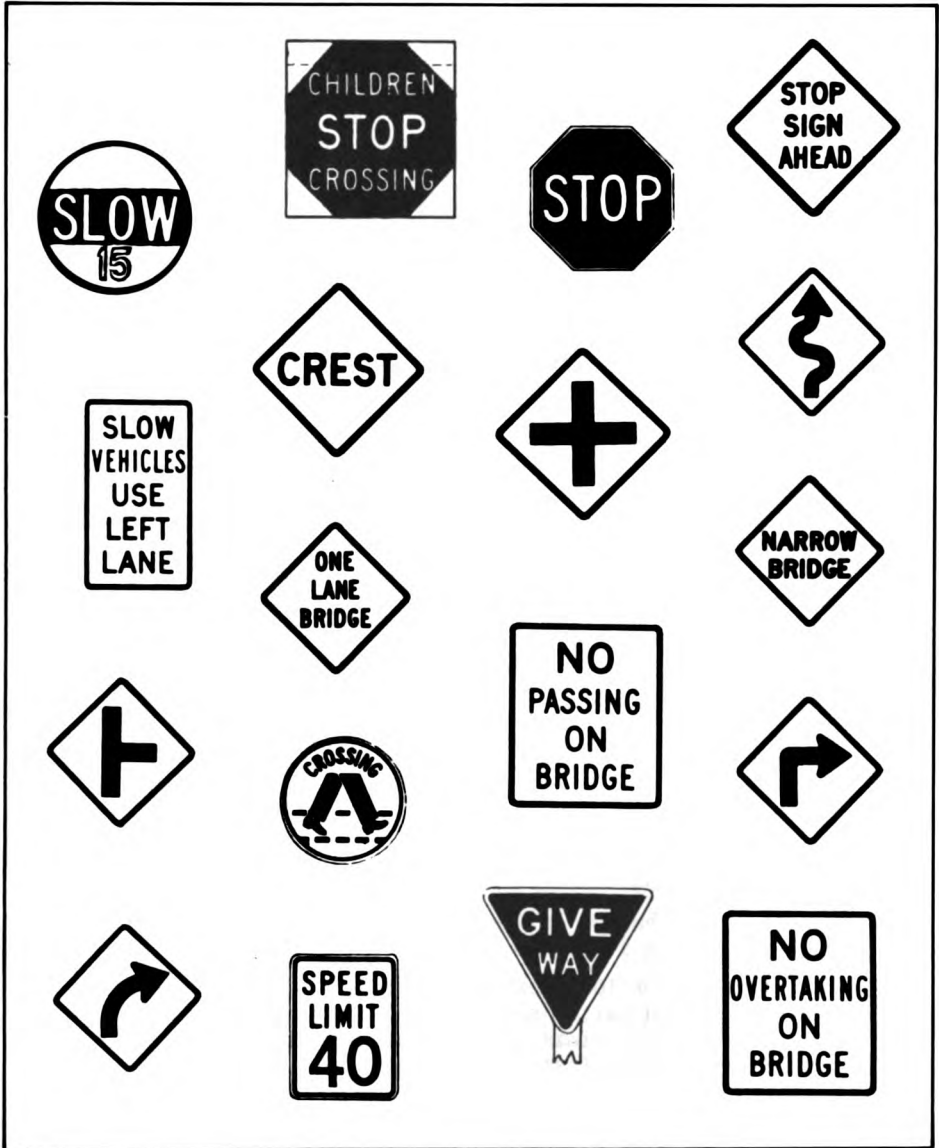
Na tu sapos yu laik kisim ol pikinini i go wantaim yu long ka yu mas putim ol long bihain. Nogut ol pikinini i sanap pila! nabaut insait long ka na bamim han bilong yu long stia o pasim ai bilong yu long rot. Sampela birua i save kamap long dispela kain tu.

Taim yu draiv na yu laik abrusim narapela ka yu mas lukluk painim spes bilong abrusim ka pastaim. Nogut narapela ka i kam na bamim yu taim yu tra'im abrusim narapela. Yu no ken abrusim narapela ka sapos yu kamap klostu long ples tupela rot i bung, rot i go raun long kona, antap long maunten, long ples rot i gat buk, o long ples wokabout bilong ol manmeri. Yu no ken wokim ol dispela long wanem polis i tambuim.

Kwestin

1. Bilong wanem yu mas putim pikinini long bihain?
2. Ol i putim tambu long wanem?
3. Sapos yu laik draivim ka bai yu mekim wanem pastaim?
4. Sapos yu laik abrusim narapela ka bai yu mas mekim wanem pastaim?

2. Explain the following road signs in Tok Pisin. Use words given below as helpers:



Bilong halivim: pasim ka, kona, wanpela ka tasol long bris, no ken winim spit 30/40, givim spes bilong ol, ples wokabaut, maunten, rot bung, isi isi--inap long 15 km/h tasol, ol ka i save ran slo i mas holim han kais, pikinini i save wokabaut, wanpela sain holit i kamap klostu, liklik bris i stap--no ken abrusim narapela ka long en.

3. Read this letter to the editor of *Wantok* and write a reply saying you think it is bad for policemen to behave in this way.

PLISMAN HELPIM PLISMAN

Dia Edita - Nau mi i gat liklik wari na mi laik tokaut i go long Wantok Niuspepa, na yu wanem plisman na ol arapela wantok i ken ritim na lukim na bihainim.

Mi yet mi wanpela wokman bilong gavman. Tasol mi bin spak long publik ples na long ai bilong ol planti man na meri, mi tok nogut wantaim na ol plisman. Ol i bin kisim mi na kotim mi kwik.

Tasol mi lukim ol plisman yet i no bin kotim plisman i spak long publik ples. Ol i larim em i go.

Em olsem wanem? Yumi ol man nating i bosim lo o ol plisman i bosim olgeta lo?

Na sapos yu husat i ting em i gutpela, orait, bekim pas i go long Wantok Nius long Edita na mi ken lukim. Em tasol tok bilong mi nau.

Luai Ponk,
Grin Riva/W.S.P.

[*Wantok*, Sarere, 12 Mas, 1977, p.4]

4. Listen to Text 18 in Unit 14 and discuss Lucas' ideas in Tok Pisin.
5. Here is a letter from the sales section of *Wantok* newspaper telling you your subscription is about to run out. Write a reply to it saying you are going overseas and therefore do not want to renew your subscription. You may renew it when you come back.

TOK SAVE

Wantok
Box 396
Wewak

Dia Pren,

Mipela i lukim mani bilong yu bilong baim WANTOK niuspepa i laik pinis nau.

Mipela i ting bai yu laikim yet WANTOK. Olsem na bai yu laik yet bai em i mas kam yet long yu.

Pe bilong WANTOK long neks yia i et kina. Yu salim et kina wantaim fom (Yu raitim nem na adres bilong yu long en). Taim mipela kisim pinis adres na et kina bai mipela i putim nem bilong yu long list bilong neks yia.

Hariap. Nogut yu let.

Em tasol tok save bilong mipela. Tenkyu tru.

Mi,

Wantok

INTRODUCTION

In this unit we shall be focussing on:

- (1) how to show impatience in asking questions;
- (2) sentence reduction and the sequence of time;
- (3) how to express the fact that actions are unsuccessful;
- (4) how to express the idea that *it would be good if ... or it would be better if ...*

These points will be introduced in the conversations that follow and will be discussed and drilled in more detail in the grammatical sections that follow them.

Other things that are worth knowing are drawn to your attention in footnotes to the conversations and grammatical sections.

CONVERSATIONS

(1) "Mi no laik paulim graun bilong yu"

Long dispela toktok bai yu harim tupela man, Kila na Rupa, kros long graun.

Kila: E, yu man bilong stil long graun. Watpo yu laik stil? Yu kam bilong stilim graun bilong mi a? Klia long graun bilong mi!

Rupa: Nogat. Em i no olsem. Mi no laik paulim graun bilong yu. Dispela graun i bilong yu. Tasol bipo yet papa bilong yu i larim ol lain bilong mi i mekim gaden long en. Olsem na mi wokim gaden gen. Yu no ken hatim bel nating.

Kila: Olsem wanem? Yu no saye long lo? Lo i tok yu mas yusim graun bilong lain bilong yu yet. Yu no ken kisim graun bilong narapela. Sapos yu no gat graun long lain bilong yu mas baim graun bilong ol narapela lain.

Rupa: O sori, mi belhevi long dispela samting. Tasol yu no ken putim hevi long mi wanpela. Yu mas lukluk tu long lain bilong yu. Em bin givim dispela hap graun long mipela bipo.

In this conversation you will hear two men, Kila and Rupa, fighting about land.

Heh, you land grabber! Why do you want to steal? You came to steal some of my land, didn't you? Clear off!

No. It's not like that. I don't want to spoil your land. This is your land. But your father let us make gardens on it before so I'm doing it again. Don't get stirred up about it senselessly.

How come? Don't you know the rules? The law says that you have to use the land that belongs to your own clan. You can't take someone else's. If your clan doesn't have any you have to rent some from another clan.

I'm sorry, I regret this. But don't blame me alone. You must consider your own clan members. They gave us this piece of land before.

Kila: A, i no inap. Mi ting mobeta yumitupela i go long kot bilong stretim dispela trabel.

Rupa: I orait. Bai yumi lukim husat i laik brukim sindaun bilong yumi. Bai mi tokaut klia long kot long dispela hap graun.

Olsem na tupela i pinis long kros na i wetim kot tasol.

Ah, that won't do. I think it would be better if we (two) went to court to straighten out this problem.

That's okay. We'll see who wants to disturb the peace. I'll tell the court exactly what happened about this piece of land.

And so the two forgot their differences and waited for the court appearance.

(2) "Em i givim mi bel"

Koto i gat bikpela wari. Em i gat bel. Orait long dispela toktok bai yu harim em toktok wantaim Welfe Ofisa.

Ofisa: Yes yangpela, wanem samting yu laik lukim mi long en?

Koto: A--mi gat bikpela wari na pret ya. As bilong wari i olsem. Mi prenim wanpela waltskin man. Em bilong Austrelia. Mitupela i save slip wantaim. Olsem na em i givim mi bel. Mi laik tru long maritim em.

Ofisa: Na yu bin tokim em long laik bilong yu tu?

Koto: Yes mi bin tokim em. Em i save. Bipo tru mi bin askim em long i no ken holim skin bilong mi inap mi kisim tokorait long papa. Tasol em i no harim tok. Olsem na mitupela i bin katim kona liklik. Kambek bilong en, em givim mi bel. Papa na mama i no save yet. Em nau i wari bilong mi.

Ofisa: Em dispela samting i mekim yu wari a? Yu ting wanem stret, papa na mama bai i wokim wanem taim tupela i harim?

Koto: Em nau. Mi save bai tupela i kirap nogut tru. No bai tupela i kros na kolim ol kain kain nem nogut long mi. Mi pret nogut papa i kilim man ya.

Koto has a grave problem. She is pregnant. In this conversation you will hear her talking with the Welfare Officer.

Yes young one, what's it you've come to see me about?

Ah--I'm very worried and afraid, for the following reason. I've become friendly with a European. He's from Australia. We've been sleeping together and he's made me pregnant. I really want to marry him.

And have you told him about what you'd like to do too?

Yes I told him. He knows. A long time ago I asked him not to make love to me until I had received permission from my father. But he didn't listen and so we jumped the gun a bit. As a result he made me pregnant. My mother and father don't know about it yet and that's what I'm really worried about.

So that's what's making you worry is it? What do you really think your mother and father will do when they hear about it?

That's it. I know that the two of them will really be disturbed and they will be angry with me and call me terrible names. I'm afraid that my father will hurt this chap.

Ofisa: I orait. Yu no ken wari tumas. Bai mi painim sampela gutpela rot bilong pinisim wari bilong yu. Ating bai i gut sapos mi raitim pas i go long papamama bilong yu. Harim! Yu no ken go kamap yet o salim pas i go long tupela inap mi tokim yu. Na ol lain bilong yu i stap long wanem hap? Givim mi nem na adres bilong ol!

Koto: Ol i stap long Vanimo. Em nem na adres ya:
 Ombo Yuboim,
 Susurup Viles,
 P.O. Box 87,
 Vanimo.
 Tenkyu tru long halivim bilong yu.

That's okay, don't worry too much. I'll look for a good way to overcome this worry of yours. Perhaps it would be good if I wrote to your parents. Listen! Don't go anywhere near them or write to them until I tell you. And where does your family live? Give me their name and address?

*They live in Vanimo. This is their name and address:
 Ombo Yuboim,
 Susurup Village,
 P.O. Box 87,
 Vanimo.
 Thank you very much for your help.*

(3) "Em wari long kastom bilong mipela"

Tom na Ria i tupela nupela marit. Tasol Tom em bilong Siasi long West Nu Briten i save wari tumas long kastom bilong Ria.¹ Long dispela toktok bai yu harim Tom i autim wari bilong en long Welfe Ofisa.

Ofisa: Ya, yu kam lukim mi long sampela samting?

Tom: Yes. Mi gat liklik wari na mi laik bai yumitupela i mas lukluk long en.

Ofisa: Orait sindaun long sea. Yu tokim mi. Yu no ken sem long mi.

Tom: Mi tupela meri bilong mi mitupela nupela marit. Meri bilong mi i gat bel inap fopela mun nau. Tasol mi wari long wanem kastom bilong sait bilong meri bilong mi i olsem. Sapos meri i gat bel em i no ken kukim kaikai. Em i no ken sanap klostu long paia. So husat nau bai i kukim kaikai bilong mipela. Mi no inap kukim kaikai long wanem mi gat wok ya. Taim wok i pinis mi save tait nogut tru.

Tom and Ria are newlyweds. But Tom, a man from Siasi in the West New Britain Province, worries too much about Ria's customs. In this conversation you will hear Tom coming out with his worries to the Welfare Officer.

Yes, you've come to see me about something have you?

Yes. I've got a slight problem and I'd like us (two) to look at it.

Okay sit down. Tell me. Don't be ashamed.

My wife and I are newlyweds. My wife is four months pregnant and I'm worried about one of the customs on her side. It's like this. If a woman is pregnant she's not allowed to cook. She's not allowed to go near the fire. So who's going to cook for us then. I can't cook because of my work. By the time work is over I'm tired out.

- Ofisa: Meri bilong yu i wokim wanem nau?
- Tom: Em i save stap tasol. Em i no kukim kaikai. Em i save westim mani long baim kaikai tasol long ol haus kaikai. Mi les ya.
- Ofisa: Ating bai i mobeta sapos yutupela i kam lukim mi wantaim. Bai i gut sapos yumitripela i sindaun na toktok. Nogut yu paitim meri bilong yu long kain wari na kros bilong yu yet.
- Tom: A, i gutpela. Mi hop yu inap stretim dispela liklik wari bilong mi. Mi no laik marit bilong mi bai i bagarap.

What's your wife doing now?

She's just there not doing anything. She doesn't cook. She's just wasting money buying ready cooked food. I'm fed up.

It would probably be better if you came to see me together. It would be good for us to sit down and talk it over. You shouldn't beat her over this anxiety and anger of yours.

Yes, that's a good idea. I hope you'll be able to fix this little problem. I don't want my marriage to break down.

¹The reader says 'Asi' here. This was a typographical mistake in the reader's script.

(4) "Em i save dring tumas"



Lolo i maritim wanpela man we i save spak tumas. Taim man ya i spak pinis, em save kam kros na paitim nating Lolo. Nau bai yu harim Lolo i toktok wantaim Welfe Ofisa.

Lolo is married to a man who drinks too much. When he comes home drunk he gets angry with her and hits her for no reason. Now you are going to hear Lolo talking with the Welfare Officer.

Ofisa: Kam insait. Sindaun. Yu laikim wanem? O, yu luk wari. Olsem wanem? Sindaun bilong yu i orait?

Come inside. Sit down. What's your problem? Oh, you look worried. What's up? Is everything okay?

Lolo: Yes em i tru. Mi wari tumas long man bilong mi. Maski em i gat gutpela wok na i kisim bikpela pe, mipela i no gat mani long beng. Em save lusim mani long bia tasol. Em i save dring tumas. Mipela i no gat kaikai long haus. Sampela taim em i save paitim mi nating taim em i spak pinis.

Yes, it's true (things are not too good)! I worry so much about my husband. Although he's got a good job and gets well paid we haven't got anything in the bank. He spends the money on beer and nothing else. He drinks too much. We don't have any food in the house. Sometimes he punches me for no reason when he gets drunk.

Ofisa: Bilong wanem man bilong yu i save wokim olsem? Wanem as bilong dispela asua?

Why does your husband do that sort of thing? What's the underlying reason?

Lolo: Mi no save gut long dispela. Tasol ating mi inap tingim sampela kain tok bilong en. Olgeta taim em i spak pinis bai i kros na tok, "Haus i pulap tumas long ol tambu. Mani mi kisim i no inap long yumi olgeta. Yu mas traim na rausim ol i go bek long ples". Tasol mi save harim em nating.

I don't really know. But I can recall some of the sorts of things he says. Everytime he gets drunk he gets angry and says, "The house is full of relatives. The money I get is not sufficient for everyone. You must try to get rid of them back home". But I don't take any notice of him.

Ofisa: Ol lain i stap long haus, em ol lain stret bilong yu?

Are the group of relatives in the house your relatives?

Lolo: Yes. Sampela brata, susa, na mama bilong mi i stap. Em save paitim mi long ai bilong ol. Em tok bai ol i lukim na sem.

Yes. Some of my brothers, sisters and aunts are there. He hits me in front of them. He says they will see it and be shamed.

Ofisa: Ating i mobeta sapos yutupela i kam wantaim na lukim mi. Mitripela i ken traim stretim dispela asua bilong yu ya.

I think it would be better if you (two) came to see me together. We (three) could try to straighten out this trouble of yours.

Lolo: Em stret. Tenkyu tru.

That's true. Thank you very much.

[Singing]

"Spakman" (Painim Wok Band)

VOCABULARY

1. Drills

Exercise 1: Simple substitution

Frame: Yu kam bilong stillim graun bilong mi a?

You came to steal my land did you?

mekim trabel long mi

cause me trouble

rausim dispela meri

to get rid of this woman

brukim sindaun bilong mi

to wreck my life

askim laik bilong dispela meri ya

to ask this woman what she wants

stillim graun bilong mi

Now see if you can say the following in Tok Pisin? Ready?

1. *She chased him away because he was causing too much trouble.*

Em i rausim em bilong wanem em i mekim planti trabol (tumas).

2. *She asked her sister about her desire to marry Jim.*

Em i askim susa bilong en long laik bilong en long maritim Jim.

3. *This trouble will not wreck their marriage.*

Dispela trabol bai i no brukim marit bilong tupela.

Exercise 2: Simple substitution

Frame: Yu no ken hotim bel bilong mi
nating!

traim em

laikim mitupela

mangalim meri bilong en

paulim susa bilong en¹

grisim ol

hotim bel bilong mi

*Don't stir me up about it
senselessly.*

tempt him/her

love us (two)

covet, be jealous of his wife

*make his sister do something
she shouldn't*

flatter them

Now give the English meaning for the following Tok Pisin sentences. Ready?

1. Husat i paulim dispela meri bai mi paitim em.

I will hit whoever gets this girl to do something she shouldn't.

2. Dispela rabisman i no inap grisim ol long stilim graun bilong narapela.

This ordinary person won't be able to persuade them to steal someone else's land.

3. Ol lain bilong en i kotim man ya bikos em i mangalim meri bilong en.

His relatives are taking this man to court because he coveted his wife.

Exercise 3: Simple substitution

Frame: Yu yangpela yet na tingting
bilong yu i no klia.

kusaiman

hambakman²

grismeri

bikhetman

rabismeri

dripman

yangpela yet

*You're still young and your ideas
are not clear.*

*deceiver, prankster, show-off
annoying, cheeky, troublesome
person*

sponger, greasy person (female)

stubborn, conceited

*woman of no consequence,
ordinary person*

squatter, vagrant, drifter

¹For example, to take her out where she shouldn't go; to get her to do things she shouldn't as in Em paulim em na ol i go stilim mango *She/he enticed her away and they went and stole mangoes*. Note, however, that the phrase paulim long rot without further qualification would generally be taken to mean to rape.

²Sikibaga may also be heard for this.

Others in similar vein are:

lesbaga	<i>loafer, lazy person</i>
panlman/panimeri	<i>funny person, clown</i>
giamanman/giamanmeri	<i>trickster, liar</i>
welman/welmeri	<i>drifter, wanderer</i>
pasindia ¹	<i>someone who doesn't contribute, wanderer, bludger, freeloader</i>

What are the Tok Pisin expressions for the following? There may be more than one suitable answer. Ready?

- | | |
|---|---------------------|
| 1. <i>deceiver</i> | kusaiman, giamanman |
| 2. <i>female squatter, vagrant, drifter</i> | dripmeri, welmeri |
| 3. <i>flatterer</i> | grisman |
| 4. <i>cheeky or troublesome person</i> | hambakman |
| 5. <i>female person of no consequence</i> | rabismeri |

Exercise 4: Simple substitution

Frame: Bipo tru mi bin askim em long no ken holim skin bilong mi.

kalabusim mi
kotim papa bilong mi
trabelim ol
rongim mi
riptom em
tok baksait long yu

holim skin bilong mi

A long time ago I asked him not to make love to me.

*imprison me
take my father to court
trouble, molest, harm them
wrong, offend me
report him/her
gossip about you, talk behind your back*

Exercise 5: Progressive substitution

Frame: O sori, mi belhevi long dispela samting.

O sori, mi belhot² long dispela samting.

O sori, mi belhot long dispela tok giaman.

O sori, mi senisim tingting long dispela tok giaman.

O sori, mi senisim tingting long pamuk meri ya.³

O sori, mi marimari⁴ long pamuk meri ya.

O sori, mi marimari long lapun meri ya.

O sori, mi belhevi long lapun meri ya.

O sori, mi belhevi long dispela samting.

¹Consider, for example, Em i pasindia nabaut tasol. *He just drifts about; he has no permanent place of abode!*

²angry about

³this harlot

⁴pity

2. Supplementary vocabulary

man nogut/raskol	<i>criminal</i>
kilman	<i>murderer</i>
trabelman/meri	<i>trouble maker, troublesome person</i>
sas	<i>a charge</i>
sasim	<i>to charge</i>
man i gat kot man i sanap long kot }	<i>the accused</i>
jas	<i>judge</i>
loya/saveman long lo	<i>lawyer</i>
baim kot	<i>to pay a fine to the court</i>
winim kot	<i>to be acquitted</i>
man i go i kam long kot	<i>a persistent offender</i>
promsim	<i>to promise</i>
promis	<i>a promise</i>
brukim lo	<i>to break the law</i>
man i gat tupela maus	<i>hypocrite</i>
pretman/man bilong pret	<i>coward</i>
lukstilman/man bilong luklukstil	<i>a peeping Tom</i>
pamuk meri	<i>harlot</i>
goapim meri/sutim meri/paulim meri } pilai wantaim meri hevim seks wantaim meri }	<i>to have sexual intercourse with a woman</i>
sikrapim bel bilong man/meri	<i>to excite, lure, fornicate with</i>
sikrapim bel bilong pikinini } hambakim pikinini }	<i>to tease</i>
haus pamuk	<i>brothel</i>
samtng bilong pasim bel	<i>a contraceptive for females</i>
gumi bilong kok	<i>condom, contraceptive for males</i>
rausim bel/kilim pikinini long bel	<i>to abort, have an abortion</i>
no laikim tru/hetim	<i>to hate</i>
brukim ai	<i>to wink</i>
brukim han	<i>to break one's hand or to make a clenched fist</i>
brukim long tit	<i>to bite off</i>
brukim namei	<i>to break in halves; to divide in two</i>
brukim pepa/laplap/klos } foldim pepa/laplap/klos }	<i>to fold or tear paper/cloth/clothes</i>
(wokabaut) brukim baret/ples kunai	<i>to cross a trench/grassy patch</i>
brukim tok/promis	<i>to break a promise; go back on one's word</i>

bekim tok	<i>to answer</i>
grisim tok	<i>to talk someone into something or oneself out of a difficulty</i>
hap tok	<i>a quotation, statement</i>
mekim i dai tok	<i>to settle a quarrel, to make peace or kill a rumour</i>
Tok i dai!	<i>The matter is settled!</i>
no gat tok	<i>to have nothing to say; no complaint; no objection</i>
sikirapim tok	<i>to chatter</i>
stretim tok	<i>to settle a dispute, complaint or difficulty</i>
sutim tok long	<i>to accuse someone</i>
tok bilong ol tumbuna	<i>a tradition of the ancestors</i>
tok bilong bipo yet	<i>a myth, fable</i>
tok bilas	<i>ridicule, mockery</i>
tok bokis	<i>a secret language, parable, illustration</i>
tok gumi	<i>a tall tale (lit. a rubbery tale)</i>
tok tru	<i>truth</i>
tok insalt	<i>conscience</i>
tok paıt	<i>a dispute, controversy</i>
gat tupela tingting long	<i>waver, doubt</i>
wanbel	<i>agreement</i>
sutim bel	<i>taunt, provoke</i>
mekim bel i kol/kolim bel/ mekim kol bel	<i>passify</i>
belisi	<i>calm, peaceful</i>
Em i hangamap long narapela meri.	<i>He's 'hooked' on another woman.</i>
Ol meri i aigris long dispela man.	<i>The girls give this fellow the glad eye.</i>
Husat i seksek long lukim em?	<i>Who's the one who goes to pieces when he sees her?</i>

Exercise 1: What do the following words and expressions mean in English?

man i go i kam long kot	brukim ples kunai
haus pamuk	em i hangamap long narapela meri
brukim ai	tok paıt
tok bilas	hap tok
winim kot	lukstilman
jas	kilman

Exercise 2: Match the following English expressions with appropriate Tok Pisin ones:

acquitted
peeping Tom
abortion
to bite off
to tease, taunt
secret language
contraception
to answer
conscience
hypocrite

sutim bel
 samting bilong pasim bel
 man bilong tupela maus
 tok bokis
 bekim tok
 brukim long tit
 lukstilman
 winim kot
 rausim bel
 tok insait

[Singsing]
 "Spakman" (Painim Wok Band)

GRAMMAR

13.1 Impatient questions: watpo, westap, wasmara

There are several special question words in Tok Pisin which always stand at the beginning of the questions they help form but which are generally used to show, with the right tone of voice, impatience, annoyance or anger. These question words are: *watpo* (and less commonly and somewhat archaic *wasmara* *why*) and *westap* *where is/are?*

Examples:

Watpo yu kam traिम stilim graun
 bilong mipela?

*Why (the hell) did you come and try
 to steal our land?*

Westap papa bilong yu?

Where (the hell) is your father?

These forms replace the *bilong wanem* (or *olsem wanem* *how come?*) *why?* and *we where?* ones normally used, though as already pointed out they have to be accompanied by the right (*kros*) tone of voice.

Practice drills

Exercise 1: *Simple substitution*

Frame: Watpo yu sindaun nating?

(bulsitim mi, krosim dispela yangpela meri, tok nogutim em,
 agenstim tingting bilong mi, sindaun nating)

Exercise 2: *Simple substitution*

Frame: Westap papa bilong yu?

(lukstilman ya, meri i gat kot, trabelman, pamuk meri, papa
 bilong yu)

Exercise 3: Use the cues given to change the following questions into ones indicating impatience, annoyance or anger. Remember to use an appropriate tone of voice. Ready?

1. Bilong wanem yu daunim bia bilong mi? (watpo)
 Watpo yu daunim bia bilong mi?

2. Jas bilong dispela kot i stap we? (westap)
Westap jas bilong dispela kot?
3. Dispela kusaiman yu bin toktok wantaim em, em i stap we? (westap)
Westap dispela kusaiman yu bin toktok wantaim em?
4. Taim ministeriel memba i kam lukim mipela bilong wanem yu no tok gude long en? (watpo)
Taim ministeriel memba i kam lukim mipela watpo yu no tok gude long en?
5. Oltaim oltaim yu save kra! bilong wanem? (watpo)
{ Watpo yu save kra! oltaim oltaim?
{ Watpo oltaim oltaim yu save kra!?

Evaluation exercise

How would you ask someone the following questions in Tok Pisin? You have to choose between the normal and the impatient question forms. To help you recognise the latter cases, the instructor will modify his voice and intonation. Ready?

- Where are my trousers?*
Westap trausis bilong mi?
- Why is the butter soft? I don't like it like that!*
Bilong wanem bata i malomalo? Mi no laikim olsem.
- Why is the butter soft? I don't like it like that!*
Watpo bata i malomalo? Mi no laikim olsem.
- Where have all the squatters gone?*
Olgeta dripman i go we?
- Why don't you have an abortion?*
{ Watpo yu no kilim pikinini long bel bilong yu?
{ Watpo yu no rausim bel bilong yu?
- I told you cook rice. But you didn't cook rice. Why didn't you cook rice?*
Mi tokim yu yu kukim rais. Tasol yu no kukim rais. Watpo yu no kukim rais?

13.2 Verb grouping and focus

In Tok Pisin as in English many actions that physically may consist of two or more parts are often focussed on or are seen as a closeknit unit. Thus, for example, Ol i sindaun toktok *They sat down talking* is different in focus from Ol i sindaun na ol i toktok *They sat down and (then) talked*. This difference in focus is mainly related to whether the first verb is intransitive or not. If it is intransitive there is much more scope for sentence reduction and the grouping or concatenation of the verbs. Consider, for example, the following scale:

Ol i sindaun na ol i toktok.	<i>They sat down and talked.</i>
Ol i sindaun na i toktok. ¹	{ <i>They sat down and talked.</i> <i>They sat down talking.</i>
Ol i sindaun na toktok.	<i>They sat down talking.</i>
Ol i sindaun toktok.	<i>They sat down talking.</i>

If the first verb is transitive na must be used but the idea of simultaneity of action or focus on it is achieved by using wantaim in the second part of the sentence. Thus, for example, one cannot say Ol i kukim taro toktok *They cooked taro (while) talking*. One has to say Ol i kukim taro na toktok wantaim.

Finally, in some sentences in which the first verb is one of the intransitive verbs go and kam the interpretation of *in order to* is a further possibility. Thus, for example, Em i kam lukim mi can mean either *he came and saw me* or *he came (in order) to see me*.

Practice drills

Exercise 1: Simple substitution

Frame: Ol i sindaun toktok.

(wokabaut, sanap, kirap, sindaun)

Exercise 2: Simple substitution

Frame: Mipela i redim kaikai na singsing wantaim.

(wokim haus, piksim ka, wetim bas, redim kaikai)

Exercise 3: Repeat the following sentences indicating wherever the actions are closely related or simultaneous. Omit na and other repetitious elements. Ready?

- Husat i kam na stilim kotren bilong mi?
Husat i kam stilim kotren bilong mi?
- Yupela sindaun na yupela ridim stori.
Yupela sindaun ridim stori.
- Em i go na em i pilai soka a?
Em i go pilai soka a?
- Tuma i sindaun na i harim tok.
Tuma i sindaun harim tok.
- Masta i kam sekan na i toktok planti.
Masta i kam sekan toktok planti.
- Sampela i sanap insait long haus lotu na i singsing.
Sampela i sanap singsing insait long haus lotu.
- Bulmakau i kirap na i pretim ol pikinini meri.
Bulmakau i kirap pretim ol pikinini meri.

¹Out of context this could be taken to mean *They sat down and he/she talked*.

Exercise 4: Repeat the following sentences adding wantaim to indicate that the actions were simultaneous. Ready?

1. Sikman i pispis na pekpek blut.
Sikman i pispis na pekpek blut wantaim.
2. Olgeta i wetim kot na i toktok.
Olgeta i wetim kot na i toktok wantaim.
3. Mi no inap krosim em na grisim em.
Mi no inap krosim em na grisim em wantaim.

Evaluation exercise

Say what the following sentences mean in English. Ready?

1. Asde mi lukim sampela welpik i kam brukim banis bilong dispela gaden.
Yesterday I saw some wild pigs come and break this garden fence.
2. I no gat wampela man i inap sanap singautim ol manmeri i kam hariap.
There is no one who can stand up and call the people to come quickly.
3. Tumora bai em i kam sasim yu.
Tomorrow he's coming to charge you.
4. Sampela pikinini i sindaun kaikai pik, sampela nogat.
Some children are sitting down eating pork, others are not.
5. Yu no ken ripotim mi na kalabusim mi wantaim. Yu mas wet long kiap i kam harim kot pastaim.
You can't report me and lock me up at the same time. You have to wait for the Government Officer to come and hear the case first.

13.3 Unsuccessful actions

Actions which fail to accomplish their goals because (a) the thing sought is not there or does not exist, or (b) the person is physically incapable for some reason, are indicated in Tok Pisin by adding tasol i no gat or tasol mi/em i no inap respectively to the end of sentences (which are usually of the repetitious action type described and drilled in sub-section 12.4 above). For example:

Mi painim, painim, painim tasol i no gat.

I looked and looked for it but without success (because it wasn't there).

Mi painim, painim, painim tasol mi no inap.

I looked and looked for it but I couldn't find it.

Yuopen ya i mekim, mekim, mekim tasol em i no inap.

This European tried to do it but couldn't/failed.

Practice drills

Exercise 1: Simple substitution

Frame: Mi traिम painim snek long gras. Mi painim, painim tasol i no gat.
(pukpuk long tais, mani mi lusim, kiau long bus, snek long gras)

Exercise 2: Simple substitution

Frame: Man ya i lainim tokples. Em i lainim, lainim, lainim tasol em i no inap.
(sanapim diwai, winim mambu, kalabusim muruk, go antap long diwai,
lainim tokples)

Exercise 3: Repeat the following sentences using the cues provided. Ready?

1. Mi singautim draiva i kam. (inap)
Mi singautim draiva i kam. Mi singautim, singautim,
singautim tasol mi no inap.
2. Ol i laik hukim pis. (gat)
Ol i laik hukim pis. Ol i hukim, hukim, hukim tasol
i no gat.
3. Mitupela i painim kago long bus. (gat)
Mitupela i painim kago long bus. Mitupela i painim,
painim, painim, tasol i no gat.
4. Tisa i strafim manki. (inap)
Tisa i strafim manki. Em i strafim, strafim, strafim
tasol em i no inap.
5. Em i tra'im abrusim ol man nogut. (inap)
Em i tra'im abrusim ol man nogut. Em i abrusim,
abrusim, abrusim tasol em i no inap.

Evaluation exercise

Say what the following sentences mean in English. Ready?

1. Kalabusman i tra'im ranawe tasol em i no inap.
The prisoner tried to escape but couldn't.
2. Mama bilong en i laik statim ka. Em i statim, statim, statim tasol
em i no inap.
His/her mother wanted to start the car but couldn't.
3. Mi tra'im kisim laisens. Mi mekim, mekim, mekim tasol mi no inap.
I tried to get a licence but couldn't.
4. Kandere bilong Jo i go lukautim kapul. Em i lukautim, lukautim,
lukautim tasol i no gat.
Jo's uncle went hunting possums but there weren't any.
5. Sekreteri i taipim pas. Em i taipim, taipim, taipim inap long taim
han bilong en i dai.
The secretary typed letters until her hand was tired.

13.4 I mobeta sapos ...: It would be better if ...

In Tok Pisin, as in English, there are some situations in which one needs to give advice of the kind (*I think*) *it would be good/better/best if ...* However, unlike in English, these expressions do not have verbs in Tok Pisin and the subject *em* is generally omitted. The following examples show the most common range encountered.

I mobeta sapos yu fiksím.	<i>It would be better if you fixed it.</i>
I mo gut sapos yu fiksím.	<i>It would be better if you fixed it.</i>
I gut tru sapos yu fiksím.	<i>It would be best if you fixed it.</i>
Ating bai em i gut sapos yu fiksím.	<i>Perhaps it would be good if you fixed it.</i>
Bai i orait liklik sapos yu fiksím.	<i>It would be okay (not too good) if you fixed it.</i>

Some other useful associated expressions are:

MI no ken tokím yu tasol ...	<i>I can't tell you to do it but ...</i>
Laik bilong yu long traím! } Yu ken traím, sapos yu laik! }	<i>You can (take your chances and) try it.</i>
Koan! Kisím sans nau!	<i>Go on! Take a chance now!</i>

Practice drills

Exercise 1: Progressive substitution

Frame: I mobeta sapos yu fiksím.

I mobeta sapos em i tokím mí.

I gut tru sapos em i tokím mí.

I gut tru sapos ol i soím em.

Ating bai i orait sapos ol i soím em.

Ating bai i orait sapos yupela i pasím.

I mobeta sapos yupela i pasím.

I mobeta sapos yu fiksím.

Exercise 2: Use the frame I mobeta sapos ... to answer the following questions using the cues provided. Ready?

- Bai mí mekím wanem long pik i bagarapím gaden bilong mí? (banísím)
I mobeta sapos yu banísím.
- Bai em i mekím wanem long man i brukím marít bilong en? (kotím)
I mobeta sapos em i kotím.
- Bai em i mekím wanem long husat i mumutím kopí bilong en? (holím pasím)
I mobeta sapos em i holím pasím.

Now use the frame Ating em i gut tru sapos ... to answer the next two questions. Ready?

- Hapasde brata bilong mí i dai pinís long ples.
Yu ting wanem? Bai mí mekím wanem nau? (go long ples na helpím ol)
Ating i gut tru sapos yu go long ples na helpím ol.
- Autbodmota i bagarap. Yu ting wanem?
Bai mí rausím o wanem? (kisím i go long woksop)
Ating em i gut tru sapos yu kisím i go long woksop.

Evaluation exercises

Exercise 1: Say what the following sentences mean in English. Ready?

1. Man bilong mi i dring tumas. Ating i gut sapos mitupela i go lukim Welfe Ofisa.

My husband drinks too much. I guess it would be good/sensible if we went to see the Welfare Officer.

2. Sindaun bilong en i bagarap long Mosbi. Mi ting i mobeta sapos i lusim Mosbi.

Her life has been ruined in Port Moresby. I think it would be better if she left town.

3. I gat planti wantok bilong yu long haus. Bai i gut sapos ol i go painim wok o go bek long ples.

There are lots of friends (or relations) of yours in the house. It would be best if they went to find work or went back home.

4. Mi laik go long Amerika. I orait long yu sapos mi go?

I would like to go to America. Is it all right with you if I go?

5. Koan! Kisim sans!

Go on! Take a chance!

Exercise 2: How would you say the following in Tok Pisin? Ready?

1. *It would be okay (although I don't like the idea very much) if he went to school in Australia.*

Em i orait liklik sapos em i go skul long Austrelia.

2. *I can't tell you what to do but I think it would be best if you didn't go.*

Mi no ken tokim yu tasol mi ting i gut tru sapos yu no go.

3. *You can try it and take your chance!*

Yu traim long laik bilong yul

4. *It wouldn't be all right if you didn't come.*

Bai i no orait sapos yu no kam.

5. *Go on! Take a chance now!*

Koan! Kisim sans nau!

[Singsing]

Three note panpipe,
Buin, North Solomons Province



A North Solomons Province panpipe

TEXTS

(1) Pasin bilong kisim graun bilong mipela

The following is an account of land customs in the Highlands. Once again the speaker is Moruwo Domai.

T: Na narapela samting tu long--i gat planti trabel i kamap insait long en, em pasin bilong kisim graun bilong yupela. Yu inap toksave liklik long dispela liklik kain--liklik problem em--long graun bilong yupela, taim yu laik wokim gaden o wokim haus samting na yu mas lukluk gut long graun pastaim a?

M: A--em, long ples, em mipela i gat am--long mak bilong mipela olsem mipela i no ken stilim graun bilong narapela man. Mipela i gat mak olsem a--long nau yumi yusim long rop ya na long ples mipela i st--i gat wanpela nem, tanget. Em dispela, em mak bilong mipela long--olsem soim man i--em i sait bilong en i narapela na sait bilong mipela i narapela. Olsem sapos yumi i no toksave long narapela man nam--na mi kisim dispela graun bilong mi na mi go brukim narapela hap graun na mi kisim i kam insait, em dispela man bai i kam lukluk na em bai i kotim mi. O sapos em no laik kotim mi em bai i kam lukim mi na em mipela bai i pait i go insait long dispela. Na hap lain bilong en i kam na hap lain bilong en i kam. Em bai mipela wokim bikpela pait. Long Hailens ol i--ol man i save pait na yumi harim long niuspepa na yumi harim long radio nabaut, em wanpela samting long dispela graun tasol mi--em i--i save givim hevi long mipela long pl--long wanem?--long Hailens. Em ol i save pait long graun. Em--sapos yu yet yu gat graun bilong yu tru yu wokim gaden, em gutpela. Tasol yu kisim graun bilong arapela man, em yu brukim lo na em i--ol hap lain ol i mas paitim yu na yu bai i pait. Na nau dispela taim em i lo na ol i ken putim yu long kot o ol i ken kalabusim yu long wanem yu brukim lo bilong gr--long nau ya.

English translation

T: *And something else too--from which lots of disputes arise is the way you (plural) obtain ground. Could you explain a little about this little kind--this small problem which-- about land of yours, when you want to make a garden or build a house etc. you have to consider the land first don't you?*

M: *Ah--that in the village, we've got am--about our boundaries it's like this. We cannot steal someone else's land. We have boundaries ah--now we use rope and in the village we--there is something that's called a tanget (Cordyline sp.). That's the thing, that's our boundary marker in--that is it shows you--which side is yours and which side is someone else's. Thus suppose we didn't inform another person (of our intentions) and--and I took over this land and went and dug up someone else's piece and went inside his boundary then that person would come and see it and take me to court. Or suppose he didn't want to take me to court he'd come and pay me a visit and we'd fight about it. And some of his relatives and some of mine would come and we'd have a big fight. In the Highlands they--they fight and we read about it in the newspaper and hear about it on the radio. That's the same thing to do with land that I --it is--gives us lots of headaches at ho--what is it?--in the Highlands. They fight over land. It--suppose you have some ground belonging to you yourself to make a garden on that's good. But if you take someone else's ground you'll be breaking the law and he--the group concerned must attack you and you'll fight. And nowadays it's a law and you can be taken to court or you can be put in gaol because you have broken the law--of today.*

Sampela kwestin

1. Ol i makim hap graun bilong wanpela lain na hap graun bilong narapela lain olsem wanem long Hailens?
2. Sapos man i wokim gaden long hap graun bilong narapela wanem samting bai i kamap?
3. Sapos tupela i tok kros long graun bai ol i pinisim dispela tok kros olsem wanem?
4. Yu ting wanem? 'Boundary' i wanem samting long Tok Pisin?

(2) Raun Raun Tieta

John Barre is the Director of the Raun Raun Theatre in Goroka. Here he talks about the work of the theatre. John comes from Bundi in the Madang Province.



John

Raun Raun Theatre buildings,
Goroka

- D: Yes, bai mi askim yu nau long wok bilong tieta, o wok bilong Raun Raun Tieta. Em i wanem kain wok stret ya?
- J: A, wok bilong Raun Raun Tieta em i -- em i narapela kain wok olgeta. I no olsem a-- normal kain wok bilong Pablik Sevis o wanem samting, em i -- em i-- tieta em i krietiv, atistik. Em, i no gat-- i no gat a-- wan kain wod long Tok Pisin long wokim dispela kain disk-- long tokaut klia long wok bilong Raun Raun Tieta tasol mipela save wokim wok-- tupela kain wok. Wanpela em i traिम bungim ol stori tumbuna na senisim i go long inap -- i go long tieta bilong a-- olsem ol bikpela tieta olsem yu lukim ol long narapela kantri ol wokim pilai bilong Hamlet o ol kain pilai bilong Shekspia na ol narapela westen tieta ya. Orait long mipela em, mipela traिम wokim Papua Niu Gini klasik tieta long dispela kain. Em namba wan wok bilong Raun Raun. Namba tu wok bilong Raun Raun Tieta em bilong a-- luksave long ol kain kain wari na problem i kamap long ol man bilong ples, long viles, long viles, na kisim dispela wari, go long viles, sindaun wantaim ol wokim woksop na rises. Sindaun wantaim ol na kamapim wanpela liklik pilai long wari bilong ol dispela man o long kain tingting ol i gat, long ol man bilong viles. Dispela pilai yu kisim i kam na soim long ol narapela man long ol narapela hap na bai ol i ken luksave long wanem kain wari i stap long husat man long dispela ples na yu save olsem 'exchange of ideas' i go kam long kain pasin. Na sampela ol dispela plai mipela yusim bringim i kam na traिम yusim long putim on long taun long Goroka yet na evri Fraide ol man i kam -- pablik i kam fri na ol i lukluk autsait long tieta bilong mipela na ol i kisim aidea long -- ol taunman i kisim aidea long wanem wari ol vilesman i gat. Na dispela em gutpela senis na narapela tu taim ol i gat a-- konfrens bilong ol sampela kain dipatmen o oganaisesen orait mipela soim ol dispela pilai tu na ol i,

olsem wanpela gutpela eksampl em long a-- ol polis ministas konfrens. Ol i gat na mipela soim ol wanpela politikol pilai. Dispela politikol pilai em ol vilesman yet i wokim na mipela i bin kisim i kam na soim ol. Olsem na ol polisman i lukim na ol i senisim sampela tingting bilong ol o opim ai bilong ol long sampela kain isiu i kamap long viles.

English translation

- D: *Yes, I'm going to ask you now about the work of the theatre, or the work of the Raun Raun Theatre. What kind of work is it actually?*
- J: *Ah, the work of the Raun Raun Theatre is -- it is completely different (from anything else). It's not like -- normal Public Service kind of work or whatever, it is -- it is -- theatre is creative, artistic. There is no -- there is no--similar word in Tok Pisin to describe this -- to explain clearly the work of the Raun Raun Theatre but we do -- two kinds of things. One is to try to collect ancestor stories and change them into -- theatre to -- like big theatre as you see in other countries where they do plays of Hamlet or the different Shakesperean plays and other western theatres. For our part we try to develop Papua New Guinea classical theatre of this kind. That's the main task of the Raun Raun Theatre. The second task is-- to observe the different kinds of worries and problems that arise amongst village people, in the village, and take these to the village and sit down with the villagers and do workshops and research. We sit down with them and develop a small play about the worries of these people in the village or about their ideas. We take them (then) and show them to others in a different area so they can observe the kinds of worries there are for the people in this (other) place. And you know that 'exchange of ideas' results from this kind of behaviour. And some of these plays which we use and bring and try to put on in the town, in Goroka, and every Friday everyone comes -- the public comes free and they watch outside our theatre and they get ideas from -- the townspeople get ideas from whatever worries villagers have. And this is a good thing, this change (in ideas). And another thing, when they have -- conferences for some kinds of departments or organisations then we show these plays too and they -- a good example is about -- the Police Ministers Conference. They came and we showed a political play. We brought and showed this political play that villagers made and the policemen saw it and they changed some of their ideas or opened their eyes about some kinds of issues that arise in villages.*

Sampela kwestin

1. John i tok, 'Raun Raun Tieta i krietiv'. Em i min wanem?
2. John i tok Raun Raun Tieta i wokim tupela kain wok. Em tupela i wanem?
3. John i tok wanem long 'exchange of ideas'?

Now to end this unit listen to this Tolai children's game. Coconut shells are hit on the ground while being passed around in a circle anticlockwise. This hitting provides the rhythmic accompaniment of the singing.

[Singsing]

Tolai children's game,
Gazelle Peninsula, East New Britain

Supplementary exercises

1. Read a court report in any newspaper and report on it in Tok Pisin.
2. Pretend you are a local court magistrate hearing the court case resulting from Rupa's actions in Conversation 1 in this unit. Enact the court conversation between you and the affected parties.
3. Explain to someone what your marriage customs are in Tok Pisin and compare them with some (other) Papua New Guinea ones.
4. Try your hand at interpreting this letter, which is based on an actual one. Rewrite it in standard Tok Pisin orthography and give a translation:

Piralte,
14.5.1985

O Masata,

Mi kisim pasi pirong yu pinisi. Rau mi laiki akisim samporo samtini rong yu ia. Yu inap alipim mi rong tispara. Mitupara tokim yu pinisi rong pirasi birong mitupara paim tarasisi na siwoti pirong papa pirong mi na samporo olosem pirong mi tu. Tasori yu arim papa pirong mi em i siki na mi kisim em i ko rong rei na em isitapu rong ausiki tu manisii rau tasori em ikam beki rong peresi na mitupara isitapu na mitupara wokim pasi na mitupara foketem reta. Tasori minokati tokutoku emi tasori. O tamboro emi aniteresi pirong mi rong koitaki sitesini ia masita sioni isitapu bosi rong en ia yu rukim rong desara na yu sarim pirasi pirong mitupara ikam rong en. Em tasori. Awinunu parata. Mi Paunto kamap rong reta ia. Mi raikim wanpara korisiwoti tu. Yu sarim pirong mi. Mi sitapu Paundo, long koitaki kumpranstasion, posiofisi bokisi namba 12 long Sogeri, Sentral Profinisi, Papua Niu Gini.

5. Correct and then answer the following advertisement that appeared in *National Review*, Vol.3, No.18, February 16-22, 1973:

Wanpela Naispela man bilong Moresby em ol meri bai
seksek tru llaikim wanpela naispela meri igat save.
Dispela man save tok inglis tasol.

Review box 3076.

6. Listen to texts 14 and 21 in Unit 14 and discuss the two businesses in Tok Pisin.
7. You have a friend teaching in Mendi who has an alcohol problem. Write a letter to him advising him about what to do about trying to overcome it. Here is an English version of what you want to say. See if you can express similar ideas in Tok Pisin.

Dear Friend,

I received your letter yesterday thank you. I am pleased to hear that you are okay but I am worried about you. If you keep drinking the way you are you are going to get into serious trouble. It would be a good idea if you went to talk to a welfare officer or someone who could help you overcome

your problem. It is not good for you to keep drinking and spending all your money on alcohol. If you go and talk to someone maybe they will be able to help you understand your problem. If there is no one there perhaps you should ask for a transfer to Port Moresby where there are lots of people who can help you. Why don't you ask your supervisor about it. Explain your problem to him and see what he says.

All right that is all for now. Please write again when you can.

Your friend,

Opi

SUPPLEMENTARY TEXTS

Text 1: Kofi plantesen

In this interview you will hear Koki Ivena of Nagamiufa village near Goroka talking about establishing his coffee plantation. He is thirty-eight years old.



Koki

D: Kofi plantesen, bai yupela save wokim olsem wanem na kamapim kofi plantesen?

K: O, yes, yes, em, pren bilong mi, em dispela wok, em wanpela bikpela hatwok tu. Dispela em wanpela bikpela hatwok tru na kofi, taim mipela i laik stat long wokim dispela kain wok, man! mipela save katim traipela bus, na mipela wok hat long em, wokim banis, wokim bikpela bikpela baret, na mipela wokim seid¹ planim ol diwai, na lainim olgeta flaua. Pinis long dispela mipela i save kisim kofi sids. Olsem mipela laik wokim neseri na wokim wok bilong kofi sids em yumi save wok hat tru. Yumi save wok hat tru na mipela save lukautim gut na mipela i save stat-- mipela i laik stat long planim kofi, na mipela i save digim hol na wokim lainim² na wokim bikpela wok long en long dispela hap pinis, na taim mipela putim kofi, i go insait long graun, na mipela i save lukautim gut. Mipela i no laik wanpela sik bilong en bai i kamap insait long dispela na kilim i dai dispela diwai kofi. So mipela save wokim bikpela hatwok. Mipela wokim bikpela hatwok i kam na olsem namba wan yia bilong em, na namba tu yia em redi na i-- i kamap bikpela na yumi wok hat yet i kam namba tri yias em yumi save stat long lukim flaua em i kamap. Lukim flaua em i kamap na mipela wotsim gut, na mipela i no laik painim wanpela sik long dispela na daunim sampela flaua bilong kofi, na bagarapim kofi diwai, na mipela wok hat long em. Na mipela save lusim traipela mani i go insait gen long dispela taim mipela wok. I no save liklik mani i go -- i go insait long dispela taim so, taim mipela i laik stat long pikim kofi nau, kofi redi na mipela i save wokim wok bilong em tu em i narapela bikpela hatwok bilong em. Taim mipela pikim kofi, na mipela skelim, kisim weit bilong en,³ hamas weit, kilograms na mipela i save kisim go na putim long masin na mipela wasim, mipela draim, na mipela wok long wetim dispela drai bilong em, na mipela wok long sekim⁴ sekim i stap long san. Dispela taim em i drai nau, mipela i save kisim bek, na pulimapim long bek. Hamas bek yumi kauntim, na pulimapim i go olsem 50, 100, 150, 200 na mipela i save hamamas tru long we long mipela pulimapim dispela kain bek. Na taim mipela i laik salim mipela save raun lukluk long olgeta faktri ol i save kofi-- wanem? -- ol i save baim kofi long en, ol kofi baias. Mipela go lukim maket⁵ bilong en em i gutpela o i nogut long em. Mipela wok long sekim pinis husat maket bilong en em i antap na bikpela, na yumi save salim. Na taim yumi salim yumi save kisim bikpela mani. Taim olsem yumi salim wan wan bek, inap long K85.00 long wan bek, na inap long K100 long wan bek ol i baim long wan kilo olos-- K1.70 yumi save kisim 110, 120 na ol i baim long K1.65 mipela save kisim 95 na 85 na yumi save kisim olsem.

¹shade

²lining i.e., putting the seedlings in lines

³obtain its weight

⁴checking

⁵price/market value

Text 2: Wok long Kopafa Plantesen

Wemen Mukare is a young man from Chuave in the Simbu Province who works on Kopafa Coffee Plantation near Goroka. Here he talks about his work.



Wemen

- D: Gutpela. Orait yu inap tokim mi nau wanem samting yu save wokim long moning bilong plantesen i kam kam kam kam inap tru long apinun?
- W: A, long plantesen olsem: long taim bilong kofi sisen na mipela i pikim kopi long moningtaim. Mipela i harim belo mipela i go long wok na mipela pikim kofi. Na taim kofi i pinis bai mipela i stap olsem. Na sapos i gat wok bai mipela wok. Na nogat bai mipela i stap olsem. Tasol bipo taim mipela i kam hia kofi i no mau yet mipela olsem long wan mun na tu mun tri mun mipela i--tasol mipela i mekim wok, liklik wok savol nabaut, na taim i gat mipela wok. Na nogat mipela i stap nating tasol long hia.
- D: Gutpela. A, mi harim yu yu tok wok savol. Inap tokim mi wanem samting dispela wok savol?
- W: A, wok savol em olsem: olsem long kofi nabaut i gat sampela olsem long baret nogut mipela i--olsem kisim savol na klinim baret na olsem long gras nabaut i kamap long as bilong kofi mipela i kisim pam¹ na mipela pamim. Olsem bai dispela gras i dai. Na olsem mipela katim sampela han bilong ol siks mun nabaut long kofi. Nau olsem i gat kain wok olsem mipela katim ol gras nabaut, kau gras² arere long baret nabaut olsem. Long wok savol em mi minim olsem.
- D: Nau--long kaikai long dispela plantesen nau husat save givim yupela kaikai. Yupela yet o kampani em i save givim yupela kaikai long kaikai nau go wok?
- W: A, em mipela i no save bipo taim plantesen i stat yet, ating sampela man i mas kisim kaikai long kampani. Tasol nau mipela nogat. Mipela olsem i stap na mipela kisim liklik wan siling³ long wok. Mipela i baim kaikai bilong mipela. Mipela long-- mipela tingting long bel bilong mipela. Na kampani i no givim mipela kaikai. Olsem mipela painim kaikai long--olsem em bai mipela --mipela painim kaikai long maket nabaut.
- D: Sapos yupela i laik wokim gaden i gat ples bilong wokim gaden long hia o nogat?
- W: Yea, em i gat. Long gaden tu i gat ples bilong wokim gaden na i hap arere nabaut long kofi olsem long arere long haus bilong mipela tu i gat ples bilong mipela wokim gaden na planti long mipela mipela wokim gaden. Na mi tu mi stat long wokim gaden. Tasol na--kau na ol pik nabaut bilong ples --ol man long asples i kam na bagarapim nabaut na mi stap nating. Na sampela i stap. I no spoilim long en na em i stap yet na mipela wok long kaikai nabaut.
- D: A, wanem kain kaikai tru yu save planim long gaden?
- W: A, long hia mipela planim olsem pamkin na kaukau na em tasol. Ol wanem?-- dispela kasava o dispela ya mipela planim long ples na i save kisim long en. I no gat arapela. Tasol sampela kumu olsem wan wan liklik. Taim bilong san no gat kumu. Tasol olsem taim bilong ren mipela kisim sampela liklik kumu tu.

¹pump²grass for cattle³some wages (lit. small one shilling). Ten toea pieces have replaced shillings in Papua New Guinea's modern currency.

Text 3: Wok bilong mi

Anton Kinamu works for a timber company. He comes from Banap village north-west of Madang. He is talking to Dicks Thomas about his work.



Anton and family

- D: O tru. Am--mi harim yu tok a--yu save wok tu long wanpela timba kampani. A, yu inap tokim stret wanem nem bilong dispela timba kampani na ol i bin stap long Madang hamas krismas pinis?
- A: A, dispela timba kampani em i bin stat long 1970 long Madang. Em i stap long Wewak na i kam stat long 1970 i kam inap nau long 19-- a--85.
- D: Gutpela. A-- dispela kampani em bilong husat? Bilong ol narapela man autsait long kantri bilong yumi o bilong yumi yet ol man Papua Niu Gini?
- A: A, dispela timba kampani em bilong ol man autsait long kantri bilong yumi. Em wanpela man Edi Stil em i statim long Wewak long ples ol i kolim Tawai Ailan.
- D: Gutpela. A, oke a-- mi harim yu tu yu tok a--yu gat kopra na yu save wokim. A-- hamas taim yu save wokim kopra long wanpela krismas? Yu inap tingim?
- A: O, dipends long¹ kopra yet. Sapos a--plantesen em i no bikpela tumas olsem na mi save wokim insait long wanpela yia sikis o sevenpela taim insait long wanpela yia mi save salim kopra.
- D: Gutpela. A, wanem--em dispela haus bilong putim long kopra na draim, yupela i kolim wanem haus?
- A: Dispela em smokhaus, kopra draia.
- D: Em nau, smokhaus o kopra draia. A--yupela no save yusim haus paiaman?
- A: Ye, em wankain dispela haus paiaman. Na em haussmok. Mipela kolim long olsem long pasin bilong ol toktok bilong Madang. Em haussmok.
- D: Gutpela tru.
- T: Bai yu mekim wanem na kopra i kamap gutpela?
- A: Bai yu mas a--klinim plantesen bilong yu. Na i gat ol planti kain kopra mipela save yusim long a--kisim long plantesen. Em a--sampela kain kokonas em i no save karim ol--ol kopra em i no save gutpela na planti long ol em i save gutpela. So bai yu mas-- nambawan yu bungim na yu selim. Oke bai yu brukim yu kisim go long haussmok. Yu lainim gut. Na yu wokim paia long em. Oke sampela haussmok em i save kisim long wan wik long dispela ol kopra bai i drai. Na sampela i save kisim mo long wan wik, olsem et, nain des long kopra i drai.
- T: Bihain yu mekim wanem? Yu putim long bek o yu salim nating long trak o wanem?
- A: Ye. Kopra i drai pinis bai yu rausim sel bilong em. I gat tripela kain. Nambawan bai yu selim em nambawan skin. Nambatu em bai yu rausim sel pinis orait bai yu katim. Mipela i save wokim tupela kain. Yu selim o yu katim pis kopra.² A, yu bringim long smokhaus. Yu draim. Yu sakim³ long wanpela kopra bek. Orait bai yu ken --laik bilong yu yu laik salim hamaspela bek-- dipends long a--kopra yet long smokhaus.

D: A nau long wanpela bek hamas long en?

A: Dispela kopra prais em i save go antap na go daun taim--las tupela mun i go pinis, em kopra prais i bin i go antap tru na mipela i salim long wanpela bek em K46.00 long wanpela bek. Na nau em kopra prais i drop gen i go daun long K26.00 long wan bek.

D: Man! i go antap gen long 40 na i kam daun gen long 20 samting olsem. Tru!

¹depends on
²copra pieces
³put in

Text 4: Snuka

In this excerpt Jack Fosane describes how snooker is played in Papua New Guinea. Jack is from Kainantu in the Eastern Highlands Province. He is nineteen years old.



Jack (on left) playing snooker at Malolo Hotel, Madang

D: Oke bai mi askim yutupela long dispela gem ya yutupela i wok long pilaim. A, mi no save long en. Olsem na bai mi askim long yutupela long tokim mi bai mi stat olsem wanem? Hamas man i ken pilai long dispela pilai, samting olsem a? Oke.

J: A, dispela gem em snuka. Ol i kolim nem bilong en em snuka. Na i na--yu ken pilai olsem fopela man. Yu ken pilai olsem ol i kolim fohans. Na tupela man yu ken pilai olsem tuhans. Na sapos yu laik pilai oke bai yu putim tu wanem? --tupela florin¹ i go insait tasol. Em twenti toea koins. Yu putim go insait yu presim bai ol bal² i kam daun. Insait long dispela em 16-pela bal i stap. Na wanpela wait bol, wanpela blak bol. Oke 14-pela ol--sampela--sampela bol bai yu lukim olsem namba bai i go inap long 14. Olsem wan bai i go inap long 14 nau. Sampela bai yu lukim grin na sampela bai yelo. Olsem kala kala. Tasol namba i hat liklik na kala em i isi olsem na --sapos mitupela tupela man nau pilai a? Sapos mitupela putim na em bai mitupela presim 40--putim 40 toea i go insait na presim nau. Kam daun nau. Oke bai mitupela kisim na putim--lainim antap long tebol. Na i gat wanpela traiengol³ i stap. Wanpela putim insait namel long dispela traiengol. Orait bai wanpela bilong mitupela bai brukim. Sapos mitupela brukim na sapos em putim wanpela bol i go insait...

D: A, yu inap tokim mi, yu min olsem wanem long hap tok ya 'brukim'?

J: A, olsem. Em bai --em bai kisim. Em bai putim wait bol long hap na em bai kisim stik bilong en na em bai sutim dispela waitpela bol ya. Oke dispela waitpela bol bai i go na brukim bol olsem. Bai mipela bungim olgeta bol, blak na grin na ol dispela bol ya, bai mipela bungim insait long traiengol ya. Bai mipela bungim i stap na em bai kisim dispela stik bilong en na kisim dispela waitpela bol putim long hap sait kona na bai sutim i kam. I kam bai brukim ol dispela bol i bung bung long en ya. Em bai brukim. Oke em brukim na sapos wanpela i go insait em bai sapos grin i go insait, em bai pilaim grin na sapos bl-- yelo i no go insait em bai mi pilaim yelo. Sapos em pinisim olgeta bol bilong en olsem em grin olgeta em pinisim, oke em bai--em bai las bol bilong em long singkim,⁴ em bai blak bol. So em singkim blak

bol em bai winim mi. Na sapos mi singkim olgeta--wanem?--kala bilong mi, na sapos mi singkim olgeta na mi singkim--las bol em blak bol ya na mi singkim dispela em bai mi win. Na sapos mitupela pilai yet na em i olsem sutim wait bol na wait bol i go insait em bai inap long givim mi tupela sot.⁵ Na dispela tupela sot bai mi kisim na bai mi pilai. Sapos olsem laki mi singkim olgeta em bai mi singkim. Sapos nogat em bai mi sutim tupela sots bilong mi i go nating.

D: Oke, tenkyu tru long yutupela.

J: Tenkyu tru long kisim toktok bilong mitupela.

¹florin. This was a two shilling coin in the old currency. Its modern equivalent is the twenty toea coin.

²Note the fluctuation in Jack's pronunciation of *ball*, firstly bal and then as in English bol.

³traingol. This is used to arrange the balls on the table before play commences.

⁴sink i.e., *make the ball go in one of the pockets on the side of the table.*

⁵shot

Text 5: Mi salim buai

On a wet day in the middle of the rainy season in the Madang Province Anna Apa of Saidor village was selling betelnut by the side of the road. In this interview she discusses her small business.



Anna selling betelnut

D: Wanem nem bilong yu?

A: Nem bilong mi Anna.

D: A, yu bilong wanem hap?

A: Mi bilong Saidor.

D: Yu bin skul o nogat?

A: Yea, mi bin skul long gred siks.

D: Yu pinisim skul long gred siks tasol?

A: Yes.

D: Mi lukim yu gat sampela buai i stap long hia. A, yu save salim buai planti taim o sampela taim tasol?

A: Yes, mi save salim olgeta taim.

D: Yu save winim planti mani o nogat?

A: Yes, mi save winim bikpela mani liklik.

D: Gutpela. A, long wok bilong yu long salim buai a--i gat planti kain buai o hamas? O yu ting olsem wanem?

A: Ye, i gat planti buai.

D: A, taim yu tok planti a--planti kain, laka? Ol buai bilong yu yu save planim o i save gro nating na yu save go kisim nating long bus?

A: Mi yet mi save planim.

D: A, yu save go tu long taun long salim buai bilong yu o nogat?

A: Yea. Sampela taim mi save kisim i go long taun na mi salim.

T: (in background indistinct)

D: Nau long hia yu wok long salim, a--hamas kain?

A: Tupela taim?¹

T: Tupela kain o:? I gat hamas kain buai i stap hia?

A: Na wanpela kain buai tasol.

T: Nn. Tasol dispela?

A: Em wankain kaikai bilong en.

T: Hn'hn

A: Ye.

T: O dispela i--i mo strong long dispela o nogat?

A: Ye, i strong wankain.

T: Hn'hn. Na dispela samting, em wanem?

A: Em daka.

T: Hn'hn. Yu painim we?

A: Long bus. Na mi yet mi planim.

T: Em i gro olsem wanem?

A: Ye. Em i gro. Bihain em--diwai i go antap na karim.

T: Em pikinini bilong en o plaua bilong en?

A: Yea, pikinini bilong en. Mipela save kaikai wantaim buai.

T: Yea. Na yu kaikai rop bilong dispela diwai tu?

A: Yea. Sampela ol i save kaikai rop bilong en. Em weldaka.

T: A--

A: Na dispela em mipela i no save kaikai rop bilong en. Pikinini bilong en tasol mipela save kaikai.

D: Yu save wokim kambang bilong yu yet o yu save baim long hap-- sampela hap-- na karim i kam?

A: Mipela save baim long maket.

T: Ol i--ol i wokim olsem wanem?

A: Ol i kukim skin bilong kina. Ol i save salim na mipela save baim.

T: Na olsem wanem? Ol i kukim long paia stret o i boilim em o wanem?

A: Ol i kukim long paia stret.

T: Na bihain ol i wokim?

A: Bihain ol i putim long tin na ol kaikai.

T: Nau em wok bilong--wok bilong kambang i wanem? Taim ya-- sapos yu kaikai buai wantaim kambang em wanem samting i kamap?

A: I ret.

T: I ret?

A: Yea.

T: Sapos yu no kaikai kambang?

A: Em bai i no inap ret.

T: Aha.

D: Ol man i save kaikai buai ol i save olsem save laik spak tu long en o nogat?

A: Sampela buai i--i pait. Ol i save spak liklik. Sampela i gutpela.

¹Anna's reply here suggests that she mistook kain in the interviewer's question for taim. This misinterpretation is partly explained by the fact that Anna was very nervous during the interview and partly by the fact that it was also raining heavily at the time.

Text 6: Pasin bilong wokim sospen graun

Edna Raymond is a potter. In this interview she explains how she makes traditional clay pots.



Edna

D: A, wamen samting yu save wokim pastaim tru long wokim dispela sospen?

E: Mipela save go digim graun na mipela save putim long wara. Em i save malomalo pinis mipela save kisim na wokim gen. Putim long san, draim gut. Mipela save kukim long paia. Na mipela save penim bihain. Bihain long mipela kukim pinis mipela save penim. I no bikpela wok tumas. Em tasol.

T: Yu kukim long wanem samting?

E: Paia.

T: Yea, wanem kain paia? Long--

E: Mipela save kisim ol paiawut i kam bungim pinis mipela save putim long-- putim antap long paiawut pinis na mipela save karamapim sampela ol gras nabaut na mipela save kukim.

T: Yu wokim long bombom o kukim long bombom o?

E: Em tu. Mipela save kukim long bombom tu.

T: Na tasol olsem wanem yu save taim em i kuk p--em i tan pinis na--?

E: Em kuk nau na em bai olsem wanem?--lait¹ nogut tru a? Taim mipela wokim nating long wanem ya?--graun, bai i no lait tumas. Em bai i braun liklik. Mipela kukim nau na em bai i lait liklik. Na bihain mipela bai i kisim graun gen bai mipela penim ol waitpela na retpela o blakpela. Mipela save penim.

T: Yu save penim long wanem samting ya? Pen yu baim long stua o nogat?

- E: Nogat. Em bilong mipela yet. Long graun tasol. Waitpela na wanem?--ol blakpela na retpela. Mipela save kisim na penim.
- T: Sapos yu laik yu ken kisim pen long stua?
- E: Em i orait tu. Mipela save kisim na penim tu.
- T: Yu penim long wanem samting?
- E: Penim long wanem ya?--ol--lip bilong wanem?--gras. Mipela save kisim na mipela save sutim long wanem ya?--graun gen na mipela save penim gen.
- D: A, yupela inap kisim ol kain kain graun tasol long wokim sospen o wok--kisim painim kain graun stret bilong wokim sospen?
- E: Em mipela save kisim graun stret bilong wokim sospen. Mipela save kisim na wokim.
- D: Na kain graun i save pulap long olgeta hap o i gat sampela hap bilong en stret?
- E: Ol dispela graun nabaut em mipela no save wokim. Em wanpela graun tasol mipela lukim olsem gutpela long mipela wokim, em mipela save kisim na wokim.
- D: A, hamas taim bai i ken kisim yu long wanpela sospen, em long dispela kain bikpela bilong sospen ya?
- E: Mipela save kisim olsem wanpela bek. Na mipela save wokim ol liklik liklik. Mipela i no save wokim bikpela bikpela, liklik liklik.
- D: Oke. Hamas wik o hamas de inap kisim yu long pinisim wanpela sospen olsem?
- E: Em dispela kain ol sospen em mipela save wokim long wanpela de tasol. Na narapela de mipela save putim ol pes bilong en. Nau mipela save putim tasol long san. Em i save drai.
- T: Na dispela pes bilong en em i --em i gat mining o?
- E: Tasol sampela i gat mining. Na sampela nogat. Em ol sampela pot ya ol i putim ol pes bilong en i gat mining tu. Ol bikpela man tu ol i save.

¹*light (in colour)*

Text 7: Pitpit

In this interview Stephen Buku talks about the value of pitpit to people on the Sepik. Stephen comes from Yenchenmangua village not far downstream from Pagwi.



Stephen eating pitpit

S: Yes. Long a--taim bilong wokim gaden em mipela save olsem: taim bikpela haiwara i kam, long Sepik, em i save daunim olgeta ples insait long Sepik. Na mipela i no gat ples bilong wokim gaden. Sampela ol man long maunten ol i lukim mipela, ol i save tok, "Yupela olsem pato, slip long wara". Em i tru. Na dispela taim mipela no gat gaden. Na taim wara i drai--taim wara i laik drai, orait, mipela save luksave long pitpit. Em ya waitpela plaua i stap long Sepik na mi shouinim¹ Tom na yu lukim dispela. Em mipela save long dispela em i pitpit nau. Em i karim. Orait plaua bilong en i kamaut. Taim wara i drai i go daun plaua bilong en i kamaut na bikpela draiwara i kam. Em i save pundaun long nambis. Na taim yumitupela ran i go antap long Sepik mi soim Tom. Yu lukim ol liklik pitpit em i groap olsem ol liklik gras.

Orait taim--dispela taim mipela save wokim gaden. Na taim mipela wokim gaden katim ol pitpit, bai mekim em i drai bai i ken stap olsem wanpela wik samting o tri, fopela de, bai san i benim² na em i drai. Laitim paia na troimweim ol pitpit i go. Orait rausim olgeta pipia na planim ol kaikai ya. Mipela save planim ol sampela vestavol,³ olsem taro, banana, na ol swit poteto, kon, watameden a-- tomato, kebij, bin. Mipela save planim olsem. Ol taim bilong draiwara. Taim mipela planim pinis na taim haiwara i kam em mipela save luksave olsem bikpela win em i stap tambolo long tait i go daun. I stap long maus bilong Kupa na i kam antap olsem. Mipela save olsem em haiwara i stat nau. Mipela save kamautim taro, na ol yam, na kisim i go long haus. Olsem etpela yam ol i planim long en.

Na taim mipela larim ol sampela yam i stap long gaden em mipela save olsem bikpela haiwara i kam nau mipela save pait wantaim wara na kamautim ol yam. Bikpela bikpela longpela longpela yam tru. Mi no save long fit bai mi ken tok. Ating samting olsem seven fit, o seven fit em mak bilong Osara ya. Ol save kamautim yam inap olsem seven o et, nain fit long. Ol i save kamautim.

Bipo long tumbuna bilong mipela ol i save kamautim olsem tu. Ten o eleven--ten o eleven fit, ol i save kamautim yam. Na nau mipela i no gat. Mipela kamautim olsem tri fit tasol.

Na pitpit taim wara i daunim dispela ol pitpit--yangpela pitpit yu lukim--Tom, yu likim long en--taim em i groap em inap olsem seven o et fit long, taim wara i kam, haiwara i kam daunim em, mipela save brukim olsem nau long san mi soim yu na yu kaikai traim. Ekskus (cough) ekskus mi. Em ol kain pitpit olsem na mipela save--yu go brukim. Ol manki--taim ol manki i kisim kanu ol bai i go brukim pitpit nau ol i kaikai. Na ol i save kisim kanu na i go arasait drip namel long Sepik kaikai i go daun. Em dispela kain nau mi soim yu na yu lukim. Yu kaikai na yu pilim olsem wanem? Em i gutpela o nogut?

T: Em i gutpela tru. Tenkyu tru. Em i swit mo.

S: O yes ya. Em samting em i stap long wara em i difren⁴ tru long taim em i stap antap long graun. Em taim pitpit i stap long wara mipela save brukim na kaikai olsem. Taim mipela i go long longwe hap o ol papa bilong mipela wokim gaden ol i hangre, ol i save kisim draipela saksak i go daun long wara brukim pitpit, o nogat, ol i kisim bikpela pitpit i stap antap long gaden. Katim pinis, ol i save kukim long paia na kaikai wantaim drai saksak. Em stori stori bilong Sepik.

¹Stephen used the English form *shown* here but gives it the Tok Pisin ending *-im*. The normal Tok Pisin form is of course *soim*.

²*burn*, normally one would use *kukim for this*.

³*vegetable*

⁴*different*. This is modern Tok Pisin for *narakain*.

Text 8: Kanggo na salvinia

Once again we have Stephen Buku. This time he is describing kanggo, a wild sweet potato that grows along the Sepik River, and salvinia, a noxious weed that once fouled many waterways of the area.

S: Yes, Tom, dispela kumu yu lukim, em mipela kolim kanggo. Em i kumu gras long wara. Em i mein¹ grins bilong Sepik. Long ples bilong mi yet em mein grins bilong mi yet long ples bilong mi long Yenchenmangua, mipela save kaikai dispela. Ol sampela ples i save tok pilai long ples bilong mi yet. Ol i kolim tokples bilong mipela--ol i save kolim kages...mari.²

Em dispela. Olsem nau long ples kaikai pinis na bai i sutim tok i go long ples bilong mi. Em dispela tokples mining bilong en mi kolim pinis. Em dispela kumu yu lukim em kanggo. Em gupela kumu long mipela long Sepik wara. Taim mipela i no gat kumu long gaden, em mipela save yusim dispela kumu. Em tasol Tom.

T: Tenkyu tru. Na dispela a--bipo em i gat wanpela gras nogut i save gro long Sepik. Nau tasol dispela masta i kam na rausim em. Yu inap stori liklik long dispela gras tu, salvinia, ating ol i kolim em a?

S: Yes Tom. Insait long Sambri Lek,³ dispela gras em i stap inap sevenpela yia olgeta. Ol lain bilong famili brata bilong mi i stap long Luluk. Lain bilong-- Jakob, lain bilong Wasket, ol i stap. Ol i stap sevenpela yia. Ol i no kam long Pagwi. Ol i no go ausait long Sepik, lukim pes bilong Sepik. Ol i wokim gaden long tapiok. Ol i planim tapiok na kaikai dispela inap sevenpela yia i go pinis.

Taim ol i stap sevenpela yia mekim et long en mi go insait long wok gol⁴ na mi painim dispela famili. Ol i stap. Traipela gaden tapiok bilong ol mi go kaikai hap dispela tapiok. Dispela sevinia planti ol man i go insait putim kanu, yu no inap tru go autsait. I gat planti moto long Sambri Lek em i paia long dispela samting ol i kolim sevinia. Kil bilong en⁵ em i inap longpela inap olsem tasol mi no save hamas fit, ating wan fit, wan na hap fit samting long.

Dispela taim em i go daun long wara em i --yu no inap tru long muv. Maski tait, wanem samting i kam, taim yu putim kanu yu no inap tru long muv. Olsem na dispela sevinia em i stap sevenpela yia olgeta.

Orait dispela masta, Jakob, em i go pinis. Ol i traिम marasin. Ol i spreim marasin. Em i dai tasol em i gro bek. Na ol i kisim ol liklik binatang. Na ol i kam putim na dispela binatang yet i pinisim olgeta sevinia long olgeta raunwara long Sepik. Nau yu lukim bai i no ken painim wanpela sevinia moa. Ol liklik tasol i ken gro long arere long Sepik, tasol ol binatang i lukim, tsh!, wan tu ol autim pinis. Dispela em i denjeres⁶ tru. Planti ol man i painim hat laif tru long dispela a--wit, ol i kolim sevinia molesta. Em tasol Tom.

T: Em tasol.

¹main, *prinoipal*, *chief*

²This vernacular expression was not transcribed in the field. It is, however, not important to the Tok Pisin of the description.

³*Chambri Lakes*

⁴*gold mining*

⁵*tap root*

⁶*dangerous*

Text 9: Pasin bilong painim mani long Waagu

Here Dicks Thomas interviews Joseph Baka, a twenty-seven year old resident of Waagu village near Ambunti. Joseph is describing aspects of life in his area.



Joseph

D: Ating bai mi askim yu nau long pasin bilong painim mani long hia. Yupela i stap long hia em i isi long painim mani o nogat?

J: O, mipela--nau long dispela taim mipela isi liklik long painim mani nau. Mipela i gat mani. Mipela save kisim olsem long maket na long laip¹ pukpuk na skin pukpuk tu.

D: Gutpela. A, yupela save kisim pukpuk olsem wanem?

J: Mipela save sutim long tel bilong em na holim. Na bikpela nogat. Yumi mas sutim stret na katim het bilong em na rausim skin.

D: Gutpela. A, yupela save sutim wanem hap bilong pukpuk. Yupela save sutim nating o yupela mas makim hap stret bilong en long i dai?

J: A, mipela mas makim stret long hap bilong en long i dai. Antap long klostu long het na join bilong em yet.

D: Tru. A, hamas mita o longpela bilong pukpuk, we yupela save kisim planti taim?

J: Sampela i olsem 20 mita, longpela bilong em. Na inap long mak bilong kisim mani em i 20 insis tasol. Olsem yumi save skelim tep. Tep i tok i inap long 20 insis oke yumi ken salim na kisim mani.

D: A, em longpela bilong en o bikpela bilong en?

J: Open² bilong en.

¹*crocodile meat* (lit. *body crocodile*)

²The width of the skin across the belly when it is opened out.

Text 10: Pasin bilong smokim pis

At a fishing camp on a tributary of the Sepik Saon Niav was smoking fish. Here she talks about the fish. Saon comes from the Ambunti district.



Saon

T: Em i kostim hamas?

S: Em 50t. Em Kl. Em 40t. Em 50t.

T: Nau wanem kain pis em i stap hia?

S: Em nilpis. Em mipela save tok *makao*.

T: *Makao*. I gat planti long *makao* o planti long nilpis?

S: Planti long *makao*.

T: Na yu save he--kukim olsem wanem?

S: Mipela save putim long bet na mipela save putim pous¹ tu long insait. Em nau ol i save paia. Na mipela save kisim i go long Maprik.

T: Em hamas taim em i stap na em i-- em i kuk pinis?

S: Em, wan hua tasol. I no longpela taim.

T: Smok tasol em i save kam antap na kukim em?

S: Ya. Smok na paia save lait na em i go antap na kisim nau em save paia kwik. Ye, hotpela paia save kisim. Em save paia kwik.

T: Yu mas--taim em i kuk yu--yu mekim wanem? Yu tantanim o nogat?

S: Ya, mipela save tanim tanim. Na em save kuk hariap.

T: Na nem bilong yu husat?

S: Nem bilong mi em Saon.

T: Na nem bilong papa bilong yu?

S: Em i Niav.

T: Na yu meri bilong wanem hap?

S: Mi, Yambuin.

T: Yambun.

S: Ya.

T: Na dispela liklik ples ol i kolim wanem?

S: Em--em no gat nem.

T: Em no gat nem?

S: Ya.

T: Aha. Nau yupela i save painim pis we?

S: Long baret ya na long raunwara i stap antap mipela save kisim.

T: Kisim long wanem?

S: Long net.

T: Long net tasol?

S: Ya, long net tasol.

T: Yu save hukim em tu?

S: Nogat.

T: A. Na sampela pukpuk tu i stap?

S: Ya. I gat. Mo yet.

¹*pouch, slit*

Text 11: Tamiok bilong mipela

This is another interview with Paius Pasen. He is describing axes and adzes of different kinds.



Paius

- D: Gutpela. Oke bai mi askim yu nau long ol dispela samting yu wok long holim i stap. A--em ol dispela samting ol i wanem samting?
- P: Dispela em ol ain o tamiok bilong mipela. Mipela save--ol tumbuna i bin yusim taim bilong katim o long paitim saksak na long sapim kanu, ol samting olsem.
- D: A--long tokples bilong yupela, yupela save kolim ol dispela samting long wanem?
- P: Long tokples bilong mi yet, long dispela ol ston tamiok na long dispela long paitim saksak, em bilong paitim saksak mipela i kolim *kawi* na bilong katim diwai, olsem katim diwai o sapim kanu, mipela kolim ol *kul*.
- D: Na sapos long traipela kanu hamas taim olgeta bai yu ken yusim long pinisim wanpela kanu?
- P: Long wokim bikpela kanu, bipo ol taim ol i yusim? Mi yet mi no bin lukim. Tasol stori we mi bin harim long ol lapun bilong mi em i tok olsem--ol i bin stori olsem: taim ol i yusim ston, ston tamiok o ston akis ol i yusim paia wantaim ston long katim. Na i tekim klostu sikis mans sapos ol i wo--sapim bikpela kanu tumas.
- D: O yes, na i gat ol dipren sais? Mi lukim tripela akis wantaim yu holim. Wanpela bilong saksak na tupela bilong diwai. A--yupela i gat nem bilong ol dispela kain sais ya o nogat? Olgeta ston akis tasol?
- P: I gat. Long tokples i gat ol nem bilong ol liklik na bikpela na bilong--olsem dispela mi holim em pastaim mi bin tok em i *kawi* em bilong paitim saksak. Na dispela bilong sapim kanu o sapim kaving ol i yusim long bipo, em mipela kolim *takul* na em dispela arapela tu em liklikpela *takul* gen.
- D: O gutpela. Wanem kain diwai yupela save yusim long pasim wantaim ston na yupela yupela holim. Olsem ol Inglis ol i tok handol?
- P: Long pasim ston ol i pasim ston, em mipela i yusim kwila na garamut stret bikos dispela i strong--i mas strong long holim dispela. Na long handol em mipela--ol papa save yusim dispela manggas bikos em i no strong, em i lait we bai man i holim em i mas hevi stap long ples we ston i stap long en.
- D: Ol rop ya, wanem kain rop?
- P: Ol rop i pasim dispela em ol kanda. Ol papa save kisim na katim long mambu yet. Ol save rausim gut bel bilong ol na wokim paspas. Na i save holim ol ston.
- D: Mm--yu save long pasim? Em dispela kain pasin bilong pasim a-- ol ston o hap diwai nabaut bilong wokim wanpela a-- akis?
- P: O, mi yet mi no gat save. Papa bilong mi i gat save. Na ol man i bikpela liklik long mi ol i gat save. Na mi yet mi no klia long dispela bikos mi wanpela raunman¹ tu.

- D: Na yu save i gat sampela man i save yusim yet dispela tamiok bilong bipo?
- P: Yes. Mi bin lukim long taim mi bin--em mi wok insait long hia olsem long lods² nau, mi bin karim sampela turis raun na mi bin bungim wanpela lain i bin yusim dispela. Em long Sepik --namel Sepik--o Sepik antap i go olsem long Epril Riva mi lukim ol yusim dispela na ol i paitim saksak.

¹a person who moves around from place to place

²lodge. At the time of recording Paius was working at the Ambunti Lodge.

Text 12: Taim bilong wo

In 1942 Amasai Yengegwot was captured by the Japanese in New Britain and taken to Papua to work as a carrier. Here he talks about some of his experiences.



Amasai

- D: Oke. Taim yupela i bin i stap i go wo na wanem taim long Siapan i kam stret long graun na lukim yupela? Yu stori nau!
- A: Em, mipela i stap tasol long stesin sip bilong Japani yet i go kisim mipela yet long Pondo. Mipela i pret. Sampela i ranawe long hap bilong Nakanai. Na mipela, sampela i strong i stap wantaim namba wan masta bilong yumi.¹ Orait sip i go nau na kisim mipela wantaim. I kam sua long Wunerima. Na em nau na-- kisim na--tupela masta i go long narapela hap, e--kisim mipela i go long narapela hap long o--wanem?--Wunerima tambolo na antap, Palawat.
- D: Palawat.
- A: Kisim mipela i go i stap na a--samapim namba long laplap bilong yumi¹ na i kam daun gen long Wunerima. Em nau sakim² mipela nau. Sakim mipela, ol --lukim olsem man i lapun o bun nating lusim ol. Kisim mipela ol yangpela, gutpela strongpela man tasol. I go, putim mipela i go insait long banis. Long bikbris kopra tambolo na hul i kapsait i kam daun na em --bikpela banis we i stap ya. Em kalabusim mipela ya. Na mipela i stap insait long banis. Na raunim³ olgeta samting i kaundim mipela wantaim olgeta samting, kago. Ol i nilim plang olsem sea na putim bek rais antap. Em nau, opim dua na kisim mipela, go daun long bikbris long kopra wof. Sip i kam sua i stap kisim mipela. "Go!" Ating, mi no save, tupela nait samting mipela i ran i go long Buna.⁴ Klostu mipela laik go sua olsem ating faiv oklok samting, em nau balus bilong Austrelia i go daun bomim yumi.¹ Tasol i abrus. I no bomim mipela. Em i go sua nau sik oklok, pasin bilong kalabus. Lainim olgeta kago mipela i karim pinis wokabaut nau. "Kanak umboio! Go, go!" Raunim mipela. (Laugh) Raunim mipela i go, sori, ples tais nogut. Mipela ting ating bai mipela i go painim gutpela ples na slip. Nogat! Mipela i go sindaun olsem planim long plantesen sindaun nau inap long tulait. O, sori tu! Na gat kaikai long yumi. Sori tru. Sori tru! Maski lukluk long rop o wanem samting mipela yet i wokabaut tasol na brukim kaikai wokabaut. Go, yu go inap long--mipela i go sindaun long Popondetta.

[footnotes opposite]

¹Note the use of *yumi* here (and in Text 13 for example) where one would normally expect *mipela*. This usage may be a device to make the events being described more real by incorporating the hearer in the action.

²*checked, examined*

³*assembled*

⁴*we travelled/sailed (for two nights or so) to Buna.*

Text 13: Pasin bilong kisim pukpuk

Kanduanum villagers on the lower Sepik have an interesting way of catching crocodiles. Here Baldasai Asapi explains.



Baldasai (left) with relatives

B: We *mipela* save *kilim ol pukpuk long tais mipela i go painim ples we ol pukpuk i kamap long en*. *Mipela go lukim sapos liklik hul long tais, sapos nau tasol em i kam antap, em bai mipela banisim*. *Banisim pastaim putim ol hap hap ol lip long a-- saksak we bai taim em i ran bai yumipela¹ i mas lukim sapos em i mekim nois*.

Oke *mipela i kalap i go daun wok long holim long troimwe lek i go i go i go i go i go sapos tasim² em, em bai sem nau bai em stap*. Oke *bai mipela i tokim narapela, "Em i stap olsem. Tel i stap hia. Het stap long hap."* Oke *bai--wokim hul--narapela hul gen*. *Katim, katim dispela ples we pukpuk i stap long en*. *Narapela go daun bai kalap na sindaun antap long en*. *Sindaun antap long en em holim maus bilong en pinis nau bai tokim narapela pren ya, "Kisim kanda i kam!" Kisim kanda i kam nau, pasim maus bilong en*. *Pasim pinis--pasim narapela lek bilong en, han bilong en*. Oke *mi--mipela pulim i kam antap*. *Pukpuk bai i no inap kaikaim yu sapos em i stap long wara*. *Pukpuk save pait long taim em i stap long graun*. *Yu bungim em, em bai ranim yu, em kaikaim yu stret*. *Planim tit long yu bai em i no inap lusim*.

T: *Bilong wanem em i no save pait long wara?*

B: *Long wanem em i pretim em yet bikos sapos em i dring-- sapos em i opim maus insait long wara em bai i dringim dispela wara nau, em mas i dai*. *So taim yu go daun long wara em yu go sef³*. *I no inap long pukpuk i pait long yu o-- yu ken holim em*. *Isi tasol yu kisim*. *Na sapos em i stap long wara i hat long en long pait*. *Em bai i hat long wokim maus bilong en*. *Em bai pret long en yet*. *Nogut em i dai*.

¹Note the use of *yumipela* here where one would expect *mipela*; cf. Text 12 for example.

²*touch*

³*safe*

[Singing]

"Woma" (Sanguma Band)

Text 14: Bisnis kakaruk

Baobao Asanga is talking about his poultry business. Baobao was originally from Mussau Island but learnt his Tok Pisin during World War II in Kavieng where he has lived since.



Baobao

- D: Gutpela. Oke a--bai mi askim yu. Mi save yu ranim sampela liklik wok long hia na olsem na mitupela laik painaut long dispela. A, yu ranim wanem kain wok long hia nau long Kofikofik?
- B: A, dispela wok bilong mi em i stat olsem bikos bipo mi bin wok long gavman long a--didiman. Na mi wok i go i go na mi tingting long ranim bisnis bilong mi na mi tokim namba wan long didiman. Na mi pinis long didiman na mi kam statim pasta'im ol liklik stua bilong mi na mi wokim liklik stua bilong mi nau.
- D: Oke, mi laik bai yu tokim mitupela yu bin stat long wanem krismas na wanem samting yu wok long salim. Na sapos yu gat sampela asua long ranim dispela liklik stua bilong yu mitupela laik bai yu tokim mitupela.
- B: A, dispela liklik wok bilong mi mi statim long 1978, dispela liklik wok bilong mi nau i kam nau i kisim nau a--1985 nau, long liklik stua bilong mi. Na taim mi statim nau na mi wok i go i go na mi ting long kisim ol kos bilong ol kakaruk na mi kisim kakaruk ya. Na em kakaruk na stua tupela i wok long wok wantaim nau.
- D: A, wanem taim yu bin statim kakaruk?
- B: O kakaruk i tru long bipo bipo yet i go pinis, taim mi kam sindaun long blok ya, mi statim a--kakaruk. Tasol wanpela samting mi strak¹ long en, long didiman bikos olsem mi askim sampela gutpela halipim long didiman na olsem long kaikai tasol mi strak long en bikos kaikai i no save kam hariap. Na mi strak na legoim olgeta kakaruk, kakaruk bilong bipo bipo yet. Oraim nau i kam nau long dispela taim nau mi kisim bek long a--nau long 84 mi kisim bek kakaruk na mi wok long lukautim kakaruk wantaim liklik stua bilong mi nau.
- D: Gutpela. A, hamas kakaruk i stap insait long banis?
- B: Nau mi kisim wan handet kakaruk. Tasol taim em i kam long Mosbi, taim em i liklik tru, dispela handet kakaruk na em i kam, na 30-pela kakaruk em i dai. Na i gat 70-pela kakaruk i sanap tasol.
- D: Ol i stat pinis long putim kiau?
- B: A, ol i stat pinis long kisim kiau. Na ol i save lei² samting olsem a--50 o i kam daun long 20 a--30 bikos samting i no gat kaikai na sampela--samtaim i gat kaikai ol i leim² mo kak--kiau.
- D: Gutpela. A, yu save salim ol kiau bilong yu long husat?
- B: A, mi salim long ol Jainis³ ol kiau bilong mi mi salim a--ol kiau bilong mi long ol Jainis. Tasol nau mi sindaun long putim toea long a--put a-- 17 toea long wanpela kiau.

¹strike

[footnotes continued opposite]

²Note the different forms of this verb *to lay (eggs)*. Although both should be *leim* presumably this fluctuation reflects an imperfectly understood difference between the transitive and intransitive forms *lay* in English. Note also that there are perfectly good older forms (*putim/kisim kiau*) available which, indeed, have been used earlier in the text. This sort of variation and the increasing anglicisation of the vocabulary is the hallmark of modern Tok Pisin, as already noted.

³*Chinese*

Text 15: Mi printa

Philip Lungana, a young man from the Pomio area of the southern coast of New Britain, works in the Provincial Government printery at Rabaul. Here he describes his work.



Philip

- P: A--mi wokim wok olsem wanpela long ol atist a--long dispela printingrum yet long Provinsol Gavman ya. A--mi bin stat wok wantaim ol long a--82. Bihain tasol mi bin kambek long trening long Goroka. Mi kam stat wok wantaim ol long 82. I luk olsem klostu tripela krismas bilong mi nau wantaim ol.
- T: Wanem kain wok yu save wokim em ya?
- P: A, mipela i save wokim ol a--olsem sapos taim ol a--membra bilong yumi long Ist Niu Briten i kam bung wantaim long miting mipela i printim ol sabmisen¹ olsem ol a--sampela ol rul o ol toktok bilong ol ol i bin wokim long taim bilong miting. Orait ol i wokim long pepa nau bai mipela i kam long putim kamapim olsem wanpela buk bilong olgeta toktok ol i bin wokim long dispela sindaun o miting bilong ol long a-- Provinsol Gavman.
- T: Na yu gat wanem kain masin ya?
- P: O, mipela gat planti a--ol a--printing masin na ol a--olsem potokopi na mipela i gat wanpela traipela masin em a--gavman bilong Jemeni bin baim na givim mipela. Em ken printim tupela kala long semtaim² tasol. Na i gat narapela taipseta olsem kompiuta i stap long narapela rum tu. Mipela i gat. Em Provinsol Gavman yet i bin baim a--na narapela liklik printing masin gen em a--liklik bilong dispela ol gavman bilong Jemeni bin baim. A--em bilong AM Intenesonol long Pot Mosbi. Mipela i bin baim long ol. Na mipela i tingting long baim sampela samting gen bilong, olsem bilong katim pepa. Na long dakrum mipela gat tupela masin gen. Em traipela masin bilong kisim piksa na bilong kukim ol alumenium plets olsem kapa na bilong a--wokim ol kain samting olsem buk na piksa na ol samting olsem.

¹*submission*

²*same time (= wantaim)*

Text 16: Kumu na abus

Here is Philip Lungana again talking about the meanings of the words kumu and abus in the East New Britain area.

T: Na mi laik save tu long dispela hap ol i yusim wanem kain wod? Ol i tok long sayor o kumu tasol?

P: O, kumu tasol. Mi no--mipela i no save long sayor. A, em kumu tasol ya. Olsem--olsem dispela nem kumu em i karamapim olgeta samting, olsem aibika, kabis, o wanem kain ol grins o wanem ya ol i save planim ya, em mipela putim ol long wanpela nem tasol, olsem kumu. Olsem ferns o ol samting nabaut ya. Mipela putim aninit tasol long olsem --Inglis ol i se 'kategori' o wanem ya. Wanpela tasol em mipela kolim kumu.

T: Em, a, na dispela wod abus em mining bilong em i wanem?

P: Em abus tu olsem. Bai mi kolim olsem pis o pik o kumu tu. Kumu o wanem kain samting olsem yu kaikai wantaim wanpela drai kaikai olsem taro o kaukau o singapo.¹ Na yu--yu kaikai wantaim dispela kain ol samting olsem pis. Ol dispela em mipela kolim olsem em abus ya. Yu abusim pis wantaim kaukau o kumu wantaim taro o olsem yu kolim em --em abus ya. Na taim yu kaikai tupela wantaim em olsem ol tok yu abusim tupela wantaim.

¹Singapo or tingapo is a common Islands (as distinct from mainland) name for taro kongkong or giant taro (*Xanthosoma sagittifolium*).

Text 17: Mi wanpela panta

In this interview Solomon Alipet, who is twenty-nine, discusses his background and betting on horse races. Solomon comes from the Duke of York Islands between New Britain and New Ireland.



Solomon

S: Nem bilong mi em Solomon Alipet. Na em olsem yu tok pinis mi bilong Duke of York Ailan insait yet long Ist Niu Briten. Nau mi wok long hia long wanpela opis i stap insait long Provinsol Gavman Het Kwatas. Em dispela liklik opis bilong Nesenol Paks. Em ol i-- ol i save olsem ol lukautim ol wail laif na ol samting olsem. Wok bilong ol wantaim ol Wail Laif Divisen long Opis ov Envaironmen na Konvesesen. A, mi bin-- long skul bilong mi, mi bin kamap olsem wanpela haikul tisa. Tasol i gat sampela trabel i kamap wantaim mi na Het Masta na mi bin pinis. Na nau olsem mi wok. Mi bin wok olsem Edukesen Ofisa bilong Nesenol Paks Sevis. Bihain ol i pinisim dispela long 1982 na ol i putim mi i kam olsem Provinsol Renja.

T: Yu a--membra bilong wanpela klab o nogat?

S: Yes, mi bin memba long wanpela klab. Tasol i no nau. Mi pinis nau long dispela. A--1982 mi bin fomim wanpela Austrelien Ruls Futbol Klab long Rabaul wantaim sampela lain. Na mipela i ranim dispela i go nau ol manki i no kooperait gut. Olsem na long 1984, long las yia, mi bin kamap olsem president na at tha seim taim sekreteri tu bilong klab. Tasol ol manki i no bin kooperait long ol aktivitis mipela i wokim bilong fand resing bilong klab. Em nau na dis yia mi pinis olgeta long ol nau. Mi no mo lukim ol.

T: Na yu sa--yu sapota tu bilong wanpela arapela klab o nogat?

S: Nogat. Mi no sapotim wanpela klab.

T: Na yu mekim wanem long wiken long yu--taim malolo bilong yu?

S: Long wiken, long Sarere mi save go long a--pilai, ol i kolim long Hos Reising ya. Olsem wanpela panta. Em he he he! Em long Sarere. Na Sande--Sande mi stap tasol long haus, go long sevis pinis, kambek, stap. Bihain go lukluk tasol wanem gem i on. Em nau, go lukluk tasol long en.

T: Na dispela wod panta a--yu inap toksave long mipela em mining bilong en em i wanem?

S: Em panta em had bilong andastending bilong mi. Em wanpela Inglis wod ya. Na em min olsem yu go bet wan --man i save bet long wanem?--long ol hoses ol i reis long Austrelia ha ha ha!

T: Tasol bet em i wanem?

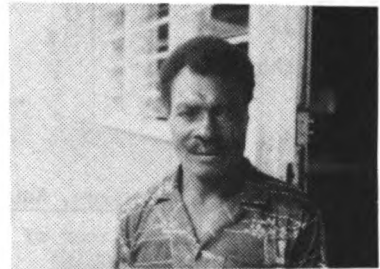
S: Bet em mani yu putim long--long hos o--ye, long hos, em yu ting bai i kamap win. Na yu putim bet long en, olsem yu bet long K10 em olsem mani yu putim, hamas olgeta yu putim, em bet bilong yu ya.

T: Orait na, tasol yu putim, na em i kamap olsem wanem ha ha--wanem samting bai i kamap na yu win o wanem?

S: Ye, olsem sapos yu putim K10 laka? Oke yu putim K10 long wanpela hos yu--olsem bet bilong yu ya K10. Oke na prais bilong en o maket bilong dispela hos i kamap 2. Oke yu putim K10 long en. Sapos hos i win nau yu kisim K20 nau. Olsem 2 em prais bilong hos o maket bilong en. Yu maliplai long dispela wantaim K10 olsem yu dabolim nau ya. Prais em 2 olsem yu dabolim. Em nau K20 yu winim. Oke wantaim mani bilong yu ya K10 em K30 bai yu kisim olgeta.

Text 18: Long draiva meri

Lucas Kole comes from the Kandrian area of the south coast of New Britain. He is thirty-eight years old and has not been to school. Here he discusses briefly his ideas about women learning to drive.



Lucas

L: Yes. Em i--i gutpela long ol meri i save draivim ka. Tasol dispela tingting bilong dispela sampela man i no--nogut long ol meri i draivim ka. Em tingting bilong mi olsem sapos ol meri i draivim ka na sapos man bilong ol isi i go --i go long wanpela hap na stap wantaim ol pikinini na pikinini sik nogut na bai husat i ken bringim ol long haus sik? Em i inap long ol meri i ken sevim pikinini i go long haus sik. Na long halivim kwik ol pikinini na ol i kisim marasin kwik long halivim ol long sik. Na i nogut ol i stap nating na ol i dai long haus na i no stret. Sapos ol meri kisim em go kwik long haus sik em bai i gutpela. Na ating tingting long man long stopim ol meri long ka em i--i nogut. I no gutpela pasin. Nogut i --bai--nogut i tingting nogut meri i go paul wantaim ka o meri kisim bagarap long ka i no stret long en. Ating olsem na i laik-- i no laik bai ol meri i draivim ka. Em tasol dispela tingting bilong mi olsem.

Text 19: Mi sekreteri

In the following interview Jessie Paragum of Rabaul, who is twenty-five, talks about her work as a secretary.



Jessie

J: Am--olgeta de long dispela divisen bilong mipela em i gat fopela seksen. Em long Edministresen, Woks end Enjiniring, Statistiks end Resetsh. Am--sampela taim sapos i no gat taiping o wok bilong Asisten Sekreteri, mi save kisim ol a--taiping bilong ol narapela divi--long ol narapela seksen bilong wokim. Olsem taiping, failing o eni kwiris¹ for ol thi otha² seksens long dipatmen bilong mipela.

T: Na dispela masin yu save taip long en em i wanem kain masin?

J: A, dispela masin mi wok long yusim em Olíveti AT11. Em bilong PNG Printing. Mipela bin kisim long hap. Tasol a--dispela--mi no yust tu³ yet long masin longpela taim na nau masin i bagarap na mi no wokim sampela wok yet long en.

T: Na em i gat memori long en o nogat?

J: Em i gat memori long en. Sapos mi--em sapos mi save taip long en mi save les long wok--a--wokim ol misteks, em i save putim i stap tasol na em i wokim taiping i go.

¹any queries

²all the other

³used to

Text 20: Japenis Wo Museum, Rabaul

Tomi Yu Koi is the caretaker of the Japanese War Museum in Rabaul. He is from Finschhafen in the Morobe Province and is talking here to Tom Dutton.



Tomi

TY: Ni--mi bilong a--mi woki--lukautim dispela musium long Japenis em i --mi kam long Morobe Provins long ples bilong mi long Finschhafen. Nem bilong mi Tomi Yu. Nem bilong mi Tomi Yu Koi. Nau mi stap hia 1963. Mi stap lukautim dispela museum. Olgeta hap long turis long ol i kamap hia long luk--lukim dispela museum na mi save sasim¹ olsem fifti toea long kolektim² dispela long edmisen.³ Nau long--mi stap wantaim long Turis Komisen i lukautim dispela mani. Nau mi save kolektim fifti toea. Na mi stat wok hia long 1963. Nau mi kam inap long handet fifti yias. Nau mi lukautim dispela museum. Nem bilong mi Tomi Yu.

TD: Na yu inap a--stori liklik long wanem samting i stap insait long dispela museum?

TY: Dispela museum em mipela putim olsem long masin gan na bom na redio stesin⁴ na raifol. Na i gat sampela piksa long--pilim tu mipela putim tu piksa bilong seken wol wo. Orait mipela putim dispela na mi save lukautim. Olgeta man long PNG kamap mi sasim fifti toea long edmisen. Orait nau mi stap i kam nau, na mi ken stori long yupela olsem.

TD: Na yu inap stori liklik long--olsem a--ol Jiapan--solodia bilong Japan i bin wokim dispela?

TY: O, o yes, dispela ol i Siapanis komoda⁵ em i sindaun na hait hia long dispela museum. Na ol Siapanis pipel bin sindaun pes na em seken wel wo, em i bikman, komoda bilong ol Siapanis, nem bilong Genrol Yamoto, bin pes em i stap long dispela museum na soto⁶ long Not Solomon ol i kilim em bilong--long Bouganvil long Buin. Orait nau na mipela i lukautim dispela ples. Na mi stori long en.

TD: Na ol i bin wokim em long simen o long a--hap diwai tasol?

TY: Em bin ol i bin kamapim dispela museum olsem, kamapim ol-- bin rausim ol graun na digim olgeta hap nau bin ol putim dispela simen. Nau i stap i kam. Nau i olgeta hap i kam ol i lukim dispela. I gat tripela masingan, a--fopela mipela putim arasait. Orait nau bihain long wo mipela rausim dispela olgeta samting na mi groim--i gat nais plaua na kokonas tri na banana, mango. Olgeta hap mi planim nau. Mi lukautim i stap.

¹*charge*

²*collect*

³*admission*

⁴Note Tomi says tesin for stesin.

⁵*commander*

⁶*soldiers*

Text 21: Bisnis bilong mipela

In this interview Panipas Totokum, a middle-aged man from Kunakunai village near Rabaul talks about his current business ventures.



Panipas

D: Orait long dispela bisnis bilong yupela mi save yupela i gat sampela samting olsem ka na a--stua stret yupela i ranim na yupela save wok--mi lukim long baksait i gat kakaruk na-- em i wanem kain wok stret husat i save lukautim?

- P: Antap long en long dispela tingting bilong mipela mipela i kirapim namba wan tru em kakao. Mipela i wokim haus drai bilong kakao na mipela i putim skel bilong skelim kakao bilong ol man ol i kam salim wetbin¹ kakao. Orait mipela i--i skelim na ol man yet long dispela-- ol memba long dispela bisnis em mipela tu karim kakao bilong mipela i kam. Mipela i no save ka--salim i go long narapela man, bilong mipela yet. Tasol sampela man ol i no memba ol i kam tu bilong salim kakao.
- D: Gutpela. Wanem samting tu yupela i gat?
- P: Mipela i--i gat liki--antap long en kakao i go pinis orait nau treid stua. Mipela i kirapim treid stua, olsem kentin.² Na nau i bikpela mo long dispela ol wok ya. Orait bihain long en mipela i kirapim ol kakaruk. Na em kakaruk em i stap tu. Na mipela -- bihain long en mipela i kirapim gen a--botol shop. Na em botol shop em i stap tu. Orait nau antap long en mipela i baim i go olsem 5-pela ka pinis. Tasol nau mipela i holim wanpela na wanpela mipela i salim i go long kampani bilong mipela. Orait nau dispela ol motoka ya long wanem olsem ol i westim mani, bilong wanem planti mani ol i go kaikai em. Orait mipela i salim sampela na mipela i holim tasol wanpela.
- D: Gutpela. Oke. A, mi--
- T: --kakaruk ya yupela i salim --a--save salim kiau o kakaruk bilong kaikai tasol?
- P: Kakaruk mipela i save salim bilong mit tasol. Tasol em dipatmen bilong DPI em ol i laik mipela i salim kiau tu, na em i gat redi bilong mipela wantaim DPI bai mipela i go salim kiau. Tasol em simen bilong mipela i stap na mipela i no kirapim yet long wanem mipela i nid³ long kamda bai i kam na katim ol plang na wanem samting bilong kirapim. Na em DPI i ranim dispela bilong kiau na mipela yet ranim dispela bilong mit na planti man we ol i kamap baim kakaruk bilong mit tasol.
- D: Oke nau bai mi askim yu long pasin bilong wokim kakao. A, mi laik bai yu stori gut long mi bikos mi no save gut long kakao. Mi man bilong narapela hap na mi save lukim kakao i stap long kap na mi dringim tasol. Mi no save dispela i save kam olsem olsem wanem. Yu inap tokim mi a-- pasin o we bilong en bilong wokim na kam kamapim long bin o samting olsem?
- P: Kakao mipela i--i gat kakao bilong olsem plantim kakao. Tasol mipela i tingting long wanem salim i go long narapela hap. Orait mipela yet wokim draia bilong ol wetbin em ol i--ol memba yet ol i karim long a--gaden kakao bilong ol, ol i karim i kam na mipela i go putim wetbin i go long bokis. Orait a--lusim sevenpela de orait autim long bokis. N--autim long bokis putim i go long a--kopra--a--kakao draia bilong paifaman o bilong sandraia. Orait nau sapos i mau mipela i putim wantaim long beng a-- long bek na mipela i skelim i inap olsem a--406 a--46 a-- weit. Mipela i putim long bek. Orait sapos mipela i putim long bek mipela i salim i go long maket long Rabaul. Tasol long Rabaul mi yet mi tingting na mi bungim wantaim faipela bisnis grup. Orait mipela yet mipela i wokim dispela bisnis grup na mipela i kirapim wanpela bis--a--kampani bilong mipela, nem bilong en, Itala Ekspot Kampani. Em long Rabaul. Na em dispela kampani bilong mipela em mipela i salim dispela kakao long en. Orait em mipela i salim i go em yet kampani bilong mipela i ekspot i go long wol long London. Na mipela i gat maket long London, nau dispela taim. Na sapos kakao bilong mipela i--mipela putim long bek orait mipela i salim i go long Rabaul long kampani bilong mipela yet.
- D: Gutpela. A--olsem wanem? Mani bilong kakao i bikpela nau long dispela taim o olsem wanem?

P: Olsem planti maket i go antap, planti i go daun na olsem. Pasin bilong kakao. Sampela de em i go antap na sampela de em i go daun. Kakao bi--a--prais bilong en i no stap wanpela -- dispela--a--taim tasol. I olsem i go antap, i go daun.

¹wet bean

²canteen

³need

Text 22: Mi sapotim Yuni.

Here is Julie Piau again explaining why at one time she supported the University Rugby team.

D: Oke ah-- narapela nau bai mi askim yu long ah--ragbi. Yu save go wasim o lukim ragbi?

J: O bipo taim mi sumatin yet mi save go was long ol pilai ragbi.

D: A--wanem dispela tim o wanem klab yu bin lukim?

J: A mi-- mi save go lukim Bratas o Waliya o Yunivesiti taim ol pilai tambolo¹ long ovol ya.

D: I luk olsem planti klab yu tokim. Wanem klab yu sapotim?

J: A--Yunivesiti.

D: Bilong wanem?

J: O--olsem bikos taim mi sumatin mi skul long yunivesiti na mi sapotim ol lain ya.

D: Gulpela trul Na yu sapotim ol yet?

J: A--nau nogat. Olsem mi wok nau na--Sarere, Sande mi no save go was tambolo.

D: Na yu no save sapotim nau wanpela ragbi tim o klab?

J: A--long tingting bilong mi mi sapotim--sapotim ol dispela. Ating mi save les liklik long go na sanap long traipela san na was long ol pilai.

D: Yu tok a--bipo yu save go lukluk long ragbi na nau yu no save go nau long wanem yu gat wok. Yu gat sampela rison² gen o wanem samting i mekim yu na no go lukluk long ragbi?

J: A--no gat olsem risons olsem. Mi les ating.

D: A-- mi harim olsem--mi bin harim olsem wanpela taim Waliya na Yunivesiti tupela i bin kros liklik long pilai bilong tupela. A--yu bin stap we long dispela taim?

J: O mipela--yu save, taim mipela go sanap, mipela save sanap arere stret long lain a? Na mipela no--mipela was³ i go nau, olsem pes taim ol Waliya putim trai. Nau Yunivesiti putim wanpela trai. Nau bihain gen Waliya putim a? I go nau na klostu taim i sot nau. I go nau Yunivesiti i putim wanpela long hap sait ya long ko::na⁴ stret. Nau ol Waliya lukim ya. Ating bel bilong ol paia lait stret.⁵ Ol lukim olsem Yunivesiti win nau, a? Bikos ol ting ol bai win. Na ol Waliya taim ol kam long wanem?-- was long ol lain bilong ol pilai, ol save karim tumbuna bilong ol, na lapun mama bilong ol, olgeta save fullain⁶ kam.

Nau mipela was stap ya, nogat. Yunivesiti putim trai ya, plis. Ol sindaun antap long, em ya, maunten klostu antap long rot ya, na ol flai kam daun. Em nau! Na mipela sanap long hap sait. Olsem klostu go daun long narapela sait long oval nabaut ya. Em, mipela stap long dispela. Mipela lukim ol--olgeta ya flai kam ya, nogat. Mipela ya maski. Ol dispela bris na baret long hapsait ya, mipela no kauntim. Mipela flai tasol i go. Mipela no tingting long narapela man.

D: Man tru ya a?

¹*down below*

²*reason*

³*watch*

⁴Note the use of lengthening here for emphasis, i.e. *right in the corner*.

⁵*They got really worked up.*

⁶*the whole (extended) family*

Text 23: Sindaun long Mosbi

In the following interview Moruwo Domai describes some of the problems of urban living.

M: A--ol man i kam long Mosbi ating em i-- ol i kam sindaun long Mosbi i hat liklik long painim kaikai na sindaun bilong ol tu bilong ples bilong slip. Na man i no gat wantok em ating em i hat tru long painim kaikai nabaut long Mosbi. Na man i gat wantok bilong en em isi long sindaun bilong en na -- na painim kaikai bilong en tu em isi.

T: Na tu long -- long kaikai sapos yu go long maket bai yu lukim kaikai prais bilong em i olsem wanem?

M: Am -- sampela em i inap long tu kina na wan kina, olsem kaukau na banana i wan kina fifti na narapela olsem tu kina. Ol putim olsem long maket.

T: Na sapos yu no gat mani yu no gat wok bai yu painim mani we?

M: Em i hat tru long mi painim na mi ken wet i stap long -- inap long fotnait ol sampela wantok i kisim bai i givim mi na -- na mi ken painim kaikai. Sapos nogat mi ken sindaun nating na painim kaikai long pipia samtig.

T: Em i min olsem wanem, painim kaikai long pipia?

M: Em long wanem i -- mi no gat mani long ba'im kaikai long stua na long maket. Olsem i hat long mi painim kaikai.

T: Na yu-- dispela pipia i stap we?

M: O, olsem long ol -- long maket nabaut ol i troimwe ya hap kaikai o olsem ol i troimwe nabaut em i inap bilong mi ken karim i go long haus na -- o wanem hap mi stap long en bai mi go kukim na kaikai.

T: Na tu mi -- mi lukim sampela man em i save raun na am-- kisim botol man i bin troimweim.

- M: Ye, em i wanpela gutpela samting long painim mani em mipela i ken wokabaut long rot na painim botol o husat man dring bia na troimwe emti botol nabaut long baret o arere long bus inap long mipela raun na painim na bungim na taim botolka o raun nabaut long rot bai mipela salim na kisim wan siling long en long baim kaikai.
- T: Na yu kisim hamas long tupela ten foa botol?
- M: Am-- olsem wanpela katen mipela kisim wan kina twenti na long liklik hap katen mipela kisim siksti toea.
- T: He, ating em gutpela. Em wanpela liklik rot bilong painim mani -- mani long Mosbi ya a?
- M: Yes em tru. Em bilong isi long painim mani na baim kaikai na sindaun bilong mipela.
- T: Tasol sapos yu stap long Mosbi olsem wanem bai yu baim rum slip o ples slip ya?
- M: A, em wanpela samting i hat tru long dispela hap. Sapos i wantok i stap em i -- mipela i ken stap wantaim long haus bilong em. Na sapos i no gat wantok em i--i hat long sindaun.

Text 24: Pasin bilong mumu bilong mipela

Cooking in ground ovens or mumu is still practised throughout the Southern Highlands Province. Joe Ikiye, who comes from Tari, describes how ground oven cooking is done in his area.



Joe

- D: Joe, yu marit?
- J: A, bras, mi stap singel yet.
- D: A man! Wanem taim nau ya?
- J: Em mi no save wanem taim tru bai mi marit. Mi stap tingting pastaim.
- D: Gutpela. A, Joe, mi laik askim yu long a--pasin bilong wokim mumu. Yu save long Papua Niugini yumi i gat planti planti kain kain rot bilong wokim mumu bilong mumuim kaikai. A, mi save yupela i gat wanpela liklik kain stail¹ gen long wokim mumu. A, yu inap tokim mi?
- J: Yes, em dispela em i--mipela i save a--wokim olsem. A--pastaim tru mipela i save go brukim paiawut, go painim paiawut. Oke putim ol paia-- wokim liklik paia pastaim, putim a--sampela a-- paiawut i go pastaim. Oke long dispela taim a--mipela i save wokim paia na putim ston i go antap, putim mo paiawut i go antap gen. Oke taim ston i hot mipela i save rausim ston na wokim liklik hul long narapela sait, ples bilong kukim mumu long en. Mipela i save brukimap ol wanem?-- banana lip. Oke long dispela taim mipela i save kisim ston na putim i go long dispela hap ples we mipela i putim liklik hul long a--wanem?-- ples bilong mumu. Oke na-- afta that² mipela i save putim olgeta ston pinis em mipela bai putim ol kaikai i go long ston. Oke ston pinis, em mipela i save kisim wara na kapsaitim wara i go antap long ston na tanim strim³ i kamap em mipela i save pasim wantaim pandanus a--sori-- wantaim ol banana lip. Na bihain gen putim ol graun i go antap. I stap olsem bilong hafenaua o tu haus samting mipela i save rausim mumu.

D: Nn, gutpela! Na kaikai i save tan gut?

J: O, bras, dispela mi tokim yu kaikai bai tan nogut tru ya. Bai gut--det olsem stop--sapos ston i gutpela, olsem ston i hot nogut tru, na yu kuk, em bai ston a--wanem?--kaikai bai i kuk gut tru.

D: Man! Yu wokim na olsem wara long nek bilong mi laik kamaut.

J: Em tru tu ya. Mi tu mi wankain olsem.

¹style

²after that

³steam

Text 25: Taka stop

Pita Kain, who runs a twenty-four hour take-away food bar in Waigani, is talking about aspects of his business. Pita comes from the Wabag area of the Enga Province, is twenty years old and has not been to school.



Pita

P: Nau, brata em i wokim stori pastaim nau mi joinim liklik long dispela wanem? --liklik taka stop¹ hia. Olsem na mi--nau sapos ol man bilong stua em mi helpim ol student tu ol plai ragbi o wanem baim yunifom bilong ol. Tu ol i wanem?--ol i tok --bos bilong wanem?--yuni, em tok nogat.² Olsem na mi tingting planti. Bipo ol i tok olsem em i orait tasol. Nau i go hamas ya? -- 85 ol tok nogat nau. Mi tingting planti. Mi save baim skul pe bilong dispela stua tasol, mani bilong stua. Na bilong wanem ol tingting na ol tok nogat o-- olsem mi tingting planti.

D: Taim yu stap long ples yu gat pik?

P: Ye mi gat pik.³

D: Bilong wanem na yu kamapim pik?

P: Em olsem. Bilong mi i gat pik em olsem. Wampela bikman i save p-- i gat planti pik. Ol liklik man nating em i gat -- sampela i gat sampela, pik nogat. I stap nating. Sapos ol brukim diwai na putim long haus bilong en, halivim bikman, em i save givim liklik pik. Olsem em lukautim i go em bai kamap bikipela na em mipela baim meri o wanem? -- wokim moka o samting, mipela mekim olsem. Mipela planti no gat pik. Em wampela bikman ya, lidaman save holim pik, lukautim pik.

D: Na yu a-- yu marit a?

P: Mi no marit.

D: Na sapos yu laik marit bai yu wokim wanem?

P: Sapos em ol lain bilong mi i gat pik em ol baim meri bilong mi.

D: Na yu olsem long sais⁴ bilong yu nau hamas pik bai ol lain bilong yu givim long lain bilong meri?

P: Em olsem mi gat 20 o 30 o--pik samting ol baim meri bilong mi.

D: Man! Planti pik tumas a?

P: Ples bilong mi i gat planti tru pik.

T: Yu bin go long skul?

P: O, mi no skul.

T: Tasol yu save -- yu ranim stua ya. Tasol yu no go long skul. Olsem wanem yu save long namba bilong prais o wanem?

P: Em yu save. Mi kam long Mosbi mi lukluk long prais hau ol salim long dispela samting hamas. Em mi lukluk long ai tasol mi tingting yet mi wok i go go go na mi hamas nau?-- 85 mi tingting mi wok gut nau.

D: Yu--yu lainim pinis pasin bilong ranim stua.

P: Olsem, na mi wok i stap.

¹*tucker stop*, i.e. *food bar*

²Pita is referring here to a dispute between himself and the University over having a store on their land.

³Note that Pita says fik for pik.

⁴*size*

Text 26: Pasin bilong wokim saksak¹

In Yeftim village of the West Sepik Province sago is still the staple. In this interview one of the village women describes how it is prepared in her area.

Mipela ol meri save mekim olsem. Mipela kisim ol limbum pasim long mangas pinis. Tokim man bilong mipela yet. Mipela i go nau. Mipela i go. Ol man bilong mipela katim s--saksak pinis. Saksak gondaun. Orait ol kisim tamiok ya. Ol katim pinis. Ol tekewe. Tekewe pinis, mipela i go wokim banis pinis. Orait kisim limbum bilong saksak ya, karim i go katim diwai i gat pok ya. Mipela planim pinis, kisim limbum bilong saksak, putim. Putim pinis, kisim laplap bilong kokonas ya. Mipela paitim pinis, em nau mipela kisim wanem?--diwai bilong skrapim saksak. Mipela karim i go. I go wokim bet pinis, mipela skrapim saksak. I go i go i go i go::: meme bilong en i pulap. Orait mipela kisim limbum mipela wok long skelim pulimapim i go nau. I go pulap pinis karim i go. I go nau i go wasim. Wasim dispela limbum ya i go::: wara bilong en i pulap orait kisim namba tu limbum ya pulimapim i go. Wasim gen. I go i go i go i go::: saksak ya pulap nau bai mipela lusim pastaim. I go skrapim gen. Skrapim i go i go i go::: na limbum pulap nau, mipela skelim i go long wanpela limbum mipela karim i go. I go putim long--klostu long banis. Mipela kamautim dispela namba tu saksak ya pinis, go, putim long laplap bilong kokonas. Orait mipela pulimapim i go gen. Mipela wasim dispela i go i go i go i go::: pinis, orait mipela lusim pastaim mipela i go bek. Mipela i go skrapim. I go i go i go i go::: pinisim olgeta dispela mit ya pinis, mipela kisim olgeta meme bilong saksak i kam putim klostu long banis. Orait mipela kamautim gen. Kamautim dispela namba tu limbum ya, go putim long laplap bilong kokonas. Em nau mipela putim i go bek. Mipela wasim wasim wasim pinis i go skrapim bun bilong en, kisim olgeta i kam, putim, wasim. I go i go i go i go::: saksak bai i drai olgeta. No gat wara bilong en. Mipela kamautim namba tu limbum ya mipela brukim saksak i go putim long laplap

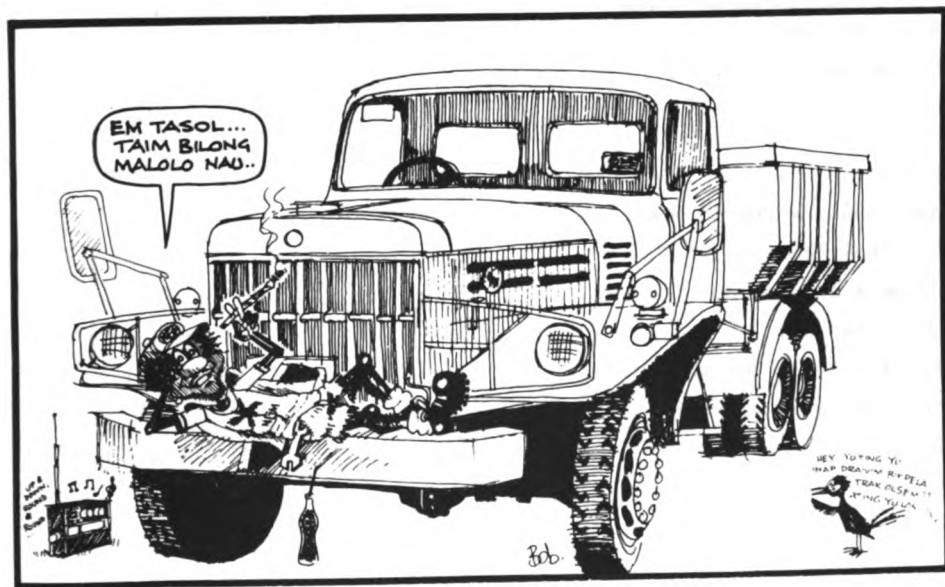
bilang kokonas yet. Em nau mipela wasim limbum pinis, orait mipela lusim nau. Lusim i go sindaun i stap wetim saksak em bai i drai. Holim pikinini o givim susu long en. Wokim brus o mipela i go sindaun i stap malolo, wetim saksak. I go::: drai nau olsem na mipela kisim laplap bilong kokonas, kisim limbum, kam putim klostu. Mipela wokim bet pinis orait mipela kamautim saksak ya, kam putim. Sampela bai mipela pasim, sampela bai mipela putim long limbum. Bihain narapela taim mipela i kam putim gen. Em nau bai mipela pasim nau. Pasim nau olsem yet i go i go i go bai mipela wokim traipela bet. Em nau mipela putim. Putim ol saksak. I go i go i go::: pinisim nau. Em tasol. Mipela kisim samting i kam olgeta long haus. Na saksak, karim i stap nau. Ating em tasol liklik stori bilong mi.



The speaker, Maria, preparing sago for cooking, Yeftim village. [Photo: Don Kulick]

¹This text was collected by Mr Don Kulick of the Department of Anthropology, University of Stockholm, Sweden, in July, 1985.

[Singsing]
"Sosi Sosi" (Sanguma Band)



Generated on 2022-02-10 03:58 GMT / <https://hdl.handle.net/2027/uci.52106009345213> / http://www.hathiitrust.org/access_use#cc-by-nc-nd-4.0
Creative Commons Attribution-NonCommercial-NoDerivatives

UNIT 1.

Exercise 2.

- (a) Epot/ples balus bilong Mosbi i stap we?
Long Mosbi epot/ples balus i stap we?
Epot/ples balus i stap we long Mosbi?
- (b) Yu askim mi long tok ples bilong yu.
- (c) Ol i wok we?
- (d) Bilong wanem pikinini man i sindaun long graun?
- (e) Dispela lapun meri (em) i meri bilong we?
- (f) Pik i stap we na em i kam?
Pik i kam we?
- (g) Yu kam nau tasol a?

Exercise 3.

- (a) He, Coast Watchers' Memorial i stap we?
- (b) Mi bihainim wanem rot?
- (c) Wanpela swimming pul i stap?
- (d) Em i stap we?
- (e) Yu man/meri bilong we?
- (f) Yu stap we na yu kam?
- (g) O sorɪ, mi no harim gut. Inap yu tokim mi gen?

Exercise 5.

Mi

Mi man bilong Fiji. Mi stap long Viti Levu na mi kam.¹ Bilong wanem mi kam long Papua Niu Gini? Bilong wok tasol. Meri bilong mi i stap long Fiji. Em i wok long Suva. Em i painim² mani bilong kam long Papua Niu Gini tu. Orait em tasol stori bilong mi. Em tasol. Mi Sios.

Exercise 7.

For most of these there is no standardised spelling. If you have something like the following you are on the right track:

kantri, kos, developmen, kristen, klab/klap, asoslesen, agens, Is Sepik Provins, Galp Provins, independens, ailan, lida, memba, Praisinista, profet, pablik, helikopta, nes, plantesin, pairitrum, reisialis, yunivesiti, wetman/waitman.

¹An alternative could be Mi kam (long) Viti Levu.

²Although kisim translates *get* generally in Tok Pisin painim *to look for* is better here.

UNIT 2.

Exercise 3.

Some possible answers are:

- (a) (no) laikim
- (b) laik, wanem
- (c) gat, grin, braun, gat, (kain) tasol
- (d) hamas
- (e) gat
- (f) samting
- (g) kisim/dring/kaikai...
- (h) liklik/bikpela/nupela...
- (i) Bret na/sops na/sol na/nupela/liklik...
- (j) husat/yu/em...

Exercise 4.

Motel Davara
12/8

Dia Kris,

Asde mi kamap long Mosbi. Mi stap long Motel Davara. Em i gutpela motel tru. Mi raun na lukim olgeta samting long Mosbi. Nau mi sindaun long ba na dring bia liklik. I gat tupela kain bia long Mosbi. Wapela ol i kolim SP na narapela ol i kolim Sanmik. Mi laikim SP. Ol i gat planti kain loliwara tu. Tasol mi no laikim loliwara. Yu save pinis.

Oralt em tasol. Lukim yu!

Mi stap,
Wantok bilong yu,
Timothy.

Exercise 5.

Advertisements about buying beer and the way to drink it are everywhere. They appear (lit. they write them) in newspapers, on signs at playing fields, on signs beside roads, on buses, at cinemas (lit. on films), on some T-shirts, hats, umbrellas and glasses. They are also used on radio. These advertisements say, "This beer is the best. Drink this kind of beer." People see and hear this and believe it. They think that to drink beer is good. So they do not worry about their families much. They only like drinking beer. They think that is tops.

UNIT 3.

Exercise 1.

1. Mi laik baim wanpela kek. Em i kostim hamas?/Hamas long en?
2. Em (i kostim) K2.63.
3. Mi laikim sops, tasol mi no gat inap mani bilong baim wanpela kilo.
4. Mi laik baim skon. Tasol mi no painim. Em i stap o nogat?/Yu gat sampela o nogat?
5. Olgeta i kostim K4.24.

Exercise 2.

- A: Olgeta prais i antap tru nau a?
- B: Yes. Yu laikim prais bilong suga ya. Bipo em i 56t tasol.
- A: Yes. Mitupela i no gat inap mani bilong baim olgeta samting mitupela i laikim.
- B: Mitupela i no gat ka tu.

Exercise 3.

1. J.S. i raitim dispela pas.
2. Em i stap long Not Solomons Provins.
3. Em i go long danis long Arawa.
4. Em i kostim K1 bilong go insait long danis.
5. Nogat. Ol i go insait nating.
6. Ol meri i wok nabaut long ol opis (long Arawa). Sampela i wok long planti stua.
7. Em i laik autim liklik wari bilong en. }
Em i gat liklik wari na em i laik autim. }
8. As bilong dispela wari i olsem: ol meri i save go insait nating long danis. Ol man tasol i save peim dua (bi)long go insait long danis. Tasol planti meri i wok na kisim mani olsem man. Bilong wanem ol i go fri insait long danis na ol man tasol i tromoim K2?

Exercise 4.

- (a) Yu gat hamas pikinini long famili bilong yu? Hamas man na hamas meri?
- (b) Yu wanem namba bilong ol dispela pikinini? Yu namba wan pikinini man/meri o wanem?
- (c) Nambawan brata/susa bilong yu husat? (Wanem nem bilong namba wan brata/susa o Yu kolim nem bilong namba wan brata/susa bilong yu — see Unit 4, Conversation 4, footnote 2). Em i wok we? Em i stap we?
- (d) Papamama i stap yet? Tupela i stap we?
- (e) Sampela brata/susa i stap (yet) wantaim papamama?
- (f) Yupela i gat sampela tambu/lain/bisnis bilong yupela long Austrelia?

Exercise 5.

- (a) 1. Lon ofisa i salim pas i go long en a?
 2. Lon ofisa, yu salim pas i go long en!
 3. Lon ofisa i salim pas i go long papa bilong mi.
 4. Lon ofisa i no salim pas i go long en.
 5. Lon ofisa i salim pas i go long en?
- (b) 1. Raskol i go long yunivesiti long Waigani.
 2. Tripela raskol i go we?
 3. Raskol (ya) i go long maket o nogat?
- (c) 1. Ol meri i no sindaun long maket.
 2. Husat i sindaun long maket?
 3. Ol meri i sindaun long maket i mekim/wokim wanem?
 4. Ol meri i sindaun nating long maket.

Exercise 6.

- (a) tokim means *to tell*: Yu tokim mi gen!
 (b) toktok wantaim means *to converse with*: Wanipe i sindaun toktok wantaim Dogare.
 (c) toktok long means *to talk about*: Tupela i toktok long ol prais long stua.
 (d) tok means *to say*: Em i tok, "Dispela buk i bilong husat?"

UNIT 4.**Exercise 2.**

Mi (man/meri) bilong Austrelia/Siapan ... Mi kam (bilong) lukim pikinini bilong mi. Em i wok long BP. Mi kam long balus. Mi stap long Morata. Bihain bai mi go long Vanuatu. Mi laik kam bek gen sampela taim.

Exercise 5.

1. Em i save gro long tais long wara Sepik na long sampela hap tu long Papua Niu Gini.
2. Em i wanpela kain kaikai.
3. Ol i lukim plaua bilong en.
4. Ol man i katim saksak i pundaun.
5. Man o meri i sikirapim insait bilong en.
6. Ol i kukim long praipan o sospen o long mumu.

UNIT 5.

Exercise 1.

Wanem nem bilong yu? / Yu kolim nem bilong yu?

Yu gat hamas krismas?

Yu marit (o nogat)?

Yu bilong wanem hap?

Tokples bilong yu i wanem?

(Long) wanem taim/yia yu bin kam long Mosbi/hia?

Yu stap/slip we long Mosbi/hia?

{Tambu lain bilong yu i stap long Mosbi?

{Yu gat sampela tambu o hap lain bilong yu long Mosbi?

Yu bin wok mani/ yu bin wok long taun bipo?

Yu save/inap draivim ka?

Yu save ainim klos?

{Yu ting bai yu kisim hamas mani long wanpela fotnait?/long dispela kain wok?

{Yu ting bai mipela i peim yu long hamas?

Yu gat wari long tokim mi.

Yu gat (sampela) askim/kwestin (long dispela wok)?

*Exercise 2.*Lep i go long rait:

1. karamapim
6. kot
7. sin
8. maus
9. poto
11. rum
13. lus
15. krungutim

Antap i go daun:

1. kuk
2. rot
3. maus
4. pis
5. mango
8. muruk
10. bung
12. mau
13. let
14. sem

Exercise 3.

Q: Yu kamap pinis a? Bilong wanem yu let?

A: Pik i brukim banis na mi painim.

Q: Em banis bilong husat?

A: Kandere bilong mi.

Q: Yu inap painim pik pinis?

A: Nogat, em i ranawe i go long bikbus.

Q: Na em i bin kaikai sampela samting bilong yupela a?

A: Yes. Em i bagarapim gaden bilong mipela. Em i kaikai taro na kaukau.

Exercise 4.

Well my name is Muhan. I come from Tufi. Now I'm going to tell you about the time we went to work on a plantation. Before we were just staying idly in the village. We did not have loincloths, fine clothes, good skirts or things like money. Then we heard about a recruiter¹ coming to get men to go and work on plantations. So we got up and went to Wewak and signed on. Then we went to a plantation to cut copra. But I didn't like that kind of work and so I broke my contract and came back home. All right that's all there is to my little story about going to work on a plantation. That's the end.

¹Lit. man from a company

UNIT 6.

Exercise 4.

Dear Mum,

Here I am, Elijah, standing by to talk to you now. Hello and a sincere good-night to you Mum. It's me Elijah, your son. I would like to tell you why I didn't answer your letter.

Yes Mum, I am not sick but I haven't been staying only in the one area. I've been busy moving around and so I haven't had time to reply to your letter.

Don't get angry with me. Don't say a word. Just listen carefully now. On 12th October four other men and I went on patrol around the Strickland River area. We were out on patrol for three weeks and came back on Sunday.

We arrived at camp on Sunday and stayed there Monday, Tuesday, Wednesday and Thursday. On Friday I was sent straight to the Aid Post. And I stayed at the Aid Post for a whole month. That is why I didn't answer your letter straight away. I went there on 3rd November and came back to camp on 8th December. It was when I got back to camp that I got the letter from you and Dad. But Mum, I'd like you to tell me about the little rumour that I've heard about, about Maria getting married to someone else. I would like you (plural) to tell me everything so that I will know. I am worried about this. Please answer my letter as soon as possible. Some time ago I got angry with you (plural). Did you (plural) understand or not? I will come (home) in February, 1985. That's all I have to say. Good-night Mum.

*I am,
Elijah.*

Exercise 5.

1. (a) Husat i lukautim dispela liklik pikinini?
Husat i lukautim dispela pikinini i sindaun long hap.
Husat i lukautim dispela pikinini we i sindaun long hap.
Husat i lukautim dispela pikinini ya em i sindaun long hap (ya).
2. (a) Ol i go painim gutpela kanu.
(b) Ol i go painim kanu i lus long solwara.
Ol i go painim kanu we i lus long solwara.
Ol i go painim kanu ya em i lus long solwara (ya).
3. (a) Yu go k'isim nupela/olpela/sotpela laplap bilong mi i kam.
(b) Yu go k'isim i kam¹ laplap bilong mi i gat makmak long en.
Yu go k'isim i kam laplap bilong mi we i gat makmak long en.
Yu go k'isim i kam laplap bilong mi ya em i gat makmak long en (ya).

Exercise 6.

1. Yupela i rausim ol liklik kiau o nogat?
2. Dispela su gumi i nogut.
3. Dogare i putim sotpela sok long lek bilong en.
4. Mi no save k'ikai kolpela k'ikai.
5. Ol wetpela/waitpela man i olsem brata bilong mi.

¹Note here that one has to move i kam up close to the verb when one adds the relative clauses because it would otherwise be too far away and would sound odd.

UNIT 7.

Exercise 1.

For example:

1. Ol i no ken k'ikai bilong wanem ol i sik.
2. Husat i inap go antap long dispela diwai?
3. Bai mipela i salim olgeta poto i kam long yu.
4. Yu haitim gut mani. Nogut ol raskol i kam stilim.
5. Bilong wanem ol i sanapim dispela longpela diwai?
6. Wok bilong yumi i pinis nau.
7. Ol Koiari i wok long rot.

8. Olsem wanem yu brukim kap bilong en?
9. Em tupela i no save pilai susap bilong wanem em tupela i lusim ples taim tupela i yangpela yet.
10. Yu pasim dua. Nogut dok i kam insait.

Exercise 3.

1. Em i stap antap long diwai olsem ol narapela pisin.
2. Kokomo i no laikim pasin bilong Muruk bilong wanem em i kaikai kaikai bilong en.
3. { Em i pundaun (long) taim em i slip long han bilong diwai wanpela liklik pisin i bin katim raun.
Em i pundaun bilong wanem wanpela liklik pisin i bin katim raun han bilong diwai i save slip long en.
4. Em i brukim wing bilong en na em i no gat wing mo nau. Wing i stap hap nating olsem pul bilong trosel.
5. Tede Muruk i save stap long graun tasol.

Exercise 5.

1. Adres bilong Namba Wan Opis bilong Hausing Komisen i olsem:
Hausing Komisen,
Kaura Way,
Tokarara,
Port Moresby.
2. Hausing Komisen i papa bilong haus.
3. Tenent: em man o meri i save peim rent moni long olgeta fotnait long sindaun long haus.
4. Hausing Komisen i kisim rent bilong (1) baim graun na samting bilong wokim haus;
(2) stretim na fiksिम haus taim i laik bagarap.
5. Nogat. Em i tok, "Hausing Komisen em i no laik kamapim sampela winmoni".
6. Hausing Komisen i wanpela han bilong Gavman. Olsem na em i kisim mani long gavman long sanapim ol haus ol pipel i ken peim rent o baim.
7. Em i min olsem: em i promis bilong yu long bihainim ol samting insait long kontrak.
Em i min olsem: yu promisim gavman bai yu bihainim ol samting i stap insait long kontrak.

UNIT 8.

Exercise 1.

Your story should be something like this:

Stori bilong ol Rat

Dispela stori i bilong ol rat. Em i no trupela. Em i giaman stori. Long taim bipo sampela rat i stap ananit long graun. Ol i no gat kaikai tambolo. Olsem na ol i save kaikai rop bilong diwai tasol. Long nait ol i no save slip. Ol i save toktok toktok planti tumas. Tasol long wanpela nait ol i bin digim hul na kam kamap utsait, antap long graun. Bihain ol i go painim sampela nupela kaikai. Ol i bin painim planti banana i mau we i bin pundaun na kaikai. Tasol wanpela rat i bin kaikai wanpela samting nogut na bel bilong en i solap. Bihain ol i go bek gen ananit long graun long hul (we) ol i bin digim na kamaut long en. Olgeta i bin bihainim patpela ya. Ol i stap yet. Em tasol.

Exercise 2.

1. Yutupela putim ol hap kaikai bilong asde long bokis ais!
2. Yu gat sampela muliwarra i stap?
3. Mi laik kaikai blakpela sos/babeku sos wantaim nupela kiau na pik.
4. Kapti bilong yu i stap long arere bilong plet.
5. { Switpela kaikai i kostim hamas?
Hamas long switpela kaikai?
6. { Aso i givim strongpela susu bek long lapun meri.
Aso i givim bek strongpela susu long lapun meri.
7. Tetiseven/tripela ten seven Yuropen i laik lusim Papua Niu Gini.
8. Ol lipti i stap we?
9. Kuk i (bin) rausim/autim han bilong pik.
10. Emtupela i lukim liklik samting ananit long haus kiap.

Exercise 3.

1. Em i givim tok bilong God long ol.
2. Lo bilong Moses em i tok orait long man i ken raitim pepa bilong katim marit na i ken rausim meri.
3. Nogat. Em i tok, "Yupela i bikhet, olsem na Moses i raitim givim dispela lo long yupela. God i bin kamapim narapela lo. Em i olsem: tupela marit i no olsem tupela bodi mo taim tupela i marit. Nogat. Tupela i olsem wanpela bodi tasol. Olsem na samting God i pasim pinis, (em) man i no ken katim."
4. Ol i laik traिम em.

Exercise 4.

Rit i go long raithan:

2. tude
3. klos
6. trik
8. sia
9. akis
10. mangalim
15. bia
16. ami
17. ararut
18. mit
19. suga
21. wasim
22. kes
24. inu
25. let
27. mitupela
29. in
31. nais
33. sarere
34. mi

Rit i go daun:

1. huk
2. ti
3. kikim
4. laimim
5. so
7. rum
8. salat
11. abrusim
12. niugini
13. garamut
14. gita
17. asa
20. melen
21. winis
23. taim
28. ure
30. na
32. si

UNIT 11.

Exercise 3.

A: Gude poro.

A: Mi laik baim Mazda tasol mi no save wanem i gutpela long Mazda na Toyota. Yu ting wanem? Mazda i mobeta long Toyota o wanem?

A: Tupela i wankain long pawa.

A: {Tasol Toyota i gat mo spes bilong ol pasindia insait long en a/laka?
Tasol Toyota i bikpela mo long Mazda long spes bilong ol pasindia a/laka?

A: Na prais i olsem wanem?

Exercise 5.

Rit i go long raithan:

3. sno
6. helpman
9. hariap
11. kap
12. sela
13. skon
14. bak
17. malai
20. raifel
22. atensan
23. ka
25. pato
27. ailtape
30. eti
31. sol
32. em.
33. lik
35. ananit
37. an
38. palai
40. pas
41. mi
42. asi
43. mais
44. mukmuk
46. ana
47. sore
48. ami
50. nois
52. pinat
53. smat
54. su
55. lapim

Rit i go daun:

1. kep
2. bal
3. si
4. napkin
5. op
6. hap
7. pekpek
8. ain
9. he
10. rabis
12. stat
15. arapela
16. tiktik
17. masalai
18. le
19. anka
20. laus
24. nambis
26. ating
28. taiprait
29. plisman
34. basket
36. na
38. paura
39. lim
41. misis
45. kam
47. si
49. mal
51. sup

UNIT 12.

Exercise 1.

1. Nogut ol pikinini i sanap pilai nabaut insait long ka na bamim han bilong yu long stia o pasim ai bilong yu long rot.
2. Ol i putim tambu long no ken abrusim narapela ka taim yu kamap klostu pinis long ples tupela rot i bung, long kona, antap long maunten, long ples rot i gat buk, o long ples wokabaut bilong ol manmeri.
3. Yu mas pasim sefti belt bilong yu pastaim.
4. Bai yu mas lukluk gut olsem i gat spes inap long abrusim ka i go pas o nogat.

UNIT 13.

Exercise 4.

(a) Rewrite as follows:

Piraite.
14.5.1985

O masta,

Mi kisim pas bilong yu pinis. Nau mi laik askim sampela samting long yu ya. Yu inap halivim/helpim mi long dispela? Mitupela i tokim yu pinis long bilas bilong mitupela, long baim trausis na siot bilong papa bilong mi na sampela olsem bilong mi tu. Tasol yu harim: papa bilong mi em i sik na mi kisim em i go long Lae na em i stap long haussik tu mans. Nau tasol em i kam bek long ples na mitupela i stap na mitupela wokim pas. Tasol mi no gat toktok. Em tasol. O daunbilo em i adres bilong mi long Koitaki stesin ya. Masta Sioni i stap bos long en ya. Yu lukim long dispela na yu salim bilas bilong mitupela i kam long en. Em tasol. Apinun brata. Mi Baundo i kamap long leta ya. Mi laikim wanpela kolsiot tu. Yu salim bilong mi. Mi stap Baundo, long Koitaki gum i plantesen, Posopis Bokis namba 12 long Sogeri, Sentrol Provins, Papua Niu Gini.

(b) Translation

Piraite.
14.5.1985

Dear Sir,

I received your letter. Now I would like to ask something of you. Could you help me with this? We (two) have told you about our (two) clothes,¹ about buying a pair of trousers and a shirt for my father and something similar for me too. But hear this/listen: my father was sick and I took him to Lae and he was in hospital for two months. He's just come home again and we (two) are here and we (two) are writing this. But I don't have anything further to say, that's all. Oh, down below is my address at Koitaki. Mister John is in charge of the station. Note that and send the clothes for us (two) there. That's all. Cheerio friend. This is me, Baundo. I'd like a sweatshirt too. Send it for me. I am Baundo, Koitaki Rubber Plantation, P.O. Box 12, Sogeri, Central Province, Papua New Guinea.

Exercise 5.

A better version would be:

Mi wanpela (naispela) man bilong Mosbi. (Ating ol meri bai i seksek tru taim ol i lukim mi.) Mi painim/mi laik bungim wanpela naispela meri i gat save. Mi save tasol long Tok Inglis.

Review Box 3076

¹Lit. decorations, finery. Here referring to European clothes.

Exercise 7.

A possible answer would be:

Dia Poro,

Asde mi kisim pas i kam long yu — tenkyu. Mi amamas long harim yu orait. Tasol mi wari long yu. Sapos yu stap dring olsem nau bai yu kisim taim/nogut bihain. Ating em i gut sapos yu go toktok wantaim wampela welfe ofisa o sampela lain we ol i ken halivim yu. Em i nogut yu dring i stap na lusim nating/westim ol mani bilong yu long dring. Ating sapos yu go toktok wantaim sampela man o meri bai ol i ken halivim yu long save long problem bilong yu. Sapos i no gat sampela lain olsem/bilong halivim yu ating i mobeta sapos yu askim bos bilong yu long salim yu i kam long Mosbi. (Yu tokautim problem bilong yu long en na harim bai i tok wanem.) I gat planti manmeri i stap long Mosbi we ol i ken halivim yu.

Orait em tasol nau. Plis yu rait gen long mi.

Mi poro bilong yu,
Opi

1. History, development and use

BEE, D.

- 1972 Phonological interference between Usarufa and Pidgin English. *Kivung* 5/2:69-95.

BELL, H.L.

- 1971 Language and the army of Papua-New Guinea. *Army Journal* 264:31-42.

BRASH, E.

- 1971 Tok pilai, tok piksa na tok bokis: imaginative dimensions in Melanesian Pidgin. *Kivung* 4/1:12-20.
- 1975 Tok Pisin! *Meanjin Quarterly* 34/3:320-327.

CHOWNING, A.

- 1983 Interaction between Pidgin and three West New Britain languages. *PPCL* 3. *PL*, A-65:191-206.

CLARK, R.

- 1980 In search of Beach-la-Mar: towards a history of dictionary Pidgin English. *Te Reo* 22-23:3-64.

DUTTON, T.E.

- 1976 *Language and national development - long wanem rot?* Inaugural lecture. Port Moresby: UPNG.

FINGLETON, J.

- 1986 Tolai kinship concepts: the correspondence between Kuanua and Tok Pisin terminology. *PL*, A:70:291-310.

GUNTHER, J.T.

- 1969 More English, more teachers! Putting a cat among the Pidgins. *New Guinea* 4/2:43-53.

HALL, R.A., Jr

- 1955 *Hands off Pidgin English!* Sydney: Pacific Publications.
- 1956 'Yes' and 'no' in Neo-Melanesian. *Modern Language Notes* 71:502-503.

HULL, B.

- 1968 The use of Pidgin in the House of Assembly. *Journal of the Papua New Guinea Society* 2/1:22-25.

LAYCOCK, D.C.

- 1982 Tok Pisin: a Melanesian solution to the problem of Melanesian linguistic diversity. In R. May and H. Nelson, eds *Melanesia beyond diversity*, 263-272. Canberra: Research School of Pacific Studies, The Australian National University.

McDONALD, B., ed.

- 1976 *Language and national development: the public debate 1976.* Department of Language Occasional Paper 11. Waigani: UPNG.

McELHANON, K.A., ed.

- 1975 *Tok Pisin i go we?* *Kivung Special Publication* 1. Port Moresby: Linguistic Society of Papua New Guinea.

MIHALIC, F.

- 1971 *The Jacaranda dictionary and grammar of Melanesian Pidgin.* Milton, Qld: Jacaranda Press.

MOSEL, U.

- 1979 Early language contact between Tolai, Pidgin and English in the light of its sociolinguistic background (1875-1914). *PPCL* 2. *PL*, A-57:163-181.
- 1980 *Tolai and Tok Pisin: the influence of the substratum on the development of New Guinea Pidgin.* *PL*, B-73.

MOSEL, U. and P. MÜHLHÄUSLER

- 1982 New evidence for a Samoan origin of Tok Pisin. *Journal of Pacific History* 17/3-4:166-175.

MÜHLHÄUSLER, P.

- 1975 The influence of the German administration on New Guinea Pidgin. *Journal of Pacific History* 10/4:94-111.
- 1976 Samoan Plantation Pidgin English and the origins of New Guinea Pidgin: an introduction. *Journal of Pacific History* 11/2:122-125.
- 1978 Samoan Plantation Pidgin English and the origin of New Guinea Pidgin. *PPCL* 1. *PL*, A-54:67-119.
- 1978 The functional possibilities of lexical bases in New Guinea Pidgin. *PPCL* 1. *PL*, A-54:121-173.
- 1979 *Growth and structure of the lexicon of New Guinea Pidgin.* *PL*, C-52.

SALISBURY, R.F.

- 1967 Pidgin's respectable past. *New Guinea* 2/2:44-48.

SANKOFF, G.

- 1976 Political power and linguistic inequality in Papua New Guinea. In W. O'Barr and J. O'Barr, eds *Language and politics*, 283-310. The Hague: Mouton.

TODD, L. and P. MÜHLHÄUSLER

- 1978 Idiomatic expressions in Cameroon Pidgin English and Tok Pisin. *PPCL* 1. *PL*, A-54:1-35.

WURM, S.A., ed.

- 1977 *New Guinea area languages and language study, vol.3: Language, culture, society, and the modern world.* *PL*. C-40 (in two fascicles).

WURM, S.A. and P. MÜHLHÄUSLER, eds

- 1984 *Handbook of Tok Pisin (New Guinea Pidgin).* *PL*, C-70.

2. Structure

HALL, R.A., Jr

- 1955 *Hands off Pidgin English!* Sydney: Pacific Publications.

HOOLEY, B.A.

- 1962 Transformations in Neomelanesian. *Oceania* 33:116-127.

LAYCOCK, D.C.

1970 *Materials in New Guinea Pidgin (Coastal and Lowlands)*. PL,D-5.

MIHALIC, F.

1971 *The Jacaranda dictionary and grammar of Melanesian Pidgin*. Milton, Qld: Jacaranda Press.

MURPHY, J.J.

1966 *The book of Pidgin English*. Revised edn. Brisbane: Smith and Paterson.

SADLER, W.

1973 *Untangled New Guinea Pidgin*. Madang: Kristen Pres.

WURM, S.A.

1971 *New Guinea Highlands Pidgin: course materials*. PL, D-3.

WURM, S.A. and P. MÜHLHÄUSLER, eds

1984 *Handbook of Tok Pisin (New Guinea Pidgin)*. PL, C-70.

3. Reading materials**BROWNE, B.**

1978 *Isuzu Lu*. Port Moresby: South Pacific Post.

1979 *Isuzu Lu 2*. Port Moresby: South Pacific Post.

1980 *Isuzu Lu 3*. Port Moresby: South Pacific Post.

1981 *Isuzu Lu 4*. Port Moresby: Grass Roots Comic Company.

1982 *The best of Grass Roots 1980-81*. Port Moresby: South Pacific Post.

COUNTS, D.A.

1982 *The tales of Laupu: ol stori bilong Laupu*. Port Moresby: IPNGS.

Nius bilong Yumi. A fortnightly news-sheet published by the Department of Information and Extension Services, Papua New Guinea.

Nupela Testamen. Canberra/Port Moresby: The British and Foreign Bible Society in Australia.

Numerous short (about 50pp) booklets on various topics published by Kristen Pres, Madang, Papua New Guinea.

Various songs, poems, plays and literary items in *Papua Pocket Poets* series and *Kovave: A Journal of New Guinea Literature*.

Wantok. A regularly appearing newspaper in Tok Pisin published by Wantok Publications Inc., Port Moresby.

A

abababa - bubble gum
 abrus long - apart from
 abrusim - avoid, pass by
 abrusim ka - overtake a car
 abus - game, meat, garnish, side-dish
 adresim - address (letter)
 ai - eye
 ai i hevi - sleepy
 ai i slip - sleepy
 ai i raun - dizzy, giddy
 aiglas - spectacles
 aipas - blind
 ailan - island
 ailan Manam - Manam Island
 ain - iron
 ainim - iron (something)
 ainim klos - iron clothes
 ais - ice
 aisblok - iceblock
 aiskrim - icecream
 bokis ais - icebox, refrigerator
 akas - acacia, wattle tree
 akis - axe
 akselareta - accelerator
 alta - altar
 amamas - happy
 amamasim - be proud of
 ambrela - umbrella
 ananas - pineapple
 ananit - under, underneath
 ananit bilong lek - sole of foot
 ananit long - underneath
 anien - onion
 anka - anchor
 ansaim - answer
 antap - up, high
 antap long - on top of

antapim - increase (price)
 apim - raise, increase
 apinun - good afternoon, good evening
 arapela - other
 arasait - other side, opposite side
 arere - 1. edge, border; 2. next to, beside
 arere long - beside
 as - 1. anus, buttocks, posterior part, bottom; 2. origin, base, basis, cause, reason
 asples bilong gavman - seat of government
 asples bilong mi - my home town/village
 asde - yesterday
 asket, usket - chin
 askim - ask
 asua - fault, difficulty, mistake
 ating - perhaps, probably, I think so
 ausait - outside
 Austrelia - Australia
 autbotmota - outboard motor
 autim - cross out, get rid of, withdraw, speak out, divulge
 autim long wok - sack
 aven - oven

B

ba - bar
 baman - barman
 babeku sos - barbecue sauce
 bagarap - spoiled, worn out
 bagarapim - spoil, damage
 bai - will, future tense marker
 Baibel - Bible

¹This vocabulary, the English-Tok Pisin Finder List, and the Index were compiled by Lois Carrington on DEC-KL10, using BINSRT, a modification of the BINDEK book indexing system, devised by Geoff Patch of Coombs Computer Services, Research School of Pacific Studies and Social Sciences, at the Australian National University.

- baim - buy, pay for, rent
 baim bas - catch a bus
 baim balus - go by plane
 baim kot - pay fine
 baim rum gat - pay bail
- baksait - back, rear
 baksait bilong lek - calf of leg
 baksait bilong nek - back, nape
 of neck
- bal - ball
- balus - pigeon, aeroplane
- bam - bump, collide
 bamim - bump (into something)
- banara - bow
- banis - fence, ribs, bandage
- banisim - fence in, enclose
- baret - trench, drain
- bas - bus
- basket - basket
- bata - butter
- bautim - turn (boat)
- bek - back
 givim bek - give back
 bekbun - backbone
- bekim - give back
 bekim tok - answer, reply
- bel - belly, innards, uterus; heart,
 mind
 bel i tantanim - be nauseated
 strongim bel - settle stomach
 bel i pas - constipated
 pasim bel - take contraceptives
 belhevi - regret
 belisi - calm, peaceful
- belo - bell
 belo bilong klok - clock's alarm
- beng - bank
- bensin - petrol
- bet - bed
 bet sel - canvas stretcher
 betsit - sheet, bedsheet
- beten - worship, pray
- bia - beer
- bihain - after, afterwards, later
 bihain long - behind
- bihainim - follow, copy, imitate
- bik, bikpela - big
 bikbus - jungle, dense bush
 bikhet - stubborn, conceited
 bikmama - maternal aunt
 biknait - night, dead of night
 bikples - main village
 bikrot - main road
 biktaun - city
- bikos - because
- bilas - decoration, finery
- bilasim - decorate
- bilinat - betelnut
- billip - belief, faith, believe in
- bilipim - believe (someone)
- bilong - to, in, at, about, from,
 on, for, in order to
 bilong husat - whose
 bilong mi, yu - my, your
 bilong wanem - 1. what for, why;
 2. because
- bilum - stringbag, netbag
- bin - 1. beans; 2. past tense
 marker
- binatang - insect
- Bipi - Burns Philp
- bipo - before, formerly
- birua - enemy, opponent, accident
- bis - beads
- bisket - biscuit, cookie, cracker
- bisnis - clan, moiety; business
- bitolnat - betelnut, areca nut
- blak, blakpela - black
 blakbokis - flying fox
 blaksos - soya or other dark
 sauce
- blanket - blanket
- blo - short form of bilong
- blok - block
 blokim - raise with block and
 tackle
- blu, blupela - blue
- blut - blood
 blut i kamap - bleed
- boamasin - drilling machine
- bodi - body

boi - 1. boy
 boipren - boyfriend
 2. labourer
 boil - boil
 boilim - boil (something)
 bokis - 1. box, case
 bokis ais - refrigerator, icebox
 bokis nating - empty box
 2. female genitals
 bol - ball, testicles
 bombom - coconut frond
 bos - boss
 bosboi - overseer on plantation
 bosim - control, be in charge of,
 oversee
 bot - boat
 boskru - sailors, boat's crew
 boskru bilong balus/sip - crew
 of plane/ship
 botol - bottle
 bras - brush
 brata - brother; same-sex sibling
 bratasusa - brothers and sisters,
 siblings
 braun, braunpela - brown
 brek - brake(s)
 bret - bread, loaf
 bringim - bring
 bris - bridge
 bros - chest
 bruk - broken
 brukim - break
 brukim ai - wink
 brukim bet - strip a bed
 brukim lo - break the law
 brukim long tit - bite off
 brukim namel - break in halves,
 divide in two
 brukim pepa, klos - fold, tear
 paper, clothes
 brukim promis tok - break a
 promise, go back on one's word
 brukim sindaun - disturb the peace
 brumim - sweep
 brus - leaf tobacco, village tobacco
 buai - betelnut

buk - 1. book
 buk beten - prayer book
 buksop - bookshop
 2. boil, swelling, lump
 bulmakau - cattle, beef
 bulmakau meri - a cow
 bulsitman - skite, con man
 bun - 1. bone
 bun i bruk - fracture, broken bone
 2. strength
 bun i slek - tired, weary, lazy
 taitim bun - exert oneself
 bung - 1. market, meeting place
 2. meet, assemble
 bung wantaim - unite
 bungim - meet, gather together
 bungim ka - pass (oncoming) car
 bus - bush
 busnaip - bush knife

D

dabolim - double
 dai (indai) - faint, be unconscious,
 stop
 dai pinis - die
 daiman - dead person, the dead
 daka - pepper vine, betel pepper
 danis - dance
 das - dust
 daun - down
 daunpasin - humility
 daunim - overcome
 de - day
 de bilong wok - workday
 de bilong malolo - rest day,
 free day
 Sande - Sunday
 Mande - Monday
 Tunde - Tuesday
 Trinde - Wednesday
 Fonde - Thursday
 Fraide - Friday
 Sarere - Saturday
 dentis - dentist
 Desemba - December
 dewel - shadow
 dewel bilong diwai - tree's shadow

dewel bilong man i dal - ghost
(of dead person)
dewel bilong man - man's shadow

didiman - agricultural officer

digim - dig

dilim - deal, portion out

dinau - borrow, debt

dia - dear

dis - dish, bowl

disaipel - disciple

dispela - this, these

distrik - district

diwai - tree
diwai kros - cross
han bilong diwai - branch
het bilong diwai - crown of tree

dok - dog

dokta - doctor, medical assistant
dokta bilong tis - dentist
liklik dokta - medical assistant,
assistant doctor

drai - 1. dry
draibasket - dry biscuit, cracker
draiwara - low tide
2. heal (of sore)
3. ripe coconut

draipela - strong, large

draivim - drive

dring, dringim - drink

drip - 1. immature coconut; 2. drift
dripman - squatter, vagrant,
drifter

dua - door

E

edukeitim - educate

Ekelesia - church members

eksospaip - exhaust pipe

elektrik, elektrisiti - electricity,
electric power

em - he, she, it
bilong em - his, hers, its
em tasol - that's all
entripela - those (three)
emtupele - those (two)

en - short form of em after long
and bilong

ensel - angel

ensin - engine

epot - airport

Epril - April

erima - ilimo tree

et, etpela - eight

F

fail - file

faiv, faipela - five

famili - family

fe - fare

Februari - February

fiftifaiv - fifty-five

fiksim - fix

fikus - fig tree

filim - feel

fiva - fever

flai - fly
pisin i no save flai - the bird
can't fly

fo, foa, fopela - four

Fomail - Fourmile

Fonde - Thursday

fofnait - fortnight; pay, get wages

foto - photograph

fowil draiv - four-wheel drive

Fraide - Friday

fran - front

fut - foot
futbal - football
mak bilong fut - footprint

G

gaden - garden

galen - gallon

gamtri - gum tree, eucalypt

garamut - slitgong
 gat - have, own
 gat bel - pregnant
 i gat - there is, there are
 gavman - government
 gel - girl
 gen - again
 giabokis - gearbox
 giaman - 1. false; 2. joke, kid,
 tell lies
 giamanman - liar
 tok giaman - untruths, lies;
 tell lies
 giamanim - tell lies to, fool
 (someone)
 gita - guitar
 givim - give
 givim stori - report, recount
 glas - glass
 glas bilong lukluk - mirror
 glasim - 1. take temperature;
 2. study
 go - go
 go antap long diwai - climb a
 tree
 go bek - return
 gohet - go ahead
 kisim i go - take away from
 goapim (meri) - have sexual
 intercourse with (a woman)
 golo - globe, bulb
 gorgor - ginger
 gras - grass, hair, fur, feather
 gras bilong ai - eyebrow, eyelash
 gras bilong dok, kapul - fur of
 dog, possum
 gras bilong het - hair of head
 gras bilong maus - moustache
 gras bilong pisin - feather
 gras bilong usket - beard
 gras nogut - weed, weeds
 gras usket - beard
 mausgras - moustache
 graun - earth, ground, clay
 sospen graun - earthenware pot,
 clay pot
 grile - ringworm, tinea
 grileglas - frosted glass
 grin, grinpela - green

grins - greens, vegetables
 gris - fat, ointment
 gris bilong bulmakau - dripping
 gris bilong pik - lard
 grisim - grease, oil; flatter
 tok gris - flattery
 gro - grow
 guava - guava
 gude - good day
 gumi - rubber, inner tube
 gumi bilong kok - condom,
 contraceptive for males
 guria - earthquake, tremor
 gut, gutpela - good
 gut nait - good night

H

hai - high, up
 hailans, hailens - highlands
 haiskul - high school
 haiwara - high tide
 haiwe - highway
 haisapim - lift up, hoist
 haitim - hide
 halivim - help
 hama - hammer
 hamarim - hammer, hit
 hamamas - happy
 hamas - how much, how many
 hambak - boasting, showing off
 hambakman - cheeky, annoying
 person, nuisance
 hambakim - tease, annoy
 han - arm hand
 han antap - forearm
 han bilong pisin - wing
 han bilong diwai - branch of tree
 han bilong pik - foreleg of pig,
 shoulder of pork
 han bilong siot - sleeve
 han kais - left hand
 hanrot - side road, sidetrack
 han sut - right hand
 han tambolo, han daunbilo -
 forearm, lower arm
 hanwara - side stream, tributary
 hanwas - watch

- brukim han - make a clenched fist
 sothan - shorthand
 handet - hundred
 hangapim - hang (something) up
 hangre - hungry
 hani - honey
 hankisip - handkerchief
 hansapim - bail up, hold up
 hap - half; area, place, side,
 direction; over there
 hapasde - day before yesterday
 hap bel - navel
 hap bret - piece of bread
 hapka - utility truck
 hap kaikai bilong asde - leftovers
 hapkas - half-caste, mixed-race
 hap laplap bilong wasim plet -
 dish cloth
 hap pas seven - half past seven
 hapsait - far side, opposite side
 hap skon - piece of scone
 hap tok - quotation, statement
 haptumora - day after tomorrow
 hapim - halve
 hariap - hurry, hurry up
 harim - hear, listen
 hat, hatpela - hard
 hatwok - work hard
 hat - 1. heart; 2. cap
 hat ain - hard hat, helmet
 haus - house, home, building
 haus bilong pisin - nest
 haus bilong wasim klos - laundry
 hauskuk - kitchen, cookhouse
 haus lotu - church
 haus marit - married quarters
 haus palamen - House of Parliament
 haus pamuk - brothel
 haus pekpek - toilet
 haus sik - hospital
 haus tambaran - spirit house
 haus win - summer house, garden
 house
 hebsen - peas
 hel - hell
 helpim - help
 het - head
 het bilong diwai - crown, top of
 tree
 het i pas - stupid, mad, unable
 to think
 het i pen - headache
 gohet - go ahead, advance
 heven - sky, heavens
 hevi - 1. heavy; 2. guilt
 hevim - have
 hevim seks wantaim meri - have
 sexual intercourse with a
 woman
 hia - here
 hiden - heathen
 hipim - pile up
 holi - holy
 holim - hold, hold on to, feel
 holim pas - keep, detain, hold
 holim skin - make love to
 hon - horn
 hos - horse
 hostes - hostess, assistant
 e hostes - air hostess
 hot, hotpela - hot
 hotim - heat
 huk - hook
 hukim - catch (fish)
 hul - hole, grave
 husat - who
 bilong husat - whose
- I
- i - is/are, was/were
 i ken - it's possible
 ia - ear
 inap - can, could; enough; fitting
 em inap - it is enough
 inap long - until, up to, as
 far as
 inap - need
 indai - variant of i dai
 independens - independence
 Inglis - English
 insait - inside
 insait bilong han - palm of hand
 insait long - inside of
 insait long stori - meaning of
 story

intaviua - interviewer
 is - east
 isi - easy
 isi isi - carefully
 ista - Easter

J

Janueri - January
 jas - judge
 jasim - judge, hold court, pass
 sentence
 jek - jack
 jem - jam
 Jemeni - Germany
 jerm - germ, bacteria
 Julai - July
 Jun - June

K

ka, kar - car
 kabis - cabbage
 kabureta - carburettor
 kago - baggage, cargo, goods
 kaikai - 1. food; 2. eat, chew
 kaikai buai - chew betelnut
 kaikaim - bite
 kain - kind, sort
 kainkain - various kinds of
 kais - left, left side
 han kais - left hand
 kakao - cocoa
 kakaruk - fowl, chicken, chook
 kala - colour
 kalabus - prison
 kalabusman - prisoner
 kalabusim - imprison, lock up,
 shut up, shut away
 kalangai - parrot, parakeet
 kalap - board (a vehicle), jump on
 kalap long PMV - get into/board
 a PMV

kalap long wilwil - go by bicycle
 kalenda - calendar
 kam - 1. come
 kaman! - come on!
 kam bek - come back, return
 kambek - left over, recompense,
 effect
 kam hariap - come quickly
 2. shell as penis cover
 kamap - arrive, come up
 kamapim - develop, strengthen,
 improve
 kamapim mani - raise money
 kamarere - eucalypt sp., gum tree
 kamaut - come out
 kamautim - harvest, dig up, pull out
 kambang - lime
 kamda - carpenter, joiner
 kan - female genitals
 kanaka - indigenous person
 kanda - cane, stick
 kandere - maternal uncle, maternal
 relative
 kantri - country
 kanu - canoe
 kap - cup
 kap bilong ti - teacup
 kapti - cup of tea
 kapa - sheet metal of any kind
 kap bilong pinga - fingernail
 kapet - cupboard
 kapiak - breadfruit
 kapsait - capsized, overturn
 kapsaitim - tip, pour out, spill
 kapul - cuscus, possum
 kar, ka - car
 karamapim - cover up, hide, wrap up
 karamapim tok - be vague,
 deceitful, ambiguous
 karet - carrot
 kari - curry
 karim - carry, bear, take
 karim i kam - bring here
 karim pikinini - bear a child
 karuka - pandanus, screw pine

- kas - 1. cards; 2. luck
 kasang - peanut
 kasava - cassava
 kasen - cousin
 kaset - cassette
 kaskas - scabies
 kastet - custard
 kastom - custom
 kaswel - castor oil
 kat - cut
 katen - carton
 katim - cut, cut down
 katim buk - lance a boil
 katim gras - cut grass
 katim tok - interrupt
 katim marit - annul a marriage,
 divorce
 katim long tit - bite off
 katim long so - saw
 katim long akis/tamiok - chop
 katim singsing long teprikoda -
 record a song
 katim diwai i pundaun - fell a
 tree
 Katolik - Catholic
 kau - beef, cattle
 kauboi - cowboy
 kaunim - count, spell
 kaunsila - councillor
 kawawar - ginger
 kek - cake
 ken, i ken - possible, can
 kerasin - kerosene
 kes, sutkes - case, suitcase
 ki - 1. key; 2. water tap, faucet
 kiap - government officer
 kiau - egg; bulb, light globe
 kibung, kivung - meeting
 kik - kick
 kil bilong diwai - buttress root,
 tap root
 kilim - injure
 kilim i dai - kill
 kilim pikinini long bel - abort,
 have an abortion
 kilman - murderer
 kina - 1. shell; 2. kina (monetary
 unit - 100 toea)
 kindam - crayfish
 kirap - 1. get up
 kirap nogut - be surprised
 2. take off (of plane)
 kirapim - 1. get (someone) up from
 bed; awaken; 2. begin, start
 (something), found, establish
 kirapim bisnis - open (new)
 business
 kisen - kitchen
 kisim - get
 kisim asua, kisim birua - have
 an accident
 kisim bel - conceive (a child)
 kisim pe - get paid
 klub - club
 klats - clutch
 klaut - cloud
 klaut i pas - sky is overcast
 klaut i pairap - it is thundering
 klaut i lait - lightning is
 flashing
 klia - empty, clear
 klin, klinpela - clean
 klinim - clean
 klinim gaden - weed
 klinim sua - dress a wound
 klirim - clear, explain
 klirim tebol - clear the table
 klok - 1. clock, watch
 faiv klok stret - exactly five
 o'clock
 2. heart
 klok bilong mi i meknols yet -
 my heart is still ticking
 klos - clothes, European clothes
 klosap - nearly, almost
 klostu - near, nearby
 koan! - go on!
 kok - penis
 kokakola - Coca-Cola
 koki - cockatoo, parrot
 kokomo - hornbill
 kokonas - coconut, coconut tree
 skin bilong kokonas - husk of
 coconut

kokoros - cockroach
 kol, kolpela - cold
 kolim bel, mekim bel i kol -
 passify
 kol pinis - flat (of battery)
 kolsinglis - sweat shirt, sweater
 kolim nem - say your name
 kom - comb
 komim - comb (something)
 komiti - committee, committee member
 komputa - computer
 kon - corn
 kona - corner
 konpesen - confession
 kopi - coffee
 sospen bilong kopi - coffee pot
 kopra - copra
 koropela, propela - propeller
 kos - cost
 kostim - cost
 em i kostim hamas? - how much
 does it cost?
 kot - court
 baim kot - pay fine
 man i go i kam long kot -
 persistent offender
 kothaus - courthouse
 winim kot - win a case
 kotim - take to court
 koten - cotton
 kotren - raincoat
 kouk - Coca-Cola
 kra i - cry
 kranki - wrong, clumsy
 krismas - 1. Christmas; 2. year
 yu gat hamas krismas? - how old
 are you?
 kristen - Christian
 kros - angry
 em i gat kros - he is cross, angry
 krosim - be angry with, scold
 kru - brain; sprout, seedling
 kru bilong het - brain
 krungut - crooked

krungutim - bend, crumple (something)
 kuk - cook
 kukim - cook, burn (something)
 kukim (antap) long paia - grill,
 barbecue
 kukim bret - bake bread
 kukamba - cucumber
 kulau - green coconut
 kumu - greens, vegetables; potato
 kumul - bird of paradise
 kunai - sword grass, grass
 kundu - hourglass drum, hand drum
 kus - have a cold
 kusaiman - deceiver, prankster,
 show-off
 kuskus - clerk
 kwalt - quiet, quietly
 Kwantas - Qantas airline
 kwesten - question
 kwik - quickly
 kwiktaim - right away, shortly
 kwila - hardwood tree

L

laik - want to; desire, wish; to
 about to
 laikim - like, love, desire
 lain - 1. line, queue; 2. rope;
 3. group, family, clan,
 relatives
 lain bilong Jisas - disciples
 4. learn
 lainim - 1. line up, arrange in order
 2. learn
 laip - life
 laipman - living person, the living
 laisens - licence
 lait - bright, light, be lit
 laita - gas lighter
 laka - question tag, isn't it
 laki - card game, lucky
 lam - lamp, bulb
 lam bensin - pressure lamp
 sutlam - torch, flashlight

- lang - fly
 lap - laugh
 laplap - laplap, loincloth, cloth
 laplap bilong alta - altar cloth
 laplap bilong bet - bedsheet
 laplap bilong windo - curtain
 lapun - old
 lapun - old man
 larim - let, allow, permit
 las - last
 lata - steps, stairs
 laulau - Malay apple
 laus - louse, flea
 legoim brek - release the brake
 lek - leg, foot
 lek antap - upper leg
 lek i dai - leg is numb
 lek bilong pik - hind leg of pig,
 leg of pork
 lephan - left hand
 les - tired, lazy
 lesbaga - loafer
 let - leather
 let - belt
 let bilong karapela - fan belt
 su let - leather shoes
 leta - letter
 lewa - liver, innards
 waitlewa - lungs
 likim - lick
 liklik - little, a little
 liklik haus - toilet
 liklik rat - mouse
 limbum - palm, areca palm, black palm
 limonad - lemonade
 lip - leaf
 lipti - tea leaves
 litimapim - lift (something) up
 liva - intestines
 lo - 1. short form of long; 2. law
 loaia, loya - lawyer
 lokim - lock
 lokim dua - lock door
 loli - lolly, lollies
 loliwara - softdrink
 lon - loan
 long - along, to, in, at, about,
 from, on, for
 long hap - over there
 rait long pepa - write on paper
 paitim long stick - hit with stick
 longlong - crazy, stupid; stupidity
 longlongman - mad person
 long, longpela - long
 longpela liklik - quite long
 longpela long olgeta - longest
 longpela mo - longer than
 longpela olsem - as long as
 longpela winim olgeta - longest
 of all
 longsok(s) - long/walk sock(s),
 public servant, clerk
 longwe liklik long - apart from
 lotu - religion, worship
 haus lotu - church
 lotuim - worship (God)
 loya, loaia - lawyer
 luk - look
 lukstilman, man bilong luklukstil -
 peeping Tom
 lukaut - look out for, watch out for
 lukaut! - look out!
 lukaut long - be careful of
 lukautim - look after
 lukim - look at, see
 lukim yu - see you, cheerio
 lukluk - look at, watch
 luksave - recognise, find out
 lus - loose, lost, lose
 lusim - desert, let go, set free,
 leave behind, abandon
 lusim mani - spend, lose money
 lusim tingting - forget
 lusim tingting long - forgive
 Lutheran - Lutheran

M

- mafla - muffler
 majestret - magistrate
 majik - magic, sorcery

- mak** - mark, design
makmak - multicoloured
makao - tilapia (fish sp.)
maket - market
makim - mark
mal - man's bark skirt, G-string, genital covering
maleo - eel
malolo - rest
de bilong malolo - day off
mama, mami - mother, mummy
mambu - bamboo, pipe, flute
mambu bilong bensin - petrol pipe
mambu bilong blut - artery, vein
mambu bilong nek - gullet, windpipe
mambu bilong wara - water pipe
mami - yam
man - man, male, person
man bilong nambis - a coastal person
man bilong maunten - a highlands person
man bilong bikmaus - loudmouth
man bilong giaman - liar
man bilong kaikai - glutton
man bilong lotu - church goer
man bilong nambis - coastal man
man bilong pait - aggressive person, warrior
man bilong save - learned person, clever person
man bilong toktok - talkative person
man bilong wok - good worker, industrious person
man i gat kot - the accused
man i gat tupela maus - hypocrite
manmeri - men and women, people
man nogut, raskol - criminal
trabelman - troublemaker
daiman - dead person
Mande - Monday
mangal - envy
mangalim - covet, be jealous of
mango - mango
mani - money
manki - boy
marasin - medicine
marasin bilong kilim jem - antiseptic
maremare, marmar - raintree
marimari - pity, mercy
marit - married
maritim - marry
maritman - husband
marita - edible pandanus fruit
mas - must, have to
Mas - March
masalai - spirit, sprite
masin - machine, engine
kirapim mesin - start up a motor, engine
masis - matches
masis i kol - matches are wet, won't light
mekim i dai masis - blow out a match
masket - gun, shotgun
maski - 1. forget about; 2. never mind; 3. in spite of
masta - boss
masta mak - surveyor
mastamisis - Europeans
matakiau - blind in one eye
mau - ripe, sweet
maunten - hill, mountain
maus - mouth
maus bilong gumi - valve stem on inner tube
mausgras - moustache, catfish
mauspas - dumb, mute
Me - May
mekenik - mechanic
mekim - do, cause
mekim Misa - celebrate Mass
mekim poisen long - make magic against
me - variant of meme
meme - 1. goat; 2. pulp of fruit
memeim - pound, pulverise
meri - woman, wife, female
haus meri - woman's house
hos meri - mare
mi - I, me
mi wanpela - I alone
mi yet - I myself

mikisim - mix (mun) Septemba - September
 min - mean (mun) Oktoba - October
 minit - minute (mun) Novemba - November
 (mun) Desemba - December

mipela - we, us (excl)
 mitripela - we (three excl)
 mitupela - we (two excl)

muruk - cassowary

musik - music

misin - mission

misinare - missionary

N

misis - (European) woman, wife

mit - meat

na - and

mit bilong lek - thigh

nabaut - about, round about

mita - metre

nain, nainpela - nine

mitim ka - pass (oncoming) car

naIntifaiv - ninety-five

mo, moa - more, very

naip - knife

mo yet - very much

nais, naispela - nice, attractive

mobeta - better

nait - evening, early night, night

mobeta sapos - it would be
 better if

nakas - pencil cedar

moning - good morning

namba - number

moningtaim - morning

namba wan - first

moran - python, carpet snake

nambawan - first rate, Al,
 very good

moskito - mosquito

nambis - beach, seaside, coast

mosong - fuzz, fine hair

namel - middle

mowa - lawnmower

namel long - in the middle of

muli - lemon or lime

nap - short form of inap

muliwara - lemon or lime drink,
 juice

narakain - different

mumu - cooking pit, ground oven

narapela - another, other

mumuim - cook in ground oven,
 pressure cook, steam

nat - nut (of bolt)

mumut - bandicoot

nating - for no reason, nought,
 nothing, worthless

mumutim - scavenger

bokis nating - just a box,
 empty box

mun - moon, month

pipia nating - just so much dirt,
 worthless

mun i kamap - moon rises

bun nating - just skin and bone,
 worthless

mun i dai, mun i godaun - moon sets

bikpela mun - full moon

sindaun nating - just sitting
 about, doing nothing

nupela mun - new moon

liklik mun - planet

man nating - just a nobody

mun i kilim meri - girl is
 menstruating

aiskrim nating - just icecream,
 plain icecream

(mun) Janueri - January

kanaka nating - just an ordinary
 person

(mun) Februeri - February

wet nating - wait in vain

(mun) Mas - March

(mun) Epril - April

(mun) Me - May

natnat - gnat, mosquito

(mun) Jun - June

(mun) Julai - July

(mun) Ogas, Ogus - August

nau - now, then

nek - neck, voice, throat, tune,
 dialect

nek bilong Tok Pisin long Sepik -
 Sepik dialect of Tok Pisin
 nek bilong meri - woman's voice
 nek bilong singsing - tune of a
 song
 nek i pas - hoarse

nem - name
 nes - nurse
 nidim - need
 nil - nail, needle, injection
 nilpis - perch, any spiny fish
 nildaun - kneel
 niuspepa - newspaper
 no - not, no
 no gat - there isn't
 no inap - unable to
 no ken smok! - No smoking!
 no laikim tru, hetim - hate

nogat - no, nothing
 nogut - bad, no good, useless
 nogutim - insult (someone)
 nois - noise
 not - north; nought
 Novemba - November
 nupela - new, fresh
 nus - nose
 pin bilong nus - nose pin

0

o - 1. oh!; 2. or
 oda - order
 odaim - order
 ofis - office
 ofisa - officer
 Ogas, Ogas - August
 oke - okay
 Oktoba - October
 ol - 1. they, them;
 ol i kolim - it's called
 2. the (plural marker)
 olgeta - all, everybody
 oloboi, oloman - gee!
 olupela - old

olsem - 1. like, as
 olsem wanem - how
 2. therefore, thus
 oltaim - always, forever
 op - open
 opim - open
 opis - office
 orait - okay, all right
 oraitim - fix up
 ova - over

P

pai - pie
 paia - fire, be on fire, burn
 paiawut - firewood
 pailat - pilot
 painap - pineapple
 painim - look for, find (something)
 painimaut - find out
 painimautim - discover, find out
 paip - pipe, water pipe
 pairap - to explode, go off
 pairitrum - pyrethrum
 pait - fight, war, quarrel
 paitim - hit, beat
 paitim belo - ring the bell
 paitim dua - knock at door
 palai - lizard, goanna
 palamen - parliament
 pam - 1. pump; 2. heart
 pamkin - pumpkin
 pamuk meri - harlot
 panggai - frond
 paniman - funnyman, clown
 papa - father, daddy
 papamama - parents
 pas - 1. letter, note
 salim pas i go/kam - send a
 letter, note
 2. stuck
 trak i pas long tais - the truck
 is stuck in the swamp/bog

- pasim - 1. fasten
 pasim let - fasten seatbelt
 2. put on (clothing)
 pasim sua - bandage a wound
 pasim laplap - put on loincloth
 3. shut, obscure
 klaut i pasim maunten - the
 cloud obscures the mountain
- pasin - behaviour, way, mode
 pasin birua - ill-will, hostility,
 hatred
- pasindia - passenger, freeloader,
 bludger
- paspas - band
 paspas bilong bel - stomach band,
 belt
 paspas bilong lek - leg band
 paspas bilong han - arm band
- pastaim - first, firstly
- pat - part
- pat, patpela - fat
- pati - party
- pato - duck
- paulim - interfere
 paulim meri - have sexual
 intercourse with a woman
- paura - powder
- pawa - power, strength, force
- pe - pay, wages
 pede - payday
- peim - pay
 peim dua - pay admission
 peim takis - pay taxes
- pekato - sin
- pekpek - defecate
 pekpek blut - dysentery
 pekpek wara - diarrhoea
 haus pekpek - toilet, W.C.
- pelim - fail
- pemit - permit, licence
- pen - 1. pain, hurt; 2. paint
- penim - paint
- pepa - paper
- pes - 1. face; 2. first
- pi - peas
- piak - flatulate, pass wind, fart
- piemvi - public transport, bus
- pik - pig, pork
- pike - chewing gum
- pikinini - child
 pikinini bilong diwai - fruit
 pikinini bilong rot - illegitimate
 child
 pikinini daka - fruit of betel
 pepper
 pikinini i dring susu yet - baby
 not yet weaned
 pikinini meri - daughter
 pikinini pusi - kitten
- piksa - picture
- piksim - fix
- pilai - play, game
 pilai wantaim meri - have sexual
 intercourse with a woman
- pilaim - play
 pilaim gita, piano - play guitar,
 piano
- pilim - 1. film; 2. feel
- pilo - pillow
- pilta - filter
- pin - pin, peg
- pinga - finger
 bikpela pinga - thumb
 namba tu pinga - index finger
 longpela pinga - middle finger
 namba foa pinga - ring finger
 liklik pinga - small finger
 pinga bilong fut/lek - toe
- pinis - finish, end
- pinisim - finish
- pipel - people
- pipia - rubbish, scraps
- pis - fish
- pisin - bird; totem, clan; pidgin
 haus bilong pisin - nest
- pispis - urine, urinate
- pitpit - wild cane
- plai - fly
- plais - pliers
- plang - board, plank
 plang bilong pait - shield
- planim - plant, bury

plantesen, plantesin - plantation
 planti - a lot, plenty
 planti tumas - very many, very much
 plasta - adhesive plaster, sticking plaster
 plastik - plastic, plastic sheet
 plaua - flower; flour
 plaua bilong kakaruk - comb of chicken, rooster
 ples - village, place, site
 ples balus - airport
 ples bilong klaut - sky
 ples i go daun - valley
 ples kanaka - native village
 ples kliia - empty space, clearing
 ples kunai - grassy patch
 ples malomalo - soft, muddy place
 ples nating - empty space
 ples nogut - bad, dangerous place
 ples tambu - forbidden place
 ples wokabaut - pedestrian crossing
 plet - plate
 plis - please
 plua - floor
 PMV - public transport, bus, passenger truck
 poisen, gip - poison
 pokona - meat in square tin; bullybeef
 polisim - polish
 polis - police
 politisen - politician
 popo - pawpaw, papaya
 poro, poroman - friend
 pos - post
 posopis - post office
 poteto - potato
 potnait - payweek
 poto - photograph
 Prai Minista - Prime Minister
 praimeril skol - primary school
 prai - fry
 prai pan - frying pan
 praim - fry (something)
 prais - price

pren - friend
 pret - frightened of, afraid of
 pretman, man bilong pret - coward
 profet - prophet
 promisim - promise
 provins - province
 prut - fruit but especially passionfruit
 pukpuk - crocodile
 pul - paddle
 pul bilong kanu - canoe paddle
 pul bilong pis - fin of fish
 pul bilong trausel - turtle's flipper
 pul ong kanu - row, paddle
 pulap - full up, replete
 pulim - pull; seduce, rape
 pulim nus - snore
 pulim smok - draw on a smoke
 pulim win - breathe
 pundaun - fall down
 purpur - woman's skirt
 puripuri - magic, sorcery
 pusi - cat
 putim - put

R

rabis - rubbish
 rabisim - denigrate, make fun of
 rabisman - poor man
 raifol - rifle
 rais - rice
 rait, raithan - right
 raithan, han sut - right hand
 raitim - write
 ram - rum
 ran, ron - run
 ranawe - run away
 ranim - 1. chase, pursue; 2. control
 ranim balus - fly a plane
 raskol - criminal, thief, raskol
 ratol - rattle
 rat - rat

raun, raunpela - round
 raunpela mun - full moon
 raunwara - lake
raunim - surround
rausim - get rid of, throw away
 rausim bel - abort, have an
 abortion
redieita - radiator
redi - ready
redim - prepare
ren - rain
 renbo - rainbow
 ren i kamdaun - it's raining
 taim bilong ren - rainy season
resis - race, competition
ret, retpela - red
 retsos, retpela sos - tomato
 sauce, or similar
ridim - read
ring - ring, washer
ripotim - report
rip - reef
rises - research
risit - receipt
ritim - read
riva Sepik - Sepik River
rokrok - frog
rong - fault, offence
rongim - wrong, offend
rop - vine, rope
 rop bilong banara - bowstring
 rop bilong diwai - vine
ros - rust
rot - 1. road way
 rot bilong blut - circulatory
 system
 rot bilong kaikai - digestive
 system
 2. choice, option
 mitupela i no gat arapela rot -
 we (two) don't have any other
 choice/option
rum - room
 rum kaikai - eating room
 rum slip - bedroom
 rum bilong waswas - bathroom

S

sain - sign, notice, signal
sait - side
sak - shark
sakim tok - disobey
saksak - sago, sago palm
salim - 1. send; 2. sell
salvinia - salvinia plant, water
 plant
samap - sew, sew up
samapim - sew up (something)
sampela - some
samting - about, approximately;
 something, thing
 samting bilong pasim bel -
 contraceptive for females
 samting olsem - approximately
san - sun
 san i kamap - sun rises
 san i godaun - sun sets
 lait bilong san - daylight,
 sun's rays
sanap - get up, stand up, be erect
 sanap long kot - appear in court
sanapim - stand (something) up,
 erect (something)
Sande - Sunday
sangana - armpit, groin
sanglas - sunglasses
sanguma - magic, sorcery, witchcraft
sans - chance
sap, sappela - sharp
sapim - carve
sapos - suppose, if
sapota - supporter
sapotim - support
sarapina - variant of salvinia
sarap - shut up
Sarere - Saturday
sarip - sharp grass-cutting
 implement, grassknife
 saripim - cut grass with sarip

- sas - charge (in law)
 sasim - charge (someone) (in law)
 satan, setan - devil
 sausap - soursop
 save - know, know how to
 save - do something regularly
 save laik - like (doing something)
 savol - shovel
 savolim - spoon out, ladle out,
 shovel (something)
 sayor - greens, vegetables
 sea, sia - chair, seat
 sekan - shake hands
 sekim - check
 sekreteri - secretary
 seksek - tremble
 seksekim - shake (something)
 sel - sail, shell
 sel bilong kokonas - coconut shell
 selim - sell
 sem - shame; embarrassed
 semitrela - semitrailer
 sen - chain
 senka(r) - tracked vehicle
 senis - change
 senisim - change (something)
 Septemba - September
 seven, sevenpela - seven
 seven de - Seventh Day Adventist
 sia, sea - chair, seat
 sigaret - cigarette(s)
 sik, sikipela - sick
 sikman, sikmeri - patient
 sikau - wallaby
 sikau bilong antap - tree kangaroo
 sikibaga - cheeky person
 sikirapim, sikrapim - scrape
 sikirapim kokonas - scrape coconut
 sikirapim tok - chatter
 sikis, sikispela - six
 Sikismail - Sixmile
 sikrapim - scrape
 sikrapim bel bilong - excite, lure
 fornicate with
 simen - concrete
 sindaun - sit down
 singaut - call out
 singaut long - call out to
 singautim - call
 singsing - dance accompanied by
 singing, sing
 sios - church
 siot - shirt
 siot i gat makmak - multicoloured
 shirt, patterned shirt
 siot i gat plaua - floral shirt
 tisiot, T-siot - T-shirt
 sip - ship
 sips - chips
 sipsip - lamb, mutton, sheep
 sis - cheese
 sista - sister (nurse, nun)
 sit - 1. excrement
 sit bilong paia - ash(es)
 2. seat
 skel - portion, ration
 skelim - share out, weigh out
 sket - skirt, European type
 skin - bark, skin; body
 skin i guria - I'm shivering
 skin i hat - fever
 skin i kol - chill
 skin i les, slek - tired, lazy
 skin pas - envelope
 skin pilo - pillow slip
 skin pukpuk - ringworm, tinea
 skon - scone(s)
 skru - screw, bolt, any joint
 skul - school
 skul long - go to school in
 (place)
 skulim - teach
 skweamit - meat in square tin,
 bullybeef
 slek - slack, loose
 slekim - loosen, slacken
 slekim masis - strike a match
 slip - sleep, be asleep, lie down
 ai i slip - drowsy
 slipim - lay (something) down

- sloim ka - slow down car
 smel - smell, odour
 smelim - smell (something)
 smok - smoke
 smokbalus - jet plane
 smol, smolpela - small
 smolhaus - toilet
 smolmama - paternal aunt
 smolpapa - paternal uncle
 snek - snake
 snek i gat gip, poisen - venomous
 snake
 sno - fog, mist
 sno i pasim maunten - fog/mist
 obscures the mountain
 so - saw
 soim - show
 soka - soccer
 soklet - chocolate
 sok(s) - sock(s)
 sol - salt
 solmarasin - epsom salts, laxative
 solmit - corned beef, saltmeat
 sol na pepa - salt and pepper
 solwara - sea
 sol, solda - shoulder
 solap - swell, swell up
 solapim - slap, thrash
 soldia, solodia - soldier
 sop - soap
 sop i gat smel - toilet soap
 sops - chops
 sore, sori - sad, depressed; sorry
 sos - sauce
 sosis - sausage
 sospen - saucepan, clay pot
 sospen graun - clay pot
 sot, sotpela - short
 sotpela trausis - shorts
 sotwin - out of breath
 spak - drunk
 spakman - drunkard
 spak plag - spark plugs
 spak brus - marijuana
 spepat - spare part(s)
 spes - space
 spet - 1. spade; 2. spit, spittle
 spia - spear
 spirim - spear (something)
 spit - speed
 spoilim - wreck, ruin
 spun - spoon
 spunim - spoon out, ladle out
 sta - star
 sta i lait - star shines
 stabl - stubby
 stadim, stadiim - study
 stap - be, exist, be in a place,
 live
 stap isi, stap gut - behave
 oneself
 stap nating - be unemployed
 stat - begin
 step - steps
 stesin - station, outpost
 stia - steering wheel
 stik - stick, club
 stik bilong pait - club
 stik kambang - lime spatula
 stik suga - sugarcane
 stil - steal, theft
 stilm - steal
 stilman - thief
 stilwul - steel wool
 Stimsip - Steamships
 stirim ka - steer car
 ston - stone
 ston masis - flint lighter
 stop, stopim - stop
 stori - story, account
 stov - stove
 strafim - punish
 strena - strainer
 stret, stretpela - 1. correct,
 honest, straight, right;
 2. sharp (of time), exactly
 stret long taim - as soon as,
 just when
 stretim, lainim tebol - set the table
 strong, strongpela - hard, strong
 strongpela susu - condensed milk

strongim - promote

stua - store

stuakipa - storekeeper

studen - student

su - shoes

wanpela sait long su - one shoe

wanpela su - one shoe

tupela su - both shoes

su let - leather shoes

su gumi - rubber shoes, sand shoes,
sneakers

sua - sore, wound

sua i drai - wound heals

sua i gat susu - sore has pus in it

sua i sting - festered (stinking)
wound

subim - push

suga - sugar

sumatin - schoolchild, student

sup - soup

supia - spear

supia bilong banara - arrow

supia i gat huk - barbed arrow
or spear

supsup - fish spear

supsup bilong banara - pronged
arrow

susa - sister, same-sex sibling

susap - jaw's or jew's harp

susu - milk, breast

mama i susuim pikinini - mother
(breast) feeds child

susuim pinga - suck finger

susu o gris bilong kokonas -
coconut milk/cream

sut - 1. injection

givim sut - give injection

2. shoot

sutlam - torch, headlamps

sutim - shoot

sutim pik - shoot a pig

sutim bel, sutim nus - provoke,
taunt

sutim kaikai - dish up food,
serve food

sutim long tok - accuse someone

sutim meri - have sexual inter-
course with a woman

sutkes - suitcase

switbisket - sweet biscuit, cookie

switpela kaikai - dessert

T

tabak, brus - tobacco

taia, taia stret - tyre

taim - time

taim bilong kaikai - meal time

taim bilong san - dry season

taim malolo - free time, rest time

taipim - type

taiprait - typewriter

tais - swamp

tait - tide

tait i slek - low tide

taitim - tighten

taitim bun - exert oneself

takis - tax

taksi - taxi

tamblo, tambolo - down

tambu - affines, in-laws

tambuim - prohibit

tamiok - tomahawk

tang - tongue

tanget - cordyline plant

tanim - turn

tanim skru - sprain

tanim smok - roll a smoke

tanim stia - turn steering wheel

tanim tingting, tanim bel -
convert

tantanim - turn round

tapiok - tapioca, cassava

tarangu - miserable, unfortunate

taro - taro

tasol - but, just, only

taul - towel

taun - town

taun, ton - timber tree

taunam - mosquito net

tausen - thousand

tebol - table

tebol tambu, alta - altar

tede - today

tekewe - take away

tekimaut gras nogut - weed

tel - tail

- telepon - telephone
 ten, tenpela - ten
 tenkyu - thank you
 tep - tape
 teprikoda - taperecorder
 teti - thirty
 ti - tea
 lipti - tea leaves
 kapti - cup of tea
 tiktik - reeds, wild sugarcane
 tiktri, yati - teak tree
 tin - can, tin
 tinmeat - tinned meat
 tin pipia - rubbish tin
 tinpis - tinned fish
 ting - think
 tingim - think about
 tingting - opinion, thoughts
 tipa - tip-truck
 tipot - teapot
 tisa - teacher
 tisiot, T-siot - T-shirt
 tit - teeth
 tit i pen - toothache
 tobako - European tobacco
 toea - toea (monetary unit; 100t = 1 kina)
 toilet, haus pekpek, smolhaus - toilet
 tok - talk, say
 tok baksait - gossip about
 tok bilas - ridicule, mockery
 tok bilong ol tumbuna - tradition of ancestors
 tok bokis - secret language, parable
 tok giaman - untruths, lies
 tok gris - flattery
 tok gude - greet
 tok gumi - tall tale
 tok gumi bipo yet - myth, fable
 tok hait - secret
 tokim - tell
 tok insait - conscience
 tok nogutim - insult
 tok pait - dispute, controversy
 tok ples - local language
 toksave - explain
 tok tru - truth, speak the truth
 tokwin - rumour
 tokautim - divulge
 tokautim sin - confess
 toktok - conversation, talk
 toktok long - talk about
 toktok wantaim - converse with
 tomato - tomatoes
 tos - toast
 tostim (bret) - toast
 trabel, trabol - trouble
 trabelman - troublemaker
 traaim - tempt, try
 traipela - large, fat
 trak - truck
 trausel - turtle
 trausis - trousers
 longpela trausis - long trousers
 sotpela trausis - shorts
 traut - vomit
 tri, tripela - three
 Trinde - Wednesday
 troimweim - variant of tromoim
 tromoim - 1. throw away; 2. pay out
 trosel - variant of trausel
 tru - really, true, very, a lot
 T-siot - T-shirt
 tu - too, as well, also
 tupela, tu - two
 tubel, tumaus - hypocrite
 tulip - tree with paired edible leaves
 tudak - darkness
 tuhat - sweat
 tulait - very bright
 tumas - very, extremely, very much
 tumbuna - ancestors, grandparents
 tumora - tomorrow
 Tunde - Tuesday
 tuptup - cover, lid of saucepan
 turis - tourist
 twenti - twenty
 U
 usket, asket - chin

V

veranda - verandah, patio
 vidlorikoda - videorecorder
 viles - village
 vot - vote

W

waia - wire
 waia i lus - crazy
 wail, wel - wild
 wail limbun - black palm
 wailis - wireless
 waipa - windscreen wipers
 wait, waitpela - white
 waitman - white man, European
 wan, wanpela - one, a, an
 wanbel - agreement
 wanblut - blood relative
 wan handet - a hundred
 wanhaus - house mate, flat mate
 wankain - similar, the same
 wanlain - person of same (age,
 social) group
 wanlotu - person of same religion
 wannem - namesake
 wanpela wanpela - each
 wanpela wanpela taim - occasionally
 wanpes - persons who look alike
 wanpilai - playmate
 wanples - person from same village
 wanrot - travelling companion
 wanskul - schoolmate
 wansospen, wantebol - messmate
 wantaim - together
 wanpela taim mo - once more
 wantok - friend, mate, same-language
 speaker
 wanwok - workmate, fellow worker
 wanem - what, which
 bilong wanem - how
 olsem wanem - how
 wara - water
 haiwara - high tide
 solwara - the sea
 wara Sepik - Sepik River
 wara bilong kokonas - coconut water
 wari - worry, worries, problems, guilt
 was - (wristlet) watch

wasim - wash
 wasim, baptaisim - baptise
 waswas - wash, bathe
 wasmara - why
 watpo - why
 we - where
 westap - where
 wel - fat, oil
 welman - wanderer, drifter
 wel, welpela - wild
 welpik - wild pig, bush pig
 welim, grisim - oil, grease
 (something)
 westim - waste
 wet - 1. wet; 2. wait for
 wetim - wait for (someone)
 wetliva, lang - lungs
 wik - week
 wiken - weekend
 wil - wheel
 wilwil - bicycle
 win - wind
 winskrin - windscreen
 winim - 1. blow, blow into
 winim bugol - blow bugle
 winim mambu - play flute or pipe
 2. beat, be better than
 winim kot - be acquitted
 wok - work, job
 wok bus - make a patrol
 wok kaikai - work for board and
 keep
 wok kontrak - work by contract
 wok long - by busy doing
 (something)
 wok mak - do piecework
 wokman - worker
 wok sip - stevedore
 woksop - workshop
 wokabout - walk about, take a walk;
 trip, walk
 wokim - make, build (something); do
 yu wokim wanem? - what are you
 making/doing?
 wokim, paitim bret - knead bread
 wokim glas i go antap - wind up
 a window
 wokim kaikai - prepare food

Y

ya - 1. yes; 2. this

yam - yam

yambo - guava

yangpela - young

yar - she-oak

yau - ear

yaupas - deaf

yes - yes

yet - still, yet
mi yet - myself

ya - year

yis - yeast

yu - you (sg)

yu mekim wanem? - what are you
doing?

yumitripela - we (three excl)

yumitupela - we (two incl), you
and I

yu stap a? - Good day!

yunivesiti - university

yupela - you (pl)

yutripela - you (three)

yutupela - you (two)

yuropen - Europeans

yusim - use

A

- a, an - wanpela
 abandon - lusim
 abort, have abortion - rausim bel,
 kilim pikinini long bel
 about, approximately - samting
 (round) about (a place) - nabaut
 (long)
 accelerator - akselareta
 accident - birua, tupela i bam
 accuse (someone) - sutim long tok
 the accused - man i gat kot
 acquaintance - poro, poroman
 acquitted - winim kot
 address (letter) - adresim
 adhesive/sticking plaster - plasta
 aeroplane - balus
 affines - tambu
 afraid - pret
 after, afterwards - bihain
 again - gen
 aggressive person - man bilong pait
 agreement - wanbel
 agricultural officer - didiman
 airport - ples balus, epot
 all - olgeta
 all sorts of - kainkain
 allow - larim
 along - long
 also - tu
 altar - alta, tebol tambu
 altar cloth - laplap bilong alta
 always - oltaim
 ambiguous (be) - karamapim tok
 ancestors - tumbuna
 anchor - anka
 angel - ensel
 angry - kros
 angry with, be - krosim
 animal - abus
 annoy - hambak
 annoying person - hambakman,
 sikibaga
 annul a marriage - katim marit
 another - narapela
 answer - ansaim, bekim tok
 antiseptic - marasin bilong kilim
 jem
 anus - as
 apart from - abrus long; longwe
 liklik long
 appear in court - sanap long kot
 approximately - samting, samting
 olsem
 April - Epril
 area, place - hap
 areca palm - limbung, limbung
 areca nut - buai, bilinat,
 bitolnat
 arm - han
 arm, upper - han antap
 armpit - sangana
 arrive - kamap, kamap long
 arrow - supia bilong banara
 arrow or spear, barbed - supia i
 gat huk
 arrow, pronged - supsup bilong
 banara
 artery - mambu bilong blut
 as long as - longpela olsem
 as soon as - stret long taim
 ascend - go antap
 ash(es) - sit bilong paia
 August - Ogas
 aunt, paternal - bikmama, smolmama,
 kandere
 Australia - Austrelia
 avoid - abrusim
 axe - akis

B

- baby - pikinini
 baby not yet weaned - pikinini
 i dring susu yet
 back - baksait; bek
 backbone - bekbun

bad - nogut	believe - bilip
bad place - ples nogut	belly - bel
baggage - kago	belt - let, paspas bilong bel
bail up, hold up - hansapim	bend (something) - krungutim
bake - kukim	beside - arere long
bake bread - kukim bret	betelnut - buai, bilinat, bitolnat
bamboo - mambu	betel pepper - daka
bamboo pipe - mambu	better - mobeta
band - paspas	Bible - Baibel
arm band - paspas bilong han	bicycle - wilwil
leg band - paspas bilong lek	big - blkpela
stomach band, belt - paspas	bird - pisin
bilong bel	Bird of Paradise - kumul
bandage a wound - pasim sua	biscuit - bisket
bandicoot - mumut	bite - kaikaim
bank - beng	bite off - brukim/katim long tit
baptise - wasim, baptaisim	bitter, strong - em i pait
bar - ba	black - blakpela
barbecue - kukim long paia	black palm - wailimbung,
barbecue sauce - blakpela sos	wailimbum
bark - skin	blanket - blanket
barman - baman	bleed - blut i kamap
base, basis - as	blind - aipas
basket - basket	blind in one eye - matakiau
bathroom - rum bilong waswas	blood - blut
be in a place - stap	blood relative - wanblut
beach - nambis	blow - winim
beads - bis	blow bugle - winim bugol
beans - bin	blow out a match - mekim i dai
beard - gras usket	masis
beat, beat up - paitim	bludger - pasindia
be better than - winim	board (a vehicle) - kalap
because - bilong wanem, long wanem,	board a PMV - kalap long PMV
bikos	boat - bot
bed - bet	boat's crew - boskru
bedroom - rum slip	body - bodi
beef - bulmakau, kau	boil, swelling, lump - buk
beer - bia	boil (something) - boilim
before - bipo	boiling, be - boil
begin - kirapim	bone - bun
behave oneself - stap isi, stap gut	book - buk
behaviour, manner - pasin	bookshop - buksop
behind - bihain long	border - arere
	borrow - dinau

boss - masta, bos
 bottle - botol
 bow - banara
 bowstring - rop bilong banara
 boy - boi; manki
 boyfriend - boipren
 brain - kru bilong het
 brake(s) - brek
 branch of tree - han bilong diwai
 bread - bret
 breadfruit - kapiak
 break - brukim
 break a promise, go back on one's
 word - brukim promis/tok
 break down - bagarap
 break in halves, divide in two -
 brukim namel
 break the law - brukim lo
 breast - susu
 breath - win
 out of breath - sotwin
 breathe - pulim win
 bridge - bris
 bright - lait
 very bright - tulait
 bring - bringim
 broken - bruk
 brothel - haus pamuk
 brother - brata
 brothers and sisters - bratasusa
 brown - braun, braunpela
 brush - bras
 bubble gum - abababa
 build (something) - wokim
 building - haus
 bulb, light globe - kiau
 bullybeef - skweamit, pokona
 bump - bamim
 burn - kukim, paia
 Burns Philp - Bipi
 bury - planim
 bus - bas, PMV

bush - bus
 bush knife - busnaip
 bush pig, wild pig - welpig
 busy (doing something) - wok long
 but - tasol
 butter - bata
 buttock - as
 buttress root - kil bilong diwai
 buy - baim

C

cabbage - kabis
 cake - kek
 calendar - kalenda
 calf of leg - baksalt bilong lek
 call out - singaut
 call out to - singaut long
 call (something or someone) -
 singautim
 to be called or named - ol i
 kolim
 calm (person) - belisi
 can, could - inap; ken
 can, tin - tin
 cane - kanda
 canoe - kanu
 canoe paddle - pul bilong kanu
 canvas stretcher - bet sel
 cap - hat
 carburettor - kabureta
 cards - kas
 careful of, be - lukaut long
 carefully - isi isi
 car - ka, kar
 cargo - kago
 carpet snake - moran
 carrot - karet
 carry - karim
 carton - katen
 carve (canoe) - sapim

case, suitcase - kes, sutkes, bokis	cigarettes - sigaret
cassava - kasava, taplok	circulatory system - rot bilong blut
cassette - kaset	city - biktaun
cassowary - muruk	clan - bisnis, lain, famili
castor oil - kaswel	clay - graun, graun malomalo, graun bilong wokim sospen
catch a bus - baim bas	clay pot - sospen, sospen graun
catch fish - hukim pis	clean - klin, klinpela; klinim
catfish - mausgras	clear - kliia
Catholic - Katolik	clearing - ples kliia
cattle - bulmakau, kau	clear the table - klirim tebol
cause - as	make clear, explain - klirim
celebrate Mass - mekim Misa	clerk - kuskus
cement - simen	clever person - man bilong save
chain - sen	clock - klok
chair - sea, sia	clock's alarm - belo bilong klok
chance - sans	cloth - laplap
change - senis, senisim	clothes - klos
charge - sas, sasim	cloud - klaut
chase - ranim	club - klab; stik bilong pait
chatter - sikirapim tok	clutch - klats
check - sekim	coastal man - man bilong nambis
cheeky person - hambakman, sikibaga	Coca-Cola - kouk, kokakola
cheerio - lukim yu	cockatoo - koki
chest - bros	cocoa - kakao
chewing gum - pike	coconut - kokonas
chicken - kakaruk	coconut frond - bombom, bumbum
child - pikinini	coconut milk, coconut water - wara bilong kokonas
chill - skin i kol	coconut cream - susu o gris bilong kokonas
chin - usket, asket	coconut shell - sel bilong kokonas
chips (potato) - sips	coffee - kopi
chocolate - soklet	cold - kol, kolpela
chook, fowl - kakaruk	cold, have a - kus
chop - katim long akis/tamiok	colour - kala
chops - sops	comb - kom
Christian - kristen	comb of chicken/rooster - plaua bilong kakaruk
Christmas - krismas	come - kam
church - lotu, haus lotu, sios	come back - kambek, kam bek
churchgoer - man bilong lotu	come out - kamaut
church members - Ekelesia	come quickly - kam hariap
	come up - kamap

- competition - resis
 computer - komputa
 conceive (a child) - kisim bel
 concrete - simen
 condensed milk - strongpela susu
 condom, contraceptive for males -
 gumi bilong kok
 confess - tokautim sin
 confession - konpesen
 conscience - tok insait
 constipated - bel i pas
 contraceptive for females - samting
 bilong pasim bel
 contraceptive for males - gumi
 bilong kok
 control, be in charge of - bosim
 controversy - tok pait
 converse with - toktok wantaim
 conversation - toktok
 convert - tanim tingting, tanim bel
 cookie - switbiskit
 cook - kuk, kukim
 cooking pit, ground oven - mumu
 copra - kopra
 copy - bihainim
 cordyline plant - tanget
 corn - kon
 corned beef - solmit, mit
 corner - kona
 correct - stret, stretpela
 cost - kostim
 cotton wool - koten
 councillor - kaunsila
 count - kaunim
 country - kantri
 course - kos
 court - kot
 courthouse - kothaus
 take to court - kotim
 cousin - kasen
 cover, lid of something - tuptup
 cover up - karamapim
 covet, be jealous of - mangalim
 coward - pretman, man bilong pret
 cracker - draibasket
 crayfish - kindam
 crazy - longlong; waia i lus
 crew of plane/ship - boskru bilong
 balus/sip
 criminal - man nogut, raskol
 crocodile - pukpuk
 cross - diwai kros
 cross, angry - kros
 cross out - autim
 crown of tree - het bilong diwai
 crumple (something) - krungutim
 cry - krai
 cucumber - kukamba
 cupboard - kapet
 cup of tea - kapti
 curry - kari
 curtain - laplap bilong windo
 cuscus - kapul
 custard - kastet
 custom - kastom
 cut - kat, katim
 cut down - katim i pundaun,
 pundaunim
 cut grass - katim gras
 cut grass with sarip - saripim
- D
- daddy - papa
 dance and/or sing - singsing
 dance (modern style) - danis
 dangerous place - ples nogut
 darkness - tudak
 daughter - pikinini meri (bilong en)
 day - de
 day after tomorrow - haptumora
 day before yesterday - hapasde
 day off - de bilong malolo
 dead person, the dead - daiman

- deaf - yaupas
 debt - dinau
 deceive - karamapim tok
 deceiver - kusaiman, man bilong
 karamapim tok
 December - Desemba
 decorate - bilasim
 decoration - bilas
 defecate - pekpek
 denigrate, make fun of - rabisim
 dense bush - bikbus
 dentist - dentis, dokta bilong tit,
 dokta lukautim tit
 desert - lusim
 dessert - switpela kaikai
 develop - kamapim
 devil - satan, setan
 dialect - nek
 diarrhoea - pekpek wara
 did - bin
 different - narakain
 difficulty - asua, hevi
 dig - digim
 digestive system - rot bilong kaikai
 disciple - disaipel
 disciples - lain bilong Jisas
 discover - painimautim
 dish - dis
 dish cloth - hap laplap bilong
 wasim plet
 dish up, serve food - sutim
 kaikai
 disobey - sakim tok
 dispute - tok pait
 district - distrik
 disturb the peace - brukim sindaun
 divorce - katim marit
 dizzy - ai i raun
 do - mekim
 do something regularly - save
 doctor - dokta
 dog - dok
 door - dua
 double - dabolim
 down - daun, tamblo, tambolo
 drain, trench - baret
 draw on a smoke - pulim smok
 dress a wound - klinim sua
 drilling machine - boamasin
 drink - dring
 dripping - gris bilong bulmakau
 drum - kundu, garamut
 drunk - spak
 drunkard - spakman
 dry - drai, draipela
 dry biscuit - draibasket
 dry season - taim bilong san
 duck - pato
 dumb - mauspas
 dust - das
 dysentery - pekpek blut
- E
- each one - wanpela wanpela
 ear - yau, ia
 earth - graun
 earthquake - guria
 Easter - Ista
 easy - isi
 edge - arere
 educate - edukeitim
 eel - maleo
 egg - kiau
 eight - et, etpela
 electricity - elektrik, elektrisiti,
 pawa
 empty - klia
 empty space - ples nating, ples
 klia
 enclose - banisim
 enemy, opponent - birua
 engine - ensin

English - Inglis
 enough - inap
 envelope - skin pas
 envy - mangal
 epsom salts, laxative - solmarasin
 establish - kirapim
 eucalyptus tree, gum tree - gamtri,
 kamarere
 Europeans - mastamsis, ol waitman
 evening, early night - nait
 everybody - olgeta
 exert oneself - taitim bun
 excite - sikrapim bel bilong
 exhaust pipe - eksospaip
 exist - stap
 explain - toksave
 extremely - tumas, mo, tru
 eve - ai
 eyebrow, eyelash - gras bilong ai

F

fable, myth - tok bilong bipo yet
 face - pes
 fail - pelim
 fall down - pundaun
 false - giaman
 family - lain, famili
 fan belt - let bilong karapela
 fare - fe
 far side - arasait
 fasten - pasim
 fasten seatbelt - pasim let
 fat (for greasing body), oil - wel
 fat - gris
 fat, large - traipela, patpela
 father - papa
 fault - asua; rong
 feather - gras bilong pisin
 February - Februeri

feel - filim, pilim
 fell a tree - katim diwai i pundaun
 fellow worker - wanwok
 female - meri
 female genitals - bokis, kan, sem
 bilong meri
 fence - banis
 fence in - banisim
 festered (stinking) wound - sua i
 sting
 fever - skin i hat; fiva
 fifty-five - fiftifaiv
 file - fail
 film - pilim
 filter - pilta
 find out - painimaut
 finery - bilas
 finger - pinga
 fingernail - kapa bilong pinga
 finish - pinis, pinisim
 fin of fish - pul bilong pis
 fire - pala
 firewood - palawut
 first, firstly - pastaim
 first - namba wan
 first rate - nambawan
 fish - pis
 fish spear - supsup
 five - faiv, faipela
 fix - fiksim, piksim
 fix up - oraitim
 flat (of battery) - kol pinis
 flatter - tok grisim
 flatulate, fart - piak, kapupu
 floor - plua
 flour - plaua
 flower - plaua
 fly (insect) - lang
 (bird) flies - plai
 fly a plane - ranim balus
 flying fox - blakbokis
 fog - sno

fold paper/clothes - brukim pepa/klos	G
follow - bihainim	
food - kaikai	gallon - galen
foot - lek, fut	game, meat - abus
footprint - mak bilong fut	garden - gaden
forbidden place - ples tambu	garden house, summer house - haus win
forearm, lower arm - han tambolo, han daunbilo	garnish - abus
foreleg (of pig) - han (bilong plik)	gearbox - giabokis
forget - lusim, lusim tingting	gee! - oloboi, oloman
forget about, ignore - maski	genitals - bokis, kan, sem (bilong meri); bol, kok (bilong man)
forgive - lusim, lusim tingting long	Germany - Jemeni
formerly - bipo	get - kisim
fornicate - sikrapim bel bilong	get into a PMV - kalap long PMV
for no reason - nating	get paid - kisim pe
fortnight - fotnait	get rid of, throw away - rausim, autim
found, establish - kirapim	get up - kirap, sanap
four - fo, foa, fopela	get someone up from bed - kirapim
four-wheel drive - fowil draiv	ghost (of dead person) - dewel bilong man i dai
fowl - kakaruk	ginger - gorgor, kawawar
fracture, broken bone - bun i bruk	girl - gel
free time - taim bilong malolo, wiken	give - givim
fresh - nupela	give up - larim
Friday - Fraide	glass - glas
friend - poro, poroman, pren, wantok	globe, bulb - golo, lam
frightened - pret	glutton - man bilong kaikai
frog - rokrok	gnat - natnat
from - bilong	go - go
frond - panggal	go ahead - gohet
front - fran	go on! - koan!
frosted glass - grileglas	go to school - go long skul
fruit - pikinini bilong diwai; prut	goanna - palai
fry - praim	goat - meme, me
frying pan - praipan	good - gut, gutpela
full up - pulap	good afternoon - apinun
funnyman, clown - paniman	good day - gude, yu stap
fur - gras	good morning - moning
fur (of dog) - gras bilong dok	good night - gut nait
fuzz, fine hair - mosong	good worker - man bilong wok
	goods - kago
	gossip about - tok baksait
	government - gavman
	government officer - kiap

grandparent(s) - tumbuna
 grass - gras
 grassy patch - ples kunai
 grave - hul (bilong planim man)
 grease - wel, welim; gris, grisim
 green - grin, grinpela
 green coconut - kulau
 greens - kumu, sayor, grins
 greet - tok gude
 grill - kukim (antap) long paia
 groin - sangana
 ground - graun
 ground oven - mumu
 group - lain
 grow - gro
 G-string - mal
 guava - guava, yambo
 guilt - hevi, wari
 gullet - mambu bilong nek
 gun - masket, raifol

H

hair - gras
 half - hap
 half-caste - hapkas
 half past seven - hap pas seven
 halve - hapim
 hammer - hama, hamarim
 hand - han
 handkerchief - hankisip
 hang (something) up - hangamapim
 happy - amamas, hamamas
 hard - hat, hatpela; strong,
 strongpela
 harlot - pamuk meri
 harvest (sweet potato) - kamautim
 (kaukau)
 hat - hat
 hate - no laikim tru, hetim
 hatred - pasin birua
 have - gat
 have a cold - kus
 have an accident - kisim asua,
 birua
 have sexual intercourse with a
 woman - pilai wantaim meri,
 sutim meri, goapim meri,
 paulim meri, hevim seks
 wantaim meri
 head - het
 headache - het i pen
 heal (of sore) - drai
 hear - harim
 heart - klok, pam, hat
 heat - hotim
 heathen - hiden
 heaven - heven
 heavy - hevi
 hell - hel
 helmet - hat ain
 help - halivim, helpim
 here - hia
 hide - haitim
 high - antap
 highlands - hailans, hailens
 high school - haiskul
 high tide - haiwara
 highway - haiwe
 hill - maunten
 hind leg (of pig) - lek (bilong pik)
 hit - paitim
 hoarse - nek i pas
 hoist, lift up - haisapim, apim,
 winsim
 holy - holi
 home - haus, long haus
 home town, my - asples bilong mi
 honest - stret, stretpela
 honey - hani
 hook - huk
 horn - hon
 hornbill - kokomo
 horse - hos

hospital - haus sik
 hostess - hostes, e hostes
 hostility - pasin binua
 hot - hot, hotpela
 house - haus
 house/flat mate - wanhaus
 House of Parliament - haus
 palamen
 how - olsem wanem
 how much/many - hamas
 humility - daunpasin
 hundred - wan handet
 hungry - hangre
 hurry, hurry up - hariap
 hurt - pen
 husband - maritman
 hypocrite - tubel, tumaus, man i
 gat tupela maus

I

I - mi
 I alone - mi wanpela
 I myself - mi yet
 I think (so) - ating
 ice - ais
 iceblock - aisblok
 ice chest, refrigerator - bokis
 ais
 icecream - aiskrim
 if - sapos
 illegitimate child - pikinini
 bilong rot
 ill-will - pasin birua
 imitate - bihainim
 imprison - kalabusim
 improve - kamapim
 increase (price) - antapim
 independence - independens
 indigenous person - kanaka
 industrious person - man bilong wok
 injection - sut
 injure - kilim

in-laws - tambu
 inner tube - gumi
 in order to - bilong
 insect - binatang
 inside - insait
 inside of - insait long
 insult - nogutim, tok nogutim
 interfere - paulim
 interrupt - katim tok
 interviewer - intaviua
 intestines - liva
 in the middle of - namel long
 iron - ain; ainim, ainim klos
 island - ailan
 it would be better if - mobeta sapos

J

jack - jek
 jam - jem
 January - Janueri
 jaw's harp - susap
 jet plane - smokbalus
 jew's harp - susap
 joint - skru
 joke - giaman
 judge - jas
 July - Julai
 June - Jun
 jungle - bikbus
 just - tasol
 just when - stret long taim

K

keep, detain - holim pas
 kick - kik
 kid, joke - giaman
 kill - kilim i dai

kina (monetary unit) - kina
 kind, sort - kain
 kitchen - hauskuk, kisen
 knead bread - wokim, paitim bret
 kneel - nildaun
 knife - naip
 knock at door - paitim dua
 know - save
 know (someone/something) - save
 long
 know how to (do something) -
 save mekim/wokim

L

lake - raunwara
 lamp - lam
 lance a boil - katim buk
 laplap - laplap
 lard - gris bilong pik
 large - traipela
 later on - bihain
 laugh - lap
 laundry - haus bilong wasim klos
 law - lo
 lawnmower - mowa
 lawyer - loaia, loya, saveman long lo
 laxative - solmarasin
 lay (something) down - slipim
 leaf - lip, lip bilong diwai
 learn - lainim
 learn about - lain
 learned person - man bilong save
 leather shoes - su let
 leave behind - lusim
 left - kais
 left hand - han kais, lep han,
 lephan
 leftovers - hap kaikai bilong asde
 leg - lek
 leg, lower - lek daunbilo, lek
 tamblo
 leg, upper - lek antap
 lemon - muli
 lemonade - limonad, muliwara
 let, allow - larim
 letter - pas, leta
 liar - man bilong giaman, giamanman
 licence - laisens, pemit
 lick - likim
 lie to - giamanim
 light - lait
 light the lamp - kamapim lait
 lighter (flint) - ston masis
 light (gas) - laita
 lightning - klaut i lait
 like, as - olsem
 like (doing something) - save laik
 like - laikim
 lime, lemon - muli
 lime juice, lemon drink -
 muliwara
 lime (powder) - kambang
 lime spatula - stik kambang
 line - lain
 listen - harim
 little - liklik
 live - stap
 liver - lewa
 living person - laipman
 lizard - palai
 loaf of bread - bret
 loafer, lazy man - lesbaga
 loan - lon
 local language - tok ples
 lock - lokim
 lock door - lokim dua
 lock up, imprison - kalabusim
 loincloth - laplap
 lolly - loli
 long - long, longpela
 longer than - longpela mo
 longest - longpela long olgeta
 longest of all - longpela winim
 olgeta

look - luk, lukluk
 look after - lukautim
 look-alike - wanpes
 look at - lukim, lukluk, lukluk
 long
 look for - painim
 look out! - lukaut!
 loose - lus, slek
 loosen, slacken - slekim, lusim
 lose - lusim
 lost - lus
 lot, a - planti
 loudmouth - man bilong bikmaus
 louse - laus
 low tide - tait i slek
 luck - kas
 lucky (card game) - laki
 lungs - wetliva, lang
 Lutheran - luteran
 lying down - slip

M

machine - masin
 mad - longlong, het i pas
 mad person - longlongman
 magic - majik, puripuri, sanguma
 magistrate - majestret
 main - bikpela
 main road - bikrot
 main village - bikples
 make - wokim
 make a clenched fist - brukim han
 make hole in ground - digim hul
 make love to - holim skin
 make magic against - mekim poisen
 long
 Malay apple - laulau
 male - man
 Manam Island - ailan Manam
 mango - mango
 man - man
 March - Mas
 marihuana - spak brus
 market - bung, maket

marry - maritim
 married - marit
 married couple - tupela marit
 married man/woman - maritman/meri
 married quarters - haus marit
 matches - masis
 matches are wet, won't light -
 masis i kol
 mate - wantok
 may - me
 meal - kaikai
 meal time - taim bilong kaikai
 mean - min
 meat - abus
 mechanic - mekenik
 medical assistant, doctor - dokta
 medicine - marasin
 meet - bungim
 meeting - kibung, kivung, miting
 men & women - manmeri, pipel
 menstruating - mun i kilim, i lukim
 meri
 messmate - wansospen, wantebol
 metre - mita
 middle - namel
 milk - susu
 minibus - liklik bas
 minute - minit
 mirror - glas bilong lukluk
 miserable - tarangu
 mission - misin
 missionary - misinare
 mist - sno
 mix - miksik
 mixed-race - hapkas
 moiety - bisnis, lain, famili
 Monday - Mande
 money - mani
 month - mun
 moon - mun
 full moon - raunpela mun, bikpela
 mun
 moon rises - mun i kamap
 moon sets - mun i godaun
 new moon - nupela mun

more - mo
 morning - moningtaim
 mosquito - natnat, moskito
 mosquito net - taunam
 mother - mama, mami
 mountain - maunten
 mouse - liklik rat
 moustache - mausgras
 mouth - maus
 muddy place - ples malomalo
 muffler - mafila
 multicoloured - makmak
 mummy - mama, mami
 murderer - kilman
 must - mas
 mutton, lamb - sipsip
 myth - tok bilong bipo yet

N

name - nem
 namesake - wannem
 nape of neck - baksait bilong nek
 native village - ples kanaka
 nauseated - bel i tantanim
 navel - hap bel
 near, nearby - klosap, klostu,
 klostu long
 neck - nek
 need - nidim
 nest - haus bilong pisin
 never mind - maski
 new - nupela
 newspaper - niuspepa
 next to, beside - arere
 nice, attractive - nalspela
 night - nait
 dead of night - biknait
 nine - nain, nainpela
 ninety - nainti, nainpela ten
 ninety-five - naintifaiv

no - nogat
 no smoking! - no ken smok!
 north - not
 nose - nus
 nose pin - pin bilong nus
 not - no
 nothing - nogat
 nought - nating, not, siro
 November - Novemba
 now - nau
 now and then - wanpela wanpela
 taim
 nuisance - hambakman
 number - namba
 nurse - nes
 nut (of bolt) - nat

O

occasionally - wanpela wanpela taim
 October - Oktoba
 office - opis, ofis
 officer - ofisa
 oil (something) - welim, grisim
 ointment - gris
 okay - oke, orait
 old - lapun; olupela
 old man - lapun
 once more - wanpela taim mo
 one - wan, wanpela
 one way - wanwe
 onion - anien
 only - tasol
 on top of - antap long
 open - op, opim
 open (new business) - kirapim
 opinion - tingting
 order - oda, odaim
 origin - as
 other - narapela
 other side, opposite side -
 arasait

outboard motor - autbotmota
 outpost - stesin
 outside - ausait
 oven - aven
 overcast - klaut i pas
 overcome - daunim
 oversee - bosim
 overseer on plantation - bosboi
 over there - hap, long hap
 overtake a car - abrusim ka
 oyster shell - skin bilong kina

P

PMV - piemvi
 paddle (canoe) - pul long kanu
 pain - pen
 paint - pen, penim
 palm of hand - insait long han
 pandanus fruit - marita
 paper - pepa
 parakeet - kalangal
 parents - papamama
 parliament - palamen
 parrot - koki; kalangal
 part - pat
 party - pati
 passenger - pasindia
 passify - kolim bel, mekim bel i kol
 pass (oncoming) car - mitim ka,
 bungim ka
 pass, overtake - abrusim
 past tense marker - bin
 patient - sikman, sikmeri
 pawpaw, papaya - popo
 pay - pe
 pay - baim, peim
 pay admission - peim dua
 pay bail - baim rum gat
 payday - pede
 pay for - baim
 pay out, get rid of - tromoim
 payweek - potnait
 peaceful (person) - belisi
 peanut - kasang
 peas - hebsen, pi
 pedestrian crossing - ples wokabout
 peeping Tom - lukstilman, man bilong
 luklukstil
 penis - kok
 people - manmeri, pipel
 pepper - pepa, daka
 perch, spiny fish - nilpis
 perhaps - ating
 permit, licence - pemit
 persistent offender - man i go i
 kam long kot
 person - man, meri
 person from same village -
 wanples
 person of same (age, social)
 group - wanlain
 person of same religion - wanlotu
 petrol pipe - mambu bilong bensin
 photo - foto, poto, piksa
 picture - piksa
 piece of bread - hap bret
 piece of scone - hap skon
 pie - pai
 pig - pik
 pigeon - balus
 pile up - hipim
 pillow - pilo
 pillow slip - skin pilo
 pilot - pailat
 pineapple - ananas, painap
 pipe - paip
 pity, mercy - marimari
 planet - liklik mun
 plantation - plantesen, plantesin
 plant - planim
 plastic - plastik
 plate - plet
 play - pilai, pilaim
 play flute or pipe - winim mambu
 play guitar, piano - pilaim gita,
 piano

playmate - wanpilal
 please - plis
 plenty - planti
 pliers - plais
 poison - poisen
 pole - diwai
 police - polis
 polish - polisim
 politician - politisen
 poor man - rabisman
 pork - pik
 portion out - dilim
 possible - i ken
 possum - kapul
 posterior part - as
 post - pos
 post office - pos opis, posopis
 potato - poteto, patete
 potato, sweet potato - kaukau
 potato, wild sweet potato - kumu
 pound - memeim
 pour - kapsaitim
 powder - paura
 power - pawa
 prayer book - buk beten
 pregnant - i gat bel
 prepare - redim
 prepare food - redim/wokim kaikai
 pressure-cook - mumuim
 pressure lamp - lam bensin
 price - prais
 primary school - praimer skul
 Prime Minister - Prai Minista
 prison - kalabus
 prisoner - kalabusman
 probably - ating
 problems - wari
 prohibit - tambuim
 promise - promisim
 promote - strongim
 propeller - koropela, propela

prophet - profet
 proud of, be - amamasim
 province - provins
 provoke - sutim bel, sutim nus
 public transport - PMV
 pull - pulim
 pulp - meme
 pulverise - memeim
 pumpkin - pamkin
 punish - strafim
 push - subim
 put on (clothing) - pasim
 pyrethrum - pairitrum
 python - moran

Q

Qantas (airline) - Kwantas
 question - kwesten
 queue - lain
 quickly - kwik, kwiktaim
 quiet, quietly - kwait
 quite (long) - (longpela) liklik
 quotation, statement - hap tok

R

radiator - redieita
 rain - ren
 it's raining - ren i kamdaun
 rainy season - taime bilong ren
 rainbow - renbo
 raincoat - kot ren, kotren
 raise, increase - apim (pe)
 raise money - kamapim mani
 raise with block and tackle -
 blokim
 rape - pulim, goapim
 raskol - raskol
 rat - rat
 rattle - ratol
 read - ridim, ritim

reader - rida
 ready - redi
 really - tru
 receipt - risit
 receive - kism
 record a song - katim singsing
 long teprikoda
 red - ret, retpela
 reeds - tiktik
 reef - rip
 refrigerator - bokis ais
 regret - belhevi
 release the brake - legoim brek
 religion, worship - lotu
 rent - baim
 replete - pulap
 reply - bekim tok
 report - givim stori, ripotim
 research - rises
 rest - malolo
 to have a rest - kism win,
 wiken, malolo
 return - go bek, kambek, kam bek
 ribs - banis
 rice - rais
 ridicule - tok bilas
 rifle - raifol
 right, correct - stret
 right hand - raithan, han sut
 ring the bell - paitim belo
 ringworm - grille, skin pukpuk
 ripe - mau
 rise - go antap
 road - rot
 roll a smoke - tanim smok
 room - rum
 round - raun
 row, paddle - pul long kanu
 rubbish - pipia, rabis
 rubbish tin - tin pipia
 rum - ram

rumour - tokwin
 run - ran, ron
 run away - ranawe, ronwe
 rust - ros

S

sack, dismiss - autim long wok
 sad - sore, sorl
 sago, sago palm - saksak
 sailors - boskru
 salt - sol
 salt and pepper - sol na pepa
 saltmeat - mit, solmit
 same - wankain
 Saturday - Sarere
 sauce - sos
 saucepan - sospen
 sausage - sosis
 saw - so, katim long so
 say - tok
 say (your) name - kolim nem
 (bilong yu)
 scabies - kaskas
 scavenge - mumutim
 school - skul
 schoolchild - sumatin
 schoolmate - wanskul
 scold - krosim
 scone(s) - skon
 scrape - sikirapim, sikrapim
 scrape coconut - sikirapim kokonas
 scraps - pipia
 screw, bolt - skru
 sea - solwara
 seaside - nambis
 seat - sit, sea
 seat of government - asples
 bilong gavman
 secret - tok hait
 secret language, parable -
 tok bokis
 secretary - sekreteri

- seduce - pulim
 see - lukim
 sell - salim, selim
 semitrailer - semitrella
 send - salim
 Sepik River - wara Sepik, riva Sepik
 September - Septemba
 set free - lusim
 set the table - stretim, lainim
 tebol
 settle stomach - strongim bel
 seven - seven, sevenpela
 Seventh Day Adventist - seven de
 sew up - samap, samapim
 shadow - dewel, dewel bilong man
 shake - seksek, seksekim
 shake hands - sekan
 shame - sem
 share out - skelim
 shark - sak
 sharp - sap, sappela
 sharp (of time), exactly - stret
 sheep - sipsip
 sheet - laplap bilong bet
 sheet metal - kapa
 shell - kina
 shell as penis covering - kam
 shield - plang bilong pait
 ship - sip
 shirt - slot
 shivering - skin i guria
 shoes - su
 one shoe - wanpela sait long su,
 wanpela su
 both shoes - tupela su
 shoot - sutim
 shoot at/with - sut long
 short - sot, sotpela
 shorthand - sothan
 shorts - sotpela trausis
 shoulder - sol, solda
 shovel - savol
 show - soim
 shut - pasim
 shut up/away - kalabusim
 shut up (talking) - sarap
 siblings - bratasusa
 sick - sik
 side - salt
 side-dish - abus
 side track/road - hanrot
 side stream - hanwara
 sign, signal - sain
 similar - wankain
 sin - pekato
 sister (nurse, nun) - sista
 sister (kin) - susa
 sit down - sindaun
 six - sikis, sikispela
 Sixmile - Sikismail
 skin - skin
 skirt, European type - sket
 man's bark type or G-string - mal
 woman's - purpur, sket
 skite, con man - bulsitman
 sky - ples bilong klaut, heven
 slack - slek, lus
 slacken - skelim, lusim
 slap - solapim
 sleep, be asleep - slip
 sleepy - ai i hevi, ai i slip
 sleeve - han bilong slot
 slitgong - garamut
 slow down - sloim ka
 small - liklik
 smoke - smok
 snake - snek
 sneakers - su gumi
 snore - pulim nus
 soap - sop
 soccer - soka
 sock(s) - sok(s)
 long walk sock(s) - longsok(s)
 softdrink - loliwara
 soldier - soldia, solodia
 sole of foot - ananit bilong lek

some - sampela	steel wool - stilwul
something - samting	steer - stia, stiaim steer car - stirim ka steering wheel - stia
son - pikinini man (bilong en)	steps - lata, step
soon - no longtaim, klosap, klostu	stevedore - wok sip
sorcery - sanguma, puripuri	still - yet
sore - sua sore has pus in it - sua i gat susu	stone - ston
sorry - sori	stop - dai (indai); stop, stopim
sort, kind - kain	store - stua storekeeper - stuakipa
soup - sup	story - stori
soursop - sausap	stove - stov
soya sauce - blaksos, blakpela sos, soisos	straight - stretpela
space - spes	strainer - strena
spade - spet	strength, force, power - pawa
spare part(s) - spepat	strike a match - slekim masis
spark - spak spark plug - spak plag	string netbag - bilum
speak - spik, tok, toktok speak out, divulge - autim speak the truth - tok tru	strip a bed - brukim bet
spear - spia, supia spear (something) - splrim	strong - strong, strongpela
spectacles - aiglas	stubborn, conceited - bikhet
speed - spit	stubby - stabi
spell - kaunim, spelim	stuck - pas
spend - lusim	student - studen, sumatin
spirit - masalai spirit house - haus tambaran	study - stadim, glasim
spit, spittle - spet	stupid - longlong, het i pas
spoil - bagarapim	suck finger - susuim pinga
spoon out - spunim, savolim	sugar - suga sugarcane - stik suga
sprain - tanim skru	Sunday - Sande
squatter - dripman, welman	sun - san sunglasses - sanglas
stairs - lata, step	support - sapotim supporter - sapota
stand up, erect (something) - sanapim	suppose, if - sapos
stand up, be erect - sanap	surprised - kirap nogut
star - sta	surveyor - masta mak
station (government) - stesin	swamp - tais
steal - stillm	sweat - tuhat sweat shirt - kolsinglis
Steamships - Stimsip	sweep - brumim

sweet - swit, switpela
 sweet biscuit - switbiskit
 sweet potato - kaukau

swell up - solap

sword grass - kunai

T

table - tebol

tail - tel

take - kisim, bringim
 take away - tekewe
 take contraceptives - pasim bel
 take off (plane) - kirap
 take temperature - glasim
 take to court - kotim

talk - tok, toktok
 talk about - toktok long
 talkative person - man bilong
 toktok

tall tale - tok gumi

tape - tep

tape-recorder - teprikoda

tapioca - taplok, kasara

tap root - kil bilong diwai

taro - taro

tax - takis

taxi - taksi

teach - skulim
 teacher - tisa

tea (in liquid form) - ti
 cup of tea - kapti
 teacup - kap bilong ti
 tea leaves - lipti
 teapot - tipot

tease - hambakim

teeth - tit

telephone - telepon

tell - tokim
 tell lies to, fool - giamanim

tempt - traim

ten - ten, tenpela
 tenth - namba ten
 tenth rate, terrible - nambaten

testicles - bol

thank you - tenkyu

that - olsem

that's all - em tasol

theft - stil
 thief - stilman

they - ol

thigh - mit bilong lek

thing - samting

think - ting, tingting

this - dispela, ya

those (two) - entupela
 those (three) - emtripela

thoughts - tingting

three - tri, tripela

throat - nek

throw away - rausim, troimweim

thunder - klaut i pairap

Thursday - Fonde

tide - tait

tighten - taitim

tilapia (fish sp.) - makao

time - taim

tin - tin
 tinned fish - tinpis
 tinned meat - tinmit

tinea - grille, skin pukpuk

tip - kapsaitim

tip-truck - tipa

tired - les, skin i les/slek, bun
 i slek

toast - tos; tostim (bret)

tobacco - brus, tabak, stik tabak,
 tobako

today - tede

toea (monetary unit) - toea

toe - pinga bilong fut/lek

together - wantaim

toilet - smol haus, liklik haus,
 haus pekpek, toilet

toilet soap - sop i gat smel

to - long

tomahawk - tamiok
 tomatoes - tomato
 tomato sauce - retsos, retpela sos
 tomorrow - tumora
 tongue - tang
 tooth - tit
 toothache - tit i pen
 too - tu
 torch, headlamps - sutlam
 totem, clan - pisin
 tourist - turis
 towel - taul
 town - taun
 track - liklik rot, hanrot
 tracked vehicle - senka(r)
 tradition of ancestors - tok
 bilang ol tumbuna
 travelling companion - wanwokabout
 tree - diwai
 tree kangaroo - sikau bilang antap
 trench, drain - baret
 tributary - hanwara
 trip, tour - wokabout
 trouble - trabel, trabol
 troublemaker - trabelman
 trousers - trausis
 truck - trak
 true - tru
 truth - tok tru
 try - traim
 T-shirt - tisiot, T-siot
 Tuesday - Tunde
 tune - nek
 turn - tanim
 turn round - tantanim
 turn (boat) - bautim
 turn steering wheel - tanim stia
 turtle - trosel, trausel
 turtle's flipper - pul bilang
 trausel
 twenty - twenti
 two - tu, tupela

type - taipim
 typewriter - taiprait
 tyre - taia, taia stret

U

umbrella - ambrela
 unable to - no inap
 uncle, maternal - kandere
 paternal - smolpapa
 under, underneath - ananit
 unemployed - stap nating
 unfortunate - tarangu
 unite - bung wantaim
 university - yunivesiti
 unlock door - lusim dua
 unmarried - no marit
 until - inap long
 up - antap
 up to, until - inap long
 urinate - pispis
 use - yusim
 useless, no good - nogut
 utility - hapka

V

vagrant - dripman, welman
 vague, be - karamapim tok
 valley - ples i go daun
 valve stem on inner tube - maus
 bilang gumu
 various kinds of - kainkain
 vegetables - kumu, sayor, grins
 vein - mambu bilang blut
 verandah, patio - veranda
 very - tumas, mo, tru
 very good - namba wan
 very much - tru, tumas, mo mo yet
 videorecorder - vidiorikoda

village - ples, viles
 vine - rop, rop bilong diwai
 voice - nek
 vomit - traut
 vote - vot

W

wages - pe
 wait for - wetim
 wait in vain - wet nating
 walk - wokabout
 wallaby - sikau
 wanderer - welman, dripman
 want - laik
 warrior - man bilong pait
 was - bin
 wash - wasim
 wash, bathe - waswas
 washer (on bolt) - ring
 waste - westim
 watch - hanwas, klok
 water - wara
 water pipe - mambu bilong wara
 way, choice - rot
 mode - pasin
 we - mipela
 we (two excl) - mitupela
 we (two incl) - yumitupela
 we (three excl) - mitripela
 we (three incl) - yumitripela
 weary - les, skin i les/slek, bun
 i slek
 Wednesday - Trinde
 weed - klinim gaden, tekimaut gras
 nogut
 weed(s) - gras nogut
 week - wik
 weekend - wiken
 weigh out - skelim
 wet - wet
 what - wanem
 what are you doing? - yu mekim
 wanem?
 what for? - bilong wanem?

wheel (with tyre on) - wil, taia
 where - we, westap
 white - wait, waitpela
 white man, European - waitman
 who - husat
 whose - bilong husat
 why - bilong wanem, wasmara, watpo
 wife - meri
 wild - wel, welpela, wail, wailpela
 wild black palm - wel limbum
 wild pig - wel pik
 wild sugarcane - tiktik
 will - bai
 wind - win
 windscreen - winskrin
 windscreen wipers - waipa
 window - windo
 wind up a window - wokim glas i
 go antap
 windpipe - mambu bilong nek
 wing - han bilong pisin
 wink - brukim ai
 wireless - wailis
 witchcraft - sanguma
 withdraw - autim
 woman - meri
 woman, wife (European) - misis
 wood - diwai
 work, job - wok
 workday - de bilong wok
 worker - wokman
 work for board and keep - wok
 kalkal
 work hard - hatwok
 workshop - woksop
 worn out - bagarap
 worry, worries - wari
 worship (God) - lotuim, beten
 wound - sua
 wound heals - sua i drai
 wreck - spoilim
 write - raitim
 wrong, offend - rongim

Y

yam - mami, yam

year - yia

year (of age) - krismas

yeast - yis

yellow - yelo, yelopela

yes - ya, yes

yesterday - asde

yet - yet

you - yu, yupela

you (two) - yutupela

you (three) - yumitupela

you and I - yumitupela

young - yangpela

Z

zero - siro, nating, not

This index contains cross-references to grammatical and other points not listed in the Tok Pisin-English Vocabulary in this volume. In the listing ... between words indicates that other words or elements have been left out, and following numbers means 'and other places throughout the course'.

A

ability (inap + verb) 117
 about to (laik and klostu + verb) 147
 adjectives - introduction to 43
 - intensification of 216
 - comparison of 262
 adverbs - comparison of 262
 after (bihain long taim) 168
 allow (larim) 249, 264
 although - olsem + clause 241
 maski + clause 280
 animals 134-135
 as, as if (olsem + clause) 241
 as far as (inap long) 214
 as soon as (stret long taim) 168
 attempt to (traim) 283

B

bai + verb (future tense, will) 78-79,
 82-84, 87-88, 213
 because 164
 before (bipo long taim) 168
 betelnut chewing terms 210-211
 bilong - vs. long 2
 - as indicator of origin 1,
 8-9
 - as possessive marker 38
 - as indicator of characteristic
 habit 90-91
 - after go and kam 2
 - with verb (= in order to) 1-4,
 19
 - with husat (= whose) 29-32, 38
 - with wanem (= why) 1-2
 bin + verb (past tense) 18, 52, 213
 body parts 1-12, 110-112, 233

C

calendar 86
 cardinal numbers 42-43
 comparison of adjectives and
 adverbs 262
 competence (save + verb) 89
 completed actions (verb + pinis) 65
 conditional clauses (sapos) 190
 continuous action (verb + i stap)
 115
 could (inap) 5
 counting 43
 currency 28-29

D

days and dates 92-93
 distributive and reciprocal pronouns
 (each, one another) 281

E

each other 281
 en (= short form of em) 2
 emphatic pronouns (yet, tasol,
 wanpela) 88
 even if (maski + clause) 281

F

focus 304
 foodstuffs 11, 36, 59
 flying and planes 136-137
 fruits 59-60
 future tense, will (bai + verb)
 55, 87

G

gat laik long 39
gen 119

H

habitual actions (save + verb) 89
have to (mas) 238
household terms 13, 255-256
how? 78
how much, how many 27-35...

I

i gat (there is/are) 213
in order to (bilang + verb) 19
i mobeta sapos (it would be better if)
307
impatient questions (watpo, westap,
wasmara) 303
inap - could 5
- with verb (ability) 17
- with long (until, up to, as
far as) 213-214
inclusive and exclusive pronouns 3
in order to 8-19, 305
intense repetitious actions 284
intensification of adjectives 216
intransitive verbs 16
it would be better if (i mobeta sapos)
307

J

just like (olsem + clause) 241

K

kain (kind of) 243, 257
kind of (kain) 243, 257
kisim i kam, kisim i go 56

L

laik - plus verb (want to) 39
- and klostu + verb (about to)
47
- plus long (love to) 39
- vs. laikim 27
laka (question tag) 32, 64
larim and similar verbs 249, 264
legal terms 162-163
long - as direction marker (to, from
etc.) 1...
- plus verb (in order to) 8-19

M

man bilong we? 8
mas (must, have to) 213, 238
maski - as negative imperative 170
- with clause (although, no
matter, even if) 280
medical terms 234
mekim 264
moral terms 301-302
motoring terms 277-278
must (mas) 238

N

nating 31-33
negative imperatives (no, no ken,
nogut, maski) 170
negative marker (no) 89
nobody, no one 260
no matter (maski + clause) 280
nothing 260
nouns - singular and plural 67
numbers - cardinal 42

O

obligation (mas + verb) 238

- ol - as plural marker 67
- olsem - plus clause (that, as, just like, as if, as though) 241
- with na (and so, thus) 29
- one another 281
- P
- particle i 3
- past tense (bín + verb) 118
- pela 42-44
- personal pronouns 1, 3-4
- pinis 51-67, 213
- planes and flying 136-137
- plants and trees 59-61
- political terms 161-162
- possession 38
- predicative marker i 3, 5, 39, 41, 213
- pronouns - basic set 13
- distributive and reciprocal 281
- dual and trial 64
- emphatic forms (yet, tasol, wanpela) 188
- olgeta forms 138
- reflexive 240
- pronunciation - vowels 6
- consonants (p,t,k) 32-33
(l,r) 33
- consonant sequences 55
- Q
- questions - general 64
- answering negative ones 236
- impatient ones 303
- tags (a, laka, o nogat, o wanem) 2-4, 32, 50, 64
- words 64
- question tags - a 2-4, 64
laka 32, 64
o nogat 50, 64
- R
- reason clauses (because) 64
- reflexive pronouns 240
- relative clauses
- introduction to (who, which, that) 39-40, 55, 139
- more on (to whom, whoever) 166
(where, what) 195
- religious terms 185-187
- repeated actions (verb + gen) 119
- S
- same (wankaín) 257
- sapos (if) 190
- save - plus long (know something/someone) 9
- plus verb (competence and habitual actions) 89
- plus laik (love to) 39
- sentences - conjoined with pinis 67
- without subjects 213
- without verbs 41
- singular and plural number 67-68
- spelling xviii, 26
- stap 7, 9, 17
- T
- that - relative clause 139
- complement (olsem + clause) 241
- there is/are (i gat) 213
- time 80, 85, 94-95
- time clauses (when) 68
- to - see 'in order to'
- to whom 166
- traim 271, 283
- transitive verbs 16
- transitive verbs unmarked by -im 69
- trees and plants 12-15, 59-61
- try (traim) 283

U

unsuccessful actions 306
 until (inap long) 214
 up to (inap long) 214

V

verbs - introduction to 15
 - transitive 16
 - transitive unmarked by -im 69
 - intransitive 16
 - more on 192
 - stative 192
 - with long 192
 - larim and similar ones 264
 - traım 283
 - grouping and focus 304
 verb + gen (repeated actions) 19
 verb + i stap (continuous action) 15-16
 verb + pınis (completed action) 65

W

want to (laik + verb) 39
 wasmara 303
 watpo 303
 weather and time 85
 we (inclusive and exclusive) 3

westap 303

what - question 2-3, 8, 42
 - relative clauses 139, 195

what sort of 27

when - questions 78-83
 - relative clauses 168

whenever (long wanem taım) 168

which - questions 80, 83
 - relative clauses 139

while (long taım ... yet, insait
 long taım ... yet) 168

who - questions 38, 42
 - relative clauses 139

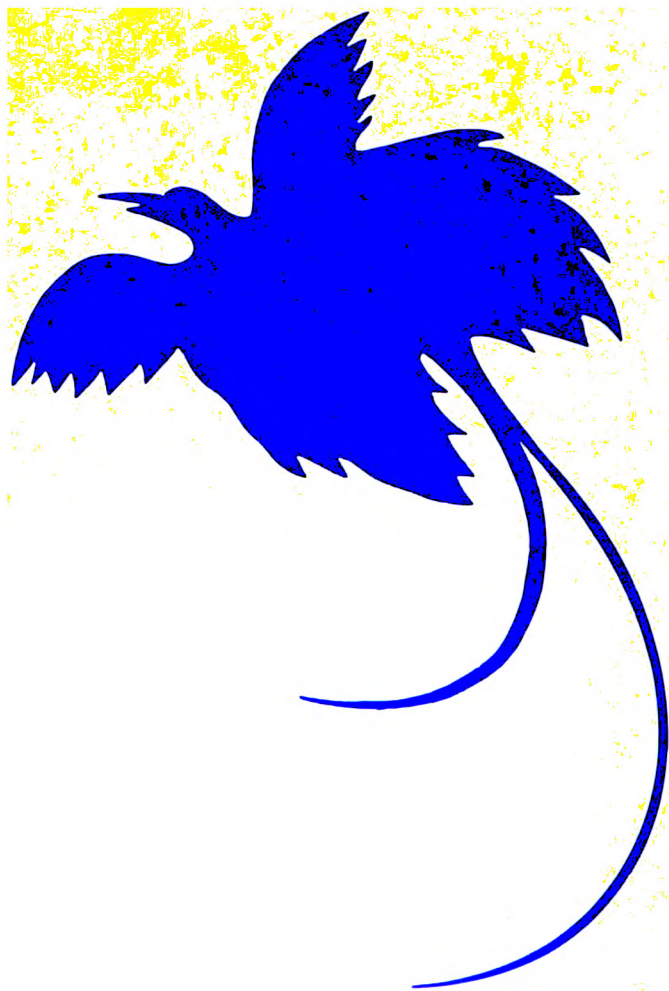
whoever 166

whose 38

wok long + verb (still ... V-ing)
 16

Y

ya - as demonstrative 27, 29, 31,
 42
 - as relative clause marker 142
 yes/no questions 52
 yet (emphatic pronoun marker) 88



8 58 63



8 5863